Library of Congress
Chap. PC4109
No. S4
1
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

A

FIRST BOOK IN SPANISH;

OR,

A PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY

OF THE

SPANISH LANGUAGE:

CONTAINING

FULL INSTRUCTIONS IN PRONUNCIATION, A GRAMMAR; EXERCISES ON THE OLLENDORFF METHOD OF CONSTANT IMITATION AND REPETITION; READING LESSONS; AND A VOCABULARY.

THE WHOLE ADAPTED FOR THE USE OF PRIVATE LEARNERS, OR FOR CLASSES UNDER AN INSTRUCTOR.

34
10 603

BY JOSEPH SALKELD, A.M.,
Author of "A Compendium of Classical Antiquities," etc.

NEW YORK:
HARPER AND BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,
82 CLIFF STREET.
1848.

PC 4109 PC4111
.S4
.S4

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1848, by
HARPER & BROTHERS,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District
of New York.

PREFACE.

THE Spanish Language has never been so extensively taught or studied in our country, as some other foreign languages: this lack of interest in Spanish cannot be occasioned by any intrinsic defect in the language or literature itself; for whether we regard its metrical or prose romances, its ballads, lyrics, dramatic poetry, or its historical works, there is every inducement to become acquainted with its rich literary treasures.

There is no other European language which can be so readily acquired by an Anglo-American, as the Spanish. It contains but one sound that has not almost, if not quite, its exact equivalent in English; and this one can be very easily learned. Unlike English and French, it is not encumbered with silent letters (one of the greatest obstacles in acquiring the right pronunciation of those languages); nor are its vowels or consonants liable to any variation in the quality of their sound. As to the proper syllable of a word to be accented in pronunciation, Spanish presents to the learner no difficulty whatever; and this renders it far more easy of acquirement than the Italian. Indeed, we can hardly conceive of a language more simple and philosophical in the principles of its orthoëpy. In the departments of etymology and syntax, no modern language is more regular. The exceptions to the general principles are few; and many of these will be found to correspond to similar exceptions in the grammar of our own language, so that they present, of course, less difficulty to the English learner.

Perhaps one chief reason why Spanish has not received as much attention as some other modern tongues, is to be found in the fact that there has been a want of proper inducements in the shape of an elementary instruction-book, to introduce, as it were, the learner to the language. It has hitherto been a fault of most English Grammars of the Spanish language that they were either close translations of French-Spanish Grammars, and, of course, not adapted to the wants of English learners, or written by Spanish instructors, who however well acquainted with the principles of their own language, have not understood critically the peculiarities of English idioms and forms of construction.* Grammar, too, has formerly consisted of a dry set of etymological forms and syntactical

* We feel bound to remark here that most of these Spanish grammarians do not seem, in all respects, acquainted with their own language. To prove this assertion, we need only refer the *learned* inquirer to the unauthorized manner in which they pronounce the particles *porque*, *aunque*, *sino;* and to the practice of some of them of using the conjunction *é* before *y* when a consonant; thus, *tú é yo.*

rules, a tedious detail of abstract principles, which the pupil was expected first of all to commit to memory. The system, now known as the method of Professsor Ollendorff, in which the language is taught before the grammatical principles, is not only a far more pleasant, but also a far more thorough method of acquiring a practical knowledge of any foreign tongue.

We think, however, that Ollendorff adheres too closely to this latter method. To one who wishes merely to learn to converse in a foreign language, "Ollendorff's New Methods" furnish all that is necessary for this end; but to those who wish to acquire the knowledge of a language both for practical and literary purposes, a work uniting both systems will be found most advantageous.* And such a work, it is hoped, will be found in the "First Book in Spanish," now first presented to the public. It is divided into six parts:

I. Orthoëpy and Orthography; containing, in a very few pages, full directions for the right pronunciation and syllabication of the words of the language, adapted especially to those who are their own instructors.

II. General Principles of Etymology and Syntax, in which are taught the most general and important principles of the language.

III. *A full exposition of* Etymology and Syntax, in which the more minute rules and exceptions are clearly explained. To Part III. there is an Appendix which treats of Spanish Prosody; Gender of Spanish Nouns; Idiomatic Phrases; Spanish Abbreviations; Money, Weights and Measures; Spanish Proper Names, etc.

IV. Progressive Exercises *in translating from Spanish into English, and from English into Spanish* (according to the Method of "constant imitation and repetition"), which the learner commences simultaneously with Part II.; thus he gradually, and almost imperceptibly, becomes familiar with the general rules of Etymology and Syntax, being able, after his first and second lessons, to form sentences, and in a limited manner, "to read, write and speak" in the Castilian tongue

V. Reading Lessons *in Spanish*, beginning with very simple sentences and progressively introducing the peculiarities of the idioms and construction, by interesting extracts from the writings of Spaniards. The marginal notes gradually clear away all difficulties, either by direct explanation, or by reference to some rule or remark in a previous part of the work.

VI. A Vocabulary *of words used in the Reading Lessons*, alphabetically arranged, properly accented, and clearly defined.

It will thus be seen that this single volume supplies all that the beginner needs: a treatise on pronunciation, a grammar, exercises for translation from one language into the other, a reading-book, and dictionary.

---

* The editors of the American edition of Ollendorff's Method seem to have discovered this; as two of them have appended a Synopsis of Grammar to the work.

It is hoped, therefore, that any who have a desire to become acquainted with Spanish may be induced to enter upon the study of this delightful language, especially as any one acquainted with English Grammar, by following the directions, may, in a comparatively short time, be able to speak and read Castilian, without any other instructor than this "FIRST BOOK IN SPANISH." After having carefully studied this work, he will be prepared, with the aid of a larger dictionary, to enter upon the perusal of any Spanish writer.

As the portion of our volume which contains the Grammar of the language may seem more limited in size than works on grammar in general, we deem it proper to state that not a single established rule (or exception to a rule) of Spanish Etymology or Syntax noticed in other English-Spanish Grammars, is here omitted: on the contrary, much will be found in the present work that is not contained in any other Spanish Grammar. Let any one compare the full and minute explanations of the syntax of the verb, (to which about thirty pages are devoted in Part III.,) with what is said of the verb in any other grammar, and he will be able to decide which grammar has been most explicit. The manner of using certain conjunctions (pages 175—178), observations on the use of prepositions (pages 178—184), the distinction between the verbs *ser* and *estar* (pages 163—167), and the summary of the rules of gender of Spanish nouns with a list of exceptions (pages 191—198), are portions of the work which will be found to be unusually full, and, we trust, satisfactory. The rules we have adopted for distinguishing the gender of Spanish nouns, so far as they regard the terminations *ie*, *umbre*, and *is*, have never before, to our knowledge, appeared in any grammar of the language. In our readings of Spanish authors we long since noticed that nouns terminating in *umbre* and *ie* (except *pié* and its compounds) are feminine; and from an actual examination of all the nouns ending in *is*, we find more than two-thirds of these are also feminine. We here saw (what seems to have been overlooked by others) how the rules for distinguishing gender might be greatly simplified: accordingly we have stated it as a general rule (see page 191) that "all nouns ending in *a*, *d*, *ie*, *umbre*, *ion*, *is*, or *ez*, (unless they may be the names of male beings,) are feminine," and that all that do not thus terminate, are masculine. Then follows a complete list of exceptions to these rules. In giving this list we have not adopted the common plan of grammarians, of copying such exceptions as they could readily remember, and then adding—"*and many others which the pupil will learn by noticing the usage of the best writers;*" but we have taken the toilsome course of examining carefully every noun in the "DICCIONARIO DE LA ACADEMIA ESPAÑOLA," and placing in the list all such as were not comprehended in the general rules. If any other similar list has been published, it is unknown to us.

The Reading Lessons are chiefly specimens from living Spanish writers. It is doubtless better that the learner should at first thus enter upon

the reading of modern Spanish, leaving the older Castilian classical writers for a more advanced stage of his course. Extracts from recent "*Manifiestos*" of General Santa-Anna, have been given, as specimens of Mexican-Spanish. In order that the learner may become familiar with the different methods of spelling adopted by different writers, we have in general followed the orthography of the respective authors from whom the extracts are made.

It is a matter of regret that former Grammars, and even Seoane's edition of Neuman and Baretti's Spanish Dictionary, have approved of the erroneous practice of accenting the particles *porque* (when it means "because"), *aunque*, and *sino*, on the last syllable. This practice is not sanctioned by any respectable Castilian writer of prose or poetry, nor by any of the late editions of the Dictionary of the Royal Spanish Academy. *Porque* has the last syllable long only when it is used as an interrogative adverb or in the sense of "why;" thus: *¿Porquê* (pronounced *pore-kay'*) *no bebe V.? Porque* (pronounced *poré-kay*) *no tengo sed:*—"*Why* do you not drink? Because I am not thirsty." *Aunque* and *sino* (whatever Spanish Grammars and Spanish instructors may say to the contrary) ought never to be written *aunqué* and *sinó*.*

The present work has been submitted to the examination of native Spanish professors; and it may not be improper to insert here the opinion of our friend Señor Molina, for many years an instructor in Spanish.

"I have carefully examined the MSS. of the '*First Book in Spanish*' which you are about publishing, and it has afforded me extreme pleasure to find that the Spanish language in your country is to have such a valuable auxiliary. I can with truth say that I have never met with a work professing to teach any foreign language which combines so many excellent qualities, and is so well adapted for all classes of learners. It contains all that the pupil needs, and in a very convenient compass. The judicious arrangement of your work especially pleases me; it is the precise manner in which I have been giving instruction to classes of pupils in English, French, and Spanish for many years in the cities of Paris, London, and Madrid, teaching what is most important to know, both of etymology and syntax, first (without separating these departments as is commonly done), and then taking up the more particular rules, and exceptions to general rules, afterwards. Your first part, on Pronunciation, is so lucid and simple, that even a private learner, by following your directions, could learn to speak Castilian with more elegance than one-half of the natives of Spain. Your plan of placing the pupil to reading Spanish as he progresses with the grammar, and especially your mode of constant reference for the application of the rules of grammar, while it is all the more agreeable to the pupil, will be the means of thoroughly making him acquainted with the rules of Spanish etymology and syntax, without any very laborious effort on his part.

"Hitherto there has been but little done in your country to promote

---

* We are glad to learn that Professor Velasquez, of Columbia College, New York, has in course of preparation a new Dictionary of the Spanish Language. From his known scholarship, we are led to expect a dictionary in which the immense number of errors of previous lexicographers will be corrected—a dictionary in all respects worthy of this noble language.

the knowledge of the Spanish literature, and this has, without doubt, resulted from a want of proper books. There will no longer be any reason for such an excuse. You have provided a book which, for its simplicity, distinctness, and completeness, in that which it professes to teach, could hardly be excelled. You deserve and will receive the warmest thanks of every admirer of elegant Castilian: a language, in the opinion of the best critics, of more sweetness, music, elegance, and expression than any other European tongue."

To all native Spanish gentlemen who have, in any way, encouraged us in our work, we take this opportunity of making our grateful acknowledgments.

In conclusion, we will say that as we have endeavored to perform our task faithfully, we trust that our work may contribute towards increasing the study of the classic language of Castile.

July, 1848.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION.

Page

The Spanish Alphabet.—Sound of Simple Vowels, - - 13
Sound of the Consonants, - - - - - 13—16
Different Methods of Spelling Spanish Words, - - 17
Sound of Diphthongs and Triphthongs, - - - 18
List of Diphthongs and Triphthongs, - - - 19
Syllabication, - - - - - - - - - 20
Accentuation, - - - - - - - - - 21—23
Punctuation, - - - - - - - - - 23
Lessons for Pronunciation, - - - - 24—27
Additional remarks on the Pronunciation of Spanish-Mexican—Manner of sounding *c*, *z* and *ll*, - - - 27

PART II.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

Parts of Speech.—Their subdivisions defined, - - - 28—30
Of the Article, definite and indefinite.—Rules for their use, 30—33
Of the Noun.—Rules for distinguishing the gender of Nouns, - 33
Rules for forming the plural number of Nouns, - - 34
Cases of Nouns.—The English possessive case, how rendered in Spanish, - - - - - - - - 35
Of the Adjective.—Formation of the plural and feminine terminations, - - - - - - - - - - 36
Adjectives used as Nouns, - - - - - - 37
Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives.—Rules for forming the Comparative and Superlative, - - - 38—40
Of the Pronoun.—Personal Pronouns.—Use of *Usted* and its contractions, *V.*, *Vm.*, etc.—Direct and indirect objective case of Personal Pronouns, - - - - - 40
Declension of Personal Pronouns.—Rules for their use, 41—44
Possessive Pronouns.—Their declension, - - - - 44
Rules for the use of Possessive Pronouns, - - 45—47
Relative Pronouns.—Their declension, - - - - 47
Rules for the use of Relative Pronouns, - - - 48, 49
Interrogative Pronouns.—Rules for their use, - - - 49
Demonstrative Pronouns.—Their declension.—Rules for their use, 50—52
Indefinite Pronouns.—Manner of employing them, - - 52—54
Of the Verb.—Active-transitive, Active-intransitive, Reflective, Passive, Neuter, - - - - - - - 55
Moods.—Infinitive, Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive, 56
Tenses.—Present, Imperfect, Perfect-Definite, Perfect-In-

Page

definite, First and Second Pluperfect, First and Second Future, - - - - - - - - - 57
Participles and Gerunds.—Conjugation.—Regular, Irregular, and Auxiliary Verbs, - - - - - - 58
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, *Haber*, - - 59—62
Conjugation of the " Verb, *Ser*, - - 62—65
Conjugation of the " Verb, *Estar*, - - 65—67
Conjugation of the " Verb, *Tener*, - - 67—70
Conjugation of Regular Verbs.—Tabular View of Verb-endings, - - - - - - - - 70—72
Changes in the Verb-ending.—Changes in Verb-root, 72, 73
Paradigm of the First, Second and Third Conjugations, 74—81
Conjugation of Reflective Verbs, - - - 81
Conjugation of Passive Verbs, - - - - 82, 83
Pronoun *se* used instead of the passive voice, - - 84
Verbs conjugated interrogatively and negatively, - - 85
Irregular Verbs, - - - - - - - - 86
Conjugation of Irregular Verbs *Andar*, *Contar*, etc., - 87—110
Defective Verbs.—Impersonal Verbs, - - - 111
Haber and *hacer* used impersonally, - - - 112
List of Irregular, Defective and Impersonal Verbs, 113—120
List of Verbs having irregular Past-Participles, - 121
Of the Adverb.—Of the Conjunction, - - - - 122
Of the Preposition.—Of the Interjection, - - - 123

PART III.

ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX MORE FULLY EXPLAINED.

Of the Article.—Rules for the use of the Definite Article, - 124, 125
Omission of the Definite Article, - - - 125, 126
Omission of the Indefinite Article, - - - 126—128
Other uses and omissions of Articles, - - 128
Of the Noun.—Augmentatives, Diminutives, Titles of Respect, 129—131
Of the Adjective.—Agreement and position of Adjectives, - 131—133
Rules for the use of Comparatives, Superlatives, etc., 133—135
List of Numerals, cardinal and ordinal, - - 135—137
Rules for the use of Numeral Adjectives, - - 137, 138
Of the Pronoun.—Personal Pronouns and Rules for their use, 138—142
Peculiar use of other Pronouns, - - - - 142
Of the Verb.—Rules for the agreement of the Verb with its subject, - - - - - - - - 142—144
Mood and Tenses of Verbs.—Rules for the use of the Infinitive, Gerund, and Participle, - - - 144—146
Tenses of the Indicative Mood.—Rules for their use, 146—150
The Imperative Mood.—Rules for its use, - - 150, 151
The Tenses of the Subjunctive Mood.—Rules for their use, 151—157
The Passive Verb, and rules for its use, - - - 157, 158

Page

The Regimen of Verbs.—Rules for the Regimen of Verbs, 158—161
Verbs followed by certain Prepositions, - - 161—163
On the use of the Verbs *ser* and *estar*, - - 163—166
Idiomatic use of certain Verbs, - - - - 166—169
Of the Adverb.—Rules for the use of Adverbs, - - 169—171
List and explanation of certain Adverbial Phrases, - 172, 173
Classification of Adverbs, - - - 174
Of the Conjunction.—Classification of Conjunctions, - - 174, 175
Rules for the use of certain Conjunctions, - 175—178
Of the Preposition.—Observations on their use, - - 178—184
Of the Interjection.—Observations on its use, - - 184

APPENDIX TO PART III.

Number I. Of Prosody.—Pronunciation, - - - 185
Of Diphthongs and Triphthongs, - - 186
Of Verse and Rhyme.—Examples for scanning, 187—190
Number II. A Summary of the Rules of Gender of Spanish Nouns, - - - - - - 191
List of Exceptions to the general rules of Gender, 192—197
Number III. Idiomatic use of certain Adjectives and Verbs, with Prepositions.—A list of them, - 198—203
Number IV. A List of the most common Idiomatic Phrases, 204—218
Number V. A List of the most common Abbreviations, - 219—221
Number VI. Spanish Money, Weights and Measures, - 222—224
Number VII. Spanish Proper Names.—Geographical Names, 225—227
Names applied to persons from the place of nativity, - - - - - - 227, 228
Christian Names of Men, - - 228—230
Christian Names of Women, - - - 230

PART IV.

SPANISH AND ENGLISH EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION.

Section First to Section Seventeenth, with Rules and Remarks to illustrate various Idioms and peculiarities of construction, - - - - - - - - 231—301

PART V.

SPANISH READING LESSONS, WITH NOTES IN ENGLISH.

First Section.—Easy Sentences, - - - - - 302
I. Short Sentences, - - - - - - 303
II. Spanish and English.—III. The Weather, - 304
IV. The Seasons.—V. The Country, - - - 305
VI. A Journey.—VII. Miscellaneous Sentences, - 306
Second Section.—Short and Simple Anecdotes, etc., - - 307
VIII. Gaining and Losing.—IX. A good Reason for

Page

writing a long Letter.—X. Rewarding a dull writer.—XI. Early Rising, - - - 308

XII. A Singular Edict.—XIII. Periodicals in the United States.—XIV. Sagacity of a Dog, - - 309

XV. Thales' Sage Answers.—XVI. Simplicity of a Child, 310

XVII. The Kings of Former Times.—XVIII. An Irishman's Conjecture, - - - - 311

XIX. The Force of Shame.—XX. An Accommodating Wife.—XXI. An Invention of questionable Utility, - - - - - - 212

Third Section.—Lessons taken from "Deberes de los Hombres," 313

XXII. Filial Affection, - - - - - 313

XXIII. Respect for Old Age. An Anecdote, - - - 315

XXIV. Friendship.—XXV. Reading and Study, - 316

XXVI. Selecting a Profession, - - - - 317

XXVII. Ambition to be Restrained.—XXVIII. Repenting of our Faults, - - - - - 318

XXIX. Gratitude, - - - - - - 319

XXX. Pardon to Enemies, - - - - 320

Fourth Section, - - - - - - - 321

XXXI. No Hereditary Titles in the United States, - 321

XXXII. Increase of Population of the United States, - 322

XXXIII. The Magnetic Telegraph the Invention of a Spaniard, 323

XXXIV. The First Steamboat (at Barcelona, A. D. 1543), 324

XXXV. Washington. By E. J. Gomez, - - - 324

XXXVI. Pedro Lopez de Ayala. By M. Galo de Cuendas, 326

XXXVII. Miguel de Cervántes. By M. Galo de Cuendas, 326

XXXVIII. Epitome of the History of Spain. By José de Cadalso, 328

XXXIX. Critics. By José de Cadalso, 331

XL. American Independence. By E. J. Gomez, 333

XLI. A Visit to the Tomb of Washington. " " 335

Fifth Section, - - - - - - - 337

XLII. The Maiden of Narni. A Tale, - - - 337

XLIII. Extracts from a "*Manifiesto*" of General Santa-Anna (Sept. 16th, 1847), - - - - 341

XLIV. Extracts from another "*Manifiesto*" of Santa-Anna (Oct. 22d, 1847), - - - - - 343

XLV. Ingratitude. By Teodoro de Almeyda, - - 346

XLVI. The Bear, Monkey, and Hog.—A Poetic Fable. By T. de Iriarte, - - - - - 347

PART VI.

VOCABULARY.

Abbreviations used in Vocabulary, - - - - - 350

Vocabulary of Words used in the Reading Lessons, - - 351

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION.

THE SPANISH ALPHABET.

1. The Spanish Alphabet contains twenty-eight characters or letters; *a*, *b*, *c*, *ch*, *d*, *e*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *i*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *ll*, *m*, *n*, *ñ*, *o*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *u*, *v*, *x*, *y*, *z*.

2. Of these letters, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, are always vowels; *y* is also a vowel when it ends a syllable or word, or when it stands alone: the other letters are consonants, as also *y* when it begins a syllable or word. The consonants are divided into semi-vowels and mutes; the semi-vowels being, *f*, *h*, *l*, *ll*, *m*, *n*, *ñ*, *r*, *s*, *x*; and the mutes, *b*, *c*, *ch*, *d*, *g*, *j*, *k*, *p*, *q*, *t*, *v*, *z*.

SOUND OF THE SIMPLE VOWELS.

3. A, in Spanish, has the sound of *a* in the English word *far*.

☞ This sound it retains in every position, not varying as in the English words, *fare*, *fat*, *far*, *fall*, *swallow*, *many*, *courage*, *mustard*, in no two of which the *a* has precisely the same sound.

4. E, has the sound of *a* in *made* or *e* in *they*.

5. I, has the sound of *ee* in *see* or *i* in *machine*. Y, when vowel, has the same sound.

6. O, has the sound of *o* in *go*.

7. U, has the sound of *oo* in *mood* or *u* in *rude*.

SOUND OF THE CONSONANTS.

8. B, F, K, L, M, N, P, sound as in English.

9. C, before *a*, *o*, or *u*, or before a consonant, sounds like *k*; that is, like *c*, in the English word, *cart*; as, *carne*, *poco*, *cuna*, *creo*; pronounced *kar'-ney*, *po'-ko*, *koo'-nah*, *kray'-o*.

10. C, before *e*, or *i*, sounds like *th* in the English word *think;* as, *cecina, cima;* pronounced *thay-thee'-nah, thee'-mah.*

11. CH, is considered as one letter in Spanish, and is always sounded like *ch* in the English word *church;* as, *noche, chapa;* pronounced *no'-chay, chah'-pah.*

12. D, has not exactly the same sound in Spanish that it has in English. In the latter, it is formed by touching the tongue to the roof of the mouth: in Spanish, the end of the tongue strikes the upper teeth: it has then a sound nearly like *th* in the English words *than, though.*

☞ A person can hardly fail to utter the Spanish sound of the *d*, if he pronounce it as here explained, by touching the tongue to the lower part of the upper teeth, instead of the roof of the mouth.

13. G, before *a, o, u*, or a consonant, sounds hard, as in the English words *gate, go, goose, grow;* as, *goce, greba, gula;* pronounced *go'-thay, gray'-bah, goo'-lah.* (See 14.)

14. GU, in the syllables *gue* and *gui*, unless there be a diæresis (see 60) over the *u*, is always sounded like the simple *g* hard, as in the English words *guest, guilt;* as, *gueta, guita*, pronounced *gay'-tah, gee'-tah.* When the diæresis is over the *u*, it is not mute, but has its proper sound; as, *agüelo;* pronounced *ah-goo-ail'-o*, or *ah-gway'-lo.*

15. G, before *e* or *i*, has always the guttural sound of the Spanish *j*. (See 17.)

16. H, is never pronounced, but is always a silent letter; as, *hace, higo;* pronounced *ah'-thay, ee'-go.*

17. J, has always a guttural sound, somewhat like the English *h* in *alcohol*, strongly aspirated. But this is not an exact equivalent to the Spanish sound which is produced by breathing strongly (as when one would give additional force to the *h* in *host*), and, by an effort of the palate, making the air gently strike the roof of the mouth.

☞ It is the guttural sound of the *ch* in the German words *nacht* and *nicht*, and of the *ch* in the Scotch words *loch, cloch*, and can therefore be learned from any German or Scotchman. If we bend the tongue so as to form an arch which presses against the roof of the mouth, and produce a

sound by breathing and lowering the tongue, this sound will be that of hard *g*, as it is called in English. If, again, we press the tongue against the roof of the mouth in the same way, and breathe forcibly without changing its position, we produce the exact guttural sound of the Spanish *j*. The learner must keep in mind that the sound of the Spanish *g* before *e*, or *i*, is the same guttural sound.

18. K, is not used in Spanish, being found only in foreign words when it is sounded like the same letter in English.

19. LL, sounds like *li* in *pavilion*, or *lli* in *million;* as, *silla*, *lloro;* pronounced *seel'-yah*, *lyo'-ro.*

☞ As this sound seldom occurs in English, and never at the beginning of words, it requires some practice, for one accustomed to speak English only, to pronounce it readily in such Spanish words as *llaga*, *llana*, *lleno*, *lloro.*

20. Ñ, sounds like *ni* in the English words *union*, *pinion;* as, *noña*, *ñoño;* pronounced *non'-yah*, *nyon'-yo.*

☞ This sound requires considerable practice, before an English learner can pronounce it readily at the beginning of Spanish words, such as *ñoclos*, *ñoño.*

21. Q, which is always immediately followed by *u*, is sounded as in English; as, *quanto*, *quota;* pronounced *kwan'-to*, *kwo'-tah.* (See 31.)

22. QU, in the syllables *que* and *qui*, is sounded like *k* (that is, the *u* is silent); as, *que*, *quiso;* pronounced *kay*, *kee'-so.* If, however, a diæresis is over the *u*, the *u* has its proper Spanish sound; as, *qüesta;* pronounced *koo-ais'-tah*, or *kwais'-tah.* (See 31.)

23. R, is sometimes sounded smooth as in English, and sometimes rough or trilling, as with natives of Ireland. The rough sound is heard in Spanish when *r* begins a word; when doubled; and when it comes after *l*, *n*, or *s;* as, *rabo*, *carro*, *alrota;* pronounced *r-rah'-bo*, *kar-r'-ro*, *al-r-ro'-tah.* In every other position it has the English, smooth sound.

☞ The rough sound of the *r* is made by vibrating the end of the tongue against the roof of the mouth near the fore-teeth; it is seldom heard in English, though very easily acquired. The smooth (common English)

sound is caused by a vibration of the tongue near the root, against the inward part of the palate, near the entrance of the throat.

24. S, is always sounded as in the English words *soon*, *this*; as, *sedes*; pronounced *say'-dace.*

☞ The *s* in Spanish never has the sound of *z* as in English, in the words *has*, *tubs*.

25. T, has nearly the same sound as in English. The only difference between the two languages, in pronouncing the *t*, is, that in English the end of the tongue touches the roof of the mouth, and in Spanish it touches the upper teeth. In Spanish, therefore, *t* has a somewhat softer sound than in English.

26. V, is pronounced as in English, with the sole exception that the upper teeth are not pressed so strongly to the lower lip in enouncing this letter in Spanish.

☞ It is a great mistake, which some grammarians have made, to suppose that the Spanish sounds of *b* and *v* are alike.

27. X, has the sound of the *x* in English, in the word *tax*; as, *exito*, *extremo*, *exacto*; pronounced *aiks-ee'-to*, *aiks-tray'-mo*, *aiks-ac'-to.* (See 32.)

(*a.*) X, in Spanish, had formerly two very different sounds: the one the same as above given; the other a guttural sound, the same exactly as the Spanish *j*. (See 17.) To distinguish these sounds, the vowel following the *x*, when not guttural, had a circumflex accent over it; as, *exâcto*, *exîto*. The guttural sound of the *x* is not at present used, or at least very seldom, in Spanish, as the letters *j* (before any vowel) and *g* (before *e* and *i*) have the same sound, and are now employed instead of the guttural *x*. Thus, the words *México*, *Méjico*, or *Mégico*, would, in Spanish, all be pronounced alike; though *Méjico* is the common spelling. It is of course no longer necessary to put a circumflex accent over the vowel following the *x*, when the letter has the English sound of *ks*, as it now has nearly always in recent Spanish writings.

28. Y, when a consonant, has the same sound in Spanish that it has in English in such words as *young*, *year*.

☞ Y, when it stands alone, used as a copulative (meaning *and*), is pronounced like *ee* in *see*.

29. Z, has always the sound of *th* in the English word *think*, as *zuzo*; pronounced *thoo-tho.* (See 32, *a.*)

Remark.—There will be no difficulty on the part of the learner who is his own instructor, in acquiring the sounds of the Spanish vowels and consonants, except the guttural sound of the *j* (which is also the sound of *g* before *e* or *i*); and this sound can be learned from any German, by hearing him pronounce *ch* in the words *nacht* and *nicht;* from an Irishman by noticing the sound he gives *ch* in the word *oich*, or from a Scotchman, in the word *loch.*

DIFFERENT METHODS OF SPELLING.

30. By the best Spanish writers, *i* is used instead of *y* when this last letter is a vowel, and not at the end of a word. Thus *reyno*, *reyna*, *arraygar*, are now spelled *reino*, *reina*, *arraigar*.

31. Q is now used, by the best writers, only in the syllables *que* and *qui ;* as, *queja*, *quince.* The syllables *qua*, *qüe*, *qüi*, and *quo*, are to be spelled with *c*. Thus *quando*, *qüesto*, *quota*, are now spelled *cuando*, *cuesto*, *cuota.*

32. X is, by many of the best writers, never used before a consonant, its place being supplied by the letter *s*. Thus *extenso*, *experto*, are now often found spelled *estenso*, *esperto.*

(*a.*) In addition to the above remarks, it is proper to state that, by the best writers, *z* is never employed before *e* or *i*, its place being supplied with *c:* thus *cero* and *cinco*, for *zero* and *zinco.* X, too, is, by some few writers, always changed into *cs*, when it comes before a vowel; thus *secso*, for *sexo.* The guttural sound of *x*, as has been already mentioned, is now seldom used; *g* or *j* (see 27, *a*) being substituted for it.

Remark.—It is necessary to remember that the above variations in spelling produce no variations in pronunciation, except only when *x* before a consonant is changed into *s*, in which case *s* has its own regular sound: thus, *estenso* is pronounced *ais-ten'-so.*

A very little attention to the above directions will remove every difficulty which might otherwise occur in reading Spanish authors who do not adopt the same method of spelling. Thus, if the learner meet with such words as *celo*, *jéneros*, *rejistro*, *cuando*, *jabon*, *esceso*, *ecsactor*, *reina*, *buitre*, etc., and can not find them in his dictionary, he must look for them under the other form: *zelo*, *géneros*, *registro*, *quando*, *xabon*, *exceso*, *exactor*, *reyna*, *buytre.*

SOUND OF DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS.

33. The diphthongs and triphthongs in Spanish never contain any vowel sound different from those we have already given. When two or three vowels come together, they may be pronounced by a single effort or emission of the voice; but each vowel in Spanish continues to retain always its own particular sound, though the sounds glide into each other by being pronounced in the time of a single vowel. In the word *rejoice*, in English, the diphthong *oi* contains the sound of each of the letters (*o* like *o* in *not*, and *i* like *i* in *miss*), yet, these being pronounced rapidly and with a single impulse of voice, the two vowel sounds glide into each other. It is thus that the Spanish diphthongs and triphthongs are sounded. Two vowels are never mingled into one and made to represent a sound foreign to each of them, as *ou* in the English word *found;* or a sound in which only one is heard, as *oa* in *boat.* The diphthong *ua* in the English word *suavity*, retains the sound of both vowels, being pronounced as if written *sooa-vi-ty.* The learner can judge from this example and the last syllable of the word *rejoice*, what is meant by each vowel retaining its own particular sound in diphthongs and triphthongs, though such a combination forms, of course, but one syllable. Thus in the Spanish word *causa*, the letters *cau* compose but one syllable, and the diphthong *au* is pronounced like *a* in *bar* and *u* in *rude* (the regular Spanish sounds of *a* and *u*); and being uttered quickly, by a single impulse of the voice, the sound of *au* is similar to that of *ow* in the English word *how*, though not exactly the same.

Remark.—In order that the learner who has no instructor to teach him the sounds of the Spanish diphthongs, may not fail to acquire the right pronunciation, we again state that *all the vowels of a diphthong or triphthong, in Spanish, must be pronounced with the regular sound of each, without any perceptible space between the different sounds which*

compose such diphthong or triphthong. Thus, in the diphthong of *ea*, the learner has already been taught that the sound of *e* is like that of *e* in the English word *they*, and the sound of *a*, like *a* in *are;* all, therefore, that he has to do to form the diphthongal sound, is to unite these two sounds into one breathing or emission of voice. This he can learn to do by pronouncing quickly the words *they-are* so as to form only one syllable, and the *ey-a* will be the exact sound of the Spanish diphthong *ea*. The letters *ai* or *ay* are to be pronounced together, as *a* in *far* and *e* in *me;* that is, as *ay* in *bay* would sound if the *a* had the sound of *a* in *bar*, and the *y* the sound of *y* in *toy* (not the mute *y* as in *hay*). And so with all the diphthongs and triphthongs.

LIST OF DIPHTHONGS.

34. *ái*, or *ay*, has the sound of *a* in *bar*, and *ee* in *eel:* *a-i.*
35. *áu* " " *a* in *bar*, and *oo* in *mood:* *a-u.*
36. *ea* " " *e* in *they*, and *a* in *bar:* *e-a.*
37. *éi*, or *ey* " " *e* in *they*, and *ee* in *eel:* *e-i.*
38. *eo* " " *e* in *they*, and *o* in *go:* *e-o.*
39. *éu* " " *e* in *they*, and *oo* in *mood:* *e-u.*
40. *ia* " " *e* in *he*, and *a* in *bar:* *i-a.*
41. *ié* " " *e* in *he*, and *e* in *they:* *i-e.*
42. *ío* " " *e* in *he*, and *o* in *go:* *i-o.*
43. *íu* " " *e* in *he*, and *oo* in *mood:* *i-u.*
44. *oe* " " *o* in *go*, and *e* in *they:* *o-e.*
45. *ói*, or *oy* " " *o* in *go*, and *ee* in *eel:* *o-i.*
46. *ua* " " *oo* in *mood*, and *a* in *bar:* *u-a.*
47. *ué* " " *oo* in *mood*, and *e* in *they:* *u-e.*
48. *ui*, or *uy* " " *oo* in *mood*, and *ee* in *eel:* *u-i.*
49. *uo* " " *oo* in *mood*, and *o* in *go:* *u-o.*

TRIPHTHONGS.

50. *iai* has the sonnd of *ee* in *eel*, *a* in *bar*, and *e* in *he:* *i-a-i.*
51. *iei* " " *ee* in *eel*, *e* in *they*, and *e* in *he:* *i-e-i.*
52. *uai* " " *oo* in *mood*, *a* in *bar*, and *e* in *he:* *u-a-i.*
53. *uéi*, or *uey* " *oo* in *mood*, *e* in *they*, and *e* in *he:* *u-e-i.*

Remark.—Some of the diphthongs ending in *i*, will be found in some Spanish writings ending in *y*, as *reina*, *reyna;* *buitre*, *buytre.* The pronunciation in both cases is the same, and we have not increased the list by distinguishing those ending in *i* from those ending in *y*.

☞ Two vowels, when they come together, do not always form one syllable (a diphthong). Thus the word *idéa*, in Spanish and English, forms three syllables. In Spanish it is pronounced *ee-dáy-ah.*

SYLLABICATION.

54. The rules of Spanish syllabication are very simple. They are the following:

(*a.*) When a consonant comes between two vowels, it is articulated with the vowel which comes after it; as *fó-so*, *á-ño*, *má-yo*, *hu-má-no*, *si-llón*; except *x*; as, *ex-ém-plo.*

(*b.*) When two consonants come between two vowels, the former is spelled with the preceding vowel, and the latter with the succeeding vowel; as, *por-tál*, *cuér-po*, *és-te*, *in-viér-no.* This rule is subject to the following exception:

(*c.*) If the first of two consonants coming between two vowels be *f*, or any one of the mutes (see 2), and the second *l* or *r*, then both consonants are joined to the vowel by which they are succeeded; as, *sí-glo*, *sué-gro*, *co-bre*, *vi-drié-ro.*

(*d.*) When two vowels of the same name come together, or two which do not form a diphthong, they are to be divided; as, *le-ér*, *co-or-di-nár*, *ca-nó-a.*

(*e.*) Compound words are to be divided into their derivatives; as, *pre-po-nér*, *ad-jún-to*, *con-flíc-to.*

(*f.*) When any one of the letters *b*, *l*, *m*, *n*, or *r*, is followed by *s* and another consonant, or when *s* is preceded by any consonant, and succeeded by one or more, in compound words, the *s* is to be connected with the consonant which comes before it; as, *Cons-tán-za*, *cons-tre-nír*, *ins-pi-rár.*

(*g.*) In Spanish there are as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs; as, *quin-ce*, *nor-te*, *pa-rien-te.*

☞ In English, the word *quince* forms only one syllable; in Spanish, it is pronounced *keen'-thay.* *Hom-bre* is pronounced *om'-brey*, and not *om-bur*, as it would be in English. Every letter in Spanish is pronounced except the *h*, and the *u* in the syllables *gue*, *gui*, and *que*, *qui* (see 14 and 22). There are no silent vowels or consonants, as in the English words *thumb*, *throne*, *psalm.*

ACCENT.

55. In Spanish, the voice never rests or prolongs itself on any other letter of a syllable than a vowel. When we speak of an *accented syllable*, we always mean thereby the *vowel-sound of that syllable.* In the case of diphthongs and triphthongs, when in accented syllables, the accent or stress of voice is generally placed on that vowel which we have marked in the list of diphthongs and triphthongs. Thus, *tie-ne*, having the accent on the first syllable, has the stress of the voice on the *e* of the diphthong, though the accent is not written over the vowel.

☞ In words ending in *cion*, the accent is on the *o* and not on the *i* of the diphthong, as marked in the list; as, *re-sur-rec-ción.*

56. The rules of Spanish accentuation are few and simple, and as follows:

(*a.*) Words that end in a consonant are accented on the last syllable, without any marked accent over it; as, *caliz*, cup; *capaz*, able; *virtud*, virtue; *jardin*, garden; *saber*, to know; *comer*, to eat; *amor*, to love; *rigor*, rigor; *facilidad*, facility. These are accented as if written *ca-líz*, *vir-túd*, *co-mér*, *fa-ci-li-dád*, etc.

(*b.*) Words that end in a vowel are accented on the syllable next to the last, without any marked accent over it; as, *rastro*, track; *hoja*, leaf; *buitre*, vulture; *temperamento*, temperature; *ente*, being; accented as if written *rás-tro*, *búi-tre*, *tem-pe-ra-mén-to*, *én-te*, etc.

Remark.—Words that end in two vowels, whether their vowels form a diphthong or two separate syllables, come under the above rule; as, *estudio*, study; *odio*, hatred; *opulencia*, opulence; *canoa*, canoe; *idea*, idea; accented as if written *ó-dio*, *o-pu-lén-cia*, *ca-nó-a*, *i-dé-a.*

(*c.*) Words that end in a consonant and are accented on any other syllable than the last, or that end in a vowel (or diphthong), and are accented on any other than the syllable next to the last, have the accent marked to show the exception from the general rules (*a* and *b* above); as, *cárcel*,

prison; *carácter*, character; *viérnes*, Friday; *vírgen*, virgin; or *café*, coffee; *lástima*, pity; *sólido*, solid: *matemático*, mathematician; *claúsula*, clause; accented on the syllable marked.

Remark.—Words that end in two vowels, which are commonly known as diphthongs, usually have the accent marked if it falls on one of these vowels; as, *fantasía*, *poesía*, *señorío*, *minué*. Words which end with *y* have the accent on the last syllable, without being marked.

☞ In compound words there are a few exceptions to the above general rules. In adverbs of quality or manner ending in *mente*, some follow the regular rule (56, *b*), and others retain the accent on the first part of the word, on the same syllable on which it would be if *mente* were not affixed; as, *su-cin-ta-mén-te*, succinctly; *li-be-ral-mén-te*, liberally; *bastán-te-men-te*, sufficiently; *ciér-ta-men-te*, certainly.

(*d.*) The plurals of words retain the accent on the same syllable (whether marked or not) as in the singular; as, *jardin*, *jardines*; *caliz*, *calices*; *vírgen*, *vírgenes*; *claúsula*, *claúsulas*. There are two exceptions to this remark, *carácter* and *régimen*; their plurals being accented *caractéres* and *regímenes*.

57. The above rules are applicable to all parts of speech except the persons of verbs; these are accented according to the following rules:

(*a.*) The persons of verbs, whether they end in a consonant or a vowel, whether they are singular or plural, or to whatever mood or tense they belong, are accented on the syllable next to the last, without being marked; as, *hablo*, I speak; *beben*, they drink; *hiciera*, he would make. Infinitives, having no person, are not included in this rule, but are always accented on the last syllable. (See 56, *a.*)

b.) In the case of the persons of verbs, whenever the accent does not fall on the syllable next to the last (as mentioned in the preceding rule), it is marked; as, *está*, he is; *hablaré*, I shall speak; *hablarán*, they shall speak; *amé*, I loved; *hablábamos*, we were speaking; *hablaríamos*, we would speak. The only exception to this rule is the second person plural of the imperative mood, and words

ending in *ay* or *oy*, which are always accented on the last syllable, without the accent in general being marked; as, *hablad*, speak ye; *haced*, make ye; *estoy*, I am. Some writers, however, place the accent over the last syllable, as, *hablád*, *hacéd*.

58. The accent is by many writers marked on certain monosyllables, to distinguish them from others of similar orthography and pronunciation but of different meaning; as, *el*, the, and *él*, he; *se*, himself, and *sé*, I know, and *sé*, be thou; *si*, if, and *sí*, to himself. The letters *á*, to; *é*, and; *ó*, or; *ú*, or; are also generally used with a marked accent, though some writers omit it.

☞ Throughout this work, every word which does not come under the three general rules of accentuation (see 56, *a*; 56, *b*; and 57, *a*), will have the accent marked over the vowel upon which the stress of voice is to be laid. The learner must therefore keep in mind that every word which has not a marked accent over some vowel in it, is to be accented in pronouncing it, if it end in a consonant, on the last syllable; if it end in a vowel, on the syllable next the last. If the word be a verb, it is to be accented on the syllable next to the last, whether it end in a consonant or a vowel, except when it has a written accent over it, is in the infinitive mood, or in the second person plural of the imperative, or ends in *y*.*

PUNCTUATION.

59. The comma, semicolon, colon, period, etc., are the same, and are employed in the same manner as those in English. The marks of interrogation and exclamation are placed in Spanish both before and after interrogative and ejaculatory phrases or sentences;† as, *¿ Este canapé no es nuevo?* Is not this sofa new? *¡ Que ceguedad!* *¡ Pobre España!* What blindness! Poor Spain!

60. The diæresis ¨ is used over the *u* in the syllables

* The learner will now be able to pronounce the names of the Spanish letters of the alphabet, giving to each letter its true Spanish sound, according to the preceding directions:—*a, be, ce, che, de, e, efe, ge, ache, i, jota, ka, ele, elle, eme, ene, eñe, o, pe, cu, erre, ese, te, u, ve, equis, igriega, zeta.*

† The interrogation or exclamation mark coming first, being inverted.

gue, *gui*, *que* and *qui* (see 31), when the *u* is to be sounded, as *agüero;* and also over the last of two vowels, which usually form a diphthong, to show that they are to be divided into two syllables; as *heroïcidad*, pronounced *e-ro-ee-thee-dád.*

61. The tilde ~ is used over the *n* when this letter has the sound of *ni* in *union;* as, *daño.*

62. The acute accent ´ is placed over vowels, not to alter their sound, but to indicate the syllable on which the stress of voice is laid in pronouncing certain words; as, *órden.*

63. The circumflex accent ˆ was formerly used over a vowel following *x*, when this letter had not its guttural sound; as, *sexô;* and over a vowel following *ch*, when the latter was pronounced as *k;* as, *chîlo.* But the alterations in orthography no longer require this mark.

LESSONS FOR PRONUNCIATION.

Remark.—The learner should thoroughly examine the preceding directions in orthography and orthoëpy, before attempting to read the following lessons. He must not forget to pronounce every letter except *h*,* and also *u*, in certain cases (see 14 and 22). Every vowel especially must be sounded distinctly, even more so than the consonants, if any difference be made. Monosyllables, such as *le*, *me*, *mî*, *sî*, *se*, *que*, are not to be hurried over, like *the*, *to*, *me*, etc., are in English; but they must be pronounced fully and clearly.

Such words as the learner will be most liable to mispronounce, are, in the first of the following reading lessons, followed by the number of the paragraph which will be found to contain the proper directions for their right pronunciation.

I. *Words of one syllable:*

Me (4); mi (5); la (3); no; el; su (7); ha (16); mas (24); qui (22); que (22); yo; cruz (7, 29); luz; cal; un (7); ce (10, 4); bol; fil (5); ci (10, 5); cha (11); por; gran; va (26); muy (48); rey (23, 37); ten (25); voy (45); ved (12); de; los (6); fin (5); mes (24); sin; buey

---

* *Ch*, it must be kept in mind, is in Spanish a single letter. (See 11.)

(53); dé; sé; soy; ser; vez (29); es; en; con; fé; tu; ley; son; té; tres; mil; hay (34); tal; he (16); ir; van; ve; id; dí; ven; pon; haz; doy; hoy; sed.

II. *Words accented on the syllable next to the last:*

Man-to; ma-ña (20); a-ro-ma; ar-ma; tem-plo; jo-ya (17); ta-bla; jun-ta (17, 7); yu-go; su-yo; hi-jo (16, 17); gen-te (15); cor-to; co-sa; ca-lle (19); bol-sa; bo-llo (19); su-je-to; za-pa-to (29); lla-ma (19); la-go; lla-nu-ra; no-ble; sobre;* fa-ti-ga; in-vier-no (41); hue-so (47); do-lo; don-de; don-ce-lla (19); no-che (11); o-bra; cuo-ta (49); len-gua (46); ma-yo; e-le-va-do; fuer-za; pre-sen-ta-do; pe-cho; jó-ven; fér-til; fá-cil; ór-den; ár-bol; es-té-ril; már-gen; vír-gen; es-car-la-ta; ig-no-rán-cia (40); mu-da; mo-zo; ca-ba-lle-ro; ci-vi-li-za-do; en-sor-de-ci-do; cer-ni-mien-to; pun-to; en-e-mi-go; mu-cho; na-tu-ra-lis-ta; bri-lla; mo-men-to; tra-ba-jo; her-ma-no.

III. *Words accented on the last syllable:*

Ver-dad; fru-tal; vul-gar (7); ar-dor; tro-pel; to-tal; ba-jar; ga-chon; si-llon; ho-nor; ja-mon; sa-lud; man-tel; se-ñal; bal-con; ra-zon; mo-ral; qué-ru-bin (22); se-ra-fin; te-me-ri-dad; ne-ce-si-dad; es-cla-vi-tud; mo-de-rar; mag-na-ni-mi-dad; in-ca-paz; vo-lun-tad; me-di-tar; de-bi-li-dad; co-ra-zon; hu-ma-ni-dad; as-pi-rar; ven-cer; va-lor; vir-tud; juz-gar; a-quí (22); ca-fé; ca-na-pé; per-do-na-ré; e-jer-ce-rá; ri-di-cu-li-za-rá; ma-yor; a-sí.

IV. *Words accented on the syllable marked:*

Lás-ti-ma; es-pí-ri-tu; nú-me-ro; cá-ma-ra; úl-ti-mo; in-vá-li-do; ge-ne-ra-lí-si-mo (15); bár-ba-ro; pu-rí-si-ma; gé-ne-ro (15); tér-mi-no; cré-di-to; ma-lé-vo-lo; re-pú-bli-ca; ré-gi-men (15); en-ér-gi-co (15); di-fi-ci-lí-si-ma; me-ta-fí-si-co; ma-te-má-ti-co; fi-ló-so-fo; ló-gi-ca; ri-dí-cu-la; crí-ti-co; a-ná-li-sis; do-més-ti-ca; obs-tá-cu-lo.

---

* *Noble* and *sobre* are pronounced *no-bley*, *so-brey*, and not *no-bul*, *so-bur*, as in English.

☞ We must again remind the learner to give the vowels and consonants their true Spanish sounds, and not those he has been accustomed to give in English words, except in those sounds which are the same in both languages. Thus, *vulgar* in Spanish is pronounced *vool-gár; es, ais; tres, trace; sillon, seel-yón; noña, nón-yah; cizalla, thee-thál-yah.*

V. *All the sounds of Spanish letters:*

☞ We give, in the following few words, all the sounds known in pronouncing Spanish: the learner who is able to pronounce them, will therefore be able to utter every consonant, vowel, diphthongal or triphthongal sound which he will find in the Spanish language:

Gente; ñoño; cholla; dijo; buey; voy; muy; hay; cuota; línea; júlio; reo; ciudad; social; zuzo; yugo; gueta; agüelo; qüesto; sexò; fixa; qui; que; cuanto; héroe; puerto; deuda; causais; variéis; preciáis; santiguáis; bien; rey.

VI. *Lesson for reading:**

El hijo sábio *es* la doctrina del padre: el que *es* burlador, no *oye* cuando le *corrigen.*

El hombre se *saciará* de biénes, fruto de su boca; mas el alma de los prevaricadóres *es* inícua.

Quien *guarda* su boca, *guarda* su alma: mas el que *es* inconsiderado para hablar *sentirá* máles.

Quiere y no *quiere* el perezoso: mas el alma de los laboriósos *será* engrosada.

El justo *detestará* la palabra de mentira; mas el impío *avergüenza*, y *será* avergonzado.

La justícia *guarda* el camino del inocente: mas la impiedad *echa* por tierra al pecador.

Hay quien *parece* rico, no teniendo nada; y *hay* quien *parece* pobre, teniendo múchas riquézas.

El rescate de la vida del hombre *son* sus riquézas; mas el que *es* pobre, no *aguanta* la amenaza.

La luz de los jústos *da* alegría: mas la lámpara de los impíos se *apagará.*

---

* From Proverbs, xiii. 1—13. The verbs are in italics. The plurals have the marked accent.

Entre los sobérbios siempre *hay* contiéndas: mas los que tódas las cósas *hacen* con consejo, se *rigen* por la sabiduría.

La riqueza hecha de prisa se *menoscabará:* mas la que se *recoge* poco á poco con la mano, se *aumentará.*

La esperanza, que se *retarda*, *afflige* al alma: árbol de vida el deséo, que se cumple.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF SPANISH.

Each of the Spanish vowels is invariable in the *quality* of its sound, there being no other variation than that of *quantity*, or length of time required in pronouncing it.

In Spanish, the vowel of that syllable of a word on which the accent falls, is called *long;* the other vowels of the word, *short:* thus in the word *véces*, the former *e* is *long*, as it requires the stress of voice or accent, and the latter *e* is *short*, as it is pronounced more rapidly. In the English words *éssence* and *prêsent*, the first and second *e* of each word have the same sound, but the first being accented, requires more time for pronouncing it; and in Spanish the *e* of the first syllable of these words would be called *long*, and the second *e short.* ☞ The above observations will serve to explain why *e* in Spanish often sounds like *e* in the English word *men;* *i* like *i* in the English word *pin;* and *o* more open, nearly like *u* in *up.*

The sound of *d* (see 12) is so nearly like the English sound of the same letter, that it is hardly worth while for the private learner to make any effort to give any different sound to this letter from that which he has been accustomed to give it. The same may be said of the letters *t* (see 25) and *v* (see 26). All the consonants are pronounced a little more softly in Spanish than in English—so that *b* seems to sound almost like *v;* and *y* (when a consonant) almost like *j*, as this letter is pronounced in English.

☞ In certain provinces of Spain, the *c* before *e* and *i*, and the *z* are sounded like *s* and *z* in English; and in the Spanish States of America (originally colonized from those provinces), the same peculiarity of pronunciation is quite common. In Mexico, the liquid sound of *ll* is, by the great mass of the people, pronounced like the modern French sound of the same liquid: thus, *Saltillo* would be pronounced by a Castilian *Sal-teel'-yo;* by a Mexican, *Sal-tee'-yo.* Pure Castilian, however, requires the *c*, *z*, and *ll* to be sounded as we have directed.

PART II.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF

ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

64. There are in the Spanish language nine different Parts of Speech, viz., the Article, Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

☞ The names of these Parts of Speech in Spanish are *Artículo, Nombre, Adjetivo, Pronombre, Verbo, Advérbio, Preposicion, Conjuncion, Interjeccion.*

65. The Article is placed before a noun to enlarge or limit the extent of its signification; as, *el* hombre, *the* man; *la* muger, *the* woman; *las* casas, *the* houses; *un* hijo, *a* son; *una* hija, *a* daughter.

(*a.*) The Article is generally divided into the *definite* and *indefinite* kinds: the word *the* (and its corresponding words in other languages) being called the definite; and the word *a* or *an* (and its corresponding words in other languages) being called the indefinite.

66. The Noun is the name of a thing; as, *hombre*, man; *muger*, woman; *casa*, house; *Juan*, John; *Lóndres*, London.

(*a.*) Nouns are of two kinds, *common* and *proper*. A common noun is the name of a whole class of objects: as, *árbol*, tree; *perro*, dog. A proper noun is the individual name applied to a particular person or thing; as, *Juan*, John; *Inglaterra*, England.

(*b.*) Nouns have two *numbers*, the *singular* and the *plural*. The singular number denotes but one object; as, *sombrero*, hat. The plural signifies more objects than one; as, *sombreros*, hats.

(*c.*) In Spanish nouns have two *genders*, the *masculine* and the *feminine*. The masculine includes all nouns that belong to the male kind, and all that take the masculine article before them; as, *hombre*, man; *hijo*,

son; *el sombrero*, the hat; *un libro*, a book. The feminine includes all nouns of the female kind, and all that take the feminine article before them; as, *muger*, woman; *hija*, daughter; *la silla*, the chair; *una casaca*, a coat.

☞ The distinctions of gender have, through imitation, been extended to all nouns in Spanish; that is, all nouns are considered either masculine or feminine in gender. Thus, as may be seen above, *libro*, a book, is masculine, and *silla*, a chair, is feminine.

(*d.*) The *cases* of nouns express the different relations of one thing to another. The *nominative* case is the word which is the subject of the verb; as, el *água* hierve, the *water* boils; el *Frances* habla, the *Frenchman* talks. The *objective* case is the word which is the object of an action expressed by a verb, or of a relation expressed by a preposition; as, el muchacho ama la *verdad*, the boy loves the *truth;* nádie está sin *pecado*, nobody is without *sin*.

67. The Adjective is a word that expresses the quality of a noun, or determines its number or signification; as, *buen* hombre, *good* man; *muchos* hombres, *many* men; *dos* duros, *two* dollars.

☞ In Spanish, the adjective takes the gender and number of the noun to which it relates.

68. The Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun to avoid the too frequent repetition of the latter; as, Juan está en casa, *él* está bueno; John is at home, *he* is well.

(*a.*) *Personal* pronouns are used for the names of persons or things; as, *él*, *ella*, *ello*; *he*, *she*, *it*.

☞ There are three persons for nouns and pronouns: the *first* person denoting the person speaking; as, *yo*, *I:* the *second*, the person or thing spoken to; as, *tú*, *thou:* the *third*, the person or thing spoken of; as, *él*, *he*.

(*b.*) *Possessive* pronouns show the possession of the persons or things which they represent. Some relate to one person, others to more than one; as, *mi* libro, *my* book; *nuestra* casa, *our* house.

(*c.*) *Relative* pronouns are those which relate to a preceding noun or pronoun, called the *antecedent;* as, el hombre *que* enseña, the man *who* teaches. Here *hombre* is the *antecedent* to the relative pronoun *que*.

(*d.*) *Interrogative* pronouns are relative pronouns used in asking questions; they have no antecedent, but relate to the answer of the question for their *subsequent;* as, *¿Quien* está allí? Pedro; *Who* is there? Peter. Here *quien* is the interrogative pronoun, and the answer, *Pedro*, the *subsequent*.

(*e.*) *Demonstrative* pronouns are those that point out, in a definite

manner, the persons or things which they represent or to which they belong; as, *este* hombre, *this* man; *aquella* mesa, *that* table.

(*f.*) *Indefinite* pronouns are those that express, in an indefinite or general manner, the persons or things which they represent; as, *algunos* de nosótros, *some* of us.

69. The Verb is a word that expresses an affirmation of the subject; as, el hombre *es* sábio, the man *is* wise; ella *habla*, she *speaks*.

☞ The different kinds of verbs, their moods, tenses, numbers, persons, participles, and gerunds, will be found explained in a subsequent part of this work. (See 135—156.)

70. The Adverb modifies the meaning of a verb, adjective, or other adverb; as, Pedro escribe *bien*, Peter writes well; María es *muy* amable, Mary is *very* amiable; Juan lee *muy bien*, John reads *very well*.

71. The Preposition serves to express the relation of things; as, el hermano *de* Diego, the brother *of* James; viajó *por* España, he traveled *through* Spain.

72. The Conjunction connects words and sentences; as, José *y* María serán felices, *pero* no serán ricos, Joseph *and* Mary will be happy, *but* they will not be rich.

73. The Interjection expresses passion or emotion; as, ¡*O* hombre! *O* man!

74. The *inflection* of a word means the changes which it undergoes to express different numbers, persons, cases, moods, tenses, etc.

75. The inflection of articles, nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *declension;* as, *caballo*, horse; *caballos*, horses.

76. The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation;* as, yo *amo*, I *love;* tú *amas*, thou *lovest;* él *ama*, he *loves*.

77. Of the parts of speech, the article, noun, adjective, pronoun and verb are inflected; and the adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection, not inflected.

78. The participle is not regarded as a distinct part of speech in Spanish, but as belonging to the verb and partaking of the nature of the adjective. It is often inflected like the latter.

OF THE ARTICLE.

79. The definite article, which in English is always *the*, is rendered in Spanish by different words, according to

the gender and number of the nouns before which it is used.

80. Before a noun masculine of the singular number, *el* is used; as,

El hombre, *the man.*	El hijo, *the son.*
El rey, *the king.*	El plato, *the plate.**

81. Before a noun feminine of the singular number, *la* is used; as,

La muger, *the woman.*	La hija, *the daughter.*
La reina, *the queen.*	La cuchara, *the spoon.*

82. Before a noun masculine of the plural number, *los* is used; as,

Los reyes, *the kings.*	Los platos, *the plates.*

83. Before a noun feminine of the plural number, *las* is used; as,

Las reinas, *the queens.*	Las cucharas, *the spoons.*

84. Before an adjective used as a noun of the singular number, *lo* is employed when it has the meaning of *that which is;* as,

Lo bueno, *the good*, or, *that which is good.*	Lo justo, *that which is just.*
Lo pasado, *the past*, or, *that which is past.*	Lo rojo, *the red*, or, *that which is red.*

☞ *Lo* has no plural. It is called the *neuter* article.

85. The Spanish indefinite article corresponding to *a* or *an* in English is *uno* (always contracted into *un*), before a noun masculine; as,

Un médico, *a physician.*	Un sombrero, *a hat.*

86. Before a noun feminine, *una* is used; as,

Una hermana, *a sister.*	Una silla, *a chair.*

(*a.*) When the plural form of *uno* and *una* is used, these words are indefinite pronouns; as, *unos hombres* or *unas mugeres*, some men or some women.

87. The masculine articles *el* and *un* are always used before feminine singular nouns when they begin with *a* or

* In Spanish, all nouns are either masculine or feminine. (See 91.)

ha, accented on the first syllable* (whether the accent is marked or not); as,

El ama, *the mistress.*	El hambre, *the hunger.*
Un arca, *a chest.*	El água, *the water.*

(*a.*) In the plural, such nouns take the regular feminine article; as,

Las arcas, *the chests.*	Las águas, *the waters.*

(*b.*) If an adjective intervene between the article and feminine noun (even though the adjective begin with *a* or *ha* accented), the feminine article is always used; as,

La ancha arca, *the broad chest.*	Una buena ama, *a good mistress.*

Remark.—There are very few feminine nouns in Spanish which begin with *a* or *ha* accented; so that the exceptions to the general use of *la* and *una* (see 87) are very few.

88. When the preposition *á* (to) or *de* (of) comes immediately before the masculine article *el*, a contraction takes place, and both words are united. Thus, instead of *á el* and *de el* (*to the* and *of the*), *al* and *del* are used; as,

Al padre, *to the father.*	Del muchacho, *of the boy.*
Al ama, *to the mistress.*	Del hambre, *of the hunger.*

(*a.*) Before the other articles, *la*, *los*, *las*, *lo*, *un*, and *una*, the prepositions *á* and *de*, as well as the articles, remain unchanged; as,

A' la muger, *to the woman.*	De los hombres, *of the men.*
A' las hermanas, *to the sisters.*	De lo futuro, *of the future.*
De un dia, *of the day.*	De una noche, *of a night.*

(*b.*) *De el* is sometimes used before the surnames of persons; as,

De el César,	*Of the* Cæsar.

89. The Spanish articles should not always be translated into English; and sometimes they are not expressed in Spanish when they would be in English; as,

La humilidad y *la* mansedumbre brillan ménos que *el* orgullo.	Humility and meekness glitter less than pride.
La vida no es un sueño.	Life is not a dream.
Con todos *los* hombres ten paz.	With all men have peace.
El capitan Smith tiene memória.	Captain Smith has *a* memory.
Ella tiene marido.	She has *a* husband.

* Before feminine nouns singular beginning with *a* or *ha*, not accented on the first svllable, this rule does not apply; and, of course, *la* or *una* is used.

90. Sometimes the Spanish definite article should be rendered by the indefinite in English; as,

El paño se pueda comprar á tres duros *la* vara.	The cloth can be bought for three dollars *a* yard.
La harina se vende á seis duros *el* barril.	Flour is sold at six dollars *a* barrel.

☞ The learner must now turn to Part IV., and translate and write the Exercises in Section First.

OF THE NOUN.

Nouns are divided into proper and common, as in English; and to them belong gender, number, person, and case.

GENDER.

91. In Spanish Grammar, every noun is considered as either masculine or feminine, whether it really has any gender or not; thus, *pan*, bread; *sombrero*, hat; *plato*, plate; *papel*, paper; *azúcar*, sugar; are masculine; while *casaca*, coat; *manteca*, butter; *água*, water; *mesa*, table; are feminine.

92. The following are the rules for distinguishing the gender:

(*a.*) Nouns which are the names of males, as well as those which denote the ranks, offices, professions or employments of males, are masculine; as, *hombre*, man; *perro*, dog; *rey*, king; *cura*, rector; *pintor*, painter; *zapatero*, shoemaker.

(*b.*) Nouns which are the names of females, as well as those which denote the ranks, offices, professions or employments of females, are feminine; as, *muger*, woman; *vaca*, cow; *reina*, queen; *costurera*, seamstress; *zapatera*, shoemaker's-wife.

(*c.*) Nouns which end in *a*, *d*, *ion*, *is*, and *ez* (unless comprehended in rule 92, *a*), are feminine; as, *marca*, mark; *locura*, folly; *soledad*, solitude; *religion*, religion; *hipótesis*, hypothesis; *timidez*, timidity. (See 421.)

(*d.*) Nouns which do not end in *a*, *d*, *ion*, *is*, and *ez* (unless comprehended in rule 92, *b*), are masculine; as, *zapato*, shoe; *honor*, honor; *té*, tea; *jabon*, soap. (See 422.)

(*e.*) Nouns used only in the plural are of the gender to which they would belong, from their termination, if they had a singular form. Thus, *calzones*, breeches, is masculine, and *grevas*, greaves, is feminine, because *calzon* and *greva* would be of these respective genders, from their termination. *Lláres*, *fásces*, and *fauces*, are exceptions to this rule, they being feminine.

Remark.—There are some few masculine nouns having feminine endings; and some few feminine nouns which end otherwise than in *a*, *d*, *ion*, *is*, and *ez*. A list of these will be found in the Appendix to Part III.

☞ The gender of the noun can always be distinguished by the article used before it, except in the case of feminine nouns singular, beginning with *a* or *ha*, accented on the first syllable (see 87). These, however, are very few in number.

NUMBER.

93. The plural number is formed from the singular by adding *es* to all nouns ending with a consonant, with the letter *y*, or with any accented vowel; as,

Muger, *woman.*	Mugeres, *women.*
Rey, *king.*	Reyes, *kings.*
Alelí, *gillyflower.*	Alelíes, *gillyflowers.*

94. Nouns ending with a vowel not accented, form their plural by adding *s* to the singular; as,

Villa, *town.*	Villas, *towns.*
Amigo, *friend.*	Amigos, *friends.*

95. There are a few exceptions to the above general rules for the formation of the plural of nouns; they are as follows:

(*a.*) If the noun end with *z*, this letter is changed into *ces* to form the plural; as,

Juez, *judge.*	Jueces, *judges.*

(*b.*) If the noun end with *é* accented, the plural is formed by adding *s*; as,

Puntapié, *kick.*	Puntapiés, *kicks.*

(*c.*) If the noun end with *s* immediately preceded by a

vowel *not accented*, no change takes place to form the plural; as,

Hipótesis, *hypothesis.*	Hipótesis, *hypotheses.*

(*d.*) The following nouns are irregular in the formation of the plural; *sofá*, sofa; *papá*, pope, father; *mamá*. mamma; *dux*, duke; their plurals being *sofás, papás, mamás, duces.*

CASE.

96. In Spanish, nouns have but two cases, the *nominative* and *objective*, the former being the agent or subject of the verb; the latter the object of an action expressed by the verb, or of a relation expressed by a preposition.

97. There is no *possessive* case in Spanish: property or possession is expressed by means of the preposition *de;* as,

El hijo de Juan.	The son of John, *i. e.* John's son.
La casa de la muger.	The house of the woman, *i. e.* the woman's house.
La conciéncia del hombre.	The conscience of the man, *i. e.* the man's conscience.
El libro es de María.	The book is *of* Mary, *i. e.* the book is Mary's.
La pluma es del escribiente.	The pen is of the clerk, *i. e.* the pen is the clerk's.

(*a.*) One noun can not serve as an adjective for another noun, as in English; thus, such phrases as, *the New-York road; a paper hat; an ivory spoon;* are in Spanish to be rendered *el camino de Nueva-York; un sombrero de papel; una cuchara de marfil; i. e. the road of* (*to* or *from*) *New-York; a hat of paper; a spoon of ivory.* In Spanish, the sentence "he went to his brother's," would be fully expressed thus: "*fué á casa de su hermano,*" he went to (the) house of his brother.

☞ The learner must now translate the Exercises in Part IV., Section Second, as there directed.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

98. Adjectives in Spanish have both a singular and a plural form, according as they are used with singular or plural nouns; as,

Grande hombre, *large man.*	Grandes hombres, *large men.*

99. The rules for the formation of the plural of adjectives are the same as those for forming the plural of nouns. (See 93, 94, and 95.)

100. Adjectives which end with *an*, *on*, or *o*, and such as are derived from the names of nations, change not only from the singular to the plural, but also from the masculine to the feminine, to agree with the noun (expressed or understood) to which they belong; as,

Hombre *generoso.*	*Generous* man.
Muger *generosa.*	*Generous* woman.
Olgazan. Olgazana.	*Idle* (man). *Idle* (woman).
Fanfarron. Fanfarrona.	*Bragging* (man). *Bragging* (woman).
Español. Española.	*Spanish* (man). *Spanish* (woman).
Ingles. Inglesa.	*English* (man). *English* (woman).

(*a.*) From the examples just given, it will be seen that adjectives ending with *o*, change *o* into *a* to form the feminine; and that those ending with *an* or *on*, as well as those derived from the names of nations, form their feminine by adding *a* to the masculine.

(*b.*) In forming the plural of adjectives which are modified by gender, the gender must be taken into consideration first, and then the plural ending added; as,

El manso caballo.	The tame horse.
Los mansos caballos.	The tame horses.
La tímida vaca.	The timid cow.
Las tímidas vacas.	The timid cows.
El Ingles. La Inglesa.	The English (man). The English (woman).
Los Ingleses. Las Inglesas.	The English (men). The English (women).

(*c.*) Adjectives in Spanish are generally placed after the nouns which they qualify; though some generally come

before the noun; and some can precede or succeed the noun, according to the taste of the writer or speaker. Thus,

Un hombre *respetable.*	A *respectable* man.
Una felicidad *aparente.*	An *apparent* felicity.
Malas obras, (or) obras *malas.*	*Bad* works.

Remark.—In English, an adjective sometimes is allowed to come after the noun; as when we say "a verb *neuter;*" "a noun *feminine;*" "an account *current;*" "life *eternal.*" But the rule is a far more general one in Spanish.

☞ Some directions for the proper position of adjectives will be given in Part III.

101. Some adjectives and adjective pronouns drop the final *o* in the masculine singular (but not in the plural), when they are placed before the noun, but never when they are placed after it. These are *uno*, a (or one); *alguno*, some; *ninguno*, none; *primero*, first; *postrero*, last; *tercero*, third; *bueno*, good; *malo*, bad; as,

Algun fruto.	Some fruit.
Un buen gobierno.	A good government.
Un buen hombre, (or) un hombre bueno.	A good man.

(*a.*) *Santo*, Saint, when prefixed to the name of a male person, drops its last syllable; as, *San Pablo*, Saint Paul; *San Pedro*, St. Peter. *Ciento*, hundred, when it *immediately* precedes a noun, masculine or feminine, drops its final syllable; as, *cien árboles*, hundred trees; but *ciento y dos árboles*, hundred and two trees. *Grande*, great, large, generally loses its final syllable when the noun to which it is prefixed begins with a consonant; as, *gran poder*, great power. When *grande* does not mean size or magnitude, but good qualities *gran* is used if the noun follow it. Thus, *gran hombre*, means a "great man," and *grande hombre*, a "large man."

102. Adjectives are often used without the noun (the latter being understood); as,

El pobre. La pobre.	The poor (man). The poor (woman).
Los pobres. Las pobres.	The poor (men). The poor (women).
La derecha.*	The right (hand).
Un ignorante.	An ignorant (man).

* *Mano*, "hand" (feminine) is here understood.

☞ The gender can be known by the article which precedes the adjective.

(*a.*) If the adjective refer to something to which we do not apply a gender, the neuter article *lo* is used; as, *lo poco, lo mucho*, the little, the much, or "that which is little," "that which is much." (See 84.)

☞ The learner can now translate the Exercises in Part IV., Section Third.

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

103. When two things are compared, the one is equal, inferior, or superior to the other; hence there are three sorts of comparison; that of *equality*, *inferiority*, and *superiority*. Thus we may say, John is *as happy as* James; John is *less happy than* James; or John is *more happy than* James. These adjectives are all properly in the comparative degree.

104. The *comparative of equality* is formed by placing *tan* (*as, so*) before the adjective, and *como* (*as*) after it; as,

El Judío es *tan rico como* el Frances.	The Jew is *as rich as* the Frenchman.

(*a.*) Sometimes *tan* is omitted, and *como* only used; as,

Juan es *fuerte como* un leon.	John is *strong as* a lion.

(*b.*) *Cual* (*qual*) is sometimes found instead of *como*. *Tan* used before an adjective without *como*, means *so;* as, *tan grande*, so great.

105. The *comparative of inferiority* is formed by placing *ménos* (*less*) before, and *que* (*than*) after the adjective; as,

El Judío es *ménos rico que* el Frances.	The Jew is *less rich* than the Frenchman.

106. The *comparative of superiority* is formed by placing *mas* (*more*) before, and *que* (*than*) after the adjective; as,

Mi madre es *mas rica que* el reina.	My mother is *more rich* (*richer*) *than* the queen.

(*a.*) *Mayor*, greater; *mejor*, better; and *menor*, less, are already in the comparative degree, and do not require *mas* before them; as,

Las reyes son *mayores que* los lores.	The kings are *greater than* the lords.

107. The superlative degree of the adjective expresses

the quality in a *very high* or *very low*, or in the *highest* or *lowest* state: hence there are two sorts of superlatives, the *absolute* and the *relative*. Thus we may say, New York is a *very large* city, or, New York is the *largest city* in America.

108. The *superlative absolute* is formed either by placing *muy* (*very*) before the adjective, or by affixing the letters *ísimo* to the simple form of the adjective; as,

U'til, *useful*.	Muy útil, or utilísimo, *very useful*, or *most useful*.

(*a*.) If the adjective end with a vowel, this vowel is dropped when *ísimo* is affixed; as, *grande*, great; *grandísimo* or *muy grande*, very great; *alto*, high; *altísimo* or *muy alto*.

(*b*.) Adjectives that end with *ble*, *co*, *go*, and *z*, change these letters respectively into *bil*, *qu*, *gu*, and *c*, before the suffix *ísimo;* as, *noble*, noble; *nobilísimo*, very noble; *seco*, dry; *sequísimo*, very dry; *largo*, large; *larguísimo*, very large; *feraz*, fruitful; *feracísimo*, very fruitful; or *muy noble*, *muy seco*, *muy largo*, *muy feraz*.

(*c*.) Most adjectives can have their superlatives formed by *muy* prefixed, or by the ending *ísimo*. There are a few, however, such as those ending with *ial* and *antepenults* (i. e. those accented on the last syllable but two) ending with *co*, *go*, *lo*, which form their superlative absolute always with *muy;* as, *social*, social, *muy social*, and not *socialísimo; magnífico*, magnificent; *muy magnífico*, very magnificent; *pródigo*, prodigal; *muy pródigo*, very prodigal; *gárrulo*, garrulous; *muy gárrulo*, very garrulous. As a general rule, adjectives of many syllables form the superlative absolute by *muy* and not with *ísimo*. The superlative of *mucho*, much, is always *muchísimo*.

109. The superlative relative is formed by placing the definite article before *mas* (*more*) or *ménos* (*less*), and putting these before the adjective; as,

El Judío es *el mas rico* de todos.	The Jew is *the most rich* (*the richest*) of all.
La madre del Frances es *la mas rica* de todas las mugeres.	The mother of the Frenchman is *the most rich* of all the women.
Mis hijas son *las ménos doctas* de todas las doncellas.	My daughters are the *least learned* of all the maidens.

Remark.—Some adjectives have, besides the regular superlative absolute, also an irregular one, derived from some ancient form of the adjective; as, *fidelísimo*, very faithful; *bonísimo*, very good. The regular superlative of these adjectives is *fielísimo* and *buenísimo*, from *fiel*, faith-

ful, and *bueno*, good. The irregular forms in general use are few, and are all to be found in Spanish dictionaries; therefore they offer no impediment to the student.

The cardinal and ordinal numbers will be found in Part III.

☞ The Exercises in Part IV., Section Fourth, must now be translated.

OF THE PRONOUN.

There are six sorts of pronouns: *personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *demonstrative*, and *indefinite*. *Possessive*, *demonstrative*, and *indefinite* pronouns are a species of defining adjectives.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

110. The personal pronouns are *yo*, I; *tú*, thou; *usted*, you; *él*, *ella*, *ello*, he, she, it; *nosótros* (masculine), *nosótras* (feminine), we; *vosótros* (masc.), *vosótros* (fem.), ye; *ustedes*, you; *ellos* (masc.), *ellas* (fem.), they; *se*, himself.

(*a.*) *Nos* is sometimes used in the nominative for *nosotros*, but only when a nation or body of men issue some proclamation or law; as, "we (*nos*) the representatives of Mexico."

(*b.*) *Vos* was anciently used in the nominative for *vosotros*, but it is now used only in addressing the Deity and celestial beings, or persons of very superior rank.

(*c.*) *Usted* is the only word with which persons address and are addressed in ordinary conversation in Spanish. It is a contraction of *vuestra merced* (your worship); and though it is always to be translated by the second person (you) in English, it is of course of the third person, and requires its corresponding possessive pronoun and the verb to which it may be the nominative, to be in the third person. In writing, *usted* is nearly always abbreviated into *v.*, *vm.*, *vmd.*, *vd.*, *V.*, *Vm.*, *VM.*, *Vtra.*, or *Md.*; and the plural (*ustedes*) into *vs.*, *vms.*, *vmds.*, *VV.*, *Vms.*, *Vmds.*;* as, *¿Como está vmd.? ¿Como va su salud?* literally, How is your worship? how goes his health? or as we should render it in English, How *are you?* how *is your* health?

111. The personal pronouns have two forms of the objective case, the *direct* and the *indirect*; the first govern-

---

* These contractions are always pronounced *usted* and *ustedes*, just as in English the contractions *Mr.* and *Messrs.* are pronounced as if written in full.

ed by the verb or the preposition *to*, *understood*, and the second always governed by a preposition before it, *expressed;* as,

First.	Juan *me* dió un libro.	John (to) *me* gave a book.
Second.	Juan vino por *mí*.	John came for *me*.

112. The personal pronouns are declined as exhibited in the annexed paradigms:*

I.

CASE.		FIRST PERSON.	SEC. PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	
				Masculine.	Feminine.
Nomina.	Singular.	*Yo*, I.	*Tú*, thou.	*El*, he.	*Ella*, she.
First Obj.		*me*, me, to me.	*te*, thee, to thee.	*le*, him, to him.	*la*, *le*, her, to her.
Sec. Obj.		*á mí*, to me.	*á tí*, to thee.	*á él*, to him.	*á ella*, to her.
Nomina.	Plural.	*nosotros-as*, we.	*vosotros-as*, ye or you.	*ellos*, they.	*ellas*, they.
First Obj.		*nos*, us, to us.	*os*, you, to you.	*los*, *les*, them, to them.	*las*, *les*, them, to them.
Sec. Obj.		*á nosotros-as*, to us.	*á vosotros-as*, to you.	*á ellos*, to them.	*á ellas*, to them.

II.

CASE.		THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
Nomina.	Singular.	*Ello*, it.	*Vmd.*, your worship, you.	*wanting.*
First Obj.		*lo*, it.	*le*, your worship, to you.	*se*, himself, herself, itself.
Sec. Obj.		*á ello*, to it.	*á vmd.*, to your worship, to you.	*á sí*, to himself, to herself, to itself.
Nomina.	Plural.	*wanting*	*vmds.*, your worships, you.	*wanting.*
First Obj.		*in the*	*les*, your worships, you.	*se*, themselves.
Sec. Obj.		*plural.*	*á vmds.*, to your worships, to you.	*á sí*, to themselves.

113. A pronoun of the first objective case is placed before the verb which governs it, except before infinitives, imperatives, and gerunds; as,

El hombre *me* dijo.	The man said *to me*.
La muger *le* halló.	The woman found *him*.
Los perros *los* siguieron.	The dogs followed *them*.
El médico *les* dijo.	The doctor said *to them*.

* In these paradigms, we have used only the preposition *á* before the indirect or second objective, though any other preposition would require the same case; as, *de él; por ellos; para mí*.

(*a.*) If the sentence begin with a verb, the pronoun is allowed to come after it; in other words, a pronoun of the first-objective case may or may not *begin* a sentence. When the pronoun comes after the verb, it is joined to it, and both form one word; as,

Negó*les* el cielo este gozo.	Denied-*them* heaven this pleasure.*

114. The first-objective case is employed in Spanish, when in English either the verb or the preposition *to*, expressed or understood, governs the personal pronouns; as,

Pablo *me* mandó.	Paul commanded *me*.
La criada *me* trajo un pañuelo.	The maid-servant brought (*to*) *me* a handkerchief.
Juan *te* dió un libro.	John gave (*to*) *thee* a book.
El sastre *nos* vió.	The tailor saw *us*.
Los pastores *nos* hablaron.	The shepherds spoke (*to*) *us*.

(*a.*) When in English the personal pronouns of the *third person* are governed by the verb, in Spanish *le* and *los*, for the masculine, and *la*, *las*, for the feminine, are used; as,

La muger *le* vió.	The woman saw *him*.
El viajante *los* halló.	The traveler found *them*.

(*b.*) When in English the personal pronouns of the *third person* are governed by the preposition *to*, expressed or understood, in Spanish, *le* and *les* are used for both genders; as,

El juez *le* dijo.	The judge said *to-him* (or *to-her*).
Los libreros *les* dieron libros.	The booksellers gave *them* books.

115. A personal pronoun of the second-objective case is placed after a preposition; as,

Cayó temor *sobre él*.	Fear fell *upon him*.
Vino temor sobre todos los vecinos *de ellos*.	Fear came upon all the neighbors *of them*.
El pintor lo hizo *para mí*.	The painter made it *for me*.
Yo aceptaré el favor *de vmd*.	I will accept the favor *of your worship*.†

---

* That is, as it would be properly expressed in English, *heaven denied them this pleasure*.

† That is, *I will accept your favor*.

(*a.*) If in English two objective cases of personal pronouns are in the same sentence, one of them governed by the preposition *to*, understood, and the other by a verb, the one governed by the preposition is placed first; as,

María *me* lo dió.	Mary (to) *me* it gave (or, Mary gave it *to me*).
Pedro *se* la llevó.	Peter (to) *them* her brought (or, brought her *to them*).

(*b.*) If the pronoun be reflective, that is, if the nominative and objective cases each refer to the same person, the reflective pronoun must come before the other, if another be used in the same sentence; as,

El cura *se* me dirigió.	The rector addressed *himself* to me.

(*c.*) When in the second-objective case, any one of the pronouns *mí*, *tí*, *sí*, is preceded by the preposition *con* (*with*), this preposition is prefixed to the pronoun, and the syllable *go* affixed, the whole forming one word; as,

Juan vino *conmigo*.	John came *with-me*.
Ella vino *consigo*.	She came *with-him*.

116. The first-objective case of the personal pronouns comes after *infinitives*, *imperatives*, and *gerunds** of the verb, forming one word with the verb; as,

El muchacho vino por ver*los*.	The lad came to see-*them*.
Traéd*mele*.	Bring-*me-him*, i. e. bring *him to-me*.
Da*nos* dinero.	Give-*us* money.
Hág*ame* vmd.† una casaca.	Make-*me*, your worship, a coat.
Entónces Pedro tomand*ole* aparte, comenzó á reñir*le*.	Then Peter, taking-*him* apart, began to chide-*him*.

(*a.*) When one verb governs another in the infinitive, the objective pronoun may come before the first or after the second verb; as,

El Aleman *la* va á ver, *or*	The German *her* goes to see, *or*,
El Aleman va á ver*la*.	The German goes to see-*her*.

(*b.*) The first or second person plural of the imperative drops its final letter when *nos* or *os* is joined to it; as,

---

* A *gerund* is used in Spanish as the present participle in English; as, *amando*, loving.

† *Vmd.*, though always used in such cases, is not to be rendered in English; thus the above means, *make me a coat.*

Sentámonos, and not *sentámosnos*.	Let-us-seat-ourselves.
Guardáos, and not *guardádos*.	Guard-yourselves.

117. *Ello*, and its objective case *lo*, are properly used for a noun to which we can not assign any gender; thus if we should tell a man "I am ill," and he should reply, "I am sorry for *it*," we perceive that the word *it* can not be considered masculine or feminine, and in such a case in Spanish *lo* (not *le* nor *la*) would be used. Though not strictly correct, the practice is allowed of using *lo* for the masculine *le*, if this pronoun be directly governed by a verb.

Remark.—We will here, once for all, say to the learner that he must not allow himself to become discouraged on account of the apparent difficulty arising from some words in Spanish being spelled alike, and yet having different significations and belonging to different parts of speech; for a little attention on his part will teach him how to distinguish these words. Thus, *el*, *la*, *lo*, *los*, *las*, are used as articles and as personal pronouns, but the article never comes immediately before nor is affixed to the persons of verbs, while the objective pronouns always are thus placed. The *el* as an article is generally followed by an adjective or noun, and can not stand by itself like the pronoun *el*. Many writers use the accent over *él* when a pronoun; but there is no necessity for this, as the sense and position of the word will readily show its office of article or pronoun. The accent will serve to distinguish some words spelled alike, and the student should be careful to notice it; thus, *se*, itself, *sé*, I know, and *sé*, be thou; *esta*, this (feminine), and *está*, is; *de*, of, and *dé*, let him give; *te*, thee, and *té*, tea; *si*, if, and *sí*, himself; *porque*, because, and *porqué*, why; *como*, as, and *cómo*, how; etc.

☞ The learner can now translate the Exercises in Part IV., Section Fifth.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

118. The possessive pronouns are *mio*, my; *tuyo*, thy; *suyo*, his, her, its, or their; *nuestro*, our; *vuestro*, your. They are declined as in the following paradigm:

GENDER.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Singular.	Mio.	Mia.	Tuyo.	Tuya.	Suyo.	Suya.
Plural.	Mios.	Mias.	Tuyos.	Tuyas.	Suyos.	Suyas.

GENDER.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Singular.	Nuestro.	Nuestra.	Vuestro.	Vuestra.
Plural.	Nuestros.	Nuestras.	Vuestros.	Vuestras.

119. The possessive pronouns *mio*, *tuyo*, and *suyo*, with their feminines, drop their last syllable when they precede the noun to which they belong; as,

Mi padre, *mi* madre.	My father, my mother.
Tu hijo, *tu* hija.	Thy son, thy daughter.
Su hermano, *su* hermana.	His brother, his sister.
Mis tios, *mis* tias.	My uncles, my aunts.
Sus caballos.	His (her or their) horses.

(*a.*) If *mio*, *tuyo*, or *suyo* come after the noun to which they belong, the last syllable is retained; as,

¡Padre *mio!* ¡madre *mia!*	My father! my mother!
Este libro es *suyo*.	This book is his (or hers, or theirs).
Esta gallina es *suya*.	This hen is his (or hers, or theirs).
Estos libros son *suyos*.	These books are his (hers, or theirs).

120. The possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and not with the person or thing possessing. Thus *su libro* may mean *his book*, *her book*, or *their book*; *sus libros* may mean *his books*, *her books*, or *their books*. If we are speaking of a woman, and wish to say, "this hen is hers," it would be in Spanish, *esta gallina es suya*; if we wish to say, "this horse is hers," it would be, *este caballo es suyo*; if we wish to say, "these houses are hers," it would be, *estas casas son suyas*; and "these oxen are hers," would be, *estos bueyes son suyos*. Instead of "*hers*," the possessive pronoun in each of these sentences, without any alteration, might be rendered "*his*" if we were speaking of a male person. This is a very important rule, and should be remembered, since it is so unlike the English rule for the agreement of possessive pronouns.

(*a.*) The context will generally show whether *suyo* should be rendered *his*, *her*, or *their*; otherwise, to prevent ambiguity, *de él*, of him; *de ella*, of her; *de ellos*, of them (masculine), *de ellas*, of them (feminine), etc., is added; as,

Este libro es suyo *de él*.	This book is his.
Este libro es suyo *de ella*.	This book is hers.
Estos libros son suyos *de vmd*.	These books are *yours*.
Estos libros son suyos *de ellas*.	These books are theirs (feminine).

121. The absolute possessive pronouns, *mine*, *thine*, *his own*, *her own*, *its own*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, are formed by placing the definite article before the possessive pronouns; thus, *el mio*, *la mia*, *los mios*, *las mias*, mine; *el nuestro*, *la nuestra*, *los nuestros*, *las nuestras*. ours; as,

Su hermano y *el mio*.	His brother and mine.
Tu madre y *la mia*.	Thy mother and mine.
Vuestras hermanas y *las mias*.	Your sisters and mine.
Sus cabellos y *los nuestros*.	His (her or their) horses and ours.

(*a.*) If a verb which indicates possession come before the pronoun, the article (see 120) is omitted; as,

Este hombre es sobrino *mio* y *suyo* de ella.	This man is my nephew and hers.

(*b.*) When in English the preposition *of* comes before the absolute possessive pronoun, as in such phrases as, "a horse *of ours*," "a dog *of mine*," etc., the preposition is not used in Spanish; as,

Un hijo *mio* es capitan.	A son *of* mine (or, one *of* my sons) is captain.

122. Instead of the personal pronouns, the definite article is used in Spanish when any member or part of the human body is described as being acted upon, or as being in a certain state, in such a manner as to make it evident that it refers to the person himself to whom the member or part belongs; as,

El la tomó por *la* mano.	He took her by her (*the*) hand.
Ella levantó *los* ojos.	She raised her (*the*) eyes.
El publicano hería *el* pecho.	The publican was-smiting his (*the*) breast.

(*a.*) If, however, any member or part of the human body, or parts of dress, be described as acting, or the object of an action, and the article alone would not leave it evident to whom such member or part belongs, then (instead of a possessive pronoun) a personal pronoun and the definite article are both used; as,

El *le* tocó *la* mano.	He touched *the* hand *to-him.*
La mano *le* tiembla.	*The* hand *to-him* trembles.
El *te* tomó *las* botas.	He *to-thee* took *the* boots.

☞ In these examples the learner will perceive that in English the possessive pronoun alone would have been used; thus, "*He* touched *his* hand;" "*His* hand trembles;" "He took *thy* boots."

123. It has already been mentioned that in ordinary conversation *vmd.* (*usted*) and *vmds.* (*ustedes*) are used instead of the second person *tu* and *vosotros;* and that *vmd.* being of the third person, requires its possessive pronouns to be of the third person also, though rendered in English by the second person (see 110, *c*); as,

¿Está *vmd.* bueno? ¿como va *su* salud?	Are *you* well? how is *your* health?
¿Está *vmd.* buena? ¿como va *su* salud?	Are *you* well? how is *your* health?
Yo iba á *su* casa para hacer*le* una visita.	I was going to *your* house to make *you* a visit.

☞ These examples, rendered into English literally, would be, "Is your worship well? how is his health?"—"Is your (her) worship well? how is her health?"—"I was going to his (or her) house to make him (or her) a visit."

(*a.*) To prevent ambiguity, *vmd.* or *vmds.* (*your worship* or *your worships*) is often used in addition to the possessive pronoun, or the definite article; as, "yo *le* doy á *vmd.* muchas grácias," "I *to him* give to *your worship* many thanks;" that is, "I give *you* many thanks;" "*sus* or *los* hijos de *vmd.*, señor, son amables;" "*his* or *the* sons of your worship, sir, are amiable," that is, "your sons, sir, are amiable;" "mis hijas y *las suyas de vmd.* son jóvenes," "my daughters and *yours* (*his of your worship*) are young."

☞ The Exercises in Part IV., Section Sixth, must now be translated.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

124. The relative pronouns are *quien*, who; *el cuál*, who, which, that; *que*, who, which, that; *cuyo*, whose, or, of which. They are thus declined:

GENDER.	MAS., FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	MAS., FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Sing'lar.	Quien.	El cual.*	La cual.	Que.	Cuyo.	Cuya.
Plural.	Quienes.	Los cuales.	Las cuales.	Que.	Cuyos.	Cuyas.

* *Lo cual* is sometimes used instead of *el cual.* (See 117.)

(*a.*) *Quien* always relates to persons, and agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; as,

El general es *quien* los vió.	The general is (*he*) *who* saw them.
Las reinas son *quienes* le maldijeron.	The queens are (*they*) *who* reviled him.

(*b.*) When *quien* (or *quienes*) is governed by a verb, it is always preceded by the preposition *á;* as,

La dama *á quien* vmd. teme.	The lady *whom* you fear.

(*c.*) *El cual* and *que*, like the relative pronoun *that* in English, relate both to persons and things, agreeing with their antecedent in gender and number. *El cual* is generally to be used to prevent the repetition of *quien* or *que;* as,

La vaca *que* vió, y de *la cual* habla, es tímida.	The cow *which* he saw, and of *which* he speaks, is timid.

(*d.*) *Cuyo* is the possessive relative pronoun, answering to *whose*, *which*, or *of which*, in English, and agrees with the noun which comes after it; as,

El hombre *cuya* madre es buena.	The man *whose* mother is good.
La casa *cuyos* cuartos son espaciosos.	The house *of which* the rooms are spacious.
El centurion los envió á Joppe, en *cuya* ciudad moraba Simon.	The centurion sent them to Joppa, in *which* city was-dwelling Simon.

125. When the relative pronoun refers to persons, *que* is generally used for *quien*, in the nominative case; but in the objective case, *á quien* (see 124, *b*) or *que* is used (generally the former); as,

El hombre *que* habla.	The man *who* speaks.
Yo *que* hablo.	I *who* speak.
La muger *á quien* Juan vió. / La muger *que* Juan vió.	The woman *whom* John saw.

(*a.*) If a preposition come before *whom*, *quien* is always used in Spanish; as,

El muchacho *para quien* él lo hizo.	The boy *for whom* he did it.
Un hombre *en quien* el rey tiene mucha confianza.	A man *in whom* the king has much confidence.

(*b.*) *What*, when it means *that which*, is, in Spanish, *lo que;* when it means *what thing*, it is *que;* and when used before a noun, *what* or *which* is *que* or *cual;* as,

Lo que á algunos gusta á otros disgusta.	What to some is-pleasant, to others is-disgusting.
El dijo, yo no sé *que*.	He said, I know not *what*.
Yo no sé *que* libros leer; or Yo no sé *cuales* libros leer.	I know not *what* (or *which*) books to read.

(*c.*) *He who*, or *he that*, is in Spanish *el que; she who, la que; they* or *those who, los que* (masculine), *las que* (feminine). There is also the neuter form, *lo que.*

126. In Spanish, a preposition is always placed before the relative pronoun which it governs; as,

La ciudad *en que* yo moro.	The city *in which* I dwell.

☞ We can not say, "the city which I dwell in," in Spanish, for this would be worse grammar than it is in English.

(*a.*) The relative pronoun can never be suppressed in Spanish as in English; thus, "*the man I saw*" would be expressed in full, "*the man* whom *I saw.*"

☞ The Exercises in Part IV., Section Seventh, can be translated.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

127. The interrogative pronouns are the same as the relative, except *cual* is used without being preceded by the article. They are not used in precisely the same manner; for in interrogations, *quién* always means who; *cual*, which; *qué*, what; *cuyo*, whose; as,

¿*Quién** tiene hambre?†	*Who* is hungry?
¿*Quiénes* tienen sed?	*Who* are thirsty?
¿*Cual* de los hijos está allí?	*Which* of the sons is there?
¿*Qué* dijo el médico?	*What* said the doctor?
¿*Qué* sombrero tiene vmd.?	*What* hat have you?
¿*Cuyos* libros son estos?	*Whose* books are these?
¿*De quién* son estos libros?	*Of whom* (or *whose*) are these books?

* *Quién* and *qué*, when interrogative, generally have the marked accent.

† Literally this is, "who has hunger?" In Spanish, in interrogations and exclamations, the interrogation and exclamation marks are placed at the beginning (inverted) as well as at the end of the phrase or sentence.

(*a.*) When the interrogative pronoun is governed by a preposition, the answer to the question must always be preceded by the same preposition; as,

¿De quién son aquellas niños? *De Juan.*	*Whose* are those children? *John's.*
¿Para quién lo hizo? *Para el muger.*	*For whom* did-he-do it? *For the woman.*

(*b.*) When *what* is used in ejaculatory interrogations, as "*what* a fine day!" "*what* a man!" the indefinite article is omitted in Spanish; as,

¡Qué hermosa mañana!	What a fine morning!
¡Qué desgrácia!	What a disgrace!
¡Qué modrego!	What a blockhead!

☞ The Exercises in Part IV., Section Eighth, can now be translated.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

128. The demonstrative pronouns are *este*, this; *ese*, that; *aquel*, that. They are thus declined:

GEND.	MASC.	FEM.	MAS.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Sing.	Este,	Esta, *this.*	Ese,	Esa, *that.*	Aquel,	Aquella, *that.*
Plu.	Estos,	Estas, *these.*	Esos,	Esas, *those.*	Aquellos,	Aquellas, *those.*

(*a.*) There is also, in the singular number of each of these demonstrative pronouns, a neuter form, used when we can not ascribe a gender to it; *esto*, *eso*, *aquello* (see 84). In such a sentence as, "he ought to be honest, for *this* is the duty of every man," it is evident that no gender can properly be applied to the demonstrative *this*, and in such a case *esto* would be used in Spanish.

(*b.*) *Este* is used with what is near at hand; as, *este hombre*, *this* man (here): *ese*, with what is somewhat distant; as, *ese hombre*, *that* man (there): and *aquel*, with what is still more distant; as, *aquel hombre*, *that* man (off there, yonder). When relating to time, *este* is used with time present; *ese*, with the past; and *aquel*, with time still more distant; as, "this (*este*) book which I now have; that (*ese*) book which I had last week; and that (*aquel*) book which I had last summer, are valuable."

(*c.*) *Este* refers to the last mentioned of two things, and *ese* (or *aquel*) to the first; as,

El general y el capitan vinieron; *ese* (or *aquel*) es prudente, *este* es fátuo.	The general and the captain came; *the-former* is prudent, *the-latter* is stupid.

(*d.*) When *este* or *ese* comes before the indefinite pronoun *otro* (other) the former drops its final letter, and the two are joined, forming one word; as, *estotro* or *estótra*, this other; *estotros* or *estotras*, these others; *esotro* or *esotra*, that other; *esotros* or *esotras*, those others.

129. If the objective case of the relative pronoun *quien* (whom) is used in such phrases as *he whom*, *she whom*, *him whom*, etc., *aquel* must come before it; as, *aquel á quien*,* he whom; *aquella á quien*, she whom; *aquellos* or *aquellas á quienes*, they whom; as,

Aquellos contra *quienes* pelearon.	*Those* against *whom* they-fought.

(*a.*) When the relative pronoun of the objective case is not preceded by a preposition, the definite article is generally used instead of *aquel*, and is followed by the relative pronoun *que* (see 125, *c*); as, *el que*, he whom; *la que*, she whom; *los* or *las que*, they whom. Thus it will be perceived that *he whom* may be rendered either *aquel á quien*, or *el que; she whom*, by either *aquella á quien*, or *la que; they whom* or *those whom*, by either *aquellos* or *aquellas á quienes*, or *los* or *las que*. The latter mode is most generally employed.

(*b.*) When the objective case of the personal pronouns *him*, *her*, or *them*, precedes the nominative of the relative *who*, either *aquel* or the definite article may be used; as,

Juan dió pan á *aquella que* tiene hambre; *or*, Juan dió pan á *la que* tiene hambre.	John gave bread to *her who* is hungry.

(*c.*) When in English the demonstrative pronoun *that* is followed by the preposition *of*, and refers to a noun already expressed, the definite article is employed in Spanish; as,

---

* It may be proper to mention again, that *quien* (whom) is never employed in the objective case, even if governed by a verb, without being preceded by a preposition.

Por su prudéncia y por *la del* juez.	Through his prudence and through *that of*-the judge.

☞ The Exercises in Part IV., Section Ninth, can now be translated.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The indefinite pronouns, or more properly, the indefinite adjective pronouns, are *cada*, each; *uno*, one; *todo*, every one, all; *nádie*, nobody; *alguien*, somebody; *ninguno*, none; *alguno*, some; *algo*, something; *nada*, nothing; *otro*, other; *tal*, such; *ámbos*, both; *entrámbos*, both.

130. Of these, *uno*,* *todo*, *ninguno*,* *alguno*,* *otro*, and *tal*, are declined like adjectives, both in the masculine and feminine. *Cada*, *nádie*, *alguien*, *algo*, *nada*, are used only in the singular, and do not change. *Ambos* and *entrambos* are already in the plural, but have their feminine, *ambas* and *entrambas*.

(*a.*) There are also some indefinite relative pronouns, *quienquiera*, *cualquiera*, *cualesquiera*, whoever, whosoever, whichever, whichsoever.

☞ We subjoin a list of these indefinite pronouns, simple and combined, with examples of the manner in which they are employed in Spanish.

131. The following are always used as nouns, that is, are never joined to a noun:

Cada uno, every one. *Cada cual*, each one.	Los cuatro animales, *cada uno* de ellos tenía seis alas. The four animals, *each one* of them had six wings. Todos serán premiados *cada cual* segun sus obras. All will-be rewarded, *each one* according-to his deeds.
Uno otro, each other.	Juan y Diego se aman *uno á otro*. John and James love *each other* (love themselves *one to the-other*).

* The learner must remember (see 101) that *uno*, *alguno*, and *ninguno*, drop the final *o* when they precede a masculine noun.

Unos otros, one another. { Orád los *unos* por los *otros*. / Pray for *one another* (*the some for the others*).

Nádie. { nobody. / no one. } { A' *nádie* ama el avaro. / The miser loves *nobody* (to *nobody* loves the miser).

Alguien. { somebody. / any body. } { ¿ Le ha visto *alguien ?* / Has *any body* seen him ?

Uno y otro. { one and the other. / both. } { *Uno y otro* son amables. / *Both of them* are amiable.

Algo. { something. / anything. } { Yo tengo *algo* que comer. / I have *something* which to eat.

Nada. { nothing. / not anything. } { *Nada* tengo con que mantenerme. / I have *nothing* with which to maintain myself.

Todo lo que. { all that which. / everything. / whatever. } { Esta echó *todo lo que* tenía. / This-woman cast-in *all that* (or *everything*) she-had.

Quienquiera que. / *Cualquiera que.* { whoever. / whosoever. / whichever. } { *Quienquiera que* el sea. / *Whoever* he may-be. / *Cualquiera que* se humillare. / *Whoever* may-humble himself.

132. The following are never used alone, but always with a noun:

Cada. { each. / every. } { *Cada* vez. *Each* time. / *Cada* palabra. *Every* word.

Cualquier. / *Cualesquier.* { whatever. } { *Cualquier* criatura. *Whatever* creature. / *Cualesquier* criaturas. *Whatever* creatures.

133. These following may be used alone as nouns, or joined to nouns as adjectives:

Todo. / *Todos.* { everything. / all. / everybody. / every. } { En *todo* dad gracias. *Todos* tienen temor. / In *everything* give thanks. *All* were afraid. / *Todo* árbol. *Todos* los hombres. / *Every* tree. *All* men.

Alguno. { any, anybody. / some, somebody. / some one. } { Tengo libros: ¿ tiene vmd. *algunos?* / I-have books: have you *any?* / *Alguno* me ha tocado. / *Somebody* has touched me. / *Algun* fruto. *Algunas* cosas. / *Some* fruit. *Some* things. / Creyeron *algunos* de ellos. / *Some* of them believed.

Uno. { one. / a person. } { *Un* dia. *Una* de las hermanas. / *One* day. *One* of the sisters. / No sabe *uno* que hacer. / *One* (or a *person*) knows not what to do.

Unos. { some. / certain ones. } — *Unos* hombres. / *Some certain* men. / ¿Dió libros á algunos de estos niños? Dió libros á *unos*. / Gave-he books to any of these children? He-gave books to *some*.

Ninguno. { nobody. / not any one. / none, not any. / no one. } — *Ninguno* le vió. A *ninguno* dió libros. / *Nobody* saw him. To *no-one* gave-he books. / *Ninguna* persona. *Ningunos* de los hijos. / *No* person. *None* of the sons.

Otro. / *Otros.* { other, another. / others, other. } — Una cosa es prometer y *otro* cumplir. / One thing it-is to promise and *another* to perform. / Al fin las *otras* mugeres vinieron. / At length the *other* women came.

Tal, such. { De los *tales* es el estado. En *tal* tiempo. / Of *such* is the state. In *such* a time.

Ambos. / *Entrambos.* { both. } — *Ambos* me gustan bien. *Ambos* sexos. / *Both* please me well. *Both* sexes. / *Entrambos* caen en el hoyo. / *Both* fall into the pit.

134. *Alguien* and *nadie* can not be followed by the preposition *de*, of; but *alguno* and *ninguno* must be used; as,

Alguno de los muchachos.	*Some-one* of the boys.
Ninguna de las hijas.	*No-one* of the daughters.

(*a.*) *Alguno* is never placed after the noun, except in negative sentences, and then it has the same meaning as *ninguno* placed before the noun; thus we can say, *Yo no hallo en él ninguno causa;* or, *Yo no hallo en él causa alguna*, I find no fault* in him.

(*b.*) *Algo* and *nada* can admit of an adjective joined to them, or the preposition *de* may come between; thus, it can be said, *algo nuevo*, or, *algo de nuevo*, something new; *nada de natural*, nothing natural.

(*c.*) When by *another's* we mean the opposite of *one's own*, it is expressed in Spanish, not by *otro*, but by *ageno* (or *ajeno*); as, *lo ageno*, that which is another's, or that which is the property of another; *los bienes agenos*, another's goods or wealth.

☞ The Exercises in Part IV., Section Tenth, may now be translated.

---

* Or rather, "cause of accusation" in him. In Spanish, two negatives strengthen the negation.

OF THE VERB.

Verbs are classed, as in English, into active, passive, and neuter; active-transitive, active-intransitive, reflective, regular, irregular, impersonal, and defective. They are also varied by person and number, mood and tense.

135. An *active* verb expresses an action affirmed of the agent or nominative; as

Cláudio *escribe.*	Claudius *writes.*

(*a.*) When the action is affirmed of the agent as being transmitted to a direct object, the verb is called *active-transitive;* as,

Cláudio *escribe* una carta.	Claudius *writes* a letter.

(*b.*) When the verb expresses action, but has no direct object, it is called *active-intransitive;* as,

El *esclamó.*	He *exclaimed.*
El mocito *saltó.*	The lad *jumped.*

136. A *reflective* verb is one which affirms that the action is conveyed to the same person or thing which is the agent; as,

Tu *te ceñes.*	Thou *girdest thyself.*
Nosótros *nos alabamos.*	We *commend ourselves.*
El *se tiene* por hombre grande.	He *holds himself* for a great man.

137. A *passive* verb affirms that an action has been received or suffered by the agent; as,

Ellos *fueron postrados.*	They *were overthrown.*

138. A *neuter* verb affirms merely the condition or state of existence of its agent, without any reference to a direct object; as,

El hombre *existe.*	The man *exists.*
Yo *vivo.*	I *live.*

139. Verbs have three persons and two numbers, as in English; that is, they vary their endings to agree with the person and number of their nominative; as,

Singular.	First Person.	*Yo hablo*, I speak.	Plural.	*Nosotros hablamos*, we speak.
	Second Person.	*Tú hablas*, thou speakest.		*Vosotros hablais*, you speak.
	Third Person.	*El habla*, he speaks.		*Ellos hablan*, they speak.

(*a.*) In Spanish, it is not necessary to use the personal pronouns of the nominative case with the verb (unless for the sake of emphasis or perspicuity), as the ending of the verb indicates the person of its nominative. Thus, *hablo* means I-speak; *hablas*, thou-speakest; *habla*, he-speaks or she-speaks; *hablamos*, we-speak, etc.

MOODS.

Mood is the form which the verb takes to show in what manner the action or being is represented. In Spanish there are four moods; the infinitive, the indicative, the imperative, and the subjunctive.

140. The *infinitive* mood expresses action or being in an indefinite manner, without reference to person or time; as,

Hablar, to speak.	*Comer*, to eat.

141. The *indicative* mood represents the affirmation in a positive manner; as,

Hablamos, we-speak.	*Comeré*, I-shall-eat.

142. The *imperative* mood expresses an order, entreaty, or command; as,

Habládd, speak ye.	*Coman*, let-them-eat, *or*, may-they-eat.

143. The *subjunctive* mood represents the affirmation in a conditional manner; as,

Aunque *hablen*, though they-may-speak.	*Yo comería*, I would-eat.

TENSES.

Tense is the form which the verb takes to show the time of the action, being, or passion which is affirmed. There are properly three tenses, the *past*, the *present*, and the *future*. These are subdivided into eight tenses, one for the present, five for the past, and two for the future: the present; imperfect, perfect-definite, perfect-indefinite, the

first-pluperfect, second-pluperfect; the first-future, and future-perfect or second-future.

144. The *present* tense represents whatever is affirmed as taking place at the present time; as,

Hablan, they-speak.	*Están comiendo*, they-are eating.

145. The *imperfect* tense represents as relatively present something which is affirmed as past, though, for all we know to the contrary, not yet completed; as,

Hablaban cuando los vió.	They *were-speaking* when he-saw them.

146. The *perfect-definite* tense represents what is affirmed as being completely past and finished; as,

Les *habló* ayer.	He-*spoke* to them yesterday.

147. The *perfect-indefinite* tense represents what is affirmed as having taken place during a time not entirely elapsed; as,

Les *he hablado* hoy.	I-*have spoken* to them to-day.

148. The *first-pluperfect* tense expresses what is past and was finished before another action, also past, took place: that is, an event which occurred prior to some other past event; as,

Había hablado cuando llegó.	I-*had spoken* when he-arrived.

149. The *second-pluperfect* expresses that what is affirmed had taken place immediately before a time which is past; and is always employed after adverbs of time; as,

Cuando les *hubo hablado*, se marcharon.	When he-*had spoken* to-them, they-went away.

150. The *first-future* tense refers to some action or event which is yet to take place; as,

Hablará esta noche.	He-*will-speak* to-night.

151. The *second-future* or *future-perfect* tense refers to some future action or event that will have taken place at or before some certain future time; as,

Habré acabado á las ocho.	I-*shall-have finished* at eight o'clock.

PARTICIPLES AND GERUNDS.

152. Verbs in Spanish have two participles, the *present* and the *past*. There are, however, but few *present* participles in use, and these few are, almost without exception, employed only as adjectives or nouns; as, *semejante*, similar; *obediente*, obedient; *viajante*, traveler. The ending of the present participle of verbs that have their infinitive in *ar*, is *ante;* of those that have their infinitive in *er* or *ir*, it is *iente*.

153. The *past-participle* denotes action or being perfected or finished, and when derived from a regular verb, is generally formed by changing the final letters of the infinitive *ar* into *ado*, and *er* or *ir* into *ido;* as,

Hablado, spoken. | *Comido*, eaten.

154. The *gerund* in Spanish is equivalent to the present participle in English; and is formed by changing the final letters of the infinitive *ar* into *ando*, and *er* and *ir* into *iendo;* as,

Hablando, speaking. | *Comiendo*, eating.

CONJUGATION.

155. In Spanish, the infinitive mood of all verbs ends in *ar*, *er*, or *ir*, and these terminations serve to distinguish the three conjugations; the *first* conjugation comprehending all verbs ending in *ar;* the *second*, those ending in *er;* and the *third*, those ending in *ir*.

(*a.*) *Regular* verbs are those which are conjugated through all the moods and tenses without deviating in their orthography from the corresponding orthography of the model verbs.

(*b.*) *Irregular* verbs are those which do not conform in every respect to the regular standard or model verbs.

(*c.*) *Auxiliary* or *helping* verbs are those by the aid of which others are conjugated in the compound tenses and in the passive voice. The auxiliary verbs are *haber*, to have; *ser*, to be; and *estar*, to be. Those tenses of the active voice in which an auxiliary verb is used, are called *compound* tenses.

Remark.—The learner must keep in mind the rules for accenting the verb in all its varieties of termination (see 57, *a*, and *b*); and he will thus know that all persons of the verbs (of whatever mood or tense) which have no accent over some syllable are to be accented on the syllable next to the last.* In some of the first conjugations following, the accent is placed over all the words, in order to aid the learner in pronouncing them.

☞ As the auxiliary verbs are required to form the compound tenses of every other verb, we first give the conjugation of them.

156. Conjugation of the auxiliary verb, *haber.*

SIMPLE TENSES.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	COMPOUND TENSES.
	Habér, *To have.*	
PAST-PARTICIPLE.		PAST-INFINITIVE.
Habído,	*Had.*	Habér habído, *To have had.*
GERUND OF THE PRESENT.		GERUND OF THE PAST.
Habiéndo,	*Having.*	Habiéndo habído, *Having had.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT.		PERFECT-INDEFINITE.	
Yo he,	*I have.*	Yo he habído,	*I have had.*
Tú has,	*Thou hast.*	Tú has habído,	*Thou hast had.*
El ha,	*He has.*	El ha habído,	*He has had.*
Nosótros hémos,	*We have.*	Nosótros hémos habído,	*We have had.*
Vosótros habéis,	*Ye have.*	Vosótros habéis habído,	*Ye have had.*
Ellos han,	*They have.*	Ellos han habído,	*They have had.*
IMPERFECT.		FIRST-PLUPERFECT.	
Yo había,	*I had.*	Yo había habído,	*I had had.*
Tú habías,	*Thou hadst.*	Tú habías habído,	*Thou hadst had.*
El había,	*He had.*	El había habído,	*He had had.*
Nosótros habíamos,	*We had.*	Nosótros habíamos habído,	*We had had.*
Vosótros habíais,	*Ye had.*	Vosótros habíais habído,	*Ye had had.*
Ellos habían,	*They had.*	Ellos habían habído,	*They had had.*

* Except the second person plural of the imperative mood.

INDICATIVE MOOD—*Continued.*			
PERFECT-DEFINITE.		SECOND-PLUPERFECT.	
Yo húbe,	*I had.*	Yo húbe habído,	*I had had.*
Tú hubíste,	*Thou hadst.*	Tú hubíste habído,	*Thou hadst had.*
El húbo,	*He had.*	El húbo habído,	*He had had.*
Nosótros hubímos,	*We had.*	Nosótros hubímos habído,	*We had had.*
Vosótros hubísteis,	*You had.*	Vosótros hubísteis habído,	*You had had.*
Ellos hubiéron,	*They had.*	Ellos hubiéron habído,	*They had had.*
FIRST-FUTURE.		SECOND-FUTURE.	
Yo habré,	*I shall* or *will have.*	Yo habré habído,	*I shall* or *will have had.*
Tú habrás,	*Thou shalt* or *wilt have.*	Tú habrás habído,	*Thou shalt* or *will have had.*
El habrá,	*He shall* or *will have.*	El habrá habído,	*He shall* or *will have had.*
Nosótros habrémos,	*We shall* or *will have.*	Nosótros habrémos habído,	*We shall* or *will have had.*
Vosótros habréis,	*You shall* or *will have.*	Vosótros habréis habído,	*You shall* or *will have had.*
Ellos habrán,	*They shall* or *will have.*	Ellos habrán habído,	*They shall* or *will have had.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
Háya yo,*	*Let me have,* or, *may I have.*
Ha tú,	*Have thou.*
Háya él,	*Let him have,* or, *may he have.*
Háyamos nosótros,	*Let us have,* or, *may we have.*
Habéd vosótros,	*Have you.*
Háyan ellos,	*Let them have,* or, *may they have.*

* The first person singular of the imperative mood is not in use in Spanish, and is inserted here only to exhibit the full form of the conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT.		PERFECT-INDEFINITE.	
Yo háya,	*I may have.*	Yo háya habído,	*I may have had.*
Tú háyas,	*Thou mayest have*	Tú háyas habído,	*Thou mayest have had.*
El háya,	*He may have.*	El háya habído,	*He may have had.*
Nosótros hayamos,	*We may have.*	Nosótros hayamos habído,	*We may have had.*
Vosótros háyais,	*You may have.*	Vosótros háyais habído,	*You may have had.*
Ellos háyan,	*They may have.*	Ellos háyan habído,	*They may have had.*
IMPERFECT.*		PLUPERFECT.	
Yo hubiéra, habría, *or* hubiése,	*I would, should,* or *might have.*	Yo hubiéra, habría, *or* hubiése habído,	*I would, should,* or *might have had.*
Tú hubiéras, habrías, *or* hubiéses,	*Thou wouldst, shouldst,* or *mightst have.*	Tu hubiéras, habrías, *or* hubiéses habído,	*Thou wouldst, shouldst,* or *mightst have had.*
El hubiéra, habría, *or* hubiése,	*He would, should,* or *might have.*	El hubiéra, habría, *or* hubiése habído,	*He would, should,* or *might have had.*
Nosótros hubiéramos, habríamos, *or* hubiésemos,	*We would, should,* or *might have.*	Nosótros hubiéramos, habríamos, *or* hubiésémos habído,	*We would, should,* or *might have had.*
Vosótros hubiérais, habríais, *or* hubiéseis,	*You would, should,* or *might have.*	Vosótros hubiérais, habríais, *or* hubiéseis habído,	*You would, should,* or *might have had.*
Ellos hubiéran, habrían, *or* hubiésen,	*They would, should,* or *might, have.*	Ellos hubiéran, habrían, *or* hubiésen habído,	*They would, should,* or *might have had.*
FIRST-FUTURE.		SECOND-FUTURE.	
Si yo hubiére,	*If I should have.*	Si yo hubiére habído,	*If I should have had.*
Si tú hubiéres,	*If thou shouldst have.*	Si tú hubiéres habído,	*If thou shouldst have had.*

* The three forms of the imperfect subjunctive (ending in *ra*, *ría*, and *se*), will be explained in Part III. (See 313—317.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—*Continued.*	
FIRST-FUTURE.	SECOND-FUTURE.
Si él hubiére, *If he should have.*	Si él hubiére habído, *If he should have had.*
Si nosótros hubiéremos, *If we should have.*	Si nosótros hubiéremos habído, *If we should have had.*
Si vosótros hubiéreis, *If you should have.*	Si vosótros hubiéreis habído, *If you should have had.*
Si éllos hubiéren, *If they should have.*	Si éllos hubiéren habído, *If they should have had.*

157. By examining the above conjugation, it will be seen that, after having learned the simple tenses, the compound ones are also known, as these latter are always formed by placing the past participle after the persons of the simple tenses of the auxiliary verb.*

(*a.*) The personal pronouns of the nominative case are seldom used with the verb (see 139, *a*), as the ending of the person of each tense generally indicates the person and number of its nominative. Thus, the first person plural of every tense has its ending in *mos:* when, therefore, the learner sees any tense of a verb having for its final letters *mos*, he may know that its nominative is to be rendered in English by the pronoun *we.* In the conjugations which follow, the pronouns will be omitted in Spanish.

☞ The distinctions between some of the tenses (distinctions not known in English Grammar) will be explained in Part III.

158. Conjugation of the verb *ser.*

SIMPLE TENSES.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	COMPOUND TENSES.
	Ser, *To be.*	
PAST-PARTICIPLE.		PAST-INFINITIVE.
Sído, *Been.*		Habér sído, *To have been.*
GERUND OF THE PRESENT.		GERUND OF THE PAST.
Siéndo, *Being.*		Habiéndo sído, *Having been.*

* Perhaps one of the easiest methods of learning the conjugations of the verbs is to copy and re-copy each tense till it can be done without referring to the Grammar.

INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT.		PERFECT-INDEFINITE.	
Soy,	*I am.*	He sído,	*I have been.*
E'res,	*Thou art.*	Has sído,	*Thou hast been.*
Es,	*He is.*	Ha sído,	*He has been.*
Sómos,	*We are.*	Hémos sído,	*We have been.*
Sóis,	*You are.*	Habéis sído,	*You have been.*
Son,	*They are.*	Han sído,	*They have been.*
IMPERFECT.		FIRST-PLUPERFECT.	
E'ra,	*I was.*	Había sído,	*I had been.*
E'ras,	*Thou wast.*	Habías sído,	*Thou hadst been.*
E'ra,	*He was.*	Había sído,	*He had been.*
E'ramos,	*We were.*	Habíamos sído,	*We had been.*
E'rais,	*You were.*	Habíais sído,	*You had been.*
E'ran,	*They were.*	Habían sído,	*They had been.*
PERFECT-DEFINITE.		SECOND-PLUPERFECT.	
Fuí,	*I was.*	Húbe sído,	*I had been.*
Fuíste,	*Thou wast.*	Hubíste sído,	*Thou hadst been.*
Fué,	*He was.*	Húbo sído,	*He had been.*
Fuímos,	*We were.*	Hubímos sído,	*We had been.*
Fuísteis,	*You were.*	Hubísteis sído,	*You had been.*
Fuéron,	*They were.*	Hubiéron sído,	*They had been.*
FIRST-FUTURE.		SECOND-FUTURE.	
Seré,	*I shall* or *will be.*	Habré sído,	*I shall* or *will have been.*
Serás,	*Thou shalt* or *wilt be.*	Habrás sído,	*Thou shalt* or *will have been.*
Será,	*He shall* or *will be.*	Habrá sído,	*He shall* or *will have been.*
Serémos,	*We shall* or *will be.*	Habrémos sído,	*We shall* or *will have been.*
Seréis,	*You shall* or *will be.*	Habréis sído,	*You shall* or *will have been.*
Serán,	*They shall* or *will be.*	Habrán sído,	*They shall* or *will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
Séa,	*Let me be*, or, *may I be.*
Sé,	*Be thou.*
Séa,	*Let him be*, or, *may he be.*
Seámos,	*Let us be*, or, *may we be.*
Séd,	*Be you.*
Séan,	*Let them be*, or, *may they be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT.		PERFECT-INDEFINITE.	
Séa,	*I may be.*	Háya sído,	*I may have been.*
Séas,	*Thou mayest be.*	Háyas sído,	*Thou mayest have been.*
Séa,	*He may be.*	Háya sído,	*He may have been.*
Seámos,	*We may be.*	Háyamos sído,	*We may have been.*
Seáis,	*You may be.*	Háyais sído,	*You may have been.*
Séan,	*They may be.*	Háyan sído,	*They may have been.*
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Fuéra, sería, *or* fuése,	*I would, should*, or *might be.*	Hubiéra, habría, *or* hubiése sído,	*I would, should*, or *might have been.*
Fuéras, serías, *or* fuéses,	*Thou wouldst, shouldst*, or *mightst be.*	Hubiéras, habrías, *or* hubiéses sído,	*Thou wouldst, shouldst*, or *mightst have been.*
Fuéra, sería, *or* fuéses,	*He would, should*, or *might be.*	Hubiéra, habría, *or* hubiése sído,	*He would, should*, or *might have been.*
Fuéramos, seríamos, *or* fuésemos,	*We would, should*, or *might be.*	Hubiéramos, habríamos, *or* hubiésemos sído,	*We would, should*, or *might have been.*
Fuérais, seríais, *or* fuéseis,	*You would, should*, or *might be.*	Hubiéráis, habríais, *or* hubiéseis sído,	*You would, should*, or *might have been.*
Fuéran, serían, *or* fuésen,	*They would, should*, or *might be.*	Hubiéran, habrían, *or* hubiésen sído,	*They would, should*, or *might have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—*Continued.*			
FIRST-FUTURE.		SECOND-FUTURE.	
Si fuére,	*If I should be.*	Si hubiére sído,	*If I should have been.*
Si fuéres,	*If thou shouldst be.*	Si hubiéres sído,	*If thou shouldst have been.*
Si fuére,	*If he should be.*	Si hubiére sído,	*If he should have been.*
Si fuéremos,	*If we should be.*	Si hubiéremos sído.	*If we should have been.*
Si fuéreis,	*If you should be.*	Si hubiéreis sído,	*If you should have been.*
Si fuéren,	*If they should be.*	Si hubiéren sído,	*If they should have been.*

☞ The Exercises in Part IV., Section Eleventh, can now be translated.

159. Conjugation of the verb *estar.*

SIMPLE TENSES.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	COMPOUND TENSES.
	Estár, *To be.*	
PAST PARTICIPLE.		PAST INFINITIVE.
Estádo,	*Been.*	Habér estádo, *To have been.*
GERUND OF THE PRESENT.		GERUND OF THE PAST.
Estándo,	*Being.*	Habiéndo estádo, *Having been.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT.		PERFECT-INDEFINITE.	
Estóy,	*I am.*	He } estádo,	*I have* } *been.*
Estás,	*Thou art.*	Has	*Thou hast*
Está,	*He is.*	Ha	*He has*
Estámos,	*We are.*	Hémos } estádo,	*We have* } *been.*
Estáis,	*You are.*	Habéis	*You have*
Están,	*They are.*	Han	*They have*

INDICATIVE MOOD—*Continued.*					
IMPERFECT.		FIRST-PLUPERFECT.			
Estába,	*I was.*	Había	estádo,	*I had*	*been.*
Estábas,	*Thou wast.*	Habías		*Thou hadst*	
Estába,	*He was.*	Había		*He had*	
Estábamos,	*We were.*	Habíamos		*We had*	
Estábais,	*You were.*	Habíais		*You had*	
Estában,	*They were.*	Habían		*They had*	
PERFECT-DEFINITE.*		SECOND-PLUPERFECT.			
Estúve,	*I was.*	Húbe	estádo,	*I had*	*been.*
Estuvíste,	*Thou wast.*	Hubíste		*Thou hadst*	
Estúvo,	*He was.*	Húbo		*He had*	
Estuvímos,	*We were.*	Hubímos		*We had*	
Estuvísteis,	*You were.*	Hubísteis		*You had*	
Estuviéron,	*They were.*	Hubiéron		*They had*	
FIRST-FUTURE.		SECOND-FUTURE.			
Estaré,	*I shall* or *will be.*	Habré	estádo,	*I shall* or *will*	*have been.*
Estarás,	*Thou shalt* or *wilt be.*	Habrás		*Thou wilt*	
Estará,	*He shall* or *will be.*	Habrá		*He will*	
Estarémos,	*We shall* or *will be.*	Habrémos		*We shall*	
Estaréis,	*You shall* or *will be*	Habréis		*You will*	
Estarán,	*They shall* or *will be.*	Habrán		*They will*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
Esté,	*Let me be*, or *may I be.*†
Está,	*Be thou.*
Esté,	*Let him be*, or *may he be.*
Estémos,	*Let us be*, or *may we be.*
Estád,	*Be you.*
Estén,	*Let them be*, or *may they be.*

* The persons of the perfect-definite and those of the imperfect of the indicative mood, in Spanish, are both rendered by the English imperfect tense, but they can not be used indiscriminately in Spanish. The proper manner of employing them will be found in Part III. (See 302—304.)

† See the remark in the margin, at page 60.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PERFECT-INDEFINITE.		
Esté,	*I may be.*	Háya	*I may*	*have been.*
Estés,	*Thou mayest be.*	Háyas	*Thou mayest*	
Esté,	*He may be.*	Háya	*He may*	
Estémos,	*We may be.*	Háyamos	*We may*	
Estéis,	*You may be.*	Háyais	*You may*	
Estén,	*They may be.*	Háyan	*They may*	

estádo,

IMPERFECT.	
Estuviéra, estaría, estuviése,	*I would, should, might be.*
Estuviéras, estarías, estuviéses,	*Thou wouldst, shouldst, mightst be.*
Estuviéra, estaría, estuviése,	*He would, should, might be.*
Estuviéramos, estaríamos, estuviésemos,	*We would, should, might be.*
Estuviérais, estarías, estuvieséis,	*You would, should, might be.*
Estuviéran, estarían, estuviésen,	*They would, should, might be.*

PLUPERFECT.		
Hubiéra, habría, hubiése	*I would, should, might*	*have been.*
Hubiéras, habrías, hubiéses	*Thou wouldst, shouldst, might*	
Hubiéra, habría, hubiése	*He would, should, might*	
Hubiéramos, habríamos, hubiésemos	*We would, should, might*	
Hubiérais, habríais, hubiéseis	*You would, should, might*	
Hubiéran, habrían, hubiésen	*They would, would, might*	

estádo,

FIRST-FUTURE.		SECOND-FUTURE.		
Si estuviére,	*If I should be.*	Si hubiére	*If I should*	*have been.*
Si estuviéres,	*If thou shouldst be.*	Si hubiéres	*If thou shouldst*	
Si estuviére,	*If he should be.*	Si hubiére	*If he should*	
Si estuviéremos,	*If we should be.*	Si hubiéremos	*If we should*	
Si estuviéreis,	*If you should be.*	Si hubiéreis	*If you should*	
Si estuviéren,	*If they should be.*	Si hubiéren	*If they should*	

estádo,

☞ The learner will now translate the Exercises in Part IV., Section Twelfth.

160. Conjugation of the verb *tener.**

---

* *Tener* is seldom used as an auxiliary verb, and *haber* seldom used as a transitive verb. Thus, "I *have* money," would be, *Tengo dinero:* and, "I *have* spoken," *He hablado.*

SIMPLE TENSES.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	COMPOUND TENSES.
	Tenér, *To have.*	
PAST PARTICIPLE.		PAST INFINITIVE.
Tenído,	*Had.*	Habér tenído, *To have had.*
GERUND OF THE PRESENT.		GERUND OF THE PAST.
Teniéndo,	*Having.*	Habiéndo tenído, *Having had.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.					
PRESENT.		PERFECT-INDEFINITE.			
Téngo,	*I have.*	He	tenído,	*I have*	*had.*
Tiénes,	*Thou hast.*	Has		*Thou hast*	
Tiéne,	*He has.*	Ha		*He has*	
Tenémos,	*We have.*	Hémos		*We have*	
Tenéis,	*You have.*	Habéis		*You have*	
Tiénen,	*They have.*	Han		*They have*	
IMPERFECT.		FIRST-PLUPERFECT.			
Tenía,	*I had.*	Había	tenído,	*I had*	*had.*
Tenías,	*Thou hadst.*	Habías		*Thou hadst*	
Tenía,	*He had.*	Había		*He had*	
Teníamos,	*We had.*	Habíamos		*We had*	
Teníais,	*You had.*	Habíais		*You had*	
Tenían,	*They had.*	Habían		*They had*	
PERFECT-DEFINITE.		SECOND-PLUPERFECT.			
Túve,	*I had.*	Húbe	tenído,	*I had*	*had.*
Tuvíste,	*Thou hadst.*	Hubíste		*Thou hadst*	
Túvo,	*He had.*	Húbo		*He had*	
Tuvímos,	*We had.*	Hubímos		*We had*	
Tuvísteis,	*You had.*	Hubíste		*You had*	
Tuviéron,	*They had.*	Hubiéron		*They had*	
FIRST-FUTURE.		SECOND-FUTURE.			
Tendré,	*I shall* or *will have.*	Habré	tenído,	*I shall* or *will*	*have had.*
Tendrás,	*Thou wilt have.*	Habrás		*Thou wilt*	
Tendrá,	*He will have.*	Habrá		*He will*	
Tendrémos,	*We shall have.*	Habrémos		*We shall*	
Tendréis,	*You will have.*	Habréis		*You will*	
Tendrán,	*They will have.*	Habrán		*They will*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Ténga,	*Let me have*, or *may I have.*
Ten,	*Have thou.*
Ténga,	*Let him have*, or *may he have.*
Tengámos,	*Let us have*, or *may we have.*
Tenéd,	*Have you.*
Téngan,	*Let them have*, or *may they have.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PERFECT-INDEFINITE.		
Ténga,	*I may have.*	Háya	*I may*	*have had.*
Téngas,	*Thou mayest have.*	Háyas	*Thou mayest*	
Ténga,	*He may have.*	Háya	*He may*	
Tengámos,	*We may have.*	Háyamos	*We may*	
Tengáis,	*You may have.*	Háyais	*You may*	
Téngan,	*They may have.*	Háyan	*They may*	
		tenído,		

IMPERFECT.	
Tuviéra, tendría, tuviése,	*I would, should, might have.*
Tuviéras, tendrías, tuviéses,	*Thou wouldst, shouldst, mightst have.*
Tuviéra, tendría, tuviése,	*He would, should, might have.*
Tuviéramos, tendríamos, tuviésemos,	*We would, should, might have.*
Tuviérais, tendríais, tuviéseis,	*You would, should, might have.*
Tuviéran, tendrían, tuviésen,	*They would, should, might have.*

PLUPERFECT.		
Hubiéra, habría, hubiése	*I would, should, might*	*have had.*
Hubiéras, habrías, hubiéses	*Thou wouldst, shouldst, mightst*	
Hubiéra, habría, hubiése	*He would, should, might*	
Hubiéramos, habríamos, hubiésemos	*We would, should, might*	
Hubiérais, habríais, hubieseis	*You would, should, might*	
Hubiéran, habrían, hubiésen	*They would, should, might*	
tenído,		

FIRST-FUTURE.		SECOND-FUTURE.		
Si tuviére,	*If I should have.*	Si hubiére	*If I should*	*have had.*
Si tuviéres,	*If thou shouldst have.*	Si hubiéres	*If thou shouldst*	
Si tuviére,	*If he should have.*	Si hubiére	*If he should*	
Si tuviéremos,	*If we should have.*	Si hubiéremos	*If we should*	
Si tuviéreis,	*If you should have.*	Si hubiéreis	*If you should*	
Si tuviéren,	*If they should have.*	Si hubiéren	*If they should*	
		tenído,		

161. In ordinary conversation, instead of the second person singular and plural, *vmd.* with the third person singular, and *vmds.* with the third person plural of the verb, are used (see 110, *c;* 123); as,

Vmd. es,	*You are.*	Vmd. ha tenido,	*You have had.*
Vmds. son,	*You are.*	Vmds. han tenido,	*You have had.*

(*a.*) The pronoun *you* in English is used in both numbers and both genders without any change: in Spanish, *vmd.* (*usted*) has its plural *vmds.* (*ustedes*), but does not undergo any change to distinguish the gender to which it may be applied. Thus, "what say *you*, sir?" *¿ qué dice* vmd., *señor?* "what say you, madam?" *¿ qué dice* vmd., *señora?* "what say *you*, sirs?" *¿ qué dicen* vmds., *señores?* "what say *you*, ladies?" *¿ qué dicen* vmds., *señoras?*

☞ The Exercises in Part IV., Section Thirteenth, can now be translated.

OF THE CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

162. It has been already mentioned that there are in Spanish three conjugations: the first comprehending verbs whose infinitive ends in *ar;* the second, those ending in *er;* and the third, those ending in *ir.*

163. Every verb consists of two parts—the *root* and the *termination*, or the *verb-root* and the *verb-ending.* The *verb-root* consists of those letters which are not changed by inflection; as, *am* in *am-ár*, *am-o*, *am-aba*, *am-é*, *am-aré.* Those letters, which may be changed by inflection, to show the different moods, tenses, persons, and numbers, constitute the verb-endings. Thus, in the preceding examples, the letters *ár*, *o*, *ába*, *é*, *aré*, are the verb-endings.

164. The following is a tabular view of the verb-endings of all the conjugations. The figures 1, 2, 3. denote the first, second, and third conjugations respectively.

CONJUGATION.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
1.	-ár.	-ádo.	-ándo.
2.	-ér.	-ído.	-iéndo.
3.	-ír.	-ído.	-iéndo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.*						
PRESENT.						
CONJUGATION.	*Singular.*			*Plural.*		
	First Per.	Sec. Per.	Third Per.	First Per.	Sec. Per.	Third Per.
1.	-o,	-as,	-a,	-ámos,	-áis,	-an.
2.	-o,	-es,	-e,	-émos,	-éis,	-en.
3.	-o,	-es,	-e,	-ímos,	-ís,	-en.
IMPERFECT.						
1.	-ába,	-ábas,	-ába,	-ábamos,	-ábais,	-ában.
2.	-ía,	-ías,	-ía,	-íamos,	-íais,	-ían.
3.	-ía,	-ías,	-ía,	-íamos,	-íais,	-ían.
PERFECT-DEFINITE.						
1.	-é,	-áste,	-ó,	-ámos,	-ásteis,	-áron.
2.	-í,	-íste,	-ió,	-ímos,	-ísteis,	-iéron.
3.	-í,	-íste,	-ió,	-ímos,	-ísteis,	-iéron.
FIRST-FUTURE.						
1.	-aré,	-arás,	-ará,	-arémos,	-aréis,	-arán.
2.	-eré,	-erás,	-erá,	-erémos,	-eréis,	-erán.
3.	-iré,	-irás,	-irá,	-irémos,	-iréis,	-irán.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
1.	-e,	-a,	-e,	-émos,	-ád,	-en.
2.	-a,	-e,	-a,	-ámos,	-éd,	-an.
3.	-a,	-e,	-a,	-ámos,	-íd,	-an.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT.						
1.	-e,	-es,	-e,	-émos,	-éis,	-en.
2.	-a,	-as,	-a,	-ámos,	-áis,	-an.
3.	-a,	-as,	-a,	-ámos,	-áis,	-an.

* The compound tenses, being always formed by the various persons of the tenses of the verb *haber* (see 156) and the past-participle, are not of course to be included in this tabular view of the verb-endings.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—*Continued.*						
IMPERFECT.						
CONJUGATION.	*Singular.*			*Plural.*		
	First Per.	Sec. Per.	Third Per.	First Per.	Sec. Per.	Third Per.
1.	-ára, -aría, -áse,	-áras, -arías, -áses,	-ára, -aría, -áse,	-áramos, -aríamos, -ásemos,	-árais, -aríais, -áseis,	-áran. -arían. -ásen.
2.	-iéra, -ería, -iése,	-iéras, -erías, -iéses,	-iéra, -ería, -iése,	-iéramos, -eríamos, -iésemos,	-iérais, -eríais, -iéseis,	-iéran. erían. -iésen.
3.	-iéra, -iría, -iése,	-iéras, -irías, -iéses,	-iéra, -iría, -iése,	-iéramos, -iríamos, -iésemos,	-iérais, -iríais, -iéseis,	-iéran. -irían. -iésen.
FIRST-FUTURE.						
1.	-áre,	-áres,	-áre,	-áremos,	-áreis,	-áren.
2.	-iére,	-iéres,	-iére,	-iéremos,	-iéreis,	-iéren.
3.	-iére,	-iéres,	-iére,	-iéremos,	-iéreis,	-iéren.

CHANGES IN THE VERB-ENDING.

165. A change takes place in the first letter of the verb-ending in the gerund, third person singular and plural of the perfect-definite in the indicative, and in all the persons of the first and third forms of the imperfect subjunctive, and in the first-future of the same mood, in the second or third conjugation, when the verb-root ends in *a*, *e*, or *u*. This change is merely the substitution of *y* for *i*; as, *ca-ír*, *ca-yéndo*, *ca-yó*, *ca-yéron*, *ca-yére*, *ca-yése*, etc.; *cre-ér*, *cre-yéndo*, *cre-yó*, *cre-yéron*, *cre-yére*, *cre-yéres*, etc.; *argü-ír*, *argu-yéndo*, *argu-yó*, etc.

(*a.*) If the last letter of the verb-root be a silent *u* (see 14 and 21) the change in the verb-ending does not take place; as, *persegu-ír*, *persigu-iéndo*, etc., and not *persigu-yéndo*.

CHANGES IN THE VERB-ROOT.

166. In order that the last letter of the verb-root may retain, in all the tenses, the same sound which it has in the infinitive, a change of letters is sometimes required. This

change can only take place when the verb-root ends in *c*, *g*, *gu*, or *qu*.

(*a.*) In such cases, there is changed, *in the first conjugation*,

c of the verb-root into *qu* before *e* of the verb-ending; as, *toc-ár; tóqu-e.*

g of the verb-root into *gu* before *e* of the verb-ending; as, *pág-ar; pógu-es.*

(*b.*) *In the second conjugation*,

c of the verb-root into *z* before *a* or *o*; as, *venc-er; vénz-as, vénz-o.*
g into *j* before *a* or *o*; as, *converg-ér; convérj-a, convérj-o.*

(*c.*) *In the third conjugation*,

c of the verb-root into *z* before *a* or *o*: as, *unc-ír; únz-as, únz-o.*
g " " *j* " *a* or *o*; as, *ung-ír; únj-a, únj-o.*
gu into *g* before *a* or *o*; as, *consegu-ír; consíg-an, consíg-o.*
qu into *c* before *a* or *o*; as, *delinqu-ír; delínc-as, delinc-o.*

(*d.*) The reason for these changes will at once be perceived by the learner by referring to "SOUND OF THE CONSONANTS" (see Part I., 9—29): thus *c* is sounded like *k* before *a* or *u*, and like *th* before *e* or *i*; while *qu* before *e* or *i* has the sound of *k*. If, then, in conjugating *tocár* (in the present tense of the subjunctive mood, for example), we retain the *c* of the verb-root, the pronunciation would be altered from the sound of *k* to that of *th*; thus, *to-cár*, pronounced *to-kár*, and *tó-ce* pronounced *tó-thay*. But by changing *c* into *qu*, the hard sound of *c* is retained: thus, *tó-que*, pronounced *tó-kay*. And so before *a* or *o*, by changing *c*, *g*, *gu*, and *qu* of the verb-root of the second and third conjugations into *z*, *j*, *g*, and *c* respectively: and *g* of the first conjugation into *gu* before *e* of the verb-ending.

167. The compound tenses are always formed by the different persons of the tenses of the verb *haber* (see 156) and the past-participle of the verb to be conjugated.

☞ The compound tenses are the past-infinitive, the gerund of the past, the perfect-indefinite, the first-pluperfect, the second-pluperfect, and second-future of the indicative; the perfect-indefinite, pluperfect, and second-future of the subjunctive. If the learner has committed to memory the simple tenses of the verb *haber*, he is able to conjugate the compound tenses of any verb in Spanish.

168. A paradigm of the three conjugations.* The figures refer to the first, second, and third persons:

(*a.*) FIRST CONJUGATION.	(*b.*) SECOND CONJUGATION.	(*c.*) THIRD CONJUGATION.
INFINITIVE MOOD.		
Amár, *to love.*	Comér, *to eat.*	Vivír, *to live.*
PAST PARTICIPLE.		
Amado, *loved.*	Comido, *eaten.*	Vivido, *lived.*
PAST INFINITIVE.		
Habér amado, *to have loved.*	Habér comido, *to have eaten.*	Habér vivido, *to have lived.*
GERUND OF THE PRESENT.		
Amando, *loving.*	Comiendo, *eating.*	Viviendo, *living.*
GERUND OF THE PAST.		
Habiendo amado, *having loved.*	Habiendo comido, *having eaten.*	Habiendo vivido, *having lived.*

* In these model-verbs of the three conjugations, the persons of every tense are to be accented on the syllable next to the last, except where the marked accent is placed over some other syllable. (See Remark after 155, *c.*)

INDICATIVE MOOD.					
PRESENT.					
1. Amo,	*I love.*	Como,	*I eat.*	Vivo,	*I live.*
2. Amas,	*thou lovest.*	Comes,		Vives,	
3. Ama,	*he loves.*	Come,		Vive,	
1. Amamos,	*we love.*	Comemos,		Vivimos,	
2. Amáis,	*you love.*	Coméis,		Vivís,	
3. Aman,	*they love.*	Comen,		Viven,	
IMPERFECT.					
1. Amaba,	*I was-loving.*	Comía,	*I was-eating.*	Vivía,	*I was-living.*
2. Amabas,	*thou wast-loving.*	Comías,		Vivías,	
3. Amaba,	*he was-loving.*	Comía,		Vivía,	
1. Amábamos,	*we were-loving.*	Comíamos,		Vivíamos,	
2. Amábais,	*you were-loving.*	Comíais,		Vivíais,	
3. Amaban,	*they were-loving.*	Comían,		Vivían,	
PERFECT-DEFINITE.					
1. Amé,	*I loved.*	Comí,	*I ate.*	Viví,	*I lived.*
2. Amaste,	*thou lovedst.*	Comiste,		Viviste,	
3. Amó,	*he loved.*	Comió,		Vivió,	
1. Amamos,	*we loved.*	Comimos,		Vivimos,	
2. Amásteis,	*you loved.*	Comísteis,		Vivísteis,	
3. Amaron,	*they loved.*	Comieron,		Vivieron,	

INDICATIVE MOOD—*Continued.*					
PERFECT-INDEFINITE.					
1. He amado,	*I have loved.*	He comido.	*I have eaten.*	He vivido,	*I have lived.*
2. Has amado,	*thou hast loved.*	Has comido,		Has vivido,	
3. Ha amado,	*he has loved.*	Ha comido,		Ha vivido,	
1. Hemos amado,	*we have loved.*	Hemos comido,		Hemos vivido,	
2. Habéis amado,	*you have loved.*	Habéis comido,		Habéis vivido,	
3. Han amado,	*they have loved.*	Han comido,		Han vivido,	
FIRST-PLUPERFECT.					
1. Había amado,	*I had loved.*	Había comido,	*I had eaten.*	Había vivido,	*I had lived.*
2. Habías amado,	*thou hadst loved.*	Habías comido,		Habías vivido,	
3. Había amado,	*he had loved.*	Había comido,		Había vivido,	
1. Habíamos amado,	*we had loved.*	Habíamos comido,		Habíamos vivido,	
2. Habíais amado,	*you had loved.*	Habíais comido,		Habíais vivido,	
3. Habían amado,	*they had loved.*	Habían comido,		Habían vivido,	
SECOND-PLUPERFECT.					
1. Hube amado,	*I had loved.*	Hube comido,	*I had eaten.*	Hube vivido,	*I had lived.*
2. Hubiste amado,	*thou hadst loved.*	Hubiste comido,		Hubiste vivido,	
3. Hubo amado,	*he had loved.*	Hubo comido,		Hubo vivido,	
1. Hubimos amado,	*we had loved.*	Hubimos comido,		Hubimos vivido,	
2. Hubísteis amado,	*you had loved.*	Hubísteis comido,		Hubísteis vivido,	
3. Hubieron amado,	*they had loved.*	Hubieron comido,		Hubieron vivido,	

INDICATIVE MOOD—*Continued.*		
FIRST-FUTURE.		
1. Amaré, *I shall* or *will love.*	Comeré, *I shall eat.*	Viviré, *I shall live.*
2. Amarás, *thou wilt love.*	Comerás,	Vivirás,
3. Amará, *he will love.*	Comerá,	Vivirá,
1. Amaremos, *we shall love.*	Comeremos,	Viviremos,
2. Amaréis, *you will love.*	Comeréis,	Viviréis,
3. Amarán, *they will love.*	Comerán.	Vivirán,
SECOND-FUTURE.		
1. Habré amado, *I shall have loved.*	Habré comido, *I shall have eaten.*	Habré vivido, *I shall have lived.*
2. Habrás amado, *thou wilt have loved.*	Habrás comido,	Habrás vivido,
3. Habrá amado, *he will have loved.*	Habrá comido,	Habrá vivido,
1. Habremos amado, *we shall have loved.*	Habremos comido,	Habremos vivido,
2. Habréis amado, *you will have loved.*	Habréis comido,	Habréis vivido,
3. Habrán amado, *they will have loved.*	Habrán comido,	Habran vivido,
IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
1. Ame yo, *let me love* (or, *may I love*).	Coma yo, *let me eat.*	Viva yo, *let me live.*
2. Ama tú, *love thou.*	Come tú,	Vive tú,
2. Ame él, *let him love.*	Coma él,	Viva él,
1. Amemos nosótros, *let us love.*	Comamos nosótros,	Vivamos nosótros,
2. Amád vosótros, *love you.*	Coméd vosotros,	Vivíd vosótros,
3. Amen ellos, *let them love.*	Coman ellos,	Vivan ellos,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

1. Ame,	*I may love.*	Coma,	*I may eat.*	Viva,	*I may live.*
2. Ames,	*thou mayst love.*	Comas,		Vivas,	
3. Ame,	*he may love.*	Coma,		Viva,	
1. Amemos,	*we may love.*	Comamos,		Vivamos,	
2. Améis,	*you may love.*	Comáis,		Viváis,	
3. Amen,	*they may love.*	Coman,		Vivan,	

IMPERFECT.

Amara, Amaría, Amase,	*I would, should, might love.*	Comiera, Comería, Comiese,	*I would, should, might eat.*	Viviera, Viviría, Viviese,	*I would, should, might live.*
Amaras, Amarías, Amases,	*thou wouldst, shouldst, mightst love.*	Comieras, Comerías, Comieses,		Vivieras, Vivirías, Vivieses,	
Amara, Amaría, Amase,	*he would, should, might love.*	Comiera, Comería, Comiese,		Viviera, Viviría, Viviese,	
Amáramos, Amaríamos, Amásemos,	*we would, should, might love.*	Comiéramos, Comeríamos, Comiésemos,		Viviéramos, Viviríamos, Viviésemos,	
Amárais, Amaríais, Amáseis,	*you would, should, might love.*	Comiérais, Comeríais, Comiéseis,		Viviérais, Viviríais, Viviéseis,	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—*Continued.*

IMPERFECT—*Continued.*

3.	Amaran, Amarían, Amasen,	*they* { *would, should, might* } *love.*	Comieran, Comerían, Comiesen,	*they* { *would, should, might* } *eat.*	Vivieran, Vivirían, Viviesen,	*they* { *would, should, might* } *live.*

PERFECT-INDEFINITE.

1.	Haya amado,	*I may have loved.*	Haya comido,	*I may have eaten.*	Haya vivido,	*I may have lived.*
2.	Hayas amado,	*thou mayst have loved*	Hayas comido,		Hayas vivido,	
3.	Haya amado,	*he may have loved.*	Haya comido,		Haya vivido,	
1.	Háyamos amado,	*we may have loved*	Háyamos comido,		Háyamos vivido,	
2.	Háyais amado,	*you may have loved.*	Háyais comido,		Háyais vivido,	
3.	Hayan amado,	*they may have loved.*	Hayan comido,		Hayan vivido,	

PLUPERFECT.

1.	Hubiera amado, Habría amado, Hubiese amado,	*I* { *would, should, might* } *have loved.*	Hubiera comido, Habría comido, Hubiese comido,	*I* { *would, should, might* } *have eaten.*	Hubiera vivido, Habría vivido, Hubiese vivido,	*I* { *would, should, might* } *have lived.*
2.	Hubieras amado, Habrías amado, Hubieses amado,	*thou* { *wouldst, shouldst, mightst* } *have loved.*	Hubieras comido, Habrías comido, Hubieses comido,		Hubieras vivido, Habrías vivido, Hubieses vivido,	
3.	Hubiera amado, Habría amado, Hubiese amado,	*he* { *would, should, might* } *have loved.*	Hubiera comido, Habría comido, Hubiese comido,		Hubiera vivido, Habría vivido, Hubiese vivido,	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—*Continued.*

PLUPERFECT—*Continued.*

1. Hubiéramos amado,	*we would, should, might have loved.*	Hubiéramos comido,	*we would, should, might have eaten.*	Hubiéramos vivido,	*we would, should, might have lived.*
Habríamos amado,		Habríamos comido,		Habríamos vivido,	
Hubiésemos amado,		Hubiésemos comido,		Hubiésemos vivido,	
Hubiérais amado,	*you would, should, might have loved.*	Hubiérais comido,		Hubiérais vivido,	
2. Habríais amado,		Habríais comido,		Habríais vivido,	
Hubiéseis amado,		Hubiéseis comido,		Hubiéseis vivido,	
Hubieran amado,	*they would, should, might have loved.*	Hubieran comido,		Hubieran vivido,	
3. Habrían amado,		Habrían comido,		Habrían vivido,	
Hubiesen amado,		Hubiesen comido,		Hubiesen vivido,	

FIRST-FUTURE.

1. Si amare,	*If I should love.*	Si comiere,	*If I should eat.*	Si viviere,	*If I should live.*
2. Si amares,	*if thou shouldst love.*	Si comieres,		Si vivieres,	
3. Si amare,	*if he should love.*	Si comiere,		Si viviere,	
1. Si amáremos,	*if we should love.*	Si comiéremos,		Si viviéremos,	
2. Si amáreis,	*if you should love.*	Si comiéreis,		Si viviéreis,	
3. Si amaren,	*if they should love.*	Si comieren,		Si vivieren,	

SECOND-FUTURE.

1. Si hubiere amado,	*If I should have loved.*	Si hubiere comido,	*If I should have eaten*	Si hubiere vivido,	*If I should have lived.*
2. Si hubieres amado,	*if thou shouldst have loved.*	Si hubieres comido,		Si hubieres vivido,	
3. Si hubiere amado,	*if he should have loved.*	Si hubiere comido,		Si hubiere vivido,	
1. Si hubiéremos amado,	*if we should have loved.*	Si hubiéremos comido,		Si hubiéremos vivido,	
2. Si hubiéreis amado,	*if you should have loved.*	Si hubiéreis comido,		Si hubiéreis vivido,	
3. Si hubieren amado,	*if they should have loved.*	Si hubieren comido,		Si hubieren vivido,	

☞ The learner must now translate the Exercises in Part IV., Section Fourteenth.

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

169. Those verbs are called *reflective* or *reciprocal* which *reflect* the action they express, on their nominative (see 136); as, *Yo me desnudo*, or *me desnudo*, "I undress myself;" *El se ahorcó*, or *se ahorcó*, "he hung himself;" *nosótros nos amamos*, "we love ourselves," "or "we love each other."

(*a.*) The reflective verbs are inflected in the same manner as the verb would be conjugated if it were employed without the reflective pronouns. The verb *ahorcar* is thus conjugated reflectively:

INFINITIVE MOOD.	
Ahorcárse, *to hang one's self.*	
PAST-PARTICIPLE.	PAST-INFINITIVE.
Ahorcádo, *hung one's self.*	Habérse ahorcado, *to have hung one's self.*
GERUND OF THE PRESENT.	GERUND OF THE PAST.
Ahorcándose, *hanging one's self.*	Habiéndose ahorcado, *having hung one's self.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT.	PERFECT-INDEFINITE.
1. Me ahorco, *I hang myself.*	Me he ahorcado, *I have hung myself.*
2. Te ahorcas, *thou hangest thyself.*	Te has ahorcado, *thou hast hung thyself.*
3. Se ahorca, *he hangs himself.*	Se ha ahorcado, *he has hung himself.*
1. Nos ahorcamos, *we hang ourselves.*	Nos hemos ahorcado, *we have hung ourselves.*
2. Os ahorcáis, *you hang yourselves.*	Os habéis ahorcado, *you have hung yourselves.*
3. Se ahorcan, *they hang themselves.*	Se han ahorcado, *they have hung themselves.*
And thus through all the moods and tenses.	

(*b.*) It must not be forgotten that the reflective pronouns are always in the objective case, and governed by the verb which comes after them or to which they are joined (for they are always joined to infinitives, gerunds, and imperatives. See 116; 116, *a*; 116, *b*; also 113, *a.*) The nominative personal pronouns are not generally used.

OF THE PASSIVE VERB.

170. A passive verb is conjugated by adding to the auxiliary verb *ser*, through all its moods and tenses (see 158), the past participle of the verb to be conjugated. The participle in such a case is inflected by gender and number like an adjective; thus to say "*he is loved*;" "*she is loved*;" "*they are loved*" (masc.); "*they are loved*" (fem.); would be,

El es *amado.*	Ellos son *amados.*
Ella es *amada.*	Ellas son *amadas.*

(*a.*) The passive verb formed by *ser* is used in Spanish in the present and imperfect tenses of the indicative mood only when a mental act or state of the emotions is spoken of: thus we can say *ella es amada*, "she is loved," but we can not say *ella es hallada*, "she is found," since in the latter case no state of the mind or feelings is described, and the perfect-indefinite tense must be employed; thus, *ella ha sido hallada*, "she has been found." For the imperfect tense of the indicative, when no state or act of the mind is spoken of, the perfect-definite must be used, as *la casa fué* (not *era*) *quemada*, "the house was burnt."

171. Conjugation of the passive verb, *ser hallado:*

INFINITIVE MOOD.	
Ser hallado, *to be found.*	
PAST PARTICIPLE.	PAST INFINITIVE.
Sido hallado,* *been found.*	Haber sido hallado, *to have been found.*
GERUND OF THE PRESENT.	GERUND OF THE PAST.
Siendo hallado, *being found.*	Habiendo sido hallado, *having been found.*

* *Hallado* means "*been found*," as well as "*found*," so that *sido* is not used in forming the passive past participle. (See 300, *c.*)

INDICATIVE MOOD.					
PRESENT—*I am found*, etc.					
Soy hallado,	eres hallado,	es hallado,	somos hallados,	sois hallados,	son hallados.
IMPERFECT—*I was found*, etc.					
Era hallado,	eras hallado,	era hallado,	éramos hallados,	érais hallados,	eran hallados.
PERFECT-DEFINITE—*I was found*, etc.					
Fuí hallado,	fuiste hallado,	fué hallado,	fuímos hallados,	fuísteis hallados,	fueron hallados.
FIRST-FUTURE—*I shall* or *will be found*, etc.					
Seré hallado,	serás hallado,	será hallado,	seremos hallados,	seréis hallados,	serán hallados.
IMPERATIVE MOOD—*Let me be found; Be thou found*, etc.					
Sóa yo hallado,	sé tú hallado,	séa él hallado,	seamos nosotros hallados,	séd vosotros hallados,	sean éllos hallados.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
PRESENT—*I may be found*, etc.					
Séa hallado,	seas hallado,	séa hallado,	seamos hallados,	seáis hallados,	sean hallados.
IMPERFECT—*I would, should, might be found*, etc.					
Fuera, Sería, Fuese } hallado.	fueras, serías, fueses } hallado.	fuera, sería, fuese } hallado.	fuéramos, seríamos, fuésemos } hallados.	fuérais, seríais, fuéseis } hallados.	fueran, serían, fuesen } hallados.
FIRST-FUTURE—*If I should be found*, etc.					
Si fuere hallado,	si fueres hallado,	si fuere hallado,	si fuéremos hallados	si fuéreis hallados,	si fueren hallados.

172. The compound tenses of the passive verb are formed by the several simple tenses of *haber*, and the passive past participle of the verb to be conjugated; as,

He sido hallado,	*I have been found.*
Había sido hallado,	*I had been found.*
Habré sido hallado,	*I shall have been found.*
Si hubiere sido hallado,	*If I should have been found.*

☞ The Exercises in Part IV., Section Fifteen, can now be translated.

173. Instead of employing the auxiliary verb *ser*, to be, and the participle of the verb agreeing with its nominative, the personal reflective pronoun *se* is often used in the third person singular and plural with the proper tense of the active verb. Thus, we can say, *el libro ha sido hallado*, or *el libro se ha hallado*,* and both forms are to be rendered in English, "the book has been found." This is a very important rule of Spanish Grammar, and must be kept in mind by the learner. The following will serve as examples of this method of placing *se* before the verb, which in such a case corresponds to the same tense conjugated passively.

El libro se ha hallado,	*The book has been found.*
El libro se abre,	*The book is opened.*
El se llamaba Caifás,	*He was called Caiaphas.*
La voz se repitió,	*The voice was repeated.*
Las águas se tornaron amargas,	*The waters were turned bitter.*
Su glória se verá,	*His glory shall be seen.*
La casa se quemó,	*The house was burnt.*
Aquí se habla Español,	*Spanish is spoken here.*
Se dice,	*It is said.*
Se publicó,	*It was published.*

(*a.*) The above examples rendered literally mean, "the book has found itself;" "the book opens itself;" "he called himself Caiaphas;" "the voice repeated itself;" "the waters turned themselves bitter;" "his glory shall see itself;" "here speaks itself Spanish;" "the house burnt itself;" "it says itself;" "it published itself." We can say in English, "the voice prolongs itself," or, "the voice is prolonged;" "the man

* Literally, "the book has found itself."

deceives himself," or, "the man is deceived;" so that the only difference between the Spanish and English syntax in this matter is, that the rule is applied far more extensively in Spanish than in English. Thus we can say in both languages, "the voice repeats itself," "*la voz se repite*," meaning, "the voice is repeated;" but we can not say in English, "the sound hears itself," for the "sound is heard." In Spanish, however, we can say, *la voz se oyó*, or, *la voz fué oida*, "the voice was heard."

☞ The Exercises in Part IV., Section Sixteenth, can now be translated.

174. The passive verb is sometimes formed by the auxiliary verb *estar*, instead of *ser;* as *el caballo está lastimado*, "the horse is injured;" *la casa está mal construida*, "the house is badly constructed."

☞ Rules for the use of *ser* and *estar* will be found in Part III.*

175. Verbs are conjugated interrogatively by placing the pronoun after the verb; and negatively, by placing the adverb *no* before the verb; as,

¿ Amo yo ?	Love I ? or do I love ?
¿ Come él ?	Does he eat ?
¿ Escribirian ellos ?	Would they write ?
Yo no amo,	I do not love.
El no come,	He does not eat.
Ellos no escribirian,	They would not write.
¿ No aprenderás tú ?	Wilt thou not learn ?

(*a.*) If an objective pronoun come before the verb, the negative *no* is then placed immediately before such pronoun; as,

¿ No *lo* habeis oido ?	Have ye not heard it ?
Yo no *le* ví,	I saw him not.

(*b.*) It is not the general practice to use the nominative personal pronouns in asking questions: thus *¿ Amo ? ¿ come ?* mean the same as *¿ amo yo? ¿ come tú ?* Nor is it absolutely necessary to place the nominative pronoun or noun after the verb, as the interrogation-mark shows the sentence to be interrogatory: thus, *¿ Yo amo ? ¿ amo yo ?* or *¿ amo ?* each means, "do I love ?"

☞ The learner may now translate the Exercises in Part IV., Section Seventeenth.

---

* See 333—336.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

176. The irregular verbs in Spanish are such as do not conform exactly in their manner of conjugation to the model-verbs (*amar*, *comer*, *vivir*). The deviations of each irregular verb are in most cases but slight, yet important to be known, as most of the irregular verbs are in general use.

(*a.*) There are thirty-nine of the different irregular verbs: seven of the first conjugation, seventeen of the second, and fifteen of the third. Many of these differ but very slightly from each other. All the irregular verbs are conjugated like some one of these thirty-nine forms. Four of these, *haber*, *ser*, *estar*, and *tener*, have already been conjugated.

(*b.*) Those verbs which undergo slight changes in the verb-roots or verb-endings of certain tenses or persons of tenses (see 165; 166; and 166, *a*, *b*, *c*), are not on that account deemed irregular, since these changes take place solely to preserve *regularity* and uniformity of sound, which would be dissimilar in some cases if these changes did not take place. Thus, as before mentioned, *buscar*, pronounced *boos-kár*, would, in the present tense of the subjunctive mood, if no change of letters should occur, be *busce*, pronounced *boós'-thay* (*c* before *e* and *i* being sounded like *th* in *thin*), and to preserve the hard sound of *c*, this latter is changed into *qu* (see 22); thus, *busque*, pronounced *boós'-kay*. Both regular and irregular verbs undergo such changes when required by the rules of pronunciation.

☞ The learner, while gradually committing to memory the irregular verbs, can also begin to translate the Reading Lessons in Part V., as there directed; and also review the first seventeen Sections of Part IV.

Remark.—In the following conjugations of the irregular verbs, those persons of the moods and tenses only which deviate from the regular conjugation are given. Thus, in the first verb, *andar*, no tense of the indicative mood except the perfect-definite is given, because this verb is conjugated regularly in the other tenses of this mood. In the second verb, *contar*, the first and second persons plural of the present indicative are not given, because these persons are regular. The learner is therefore to remember that all moods, tenses, and persons, not included in the conjugation are regular. We have, however, in all cases given the participle and gerund, whether formed regularly or not.

177. Conjugation of the irregular verb ANDAR, *to walk.* First Conjugation.

PAST PARTICIPLE, Andado.			GERUND, Andando.		
INDICATIVE MOOD.—PERFECT-DEFINITE.					
Anduve,	anduviste,	Anduvo,	anduvimos,	anduvísteis,	anduvieron.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—IMPERFECT.					
Anduviera,	anduvieras,	anduviera,	anduviéramos,	anduviérais,	anduvieran.
Anduviese,	anduvieses,	anduviese,	anduviésemos,	anduviéseis,	anduviesen.
FIRST-FUTURE.					
Anduviere,	anduvieres,	anduviere,	anduviéremos,	anduviéreis,	anduvieren.

178. Conjugation of the irregular verb CONTAR, *to relate.*

☞ This verb changes *o* of the verb-root into *ue*, in the three persons singular and third person plural of the present-indicative, imperative, and present-subjunctive.

PAST PARTICIPLE, Contado.			GERUND, Contando.		
INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.					
Cuento,	cuentas,	cuenta,			cuentan.
IMPERATIVE.					
Cuente,	cuenta,	cuente,			cuenten.
SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.					
Cuente,	cuentes,	cuente,			cuenten.

179. Conjugation of the irregular verb DAR, *to give.*

PAST PARTICIPLE, Dado.			GERUND, Dando.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Doy,					
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.			
Dí,	diste,	dió,	dimos,	dísteis,	dieron.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—IMPERFECT.			
Diera, Diese,	dieras, dieses,	diera, diese,	diéramos, diésemos,	diérais, diéseis,	dieran. diesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Diere,	dieres,	diere,	diéremos,	diéreis,	dieren.

180. Conjugation of the irregular verb JUGAR, *to play.*

☞ This verb takes *e* before *g* of the verb-root in the three persons singular and third person plural of the present indicative, the imperative, and present subjunctive.

PAST PARTICIPLE, Jugado.			GERUND, Jugando.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Juego,	juegas,	juega,			juegan.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Juegue,	juega,	juegue,			jueguen.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Juegue,	juegues,	juegue,			jueguen.

181. Conjugation of the irregular verb TENTAR, *to try, to tempt.*

☞ This verb takes *i* before *e* of the verb-root in the same persons and tenses as are irregular in the preceding verb.

PAST PARTICIPLE, Tentado.			GERUND, Tentando.	
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Tiento,	tientas,	tienta,		tientan.
		IMPERATIVE.		
Tiente,	tienta,	tiente,		tienten.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Tiente,	tientes,	tiente,		tienten.

182. Conjugation of ERRAR, *to err.*

8*

☞ This verb is irregular in the same persons and tenses as *tentar*, and takes *y* before *e* of the verb-root, in all the irregular persons.

PAST PARTICIPLE, Errado.			GERUND, Errando.	
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Yerro,	yerras,	yerra,		yerran.
		IMPERATIVE.		
Yerre,	yerra,	yerre,		yerren.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Yerre,	yerres,	yerre,		yerren.

183. Conjugation of CABER, *to be contained, to have room.* Second conjugation.

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Cabido.			GERUND, Cabiendo.		
			INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Quepo.	|	|	|	|	|
			PERFECT-DEFINITE.		
Cupe,	| cupiste,	| cupo,	| cupimos,	| cupísteis,	| cupieron.
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Cabré,	| cabrás,	| cabrá,	| cabremos,	| cabréis,	| cabrán.
			IMPERATIVE.		
Quepa,	|	| quepa,	| quepamos,	|	| quepan.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Quepa,	| quepas,	| quepa,	| quepamos,	| quepáis,	| quepan.
			IMPERFECT.		
Cupiera, Cabría, Cupiese,	| cupieras, cabrías, cupieses,	| cupiera, cabría, cupiese,	| cupiéramos, cabríamos, cupiésemos,	| cupiérais, cabríais, cupiéseis,	| cupieran. cabrían. cupiesen.
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Cupiere,	| cupieres,	| cupiere,	| cupiéremos,	| cupiéreis,	| cupieren.

184. Conjugation of CAER, *to fall.*

☞ This verb takes *ig* after the verb-root, in the first person singular of the present indicative, in the first and third persons singular and plural of the imperative, and in all the persons of the present subjunctive.

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Caido.			GERUND, Cayendo.	
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Caigo.				
		IMPERATIVE.		
Caiga,		caiga,	caigamos,		caigan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Caiga,	caigas,	caiga,	caigamos,	caigáis,	caigan.

185. Conjugation of HACER, *to make, to do.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Hecho.			GERUND, Haciendo.	
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Hago.				
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.		
Hice,	hiciste,	hizo,	hicimos,	hicísteis,	hicieron.
		FIRST-FUTURE.		
Haré,	harás,	hará,	haremos,	haréis,	harán.
		IMPERATIVE.		
Haga,	haz,	haga,	hagamos,		hagan.

Conjugation of HACER—*continued.*

		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Haga,	hagas,	haga,	hagamos,	hagáis,	hagan.
		IMPERFECT.			
Hiciera,	hicieras,	hiciera,	hiciéramos,	hiciérais,	hicieran.
Haría,	harías,	haría,	haríamos,	haríais,	harían.
Hiciese,	hicieses,	hiciese,	hiciésemos,	hiciéseis,	hiciesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Hiciere,	hicieres,	hiciere,	hiciéremos,	hiciéreis,	hicieren.

(*a.*) *Satisfacer*, one of the compounds of the verb *hacer*, has in the second person singular of the imperative mood both *satisfaz* and *satisface.*

186. Conjugation of MOVER, *to move.*

☞ This verb changes *o* of the verb-root into *ue* in the three persons singular and third person plural of the present indicative, the imperative, and present subjunctive.

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Movido.				GERUND, Moviendo.
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Muevo,	mueves,	mueve,		mueven.
		IMPERATIVE.		
Mueva,	mueve,	mueva,		muevan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Mueva,	muevas,	mueva,		muevan.

187. Conjugation of OLER, *to smell.*

☞ This verb changes as the preceding, and also takes *h* at the beginning of the irregular persons.

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Olido.			GERUND, Oliendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Huelo,	hueles,	huele,			huelen.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Huela,	huele,	huela,			huelan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Huela,	huelas,	huela,			huelan.

188. Conjugation of PARECER, *to seem.*

This verb, and all others ending in *acer*, *ecer*, and *ocer* (except *hacer* and *cocer**) take *z* before *c* of the verb-root, when the verb-ending begins with *a* or *o*. This can only occur in the first person singular of the present indicative, the first and third persons singular and plural of the imperative, and all the persons of the present subjunctive.

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Parecido.			GERUND, Pareciendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Parezco.					
		IMPERATIVE.			
Parezca,		parezca,	parezcamos,		parezcan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Parezca,	parezcas,	parezca,	parezcamos,	parezcáis,	parezcan.

* And, of course, the compounds of *hacer* and *cocer*.

189. Conjugation of PODER, *to be able.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Podido.			GERUND, Pudiendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Puedo,	puedes,	puede,			pueden.
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.			
Pude,	pudiste,	pudo,	pudimos,	pudísteis,	pudieron.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Podré,	podrás,	podrá,	podremos,	podréis,	podrán.
		IMPERATIVE.*			
Pueda,	puede,	pueda,			puedan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Pueda,	puedas,	pueda,			puedan.
		IMPERFECT.			
Pudiera,	pudieras,	pudiera,	pudiéramos,	pudiérais,	pudieran.
Podría,	podrías,	podría,	podríamos,	podríais,	podrían.
Pudiese,	pudieses,	pudiese,	pudiésemos,	pudiéseis,	pudiesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Pudiere,	pudieres,	pudiere,	pudiéremos,	pudiéreis,	pudieren.

* The imperative is inserted merely to exhibit the form, there being in fact no imperative of *poder* in use.

190. Conjugation of PONER, *to place, to put.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Puesto.			GERUND, Poniendo.		
			INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Pongo,					
			PERFECT-DEFINITE.		
Puse,	pusiste,	puso,	pusimos,	pusísteis,	pusieron.
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Pondré,	pondrás,	pondrá,	pondremos,	pondréis,	pondrán.
			IMPERATIVE.		
Ponga,	pon,	ponga,	pongamos,		pongan.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Ponga,	pongas,	ponga,	pongamos,	pongáis,	pongan.
			IMPERFECT.		
Pusiera,	pusieras,	pusiera,	pusiéramos,	pusiérais,	pusieran.
Pondría,	pondrías,	pondría,	pondríamos,	pondríais,	pondrían.
Pusiese,	pusieses,	pusiese,	pusiésemos,	pusiéseis,	pusiesen.
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Pusiere,	pusieres,	pusiere,	pusiéremos,	pusiéreis,	pusieren.

191. Conjugation of QUERER, *to be willing, to wish.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Querido.				GERUND, Queriendo.	
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Quiero,	quieres,	quiere,			quieren.
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.			
Quise,	quisiste,	quiso,	quisimos,	quisísteis,	quisieron.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Querré,	querrás,	querrá,	querremos,	querréis,	querrán.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Quiera,	quiere,	quiera,			quieran.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Quiera,	quieras,	quiera,			quieran.
		IMPERFECT.			
Quisiera, Querría, Quisiese,	quisieras, querrías, quisieses,	quisiera, querría, quisiese,	quisiéramos, querríamos, quisiésemos	quisiérais, querríais, quisiéseis,	quisieran. querrían. quisiesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Quisiere,	quisieres,	quisiere,	quisiéremos,	quisiéreis,	quisieren.

192. Conjugation of SABER, *to know.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Sabido.			GERUND, Sabiendo.		
			INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Sé.					
			PERFECT-DEFINITE.		
Supe,	supiste,	supo,	supimos,	supísteis,	supieron.
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Sabré,	sabrás,	sabrá,	sabremos,	sabréis,	sabrán.
			IMPERATIVE.		
Sepa,		sepa,	sepamos,		sepan.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Sepa,	sepas,	sepa,	sepamos,	sepais,	sepan.
			IMPERFECT.		
Supiera,	supieras,	supiera,	supiéramos,	supiérais,	supieran.
Sabría,	sabrías,	sabría,	sabríamos,	sabríais,	sabrían.
Supiese,	supieses,	supiese,	supiésemos,	supiéseis,	supiesen.
			FIRST-FUTURE		
Supiere,	supieres,	supiere,	supiéremos,	supiéreis,	supieren.

193. Conjugation of TENDER, *to tend, to extend.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Tendido.			GERUND, Tendiendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Tiendo,	tiendes,	tiende,			tienden.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Tienda,	tiende,	tienda,			tiendan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Tienda,	tiendas,	tienda,			tiendan.

194. Conjugation of TRAER, *to bring, to carry.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Traido.			GERUND, Trayendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Traigo.					
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.			
Traje,	trajiste,	trajo,	trajimos,	trajísteis,	trajeron.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Traiga,		traiga,	traigamos,		traigan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Traiga,	traigas,	traiga,	traigamos,	traigáis,	traigan.
		IMPERFECT.			
Trajera,	trajeras,	trajera,	trajéramos,	trajérais,	trajeran.
Trajese,	trajeses,	trajese,	trajésemos,	trajéseis,	trajesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Trajere,	trajeres,	trajere,	trajéremos,	trajéreis,	trajeren.

195. Conjugation of VALER, *to be worth.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Valido.			GERUND, Valiendo.		
			INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Valgo.					
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Valdré,	valdrás,	valdrá,	valdremos,	valdreis,	valdrán.
			IMPERATIVE.		
Valga,		valga,	valgamos,		valgan.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Valga,	valgas,	valga,	valgamos,	valgáis,	valgan.
			IMPERFECT.		
Valdría,	valdrias,	valdría,	valdríamos,	valdríais,	valdrían.

196. Conjugation of VER, *to see.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Visto.			GERUND, Viendo.		
			INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Veo.					
			IMPERFECT.		
Veía,	veías,	veía,	veíamos,	veíais,	veían.
			IMPERATIVE.		
Vea,		vea,	veamos,		vean.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Vea,	veas,	vea,	veamos,	veáis,	vean.

197. Conjugation of ADQUIRIR, *to acquire.* Third Conjugation.

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Adquirido.			GERUND, Adquiriendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT			
Adquiero,	adquieres,	adquiere,			adquieren.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Adquiera,	adquiere,	adquiera,			adquieran.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Adquiera,	adquieras,	adquiera,			adquieran.

198. Conjugation of ASIR, *to seize.*

☞ This verb is but little used in those persons of tenses that are irregular.

PAST PARTICIPLE, Asido.			GERUND, Asiendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Asgo.					
		IMPERATIVE.			
Asga,		asga,	asgamos,		asgan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Asga,	asgas,	asga,	asgamos,	asgáis,	asgan.

199. Conjugation of BENDECIR, *to bless.*

☞ *Maldecir*, to curse, is irregular in the same persons and tenses as *bendecir*.

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Bendecido.			GERUND, Bendeciendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Bendigo,	bendices,	bendice,			bendicen.
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.			
Bendije,	bendijiste,	bendijo,	bendijimos,	bendijísteis,	bendijeron.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Bendiga,	bendice,	bendiga,	bendigamos,		bendigan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Bendiga,	bendigas,	bendiga,	bendigamos,	bendigáis,	bendigan.
		IMPERFECT.			
Bendijera, Bendijese,	bendijeras, bendijeses	bendijera. bendijese,	bendijéramos, bendijésemos,	bendijérais, bendijéseis,	bendijeran. bendijesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Bendijere,	bendijeres	bendijere,	bendijéremos,	bendijérais,	bendijeren.

200. Conjugation of DECIR, *to say*.

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Dicho.			GERUND, Diciendo.		
			INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Digo,	dices,	dice,			dicen.
			PERFECT-DEFINITE.		
Dije,	dijiste,	dijo,	dijimos,	dijísteis,	dijeron.
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Diré,	dirás,	dirá,	diremos,	diréis,	dirán.
			IMPERATIVE.		
Diga,	dí,	diga,	digamos,		digan.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Diga,	digas,	diga,	digamos,	digáis,	digan.
			IMPERFECT.		
Dijera, Diría, Dijese,	dijeras, dirías, dijeses,	dijera, diría, dijese,	dijéramos, diríamos, dijésemos,	dijérais, diríais, dijéseis,	dijeran. dirían. dijesen.
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Dijere,	dijeres,	dijere,	dijéremos,	dijéreis,	dijeren.

(*a.*) *Contradecir*, *desdecir*, and *predecir*, end their second person singular of the imperative in *ice;* as, *contradice*, *desdice*, *predice*. In other respects they are conjugated like *decir*.

201. Conjugation of DORMIR, *to sleep.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Dormido.			GERUND, Durmiendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Duermo,	duermes,	duerme,			duermen.
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.			
		durmió,			durmieron.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Duerma,	duerme,	duerma,	durmamos,		duerman.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Duerma,	duermas,	duerma,	durmamos,	durmáis,	duerman.
		IMPERFECT.			
Durmiera,	durmieras,	durmiera,	durmiéramos,	durmiérais,	durmieran.
Durmiese,	durmieses,	durmiese,	durmiésemos,	durmiéseis,	durmiesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Durmiere,	durmieres,	durmiere,	durmiéremos,	durmiéreis,	durmieren.

202. Conjugation of ERGUIR, *to stand erect.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Erguido.			GERUND, Irguiendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Hiergo, *or*, yergo,	hiergues,	hiergue,			hierguen.
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.			
		irguió,			irguieron
		IMPERATIVE.			
Hierga, *or*, yerga,	hiergue,	hierga,	irgamos,		hiergan.

Conjugation of ERGUIR—*continued.*

		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Hierga, *or*, yerga,	hiergas,	hierga,	irgamos	irgais,	hiergan.
		IMPERFECT.			
Irguiera,	irguieras,	irguiera,	irguiéramos,	irguiérais,	irguieran.
Irguiese,	irguieses,	irguiese,	irguiésemos,	irguiéseis,	irguiesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Irguiere,	irguieres,	irguiere,	irguiéremos,	irguiéreis,	irguieren.

203. Conjugation of INCLUIR, *to include.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Incluido.			GERUND, Incluyendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Incluyo,	incluyes,	incluye,			incluyen.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Incluya,	incluye,	incluya,	incluyamos,		incluyan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Incluya,	incluyas,	incluya,	incluyamos,	incluyáis,	incluyan.
		IMPERFECT.			
Incluyera,	incluyeras,	incluyera,	incluyéramos,	incluyérais,	incluyeran.
Incluyese,	incluyeses,	incluyese,	incluyésemos,	incluyéseis,	incluyesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Incluyere,	incluyeres,	incluyere,	incluyéremos,	incluyéreis,	incluyeren.

204. Conjugation of IR, *to go.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Ido.			GERUND, Yendo.		
			INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Voy,	vas,	va,	vamos,	váis,	van.
			IMPERFECT.		
Iba,	ibas,	iba,	íbamos,	íbais,	iban.
			PERFECT-DEFINITE.		
Fuí,	fuiste,	fué,	fuimos,	fuísteis,	fueron.
			IMPERATIVE.		
Vaya,	ve,	vaya,	vamos,*	id,	vayan.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Vaya,	vayas,	vaya,	váyamos,	vayáis,	vayan.
			IMPERFECT.		
Fuera, Fuese,	fueras, fueses,	fuera, fuese,	fuéramos, fuésemos,	fuérais, fuéseis,	fueran. fuesen.
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Fuere,	fueres,	fuere,	fuéremos	fuéreis,	fueren.

* Sometimes *vayamos*, though this form is now seldom used.

205. Conjugation of LUCIR, *to shine.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Lucido.			GERUND, Luciendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Luzco.					
		IMPERATIVE.			
Luzca,		luzca,	luzcamos,		luzcan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Luzca,	luzcas,	luzca,	luzcamos,	luzcáis,	luzcan.

206. Conjugation of OIR, *to hear.*

PAST PARTICIPLE, Oido.			GERUND, Oyendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Oigo,	oyes,	oye,			oyen.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Oiga,	oye,	oiga,	oigamos,		oigan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Oiga,	oigas,	oiga,	oigamos,	oigais,	oigan.
		IMPERFECT.			
Oyera,	oyeras,	oyera,	oyéramos,	oyérais,	oyeran.
Oyese,	oyeses,	oyese,	oyésemos,	oyéseis,	oyesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Oyere,	oyeres,	oyere,	oyéremos,	oyéreis,	oyeren.

207. Conjugation of PRODUCIR, *to produce.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Producido.			GERUND, Produciendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Produzco.					
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.			
Produje,	produjiste,	produjo,	produjimos,	produjísteis,	produjeron.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Produzca,		produzca,	produzcamos,		produzcan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Produzca,	produzcas,	produzca,	produzcamos,	produzcáis,	produzcan.
		IMPERFECT.			
Produjera, Produjese,	produjeras, produjeses,	produjera, produjese,	produjéramos, produjésemos,	produjérais, produjéseis,	produjeran. produjesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Produjere,	produjeres,	produjere,	produjéremos,	produjéreis,	produjeren.

208. Conjugation of SALIR, *to go out.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Salido.			GERUND, Saliendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Salgo.					
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Saldré,	saldrás,	saldrá,	saldremos,	saldréis,	saldrán.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Salga,	sal,	salga,	salgamos,		salgan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Salga,	salgas,	salga,	salgamos,	salgais,	salgan.
		IMPERFECT.			
Saldría,	saldrías,	saldría,	saldríamos,	saldríais,	saldrían.

209. Conjugation of SENTIR, *to feel.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Sentido.			GERUND, Sintiendo.		
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Siento,	sientes,	siente,			sienten.
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.			
		sintió,			sintieron.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Sienta,	siente,	sienta,	sintamos,		sientan.

Conjugation of SENTIR—*continued.*

			SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Sienta,	sientas,	sienta,	sintamos,	sintáis,	sientan.
			IMPERFECT.		
Sintiera,	sintieras,	sintiera,	sintiéramos,	sintiérais,	sintieran.
Sintiese,	sintieses,	sintiese,	sintiésemos,	sintiéseis,	sintiesen.
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Sintiere,	sintieres,	sintiere,	sintiéremos,	sintiéreis,	sintieren.

210. Conjugation of SERVIR, *to serve.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Servido.			GERUND, Sirviendo.		
			INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.		
Sirvo,	sirves,	sirve,			sirven.
			PERFECT-DEFINITE.		
		sirvió,			sirvieron.
			IMPERATIVE.		
Sirva,	sirve,	sirva,	sirvamos,		sirvan.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.		
Sirva,	sirvas,	sirva,	sirvamos,	sirváis,	sirvan.
			IMPERFECT.		
Sírviera,	sirvieras,	sirviera,	sirviéramos,	sirviérais,	sirvieran.
Sirviese,	servieses,	sirviese,	sirviésemos,	sirviéseis,	sirviesen.
			FIRST-FUTURE.		
Sirviere,	sirvieres,	sirviere,	sirviéremos,	sirviéreis,	sirvieren.

211. Conjugation of VENIR, *to come.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE, Venido.				GERUND, Viniendo.	
		INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.			
Vengo,	vienes,	viene,			vienen.
		PERFECT-DEFINITE.			
Vine,	viniste,	vino,	vinimos,	vinísteis,	vinieron.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Vendré,	vendrás,	vendrá,	vendremos,	vendréis,	vendrán.
		IMPERATIVE.			
Venga,	ven,	venga,	vengamos,		vengan.
		SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT.			
Venga,	vengas,	venga,	vengamos,	vengáis,	vengan.
		IMPERFECT.			
Viniera, Vendría, Viniese,	vinieras, vendrias, vinieses,	viniera, vendría viniese,	viniéramos, vendríamos, viniésemos,	viniérais, vendríais, viniéseis,	vinieran. vendrían. viniesen.
		FIRST-FUTURE.			
Viniere,	vinieres,	viniere,	viniéremos,	viniéreis,	vinieren.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

212. Defective verbs are those which are not employed in all the tenses or persons.

213. SOLER, *to be accustomed*, is irregular, and seldom used except in the following tenses:

INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.					
Suelo,	sueles,	suele,	solemos,	soleis,	suelen.
IMPERFECT.					
Solía,	solías,	solía,	solíamos,	solíais,	solían.

214. YACER, *to lie*, is not often used in any other persons than the third persons singular and plural of the present indicative, chiefly at the beginning of epitaphs.

INDICATIVE.—PRESENT.				
Yags,		yace,		yacen.

215. PODRIR, *to rot*, is seldom used except in the following tenses and persons:

IMPERATIVE.				
			podríd.	
SUBJUNCTIVE.—IMPERFECT.				
	podriría.			

(*a.*) When *podrir* is figuratively used in any other moods or tenses, it is to be conjugated irregularly in the same tenses and persons as *servir* (see 210), by changing *o* of the verb-root into *u*; as, *pudriendo*, rotting.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

216. Impersonal verbs (or unipersonal verbs) are those which are employed only in the third person singular, and having no subject, take *it* or *there* with them in English; as, *llueve*, it rains; *tronará*, it will thunder; *nieve*, let it snow; *hay*, there is, or there are; *habrá*, there will be.

217. LLOVER, to rain, is thus conjugated impersonally.

PAST PARTICIPLE, Llovido.		GERUND, Lloviendo.
	INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT,	llueve,	*it rains.*
IMPERFECT,	llovía,	*it was raining.*
PERFECT-DEFINITE,	llovió,	*it rained.*
FIRST-FUTURE,	lloverá,	*it will rain.*
	IMPERATIVE.	
	llueva,	*let it rain.*
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT,	llueva,	*it may rain.*
IMPERFECT,	lloviera, llovería, lloviese,	*it would rain. it should rain. it might rain.*
FIRST-FUTURE,	si lloviere,	*if it should rain.*

(*a.*) All the impersonal verbs are conjugated like some of the verbs whose conjugation has been already given: thus, *llover*, it will be seen, is irregular, and is conjugated like *mover* (see 186) in the third person singular of each tense.

218. *Haber* and *hacer* are often used as impersonal verbs, and are, in such cases, to be rendered in English by the tenses of the verb *to be;* as, *hay*, there is, *or* there are; *hace*, it is.

(*a.*) Conjugation of HABER, *to be*, as used impersonally.

PAST PARTICIPLE, Habido.		GERUND, Habiendo, *there being.*
	INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT,	hay, *or*, ha,	*there is*, or *there are.*
IMPERFECT,	había,	*there was*, or *there were.*
PERFECT-DEFINITE,	hubo,	*there was, or there were.*
FIRST-FUTURE,	habrá,	*there will be.*
	IMPERATIVE.	
	haya,	*let there be.*
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT,	haya,	*there may be.*
IMPERFECT,	hubiera, había, hubiese,	*there would be. there should be. there might be.*
FIRST-FUTURE,	si hubiere,	*if there should be.*

(*b.*) *Hay, había*, and *hubo* are rendered in English sometimes in the singular and sometimes in the plural, according as a singular or plural

noun follows; thus, *hay una muger que tiene calentura*, there is a woman who has a fever; *hay mugeres que no la tienen*, there are women who have it not.

(*c.*) *Hacer*, when employed impersonally, is to be rendered in English by the verb *to be;* as, *hace*, it is; *hacía*, it was; *hizo*, it was; *hará*, it will be; *haga*, it may be, etc.; thus, *hace frío*, it is cold; *hace mucho aire*, there is much wind; *hace luna*, there is a moon; *hace buen tiempo*, it is good weather; *hace diez meses que ella murió*, it is ten months since she died.

219. PLACER, to please, is used impersonally in the following tenses only:

	INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT,	place,	*it pleases.*
IMPERFECT,	placía,	*it was pleasing.*
PERFECT-INDEFINITE,	plugo,	*it pleased.*
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT,	plegue,	*it may please.*
IMPERFECT,	plugiera,	*it would please.*
	plugiese,	*it might please.*
FIRST-FUTURE,	si plugiere,	*if it should please.*

(*a.*) The persons of *placer* in the subjunctive, are used only in these expressions—*plegue, plugiere*, or *plugiese á Dios;* may it, should it, *or* might it please God; *si me plugiere*, if it should please me.

220. There are some verbs that can be used in all the persons of the tenses, and also, at times, impersonally; as, *es muy tarde*, it is very late; *es preciso*, it is necessary; *es menester*, there is necessity; *parece*, it seems; *conviene*, it suits; *basta*, it is sufficient.

LIST OF IRREGULAR, DEFECTIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

221. The following list contains all the irregular verbs in the Spanish language. Each verb is to be conjugated in its irregular tenses like the verb to which reference is made in the last column; that is, each one is irregular in the same tenses and persons, and in the same manner, as the verb which is opposite to it. In the tenses and persons which are not irregular, each verb is to be conjugated like the regular verb of the same conjugation; those ending in *ar* like *amar* (168, *a*), those in *er* like *comer* (168, *b*), and those in ir like *vivir* (168, *c*). The figures indicate the number of the paragraph in which either the verb itself or a verb similar in its irregularities is conjugated. The verbs marked § are impersonal, and, of course, to be used only in the third person singular of each mood and tense.

☞ Every verb not included in this list is regular and must be conjugated like the model-verbs *amar, comer*, or *vivir*, according as it ends in *ar, er*, or *ir*.

(a.) A. (First Conjugation.)

Acertar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Acordar,	"	*contar*,	178
Acostar,	"	*contar*,	178
Acrecentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Adestrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Agorar,	"	*contar*,	178
Alentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Almorzar,	"	*contar*,	178
Amolar,	"	*contar*,	178
Andar,	"		177
Apacentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Aporcar,	"	*contar*,	178
Aportar,	"	*contar*,	178
Apostar,	"	*contar*,	178
Apretar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Aprobar,	"	*contar*,	178
Arrendar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Asentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Aserrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Asestar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Asolar,	"	*contar*,	178
Asoldar,	"	*contar*,	178
Asonar,	"	*contar*,	178
Atentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Aterrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Atestar,*	"	*tentar*,	181
Atravesar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Atronar,	"	*contar*,	178
Aventar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Avergonzarse,	"	*contar*,	178

A. (Second Conjugation.)

Abastecer,	*like*	*parecer*,	188
Aborrecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Absolver,	"	*mover*,	186
Abstraer,	"	*traer*,	194
Acaecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Acontecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Adolecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Adormecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Agradecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Amanecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Amortecerse,	*like*	*parecer*,	188
Anochecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Anteponer,	"	*poner*,	190
Antever,	"	*ver*,	196
Aparecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Apetecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Ascender,	"	*tender*,	193
Atender,	"	*tender*,	193
Atenerse,	"	*tener*,	160
Atraer,	"	*traer*,	194

A. (Third Conjugation.)

Adherir,	*like*	*sentir*,	209
Adquerir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Adquirir,	"		197
Advertir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Apercibir,	"	*servir*,	210
Argüir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Arrecirse,	"	*servir*,	210
Arrepentirse,	"	*sentir*,	209
Asentir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Asir,	"		198
Aterirse,	"	*sentir*,	209
Atribuir,	"	*incluir*,	210
Avenirse,	"	*venir*,	211

B. (First Conjugation.)

Bregar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181

B. (Second Conjugation.)

Bermejecer	*like*	*parecer*,	188

B. (Third Conjugation.)

Bendecir,	*like*		199

C. (First Conjugation.)

Calentar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Cegar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Cerrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Cimentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Colar,	"	*contar*,	178
Colgar,	"	*contar*,	178
Comenzar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Comprobar,	"	*contar*,	178
Concertar,	"	*tentar*,	181

* When *atestar* means *to fill, to cram*, it is irregular; when *to attest*, it is regular.

Concordar,	*like*	*contar*,	178
Confesar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Consolar,	"	*contar*,	178
Consonar,	"	*contar*,	178
Constar,§	"	*amar*,	168, *a*
Contar,	"		178
Costar,	"	*contar*,	178

C. (Second Conjugation.)

Caber,	*like*		183
Caer,	"		184
Canecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Carecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Cerner,	"	*tender*,	193
Cocer,	"	*mover*,	186
Compadecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Comparecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Complacer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Componer,	"	*poner*,	190
Condescender,	"	*tender*,	193
Condoler,	"	*mover*,	186
Conmover,	"	*mover*,	186
Conocer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Contender,	"	*tender*,	193
Contener,	"	*tener*,	160
Contraer,	"	*traer*,	194
Contrahacer,	"	*hacer*,	185
Convalecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Crecer,	"	*parecer*,	188

C. (Third Conjugation.)

Ceñir,	*like*	*servir*,	210
Colegir,	"	*servir*,	210
Comedirse,	"	*servir*,	210
Competir,	"	*servir*,	210
Concebir,	"	*servir*,	210
Concernir,§	"	*vivir*,	168, *c*
Concluir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Conducir,	"	*producir*,	207
Conferir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Conseguir,	"	*servir*,	210
Consentir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Constituir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Constreñir,	"	*servir*,	210
Construir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Contradecir,	"	*decir*,	200, *a*
Contravenir,	"	*venir*,	211
Contribuir,	*like*	*incluir*,	203
Controvertir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Corregir,	"	*servir*,	210

D. (First Conjugation.)

Dar,	*like*		179
Decentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Decimentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Degollar,	"	*contar*,	178
Demostrar,	"	*contar*,	178
Denegar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Denostar,	"	*contar*,	178
Derrengar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desacertar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desacordar,	"	*contar*,	178
Desalentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desapretar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desaprobar,	"	*contar*,	178
Desasosegar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desatentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Descolgar,	"	*contar*,	178
Descollar,	"	*contar*,	178
Desconcertar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desconsolar,	"	*contar*,	178
Descontar,	"	*contar*,	178
Desempedrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desencerrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desengrosar,	"	*contar*,	178
Desenterrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desflocar,	"	*contar*,	178
Desforgarse,	"	*contar*,	178
Deshelar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desherrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desmembrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desolar,	"	*contar*,	178
Desollar,	"	*contar*,	178
Desovar,	"	*contar*,	178
Despedrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Despernar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Despertar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Desplegar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Despoblar,	"	*contar*,	178
Desterrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Destrocar,	"	*contar*,	178
Desvergonzarse,	"	*contar*,	178
Dezmar,	"	*tentar*,	181

D. (Second Conjugation.)

Decaer,	*like*	*caer*,	184
Defender,	"	*tender*,	193
Demoler,	"	*mover*,	186
Deponer,	"	*poner*,	190
Desabastecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Desadormecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Desaparecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Desatender,	"	*tender*,	193
Desatraer,	"	*traer*,	194
Descaecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Descender,	"	*tender*,	193
Descomponer,	"	*poner*,	190
Desconocer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Desentenderse,	"	*tender*,	193
Desentorpecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Desenvolver,	"	*mover*,	186
Desfallecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Desflaquecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Desguarnecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Deshacer,	"	*hacer*,	185
Desobedecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Desplacer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Destorcer,	"	*mover*,	186
Desvanecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Detener,	"	*tener*,	160
Detraer,	"	*traer*,	194
Devolver,	"	*mover*,	186
Disolver,	"	*mover*,	186
Disponer,	"	*poner*,	190
Distraer,	"	*traer*,	194
Doler,	"	*mover*,	186

D. (Third Conjugation.)

Decir,	*like*		200
Deducir,	"	*producir*,	207
Deferir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Derretir,	"	*servir*,	210
Desavenir,	"	*venir*,	211
Desceñir,	"	*servir*,	210
Descomedirse,	"	*servir*,	210
Desconsentir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Desdecirse,	"	*decir*,	200, *a*
Deservir,	"	*servir*,	210
Desleir,	"	*servir*,	210
Deslucir,	"	*lucir*,	205
Desmentir,	*like*	*sentir*,	209
Despedir,	"	*servir*,	210
Desteñir,	"	*servir*,	210
Destruir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Diferir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Digerir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Disminuir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Distribuir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Diverter,	"	*sentir*,	209
Dormir,	"		201

E. (First Conjugation.)

Emendar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Empedrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Empezar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Emporcar,	"	*contar*,	178
Encensar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Encerrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Encomendar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Encontrar,	"	*contar*,	178
Encordar,	"	*contar*,	178
Encubertar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Engrosar,	"	*contar*,	178
Enrodar,	"	*contar*,	178
Ensangrentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Enterrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Errar,	"		182
Escalentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Escarchar,§	"	*amar*,	168, *a*
Escarmentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Esforzarse,	"	*contar*,	178
Espresar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Estar,	"		159
Estercolar,	"	*contar*,	178
Estregar,	"	*tentar*,	181

E. (Second Conjugation.)

Embebecerse,	*like*	*parecer*,	188
Embravecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Embrutecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Emplumecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Empobrecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Encabellecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Encalvecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Encallecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Encanecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Encarecer,	"	*parecer*,	188

Encender,	*like*	*tender*,	193
Encrudecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Encruelecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Endentecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Endurecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Enflaquecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Enfurecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Engrandecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Enloquecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Enmocecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Enmohecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Enmudecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Ennegrecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Ennoblecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Enrarecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Enriquecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Ensoberbecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Entallecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Entender,	"	*tender*,	193
Enternecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Entomecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Entontecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Entorpecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Entretener,	"	*tener*,	160
Entristecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Entullecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Entumecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Envejecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Enverdecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Envolver,	"	*mover*,	186
Equivaler,	"	*valer*,	195
Escarnecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Esclarecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Escocer,	"	*mover*,	186
Espavorecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Esponer,	"	*poner*,	190
Establecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Estender,	"	*tender*,	193
Estraer,	"	*traer*,	194
Estremecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188

E. (Third Conjugation.)

Elegir,	*like*	*servir*,	210
Embestir,	"	*servir*,	210
Engreirse,	"	*servir*,	210
Enlucir,	"	*lucir*,	205
Entrelucir,	*like*	*lucir*,	205
Entreoir,	"	*oir*,	206
Envestir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Erguir,	"		202
Estreñir,	"	*servir*,	210
Escluir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Espedir,	"	*servir*,	210

F. (First Conjugation.)

Forzar,	*like*	*contar*,	173
Fregar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Frezar,	"	*tentar*,	181

F. (Second Conjugation.)

Fallecer,	*like*	*parecer*,	188
Favorecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Fenecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Fortalecer,	"	*parecer*,	188

F. (Third Conjugation.)

Fluir,	*like*	*incluir*,	203
Freir,	"	*servir*,	210

G. (First Conjugation.)

Gobernar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Granizar,§	"	*amar*,	168, *a*

G. (Second Conjugation,)

Guarnecer,	*like*	*parecer*,	188

G. (Third Conjugation.)

Gemir,	*like*	*servir*,	210

H. (First Conjugation.)

Helar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Herrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Holgar,	"	*contar*,	178
Hollar,	"	*contar*,	178

H. (Second Conjugation.)

Haber,	*like*		156
Hacer,	"		185
Heder,	"	*tender*,	193
Hender,	"	*tender*,	193
Humedecer,	"	*parecer*,	188

H. (Third Conjugation.)

Herir,	*ike*	*sentir*,	209
Hervir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Huir,	"	*incluir*,	203

I. (First Conjugation.)

Importar,§	*like*	*amar*,	168, *a*
Infernar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Insertar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Invernar,	"	*tentar*,	181

I. (Second Conjugation.)

Imponer,	*like*	*poner*,	190
Indisponer,	"	*poner*,	190

I. (Third Conjugation.)

Imbuir,	*like*	*incluir*,	203
Impedir,	"	*servir*,	210
Inadvertir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Incluir,	"		203
Inducir,	"	*producir*,	207
Inferir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Ingerir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Instituir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Instruir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Intervenir,	"	*venir*,	211
Introducir,	"	*producir*,	207
Invertir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Investir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Ir,	"		204

J. (First Conjugation.)

Jugar,			180

L. (Third Conjugation.)

Lucir,	*like*	*lucir*,	205
Luir,	"	*incluir*,	203

LL. (First Conjugation.)

Lloviznar,§	*like*	*amar*,	168, *a*

LL. (Second Conjugation.)

Llover,§			217

M. (First Conjugation.)

Manifestar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Mentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Merendar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Mostrar,	"	*contar*,	178

M. (Second Conjugation.)

Magrecer,	*like*	*parecer*,	188
Mantener,	"	*tener*,	160
Mecer,	*like*	*parecer*,	188
Merecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Mohecerse,	"	*parecer*,	188
Moler,	"	*mover*,	186
Mollecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Morder,	"	*mover*,	186
Mover,	"		186

M. (Third Conjugation.)

Maldecir,	*like*	*bendecir*,	199
Medir,	"	*servir*,	210
Mentir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Morir,	"	*dormir*,	201
Muir,	"	*incluir*,	203

N. (First Conjugation.)

Negar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Nevar,§	"	*tentar*,	181

N. (Second Conjugation.)

Nacer,	*like*	*parecer*,	188
Negrecer,	"	*parecer*,	188

O. (Second Conjugation.)

Obedecer,	*like*	*parecer*,	188
Obscurecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Obtener,	"	*tener*,	160
Ofrecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Oler,	"		187
Oponer,	"	*poner*,	190

O. (Third Conjugation.)

Obstruir,	*like*	*incluir*,	203
Oir,	"		206

P. (First Conjugation.)

Pensar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Perniquebrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Plegar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Poblar,	"	*contar*,	178
Probar,	"	*contar*,	178

P. (Second Conjugation.)

Pacer,	*like*	*parecer*,	188
Padecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Parecer,	"		188
Perder,	"	*tender*,	193
Perecer,	"	*parecer*,	188

Pertenecer,	*like*	*parecer*,	188
Placer,	"		219
Poder,	"		189
Poner,	"		190
Preponer,	"	*poner*,	190
Presuponer,	"	*poner*,	190
Prevalecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Prever,	"	*ver*,	196
Promover,	"	*mover*,	186
Proponer,	"	*poner*,	190

P. (Third Conjugation.)

Pedir,	*like*	*servir*,	210
Perseguir,	"	*servir*,	210
Pervertir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Podrir,	"		215
Predecir,	"	*decir*,	200, *a*
Preferir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Presentir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Prevenir,	"	*venir*,	211
Producir,	"		207
Proferir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Proseguir,	"	*servir*,	210
Prostituir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Provenir,	"	*venir*,	211

Q. (First Conjugation.)

Quebrar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181

Q. (Second Conjugation.)

Querer,			191

R. (First Conjugation.)

Recomendar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Recordar,	"	*contar*,	178
Recostar,	"	*contar*,	178
Reforzar,	"	*contar*,	178
Regar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Regoldar,	"	*contar*,	178
Relampaguear,	"	*amar*,	168, *a*
Remendar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Renegar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Renovar,	"	*contar*,	178
Replegar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Reprobar,	"	*contar*,	178
Requebrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Rescontrar,	"	*contar*,	179
Resollar,	*like*	*contar*,	179
Resonar,	"	*contar*,	179
Retemblar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Retentar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Reventar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Revolar,	"	*contar*,	179
Revolcarse,	"	*contar*,	179
Rodar,	"	*contar*,	179
Rogar,	"	*contar*,	179

R. (Second Conjugation.)

Recaer,	*like*	*caer*,	184
Recocer,	"	*mover*,	186
Reconocer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Reconvalecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Recrecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Reflorecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Rehacer,	"	*hacer*,	185
Remanecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Remecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Remorder,	"	*mover*,	186
Remover,	"	*mover*,	186
Renacer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Reponer,	"	*poner*,	190
Resolver,	"	*mover*,	186
Restablecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Retener,	"	*tener*,	160
Retorcer,	"	*mover*,	186
Retraer,	"	*traer*,	194
Retrotraer,	"	*traer*,	194
Rever,	"	*ver*,	196
Reverdecer,	"	*parecer*,	188
Reverter,	"	*tender*,	193
Revolver,	"	*mover*,	186

R. (Third Conjugation.)

Recluir,	*like*	*incluir*,	203
Reducir,	"	*producir*,	207
Referir,	"	*sentir*,	209
Regir,	"	*servir*,	210
Reir,	"	*servir*,	210
Relucir,	"	*lucir*,	205
Rendir,	"	*servir*,	210
Reñir,	"	*servir*,	210
Repetir,	"	*servir*,	210
Requerir,	"	*sentir*,	209

Resentirse,	*like*	*sentir*,	209
Restituir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Reteñir,	"	*servir*,	210
Retribuir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Revenir,	"	*venir*,	211
Revestir,	"	*servir*,	210

S. (First Conjugation.)

Segar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Sembrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Sentarse,	"	*tentar*,	181
Serrar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Solar,	"	*contar*,	178
Soldar,	"	*contar*,	178
Soltar,	"	*contar*,	178
Sonar,	"	*contar*,	178
Soñar,	"	*contar*,	178
Sosegarse,	"	*tentar*,	181
Soterrar,	"	*tentar*,	181

S. (Second Conjugation.)

Saber,	*like*		192
Satisfacer,	"	*hacer*,	185, *a*
Ser,	"		158
Sobreponer,	"	*poner*,	190
Soler,	"		213
Solver,	"	*mover*,	186
Sostener,	"	*tener*,	160
Sustraer,	"	*traer*,	194
Suponer,	"	*poner*,	190

S. (Third Conjugation.)

Salir,	*like*		208
Seducir,	"	*producir*,	207
Seguir,	"	*servir*,	210
Sentir,	"		209
Servir,	"		210
Sobresalir,	"	*salir*,	208
Sobrevenir,	"	*venir*,	211
Sonreirse,	"	*servir*,	210
Sustituir,	"	*incluir*,	203
Sugerir,	"	*sentir*,	209

T. (First Conjugation.)

Temblar,	*like*	*tentar*,	181
Tentar,	"		181
Tostar,	"	*contar*,	178
Trascolar,	"	*contar*,	178
Trascordarse,	"	*contar*,	178
Trasegar,	"	*tentar*,	181
Trasoñar,	"	*contar*,	178
Trocar,	"	*contar*,	178
Tronar,	"	*contar*,	178
Tropezar,	"	*tentar*,	181

T. (Second Conjugation.)

Tender,	*like*		193
Tener,	"		160
Torcer,	"	*mover*,	186
Traer,	"		194
Trascender,	"	*tender*,	193
Trasponer,	"	*poner*,	190

T. (Third Conjugation.)

Teñir,	*like*	*servir*,	210
Traducir,	"	*producir*,	207

V. (First Conjugation.)

Volar,	*like*	*contar*,	178
Volcar,	"	*contar*,	178

V. (Second Conjugation.)

Valer,	*like*		195
Ver,	"		196
Verter,	"	*tender*,	193
Volver,	"	*mover*,	186

V. (Third Conjugation.)

Venir,	*like*		211
Vestir,	"	*servir*,	210

Y. (Second Conjugation.)

Yacer,			214

Z. (Third Conjugation.)

Zaherir,	*like*	*sentir*,	209

LIST OF VERBS WITH IRREGULAR PAST-PARTICIPLES.

222. Some verbs of those in the preceding list of irregular verbs, and some which are otherwise regular, have the past participle irregularly formed. The following list contains all these verbs with the irregular participle. Those marked *R* have also their past participle regularly formed. Thus *ingerir*, has both *ingerto* and *ingerido*.

(*a.*)

Abrir,	*abierto.*	Ingerir, R.	*ingerto.*
Absolver,	*absuelto.*	Morir,	*muerto.*
Anteponer,	*antepuesto.*	Oprimir, R.	*opreso.*
Antever,	*antevisto.*	Poner,	*puesto.*
Componer,	*compuesto.*	Predecir,	*predicho.*
Contradecir,	*contradicho.*	Prender, R.	*preso.*
Contrahacer,	*contrahecho.*	Preponer,	*prepuesto.*
Cubrir,	*cubierto.*	Presuponer	*presupuesto.*
Decir,	*dicho.*	Prever,	*previsto.*
Deponer,	*depuesto.*	Proponer,	*propuesto.*
Descomponer,	*descompuesto.*	Proscribir,	*proscrito.*
Descubrir,	*descubierto.*	Proveer, R.	*provisto.*
Desdecirse,	*desdicho.*	Rehacer,	*rehecho.*
Desenvolver,	*desenvuelto.*	Reponer,	*repuesto.*
Deshacer,	*deshecho.*	Resolver,	*resuelto.*
Disolver,	*disuelto.*	Rever,	*revisto.*
Disponer,	*dispuesto.*	Revolver,	*revuelto.*
Elegir,	*eligido.*	Romper, R.	*roto.*
Encubrir,	*encubierto.*	Satisfacer,	*satisfecho.*
Envolver,	*envuelto.*	Sobreponer,	*sobrepuesto.*
Escribir,	*escrito.*	Suponer,	*supuesto.*
Esponer,	*espuesto.*	Suprimir, R.	*supreso.*
Hacer,	*hecho.*	Trasponer,	*traspuesto.*
Imponer,	*impuesto.*	Ver,	*visto.*
Imprimer,	*impreso.*	Volver,	*vuelto.*
Indisponer,	*indispuesto.*		

223. Some participles are used sometimes as verbal adjectives; thus *mirado* means, as a participle, *beheld*, and as an adjective, *considerate; leido* means, as a participle, *read*, and as an adjective, *book-learned; partido* means *divided*, and *liberal; sabido* means *known*, and *well-informed*. In all such cases, the learner will find the word in his Spanish dictionary, defined as an adjective. He will be able, from the sense of the context, to determine whether to employ it as a participle or adjective, just as in English he would know which is the adjective and which the participle in the sentences "a *known* event," and "a person whom he has *known*."

224. Some changes have taken place in the verb-ending of the second person plural in all the tenses and conjugations. This anciently had its termination in *des;* as, *amades, amábades, amástedes, amarédes, amédes,* etc., for *amais, amábais, amásteis, amaréis, ameis.*

(*a.*) *Soy, doy, voy, sois, caigo, oigo, valgo, cupo, hubo, puso,* etc., were formerly *so, do, vo, sódes, cayo, oyo, valo, copo, ovo, poso.*

(*b.*) With all modern Spanish writers the guttural *x* is changed into *j;* as, *dijo, dijeron, dijera, produjo, produjeron,* instead of *dixo, dixeron, dixera, produxo, produxeron.* The pronunciation is the same in both cases.

☞ More specific rules concerning the verb will be found in Part III.

OF THE ADVERB.

225. Adverbs are either primitive or derivative: the *primitive* being those which are simple or uncompounded of any other word, such as *no,* not; *ya,* already; *hoy,* to-day; *allá,* yonder; and the *derivative,* those that are formed from other words (chiefly adjectives, participles, or other adverbs) by the addition of *mente;* as, *brevemente, confusamente, ciertamente.*

(*a.*) The Spanish language, like the English, contains numerous terms composed of more than one word, and used adverbially, hence called *adverbial phrases;* as, *por cierto,* for certain; *por lo comun,* in general; *de un modo,* in such manner.

☞ A list of some of the different classes of adverbs will be found in Part III.

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

226. Conjunctions are *simple;* as, *y,* and; *ó,* or; *que,* that; *si,* if; *ni,* nor; *porque,* because; *como,* as; *mas,* but; *pero,* but: or *conjunctive phrases;* as, *con tal de que,* provided that; *pues que,* since; *para que,* in order that; *á fin de que,* to the end that.

(*a.*) The conjunction *y* is changed into *é* when it comes before a word beginning with *i* or *hi;* as, *las lenguas Española é Inglesa,* the Spanish *and* English languages: *madre é hija,* mother *and* daughter.

(*b.*) The conjunction *ó* is changed into *ú* when it comes before a word beginning with *o*; as, *lacre ú obléa*, sealing-wax *or* wafer.

☞ See the different kinds of conjunctions, in Part III.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

227. Prepositions are *simple*; as, *con*, with; *de*, of; and *compound*; as, *á pesar de*, in spite of; *cosa de*, about, the matter of; *para con*, as to; *por entre*, through.

(*a.*) The following list comprehends the principal simple prepositions in Spanish:

A',	*to, at, for.*	Entre,	*between, among.*
Ante,	*in presence of, before.*	Hácia,	*towards.*
A'ntes,	*before, beforehand of.*	Hasta,	*unto, till.*
Con,	*with.*	Para,	*for.*
Contra,	*against, opposite to.*	Por,	*by, through, for.*
De,	*of, from.*	Segun,	*according to.*
Desde,	*from.*	Sin,	*without.*
Detras,	*behind.*	Sobre,	*upon, over.*
En,	*in, into, on.*	Tras,	*behind.*

(*b.*) Prepositions do not always correspond in Spanish and in English; that is, *de* is not always to be translated *of*, or *á* by *to*, etc.; as,

Los valles abundan *de* trigo,	The valleys abound *with* wheat.
Ella pide perdon *á* Dios,	She asks pardon *from* God.

OF THE INTERJECTION.

228. The interjections are *simple* and *compound*; as, *ah!* oh; *¡chito!* hush; and *¡pobre de mi madre!* O my poor mother!

(*a.*) The following list comprehends the principal simple interjections:

Ah,	*ah!*	Fu,	*pshaw! fie! tush!*
Ay,	*ah! alas!*	Ha,	*ah! oh!*
Ce,	*here! go on!*	He,	*eh! hist! hark!*
Chito, / Chiton,	*hush! silence!*	Hola,	*halloo, ho there!*
Ea,	*hah! go on! good!*	O,	*oh! ho!*
Ete,	*see! behold! lo!*	Ta, / Tate,	*take care! stop!*

PART III.

ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX MORE FULLY EXPLAINED.

OF THE ARTICLE.

229. The articles are not always employed in Spanish in the same manner as they are in English. The following rules will illustrate this observation.

USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

230. The definite article is to be used before all common nouns taken in a general sense, and in the whole extent of their signification; as,

El ódio levanta rencillas.	Hatred excites strifes.
La caridad es paciente.	Charity is patient.
Los hombres son mortales.	Men are mortal.

☞ Here *ódio*, *caridad*, and *hombres* are taken in a general sense, meaning *all* hatred, *all* charity, *all* men.

(*a.*) If the noun be not taken in a general sense, that is, if the whole of it be not meant, the article is not used; as,

Hace buen tiempo.	It-is good weather.
Tiene envídia.	He-has envy.

☞ Here *tiempo* and *envídia* are designed to express only *some portion* of *weather* and *envy*, meaning *some* good weather, *some* envy. (See 254.)

231. The definite article is used before proper names of countries, states, and days of the week; as,

La Fráncia es un hermoso pais.	France is a beautiful country.
Juan volverá *el* Mártes.	John will-return Tuesday.

(*a.*) If the name of the country, state, or region be preceded by a preposition, or take its name from its capital city, the article is generally omitted; as,

Venécia daba leyes á los monarcas de Europa.	Venice gave laws to the monarchs of Europe.

232. The definite article is to be used before numerals indicating the day of the month or the hour of the day; as,

El seis de Enero.	*The* sixth (six) of January.
A' las tres de la tarde.	At three o'clock in (of) the afternoon.

233. The definite article is used before nouns indicating the rank, office, profession, or titles of persons when they are spoken of (but not when they are addressed); as,

El General Taylor es valiente.	General Taylor is brave.
El Señor De Forest tiene dos hijas.	Mr. De Forest has two daughters.
La Señora Tranor no es prudente.	Mrs. Tranor is not prudent.

234. The definite article (and not the indefinite, as in English) is used before nouns signifying a certain weight, measure, size, quantity or number, when preceded by the price; as,

A tres duros *la* libra.	At three dollars *a* (the) pound.
A dos pesos *la* vara.	At two dollars *a* (the) yard.
A razon de diez duros *el* mes.	At (*the*) rate of ten dollars *a* (the) month.
A siete pesos *el* tomo.	At seven dollars *a* (the) volume.
A tres reales *la* pieza.	At three reals *a* (the) piece.
A cuatro pesos *el* par.	At four dollars *a* (the) pair.

(*a.*) Instead of the definite article, the preposition *por* may be used after the price; thus we can say, *á tres duros la libra*, "at three dollars the yard," or *á tres duros por libra*, "at three dollars per yard."

OMISSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

235. The definite article is omitted sometimes in Spanish where it would not be omitted in English, as in the following cases.

236. The definite article is not used before a noun which denotes relationship or kindred of another noun, when a verb comes between them; as,

María es hermana de Juana.	Mary is *the* sister of Jane.
Pablo es hijo del juez.	Paul is *the* son of the judge.

237. The definite article is not used before nouns in apposition; as,

Pablo, apóstol de los Gentiles.	Paul, *the* apostle of the Gentiles.
Ellos pecaron al Señor, esperanza de sus padres.	They sinned against-the Lord, the hope of their fathers.

(*a.*) Sometimes the article is used before nouns in apposition, when employed in a definite or determinative sense; as,

En tiempo de Herodes *el* rey.	In time of Herod *the* king.
El autor del "Espíritu de las Leyes," *el* célebre Montesquieu, dice.	The author of the "Spirit of Laws," *the* celebrated Montesquieu, says.

238. The definite article is not used before numerical adjectives when they denote order or succession; as,

Tomo segundo, página sexto.	Volume *the* second, page *the* sixth.
Enrique octavo.	Henry *the* Eighth.

(*a.*) The cardinal numbers (and not the ordinal) are generally used when the number expressing the order or succession exceeds *nine;* thus, *Cárlos doce*, "Charles the Tenth" (literally "Charles *Ten*"), and not *Cárlos duodécimo; tomo trece*, "volume thirteen," and not *tomo décimotercio*, "volume thirteenth."

239. The titles of books, essays, chapters or extracts, and the names of periodicals, do not generally take the definite article before them (except when spoken of); as,

História de España.	*The* History of Spain.
Gaceta de Lóndres.	*The* London Gazette.

240. The definite article is not used before the word *casa* (house) when it means *home*, nor before nouns or adjectives employed adverbially; as,

Está en casa.	He is at home (or in *the* house).
En verdad. En oculto.	Truly. Secretly.

OMISSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

241. The indefinite article is omitted in some cases in Spanish in which it would not be in English, as in the following cases.

242. When some portion of a thing only is meant, and when the adverb *no* is used in the sense of "*not a*" (that is, "*not any*," or "*no*"), the indefinite article is not generally used; as,

Tiene calentura.	He has *a* fever.
Ella tiene idéa de comer.	She has *an* idea of eating (to eat).
Juan hace ruido.	John makes *a* noise.
El es de génio benigno.	He is of *a* benign disposition.
Ella no tiene marido.	She has not *a* husband.
Jorge no tiene flauto.	George has not *a* flute.
No tenemos cochero.	We-have not *a* coachman.
No tengo piano.	I-have not *a* (*no*) piano.

☞ In these cases is meant *some* fever, *some* idea, *some* noise, and *some portion of* a benign disposition; and the article is not used in Spanish.

243. The indefinite article is not used before two nouns, one of which, being connected by a verb to the other, shows the nation, relationship, rank, office, profession or vocation of the latter; as,

Juan es Frances.	John is *a* Frenchman.
Señor Kent es juez.	Mr. Kent is *a* judge.
Cárlos es impresor.	Charles is *a* printer.
Halló en él padre y madre.	He-found in him *a* father and *a* mother.

244. The indefinite article is not used before a noun in apposition with another; as,

Estéban, hombre lleno de fé.	Stephen, *a* man full of faith.

245. The indefinite article is not used in the title of a book, chapter, or essay; as,

Coleccion de los mejores Autores Españoles.	*A* Selection of the best Spanish Authors.

246. The indefinite article is not used before a noun in an ejaculatory phrase; as,

¡ Que idea ! ¡ Que desgrácia !	What *an* idea ! What *a* misfortune !

247. The indefinite article is not used between an adjective and its noun; as,

Médio peso.	Half *a* dollar.
Tan hermosa hija.	So beautiful *a* daughter.
En tal tiempo.	In such *a* time.

248. The indefinite article is not used before the words *médio*, a half; *cien* or *ciento*, a hundred; and *mil*, a thousand; as,

Tres años y médio.	Three years and *a* half.
Cien hombres.	*A* hundred men.
Dia y médio.	*A* day and *a* half.

249. The indefinite article is not used after *algo*, something, or *nada*, nothing, followed by the preposition *de;* as,

Pedro tiene algo de poeta.	Peter is something of *a* poet.

OTHER USES AND OMISSIONS OF ARTICLES.

250. The indefinite article can be used before (but not after) *tal*, "such;" as,

Tenemos *un* tal Pontífice.	We-have *a* such High-Priest.

251. The infinitive mood, being used in Spanish as a noun or with a preposition before it, in the same manner that the present participle is in English, can take the masculine definite article before it; as,

El murmurar de las fuentes.	*The* murmuring of the fountains.
Al ver el árbol.	On seeing the tree.

252. The definite article is used before the adverbs *mas*, "more," and *ménos*, "less," to express the superlative degree of comparison (see 109); as,

María es *la* mas hermosa de las mugeres.	Mary is *the* most beautiful of the women.

253. The article is generally to be repeated before nouns which immediately follow each other, especially if they do not agree in gender; as,

La prudéncia y *el* valor del rey.	The prudence and *the* valor of-the king.

(*a.*) The learner will find many exceptions to the above rule in the best Spanish writers. The article must always be repeated in such cases when each noun is designed to be emphatic. When the word *todo*, "all," sums up the several nouns, the article is not generally used before any of the nouns; as, *Españoles, Franceses, Ingleses, y Americanos, todos son mortales*, "Spaniards, Frenchmen, Englishmen, and Americans, all are mortal."

254. The article is omitted in Spanish, as in English, before nouns taken in a partitive sense; as,

El carpintero tiene dinero.	The carpenter has money.

(*a.*) In the above example, it is meant that "the carpenter has *a portion* of money," or *some* money. When the word *some* is to be expressed, *alguno* in the singular, and *algunos* or *unos* in the plural, is used; as, *algun idéa.* "some idea;" *alguna caverna*, "some cavern;" *algunos libros*, "some books;" *unas señoras*, "some ladies."

(*b.*) Before a singular noun, denoting something to eat or drink, the word *some* is expressed in Spanish by *un poco de*, "a little of;" as, *déme un poco de leche*, "give me *some* milk."

(*c.*) When in English *some* or *any* is used before a singular noun in an interrogative or negative sentence, in Spanish it is usually omitted, especially before nouns meaning something to eat or drink; as, *¿toma vmd. azúcar?* "do you take *any* sugar? *¿tiene vmd. tazas?* "have you *any* cups?" *¿tiene vmd. algunos platillos?* "have you *any* saucers?" *no tengo flauta*, "I-have not *any* flute;" *no tiene hacha*, "he-has not *any* axe."

OF THE NOUN.

AUGMENTATIVES, DIMINUTIVES, AND COMMON TITLES OF RESPECT.

255. *Augmentative* nouns are such as are increased, in the extent of their signification, by the terminations *on*, *ona*, *azo*, *aza*, *ote;* thus the words *daga*, dagger; *cuchara*, spoon; *fraile*, friar; *gato*, cat; *manga*, sleeve; *muger*, woman; *frente*, forehead; can be rendered augmentative; as, *dagon*, large dagger; *cucharon*, large spoon, *i. e.* a ladle; *frailon*, large friar; *gatazo*, large cat; *mangote*, large sleeve; *mugerona*, large woman; *frentaza*, broad forehead.

256. *Diminutive* nouns are such as are decreased, in the signification of their primitives, by the terminations *ico*, *ica*, *ejo*, *eja*, *ito*, *ita*, *eto*, *eta*, *illo*, *illa*, *uelo*, *uela;* thus, *fraile*, friar; *capilla*, chapel; *cuchara*, spoon; *batel*, boat; can be rendered diminutive; as, *frailecico*, *frailecito*, *frailezuelo*, a little friar; *capilleja*, *capillita*, *capilleta*, small chapel; *cucharica*, *cucharita*, *cuchareta*, *cucharillo*, small spoon; *batelico*, *batelejo*, *batelito*, *batelillo*, little boat. The terminations *uelo* generally, and *illo* also sometimes, express contempt; as *hombre*, man; *hombrezuelo* or *hombrecillo*, an insignificant or contemptible little fellow.

(*a.*) Adjectives are also frequently found used in a diminutive sense; as, *poco*, little; *poquillo*, *poquitico*, *poquito*, very little.

257. There is also a kind of nouns composed of the name of some instrument or object, and one of the terminations *azo*, *aza*, *ada*, the

compound word including in its meaning both the instrument and some effect produced by it; as, *dardo*, a dart; *dardada*, a blow given with a dart; *cuchara*, a spoon, *cucharazo*, a blow with a spoon; *pluma*, a pen, *plumada*, a dash or stroke with a pen; *mano*, the hand, *manotazo* or *manotada*, a blow with the hand; *aldaba*, a knocker, *aldabada*, a rap with the knocker, and *aldabazo*, a violent rap with the knocker.

258. When a noun with a singular termination denotes several persons or things, it is called a *collective* noun, or noun of multitude; as, *turba*, a crowd; *vacada*, a drove of cows.

259. The ordinary titles of respect corresponding to *Mr.* or *Esq.* in English, are in Spanish *Señor* and *Don;* and those corresponding to *Madam* and *Mrs.*, are *Señora* and *Doña;* and *Miss*, *Señorita*. *Don* and *Doña* never take the article before them, and can be used before Christian names only. *Señor* and *Don* are often used together before the Christian name. The following examples will show the manner in which these words are used:

El Señor Blake es Americano.	Mr. Blake is an American.
Don Diego Ticknor, me alegro mucho de verle.	Mr. James Ticknor, I am very glad to see you.
El Señor Ray. La Señora Ray.	Mr. Ray. Mrs. Ray.
El Señor Cárlos Mason.	Master Charles Mason.
La Señorita Mason.	Miss Mason.
Al Señor Don Diego Harper.	To James Harper, Esq.
Al Señor Juan Harper.	To Mr. John Harper.
Los Señores Don Juan Millon y Don Pablo Surret.	Messrs. John Millon and Paul Surret.
Los Señores Riggs y Tiggs.	Messrs. Riggs and Tiggs.
Da una silla á Doña Sara Ray.	Give a chair to Mrs. Sarah Ray.

(*a.*) The article is never used before these titles except when the persons are spoken of; of course, when persons are addressed, the proper title only is used; as,

Buenas tardes tenga vmd., Señorita Wilson.	I wish you a good evening, Miss Wilson.

(*b.*) *Señor, señora, señorita, señores, señoras, señoritas*, also are used for *sir, madam, miss, gentlemen, ladies, young ladies*, respectively; as,

Buenos dias, señor.	Good morning, sir.
Buenas noches, señores.	Good night, gentlemen.

(*c.*) *Señor* and *señora* are used as an additional mark of respect before the name of a relative in such cases as the following:

¿ Cómo está su *señor* hermano ?	How is your brother?
¿ Cómo está su *señora* madre ?	How is your mother?

☞ A list of nouns which form an exception to the general rules of gender will be found in the Appendix, Number II.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

AGREEMENT AND POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

260. The adjective always must agree in gender and number with the noun to which it belongs; as,

El hombre sábio.	The wise man.
La muger sábia.	The wise woman.
Los hombres sábios.	The wise men.
Las mugeres sábias.	The wise women.

(*a.*) Participles used as adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun to which they belong; as,

El engañado rey.	The deluded king.
La engañada reina.	The deluded queen.
Las engañadas criadas.	The deluded female-servants.

(*b.*) An adjective does not agree with the gender of the title of a person, but with the gender of the person to whom it is applied; as,

Su majestad está *enfermo.*	His majesty is ill.
Su majestad está *enferma.*	Her majesty is ill.

(*c.*) *Nada*, "nothing," requires a masculine adjective; as,

Nada hay límpio.	There-is nothing pure.

(*d.*) Two or more nouns in the singular require the adjective which belongs to them to be in the plural, and if the nouns are of different genders, the adjective must be in the masculine; as,

Juana y María están calladas.	Jane and Mary are silent.
Lucía y Cárlos están cansados.	Lucy and Charles are tired.

(*e.*) When an adjective comes before or after two or more plural nouns of different genders, it must agree in gender with the noun nearest to it; as,

Buenos diccionários y gramáticas.	Good dictionaries and grammars.
Diccionários y gramáticas *buenas.*	Good dictionaries and grammars.

☞ The Spanish Academy recommends that, in cases in which an adjective is to be used with two or more nouns differing in gender and number, it would be better to use a different adjective of similar meaning for every noun, or an adjective which does not change its ending to form its feminine (see 100) for the plural.

261. The material of which a thing is made, as well as the country in which it is made or produced, are seldom used as adjectives, but as a noun preceded by the preposition *de ;* thus,

Hoja de plata.	Silver leaf.
Paño de laña.	Woolen cloth.
Cueros de Méjico.	Mexican hides.
Cerveza de Lóndres.	London beer.

262. The profession or dignity of a person may be qualified by an adjective derived from the name of a nation, or by the name of the nation preceded by the preposition, as above ; thus,

General Mejicano.	Mexican General.
General de España.	Spanish General (general of Spain).

(*a.*) The title of the chief ruler of a country is not qualified by an adjective expressing the nation, but by the name of the country, preceded by the preposition ; as,

El rey de España.	The king of Spain.
La reina de Inglaterra.	The queen of England.
El presidente de los Estados-Unidos.	The president of the United States.

263. Adjectives of both numbers and genders are often used as nouns, being in such cases preceded by the article ; as,

Un rico. Una rica.	A rich (man). A rich (woman).
Los ricos. Las ricas.	The rich (men). The rich (women).
Los doctos.	The learned.

(*a.*) The neuter article (as it is called) *lo*, precedes adjectives in the singular number, used as nouns, when taken in a general sense, without reference to either gender ; as,

Lo escrito.	The written, *i. e.* that which is written.
Lo malo.	The bad, *i. e.* that which is bad.
Lo siguente.	The following, *i. e.* that which follows.

264. Adjectives and participial adjectives are much oftener placed after the noun to which they belong than before it ; as,

Hombre sábio.	A wise man.
Furor poético.	Poetical fury.
Guárdia avanzada.	Advanced guard.

(*a.*) In many cases it is left entirely to the taste of the writer to place the adjective before or after the noun to which it belongs. But cardinal numbers, adjectives expressing some inherent or peculiar quality, habit, or practice of the noun to which they belong, and adjectives employed as particular epithets with a proper name, are generally placed before the noun: so likewise adjectives accented on the antepenult; as,

Una dulce frescura.	A pleasant coolness.
Cristalina água.	Crystaline water.
La blanca nieve.	The white snow.
La tímida oveja.	The timid sheep.
El ambicioso Jefferson.	The ambitious Jefferson.

☞ The above rule is liable to many exceptions. Indeed, no certain rules can be given for the position of adjectives. Attention on the part of the pupil to the practice of the best Castilian writers will prove the best means of teaching him the most proper arrangement for adjectives.*

(*b.*) *Tanto*, as much; *cuanto*, so much; *mucho*, much; *todo*, all; *poco*, little; are always placed before the noun.

(*c.*) In some few cases the same adjective has a different meaning, according as it is placed before or after the noun; as,

Cierta señora.	A *certain* lady.
Cuenta *cierta*.	A true (*certain*) narrative.

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES, ETC.

265. There are some irregular comparatives; as, *mayor*, greater; *mejor*, better; *menor*, smaller; *peor*, worse.

(*a.*) As the superlative-relative is formed by placing the article before the comparative, of course *el mayor* means "the greatest;" *el mejor*, "the best;" *el menor*, "the least;" *el peor*, "the worst."

266. There are some irregular superlatives; as, *máximo*, greatest; *óptimo*, best; *mínimo*, least; *pésimo*, worst; *ínfimo*, lowest.

(*a.*) There are some superlatives in *ísimo* not regularly formed; as, *bonísimo*, very good; *novísimo*, very new; *fortísimo*, very strong; *fidelísimo*, very faithful; *sapientísimo*, very wise; these being the superlatives of the adjectives *bueno, nuevo, fuerte, fiel, sábio.*

(*b.*) There are a few superlatives otherwise irregular; as, *paupérrimo*,

* The adjective is sometimes used after the noun in English; as, an account *current;* the tie *matrimonial;* life *everlasting;* a noun *common;* a verb *active;* page *thirtieth.*

very poor; *miséerrimo*, very miserable; *integérrimo*, very honest; *celebérrimo*, very celebrated; *salubérrimo*, very salubrious; *libérrimo*, very free.

(*c.*) The superlative of the above adjectives can also be formed with *muy;* as, *muy grande*, very great; *muy pobre*, very poor; *muy bueno*, very good, etc. And such as do not already end in *ísimo* or *érrimo*, can have their regular form in *ísimo;* as, *malísimo*, very bad; *poquísimo*, very small, etc.

267. With political or other titles of dignity, *muy* before an adjective expresses somewhat less than the termination *ísimo* affixed to it; thus, *muy ilustre*, very illustrious, is less than *ilustrísimo*, most illustrious.

268. When a superlative relative follows the noun to which it refers it is sufficient that the article be used before the noun, and not repeated before the superlative; as,

Los Catalanes son *los* pueblos mas industriosos de España.	The Catalanians are *the* people most industrious of Spain.

☞ In English we should render the latter clause of the above example, "the most industrious people in Spain."

269. One noun can be compared with another in the same manner as adjectives; as,

Juan es mas niño que su nieto.	John is more (*of a*) child than his grandson.

270. In forming a comparison, in affirmative sentences, *de* is used instead of *que* before an adjective of quantity or number, or before the pronouns *what* or *that which*, expressed or understood; as,

Mi hijo tiene mas *de* seis años.	My son is more *than* six years old.
Juan tiene mas *de* lo que necesita.	John has more *than* what he needs.

☞ These sentences rendered literally would be, "my son has more *of* six years;" and "John has more *of* what he needs."

(*a.*) If the sentence be negative, *de* or *que* may either of them be used before an adjective of quantity or number, or the pronouns *what* or *that which;* as,

Mi hijo no tiene mas *que* (or *de*) seis años.	My son is not more *than* six years old.

271. When the adjective is placed after a proper name, as a distinguishing epithet, such as "Tarquin the *Proud*," the article precedes it in Spanish as in English; as,

Alexandro *el* Magno.	Alexander *the* Great.
Guzman *el* Bueno.	Guzman *the* Good.

(*a.*) Numeral adjectives of order form an exception to the above rule; as,

Cárlos Doce.	Charles *the* twelfth.
Francisco Primero.	Francis *the* first.

272. The preposition *de* is generally used after an adjective or participle which is followed by a noun expressive of the cause, manner, means, or instrument, and also after adjectives denoting distance; as,

Agudo *de* ingénio.	Sharp *in* intellect.
Apurado *de* médios.	Exhausted *in* means.
Ageno *de* verdad. Bajo *de* cuerpo.	Foreign *to* truth. Low *in* stature.
Boto *de* punto.	Blunt *at* the point.
Curtido *del* sol.	Tanned *by* the sun.
Dotado *de* ciéncia.	Endowed *with* learning.
Escaso *de* médios.	Limited *in* means.
Impelido *de* la necessidad.	Impelled *by* necessity.
Molido *de* andar.	Fatigued *with* walking.
Sordo *de* un oido. Palido *de* miedo.	Deaf *with* one ear. Pale *with* fear.
Defectos comunes *de* su juventud.	Faults common *to* his youth.
Ancho *de* boca.	Wide *in* the mouth (wide-mouthed).
Angosto *de* manga.	Narrow *in* the sleeve (narrow-sleeved).
Blanco *de* cutis.	White *in* skin (white-complexioned).
Palido *de* semblante.	Pale *in* the face (pale-faced).
Aprobado *de* cirujano.	Approved *as* a surgeon.

(*a.*) The preposition *in* after a superlative is to be rendered into Spanish by *de;* as,

Los mas sábios hombres *del* mundo.	The wisest men *in* the world.

273. *Tanto*, and not *tan*, is used before a noun in comparisons of equality (see 104); as,

María tiene *tanta* prudéncia como Juana.	Mary has *as much* prudence as Jane.

☞ For the idiomatic use of some prepositions after certain adjectives, see Appendix, Number III.

LIST OF NUMERALS.

274. The numeral adjectives are divided into cardinal and ordinal. The *cardinal* numerals express numbers; as, *one, two, three;* and the *ordinal* numerals express order or rank; as, *first, second, third.*

(*a.*) There are also some numeral nouns, such as the *collective* numbers, *una docena*, a dozen; *una vcintena*, a score; and the *fractional* numbers, *la mitad*, the half; *un cuarto*, a fourth.

275. The following is a list of the cardinal and ordinal numeral adjectives :

CARDINAL NUMBERS.		ORDINAL NUMBERS.	
Uno, una,	*One.*	Primero,	*First.*
Dos,	*Two.*	Segundo,	*Second.*
Tres,	*Three.*	Tercero,	*Third.*
Cuatro,	*Four.*	Cuarto,	*Fourth.*
Cinco,	*Five.*	Quinto,	*Fifth.*
Seis,	*Six.*	Sexto, *or*, sesto,	*Sixth.*
Siete,	*Seven.*	Séptimo,	*Seventh.*
Ocho,	*Eight.*	Octavo,	*Eighth.*
Nueve,	*Nine.*	Noveno, *or*, Noño,	*Ninth.*
Diez,	*Ten.*	Décimo,	*Tenth.*
Once,	*Eleven.*	Undécimo,	*Eleventh.*
Doce,	*Twelve.*	Duodécimo,	*Twelfth.*
Trece,	*Thirteen.*	Décimo tércio,	*Thirteenth.*
Catorce,	*Fourteen.*	Décimo cuarto,	*Fourteenth.*
Quince,	*Fifteen.*	Décimo quinto,	*Fifteenth.*
Diez y seis,	*Sixteen.*	Décimo sesto,	*Sixteenth.*
Diez y siete,	*Seventeen.*	Décimo séptimo,	*Seventeenth.*
Diez y ocho,	*Eighteen.*	Décimo octavo,	*Eighteenth.*
Diez y nueve,	*Nineteen.*	Décimo nono,	*Nineteenth.*
Veinte,	*Twenty.*	Vigésimo,	*Twentieth.*
Veinte y uno,*	*Twenty-one.*	Vigésimo primo,	*Twenty-first.*
Veinte y dos,	*Twenty-two.*	Vigésimo segundo	*Twenty-second.*
Veinte y tres,	*Twenty-three.*	Vigésimo tércio,	*Twenty-third.*
Veinte y cuatro,	*Twenty-four.*	Vigésimo cuarto,	*Twenty-fourth.*
Veinte y cinco,	*Twenty-five.*	Vigésimo quinto,	*Twenty-fifth.*
Veinte y seis,	*Twenty-six.*	Vigésimo sesto,	*Twenty-sixth.*
Veinte y siete,	*Twenty-seven.*	Vigésimo séptimo	*Twenty-seventh.*
Veinte y ocho,	*Twenty-eight.*	Vigésimo octavo,	*Twenty-eighth.*
Veinte y nueve,	*Twenty-nine.*	Vigésimo nono,	*Twenty-ninth.*
Treinta,	*Thirty.*	Trigésimo,	*Thirtieth.*
Cuarenta,	*Forty.*	Cuadragésimo,	*Fortieth.*
Cincuenta,	*Fifty.*	Quincuagesimo,	*Fiftieth.*
Sesenta,	*Sixty.*	Sexagésimo,	*Sixtieth.*
Setenta,	*Seventy.*	Septuagésimo,	*Seventieth.*
Ochenta,	*Eighty.*	Octogésimo,	*Eightieth.*
Noventa,	*Ninety.*	Nonagésimo,	*Ninetieth.*
Ciento,	*A hundred.*	Centésimo,	*Hundredth.*

* Sometimes found written as one word, as *veintiuno*, *veintidos*, etc.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.		ORDINAL NUMBERS.	
Docientos,	*Two hundred.*	Docentésimo,	*Two hundredth.*
Trecientos,	*Three hundred.*	Trecentésimo,	*Three hundredth*
Cuatrocientos,	*Four hundred.*	Cuadragéntesimo,	*Four hundredth.*
Quinientos,	*Five hundred.*	Quingentésimo,	*Five hundredth.*
Seiscientos,	*Six hundred.*	Sexentésimo,	*Six hundredth.*
Setecientos,	*Seven hundred.*	Septengentésimo,	*Seven hundredth.*
Ochocientos,	*Eight hundred.*	Octogentésimo,	*Eight hundredth.*
Novecientos,	*Nine hundred.*	Nonagentésimo,	*Nine hundredth.*
Mil,	*A Thousand.*	Milésimo,	*Thousandth.*

276. The cardinal numbers for eleven hundred, twelve hundred, two thousand, three thousand, etc., are *mil y ciento, mil y docientos, dos mil, tres mil;* for a hundred thousand, two hundred thousand, etc., *cien mil, docientos mil;* for a million, two millions, etc., *un millon, dos millones. Millon* is not an adjective, but a noun.

277. *Uno* is declinable, changing the final *o* into *a* whenever it refers to a feminine noun. All of the cardinal numbers ending in *ientos* form their feminine in *as;* as, *docientas mugeres,* two hundred women. The rest are undeclinable.

(*a.*) All the ordinal numbers change the last *o* into *a* to form their feminine.

(*b.*) *Uno* drops the last letter when it comes before a noun. (See 101.)

(*c.*) *Ciento* drops its last syllable when it comes immediately before a noun (see 101, *a*), but not when any other word comes between it and the noun; thus, *cien soldados,* a hundred soldiers; and *ciento y tres soldados,* a hundred and three soldiers.

(*d.*) *Primero* and *tercero,* among the ordinals, drop the final *o* before a noun. (See 101.)

278. The cardinal numbers (and not the ordinal) are generally used in Spanish to express order or rank, *when the number exceeds nine;* when *under nine,* the ordinals are employed; thus,

Enrique Octavo.	Henry Eighth (the Eighth).
Cárlos Doce.	Charles Twelve (the Twelfth).
Tomo diez y ocho.	Volume eighteen (the eighteenth).
Página septima.	Page seventh (the seventh).

279. In mentioning the days of the month, the Spanish use the cardinal adjectives and not the ordinal, as in English, except in the first day, in which *primero* and not *un* is used; thus,

El primero de Enero.	The first of January.
El dos de Febrero.	The two (second) of February.
El tres de Marzo.	The three (third) of March.
El diez y seis de Mayo.	The sixteen (sixteenth) of May.

(*a.*) In dates where figures are used, the article is omitted, and except the first day of a month, the cardinal numbers are used; as,

Madrid, 1° de Júnio de 1845.	Madrid, June 1st, 1845.
Paris, 4 de Júlio de 1846.	Paris, July 4th, 1846.
Lóndres, 27 de Agosto de 1847.	London, August 27th, 1847.

280. The hour of the day is expressed by the ordinal numbers preceded by the definite article, which must in such a case agree with *horas*, hours, understood (unless the hour be one, when it agrees with the singular *hora*); thus,

¿Que hora es?	What o'clock is it?
Es la una.	It is one o'clock.
Son las dos.	It is two o'clock.
Son las diez.	It is ten.
Son las tres ménos diez minutos.	It is ten minutes before three.
Son las ocho y veinte minutos.	It is twenty minutes after eight.

☞ Literally, the above expressions mean, "What hour is it?" "It is the one"—"they are the two"—"they are the ten"—"they are the three less ten minutes"—"they are the eight and twenty minutes."

281. In speaking of the age of persons or things, the verb *tener* is employed in Spanish; as,

Cárlos tiene doce años.	Charles is twelve years old.
El Señor Tournay no tiene cincuenta años.	Mr. Tournay is not fifty years of age.

☞ Literally, "Charles has twelve years," and "Mr. Tournay has not fifty years."

282. In Spanish it is not said, in expressing measurement, "twenty feet high," or "ten feet long;" but "twenty feet of high," or "of height," "ten feet of long," or "of length;" as,

La casa tenía sesenta codos de largo, y veinte codos de ancho, y treinta codos de altura.	The house was (had) sixty cubits long, and twenty cubits wide, and thirty cubits in height.

(*a.*) In comparative sentences, to express difference, in English it may be said, "she is taller than her sister *by* the whole head." In Spanish, this sentence would be, "*ella es mas alta que su hermana de toda la cabeza*," *i. e.* "she is more tall than her sister *of* all the head."

OF THE PRONOUN.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

283. The personal pronouns of the nominative case, when used, may come either before or after the verb,

except the latter be in the imperative mood, or the sentence be interrogative, in which cases the nominative generally follows the verb; as, *viva ella*, "may she live;" *¿ha hablado él?* "has he spoken?"

(*a.*) As the verb-ending generally indicates of itself the person and number that its nominative must be, the nominative personal pronouns are seldom expressed in Spanish, unless when necessary to distinguish the persons or genders, or to be emphatic, or when a relative pronoun is to follow; as,

El y ella son prudentes.	He and she are prudent.
Nosotros seramos castigados, y no vosotros.	We shall-be punished, and not you.
El que tiene dinero, tiene cuidados.	He who has money, has cares.

284. The pronoun *se* "oneself," is sometimes used with a reflective or reciprocal verb (see 136 and 169), and then it is to be rendered in English by *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*, or *one another*, as the sense may require; as,

Ellas *se* aman.	They love *themselves* (or, they love *one another*).

(*a.*) The first objective case of all the personal pronouns is also employed with reflective or reciprocal verbs; as,

Nosotros *nos* aman.	We love *ourselves* (or, *each other*).
Yo *me* alabo.	I praise *myself*.
Yo no quero alabar*me*.	I wish not to-praise *myself*.

(*b.*) The pronoun *se* is also frequently used with a verb in the active voice, of the third person singular or plural, to express the passive voice (see 173); as,

La casa *se* quemó.	The house was burned (the house burnt *itself*).

(*c.*) The first-objective case of all the personal pronouns is sometimes used with a reflective verb in a passive sense; as,

Yo *me* admiro.	I am surprised (I surprise *myself*).
Vosotros *os* alegrais.	You are rejoiced (you rejoice *yourselves*).

(*d.*) Strictly speaking, *se* can not be used in the nominative case, and should therefore always be considered as governed by a verb. Thus, in such sentences as *se dice*, *se cree*, *se piensa*, the literal rendering is, "it-says *itself*," "it-believes *itself*," "it-thinks *itself*," or (see 284, *b*) "it is said," "it is believed," "it is thought." Still, in translating, it is often more convenient to imagine *se* as an indefinite pronoun of the nomina-

tive case, used in the sense of *they;* as, *se dice,* "they say," that is, "*people* say;" *se piensa,* "they think."

(*e.*) *Se* and other pronouns of the first-objective case are often used in Spanish with neuter and active-intransitive verbs reflectively, and in such cases seem redundant in English; as,

De allí *se* pasó á la ciudad.	Thence he-passed (*himself*) to the city.
Yo *me* arrepiento. *Se* arrepiente.	I repent (*myself*). He-repents (*himself*).

(*f.*) *Se* is sometimes used in the sense of *to-him, to-her, to-them, to-you* (*i. e. to your worship*). This use of *se* takes place only when another personal pronoun of the objective case and of the third person immediately follows it; as,

Tengo una cuchara; *se* la daré.*	I-have a spoon; I-will-give it *to-him.*

(*g.*) When, in cases coming under the above rule, the pronoun *se* does not denote with clearness the number or gender of the noun for which it is employed, the second-objective is also used; as,

Se lo daré *á ella, á ellos, á vmd.*	I-will-give it *to-her, to-them, to-you.*
Se la mandó dar *á ellos.*	He-commanded it to-be-given *to-them.*

285. The first-objective case of the Spanish personal pronouns is very often to be rendered in English by the preposition "*to*" and the pronoun; as, *to-me, to-you, to-him, to-her, to-them,* etc. (see 114, and 114, *b*), and it is then equivalent to the second-objective, *á mí, á vosotros, á él, á ella, á ellos,* etc.; and in some cases some other preposition than "*to*" is used in rendering the first-objective into English; as,

Juan *me* dijo.	John said *to-me.*
Te lo pido.	I-ask it *of-thee* (or, *from-thee*).
Se *lo* agradezco.	I-thank him *for-it.*
Nos *lo* suplica.	He-beseeches us *for-it.*

(*a.*) The second-objective with the preposition *á* is not used, except when the same verb governs two or more pronouns in the objective case, or when it is designed to be distinct or particularly emphatic; as,

Juan dió dinero á él, á ella, y á tí.	John gave money to him, to her, and to thee.
Yo ví á vosotros y á ellos.	I saw you and them.
Juan viva, dijeron ellos á ella.	John lives, said they to her.

* We can not say *le la daré,* "I-will-give it to-him," but *se la daré.*

(*b.*) To add more clearness or strength to a sentence, both objective cases of pronouns are often employed; the second-objective case then being placed either before the first-objective or else after the verb, except the first objective comes after the verb (as in the case of infinitives, gerunds, and imperatives; see 116), when the second-objective must come after the first; as,

A mí me dijeron, Me dijeron *á mí*.	They told me.
Decirme *á mí*.	To-tell me.
Diciendole *á ella*.	Telling her.
Díme *á mí*.	Tell me.

(*c.*) When the sentence may contain a noun in the objective case governed by the preposition *á*, a pronoun of the second-objective case is often used in Spanish, and is not to be translated in English; as,

A Dios nádie *le* vió jamas.	God no-man saw (*him*) ever; *i. e.* no-one ever saw God.

286. *Mismo*, meaning *same* or *self*, is often used with the nominative personal pronouns; thus, *yo mismo*, I myself; *nosotros mismos*, we ourselves, etc.; and also with the second-objective; and must always agree in gender and number with the noun to which the pronoun refers; as,

¿ Qué dices de tí mismo ?	What sayest-thou of thyself ?
La muger hablará por sí misma.	The woman will speak for herself.

(*a.*) *Mismo* is often used with nouns also; as, *la misma María*, "Mary herself;" *los mismos soldados*, "the very soldiers," or, "the soldiers themselves."

287. When by the pronoun *it* is meant any thing to which we can not apply a gender, *ello* is used. Its first-objective *lo* is employed by the same rule; thus if it be said, "he has been told to love his enemies, and he does *it*," the pronoun *it* refers to the clause of the sentence, "*to love his enemies*," and of course has no gender. In such a case, *lo* (not *le* nor *la*) would be used.

(*a.*) *Lo* is used in Spanish for *so* in English, when the latter means *it*; as,

Vmd. piensa que ella es rica, pero no *lo* es.	You think that she is rich, but she-is not *so*.
Si *lo* es.	If it-be *so*.
Diego *lo* hace.	James does *so*.

(*b.*) *Lo* is often used for *le* when the latter refers to a masculine noun and is immediately governed by a verb (though this use of *lo* is not grammatically correct); as,

Espero que *lo* véo en perfecta salud.	I hope that I see *him* in perfect health.

THE PECULIAR USE OF OTHER PRONOUNS.

288. The demonstrative pronouns *este* and *aquel* are often used without any noun, and in such a case they have the sense of "*this-one*," and "*that-one*," or "*the-one*;" as,

Este es *aquel* de quien yo dije.	*This-one* is *the-one* of whom I said; or, *This* is *he* of whom I said.

(*a.*) *Todo aquel que* is used in the sense of "*every one who*;" as,

Todo aquel que bebe de esta água.	*Every one who* drinks of this water

289. *Quien* often means *he-who*, *she-who one-who*; and *quienes*, *they-who*; as,

Quien calla otorga.	*He-who* is silent, consents.
María fué *quien* lo dijo.	Mary was *she-who* said it.
Porque los enseñaba, como *quien* tiene autoridad.	For he-taught them as *one-who* has authority.

290. Such expressions as, "*it is I*," "*it is thou*," "*it is he*," "*it is she*," "*it is we*," etc., are rendered in Spanish by "*I am*," "*thou art*," "*he is*," "*she is*," "*we are*," etc.; as,

Yo soy. Ella es.	It is I. It is she.
Ellos son. ¿ Es vmd.?	It is they. Is it you?

291. *De él*, *de ella*, *de ello*, *de este*, etc., were anciently written *del*, *della*, *dello*, *deste*.

(*a.*) *De* and *él*, and *á* and *él*, are contracted into *del* and *al* when serving as the antecedent of the relative pronoun *que*; as,

Del que sigue.	*Of-that* which follows.
Pedro dió el libro *al* que vimos.	Peter gave the book *to-him* whom we saw.

OF THE VERB.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT.

292. The verb agrees, in number and person, with its subject or nominative, expressed or understood; as,

Soy general.	I-*am* a general.
Ella *ama* la verdad.	She *loves* the truth.
Los Americanos *aman* las riquezas.	The Americans *love* riches.

293. When a verb has two or more subjects, each in the singular, it is put in the plural; as,

Mi padre y mi madre me *aman*.	My father and my mother *love* me.
Pedro ó Diego *vendran*.*	Peter or James *will-come*.

294. When a verb has two or more subjects of different persons, it is put in the plural, and agrees with the first person in preference to the other two; as,

Mi hermano y yo *estamos* malos.	My brother and I (*i. e.* we) *are* ill.
Tú y yo *estamos* buenos.	Thou and I (*i. e.* we) *are* well.

(*a.*) If the second person should be used with the third, without any first person, the verb must be in the second person plural; as,

Tú y ella *estais* buenas.	Thou and she (*i. e.* you) *are* well.

295. When a relative pronoun is the subject of the verb, the latter must agree, in person and number, with the noun or pronoun to which the relative relates; as,

Yo soy que *hablo* contigo.	It is I who *speak* with-thee.
Vosotros que *sois* sábios.	Ye who *are* wise.

296. A collective noun, taken in a general sense, that is, a noun representing the whole of the persons or things mentioned, requires the verb to be of the singular number; as,

El ejército de los Caldéos *persiguió* al rey.	The army of the Chaldeans *pursued* the king.

(*a.*) A subject which is a collective noun, taken in a partitive sense, that is, representing a part of the whole of the collective noun, and conveying plurality of idea, requires the verb to be in the plural; as,

Parte *creïan* lo que les decía, y parte no lo *creïan*.	Part *believed* what he-told them, and part *believed* it not.

---

* This is different, as will be perceived, from the rule in English syntax, which requires two singular nouns connected by a *disjunctive* conjunction, to have the verb agree with them in the singular form.

☞ This last rule is not always followed even by the best Spanish authors.

297. In cases in which a verb appears to have two subjects, it must agree with that noun to which it seems more particularly to belong; as,

Los gages del pecado *son* muerte.	The wages of sin *are* (is) death.

USE OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF VERBS.

OF THE INFINITIVE, GERUND, AND PARTICIPLE.

298. The present tense of the infinitive expresses affirmation in an indefinite manner, without reference to number or person; as, *decir*, to say; *dar*, to give.

(*a.*) The infinitive is used in Spanish when in English the present participle, preceded by a preposition, is used; as,

Vengo de *comer*.	I-come from *dining* (to-dine) *i. e.* from *dinner*.
En *derramar* torrentes de sangre.	In *spilling* (to-spill) torrents of blood.
Trabaja sin *cesar*.	He-labors without *ceasing* (to-cease).

(*b.*) The infinitive is frequently used as a verbal noun or present participle, by placing the masculine definite article before it (see 251); as,

El *murmurar* de las fuentes.	The *murmuring* (the to-murmur) of the fountains.
Al *caer* del dia.	At-the *fall* (at-the to-fall) of-the day.
El leer me gusta.	*Reading* (the to-read) pleases me.

(*c.*) The infinitive is often rendered in English by the present participle, when in Spanish it is governed by another verb; as,

La oimos *cantar*.	We-heard her *singing* (to-sing).
Le ví *correr*.	I-saw him *run*, or *running* (to-run).

299. In Spanish, the gerund is employed in the sense of the present participle in English; as,

Estando enfermo el presidente.	The president *being* sick.
Habiendo conspirado unos caballeros.	Some cavaliers *having* conspired.

Queriendo seguir *dispensándolos*,* plantó árboles frutales.	*Desiring* to-continue *dispensing*-them, he-planted fruitful trees.
María está *hablando*.	Mary is *speaking*.

(*a.*) In sentences such as, "charity is increased *by cultivating* it," it is allowed in Spanish to use either the gerund without the preposition, or the infinitive mood preceded by the preposition *con;* as,

Nuestros deberes se hacen agradables *cumpliéndolos;* or, Nuestros deberes se hacen agradables *con cumplirlos*.†	Our duties are rendered agreeable by *performing* them.

(*b.*) Instead of the gerund of the past, the gerund of the present is sometimes employed, preceded by the preposition *en;* as,

En oyendo esto, salió para Bóston. (Or)	*On hearing* this, he set-out for Boston.
Habiendo oido esto, salió para Bóston.	*Having heard* this, he set-out for Boston.

(*c.*) The gerund in Spanish is often employed in a manner that requires the adverb *while* to be used in translating it into English; as,

El que vive en deleites, *viviendo* está muerte.	He who lives in pleasures, *while living* is dead.

300. The past participle is indeclinable when used to form the compound tenses (see 167) with the auxiliary verb *haber;* as,

Ella ha *hablado*.	She has *spoken*.
Las mugeres han *hablado*.	The women have *spoken*.

(*a.*) When the past participle is used with any other verb than *haber*, it is declinable; as,

Ella ha sido *seducida*.	She has been *deceived*.
Mis caballos estan *lastimados*.	My horses are *injured*.
Mis hijas se hallan *molestadas*.	My daughters find themselves *molested*.
Mis hermanas quedan *satisfechas*.	My sisters remain *satisfied*.
Ellas van *satisfechas*.	They go *satisfied*.
Ella anda *pasmada* de mis palabras.	She walks *enraptured* with my words.
Tiene *escritas* tres cartas.	He-has three letters *written*.
Lleva *escritas* tres cartas.	He-carries *written* three letters.

(*b.*) These last two examples, it will be perceived, require the partici-

* See 116. † See 116.

ple to agree with the noun governed (*cartas*). *Tener* and *llevar* are, as above, sometimes used as a kind of auxiliary verbs, and can always be rendered by "*have;*" thus each of these examples may be translated "he-has written three letters."

(*c.*) The past participle is in Spanish used with a noun or pronoun in the case absolute; thus, *hallado* means "*found,*" and absolutely, "*being found;*" *enviado* means "*sent,*" and absolutely, "*being sent;*" *recibido* means "*received*" and "*being received.*" In general the participle is placed before the noun of the case absolute, with which it agrees (though the rules of Spanish construction admit of its being placed after the noun); as,

Tomada Vera-Cruz, el General Scott salió para Jalapa.	Vera Cruz *being taken,* General Scott set-out for Jalapa.

OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

301. The present tense expresses an existing state or an action occurring at the time in which we are speaking; as,

Mi hermano *escribe.*	My brother *writes.*
Estas doncellas *son amadas.*	These maidens *are beloved.*

(*a.*) The verb *estar* can be used with the gerund in Spanish, as in English the verb *to be* with the present participle; as,

Juan *está leyendo.*	John *is reading.*
Ellos *están cantando.*	They *are singing.*

(*b.*) The verbs *ir* (to go) and *venir* (to come) do not admit of the verb *estar* coming before their gerund as in the above rule. Thus we can not say in Spanish *yo estoy yendo* and *yo estoy viniendo,* but *yo voy* and *yo vengo* ("*I go*" and "*I come*"), "I am-going" and "I am-coming."

302. The imperfect tense is used to express what is past, and, at the same time, present, with regard to something else which is past; that is, it *is a past tense which was still present at the time spoken of.* It may always be employed in Spanish when in English the word "*was*" can be used with the present participle, or "*used to*" can be employed with the verb, or when we speak of habitual actions; as,

Ella *escribía* entónces.	She *was-writing* then.
Seneca *razonaba* bien.	Seneca *reasoned* well.
Cervántes *era* un escritor elegante.	Cervantes *was* an elegant writer.

Neron *era* un tirano.	Nero *was* a tyrant.
Cuando fuí niño, *hablaba* como niño.	When I-was a child, I-*spoke* as a child.
Ellos *marchaban* por las calles cuando los vimos.	They *were-marching* through the streets when we-saw them.

☞ It is evident that "Seneca *reasoned* well" means "Seneca *used to reason* (or *was accustomed to reason*) well." So "they walked rapidly while she looked," means "they *were-walking* rapidly while she *was-looking*," and of course, with this meaning, *walked* and *looked* would be put in the imperfect tense in Spanish. So "I went to the opera three times a week last summer; *i. e.* "*I was in the habit* of going," etc.

303. The perfect-definite tense shows the action or being affirmed by the verb, *to be completed*, at a time of which nothing more remains, often specified by an adverb or some other circumstance expressed or understood; as,

Escribió una carta ayer.	He-*wrote* a letter yesterday.
Recibió dos cartas la semana pasada.	He-*received* two letters last week.
El presidente no le *perdonó*.	The president *pardoned* him not.
Diego vivía cuando le *ví*.	James was-living when I-*saw* him.
Luego que Juan se lo *dijo*, *lloraron*.	As soon as John *told* it to-them, they *wept*.

(*a*.) As both the imperfect and perfect-definite in Spanish are included in English in what is called the imperfect tense, it is important that the learner should be able to distinguish the use of each in Spanish. When an action or event is entirely past and finished, the perfect-definite is used; but when it is meant to say that the action or event was taking place at a certain time, and that it is or may be still continued, the imperfect must be used. Thus, "*los soldados* marchaban *por la ciudad*" means "the soldiers *were-marching* through the city," and so far as the word *marchaban* is concerned, they may be marching still; but "*los soldados* marcharon *por la ciudad*" means "the soldiers *marched* through the city," and from the tense employed are marching no longer. (See also 302.)

304. The perfect-indefinite is used to express an action or event, which, though entirely past, has taken place during a period of time (expressed or understood) of which the present forms a part, or at a time designated in an indeterminate manner; as,

He hablado á Rodrigo esta semana.	I-*have spoken* to Roderick this week.
Han comido pan hoy.	They-*have eaten* bread to-day.
Vmd. *ha estado* muy enfermo.	You *have been* very sick

(*a.*) The past actions of persons or things still in existence, if no particular time be mentioned, are expressed in this tense; as,

El General *ha tomado* varias ciudades.	The General *has taken* several cities.

(*b.*) The only cases in which the English perfect tense and the Spanish perfect-indefinite do not correspond are such as the following: "It *has been* snowing these three hours;" "he *has been* in Mexico for these ten years;" which in Spanish would be, "*hace tres horas que* nieva" (see 218, *c*); "*hace diez años que* estoy *en Méjico*," which mean literally "it-is (see 218) three hours that (since) it-*snows*;" "it-is ten years that (since) I-*am* in Mexico." If the sentence be negative, the perfect-indefinite is employed; as, "*hace ocho dias que* no *la* hemos visto," "it-is eight days that we-*have not seen* her," that is, "we have not seen her for eight days." If the action or event be completed, the perfect-definite must be used; as, "*hace diez años que el rey le* perdonó," "it-is ten years that (since) the king *pardoned* him."

(*c.*) *Hay* (or *ha*) is sometimes used instead of *hace* in cases like the examples in the last paragraph; as "hay *pocos dias que entré en el cuarto de mi amigo*," "it has few days that (since) I-entered into the room of my friend," that is, "a few days ago, I-entered my friend's room." *Hay* is used at the beginning and *ha* at the end of a phrase; as, "*hay pocos dias*," or, "*pocas dias ha*."

(*d.*) In some instances we may, both in Spanish and English, use either the perfect-indefinite, or if we are sure that the action is completed, the perfect-definite; as, *comí pan hoy*, "I-ate bread to-day," or *he comido pan hoy*, "I have eaten bread to-day."

305. The first-pluperfect is used to express an affirmation of what is past and took place before some other past action or event or time, expressed or understood; as,

Juan ya *había comido* cuando llegó Ricardo.	John already *had dined* when Richard arrived.

(*a.*) Whenever the former action or event is mentioned as still continuing when the latter occurred, the imperfect tense is employed in Spanish to denote the former; as,

Había (218) tres horas que ella *estaba pintando* cuando llegó Pedro.	It-was three hours that she *was painting* when Peter arrived.

☞ This last example means in English "she *had been* painting three hours when Peter arrived;" and the use of the imperfect tense

shows that she was employed in painting (that is, had not finished) at the time of Peter's arrival.

306. The second-pluperfect is used to express a past action or event that took place immediately before another action or event also past. It is never used except after some of the adverbs of time; *cuando*, "when;" *así que*, "as soon as;" *no bien*, "no sooner," "but just;" *apénas*, "scarcely;" *luego que*, "immediately after;" *despues que*, "soon after;" as,

Cuando hube visto al muger, dije.	*When* I-*had seen* the woman, I said.
Apénas hubo salido cuando se cayó la casa.	*Scarcely had*-he *gone-out* when the house fell.
No bien lo *hubimos hallado*, cuando lo perdimos.	*No sooner had*-we *found* it, when (than) we-lost it.

307. The first-future tense affirms what is yet to be or to take place at a future time (mentioned or not); as,

Seré presidente.	I-*shall-be* president.
Lucía *vendrá* mañana.	Lucy *will-come* to-morrow.

308. The second-future tense affirms something future that will have taken place before or at the time of some other future action or event, or determinate time; as,

Habré escrito esta carta ántes que Juan llegue.	I *shall-have written* this letter before John may-arrive.
Habrá acabado á las tres.	He-*will-have finished* at three o'clock.

(*a.*) Sometimes in Spanish the first-future is used instead of the present, and the second-future instead of the perfect-indefinite, when something present or past is mentioned of which the speaker is not *entirely certain;* as, "*ahora nos* dirá *lo que* habrá visto," "now he-*will-tell* us that which he-*shall-have seen*," meaning "now he *perhaps* tells us what he *perhaps* has seen." When, however, the speaker is *certain*, then he would express himself thus: "*ahora nos* dice *lo que* ha visto," "now he-*tells* us what he-*has-seen*."

(*b.*) The second-future in English is sometimes rendered in Spanish by the present tense in a sentence like the following: "*mañana hará diez años que* vivo *en Nueva-York*," "to-morrow it-will-be ten years that I-*live* in New York," meaning "I *shall have lived* in New York ten years to-morrow.

OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

309. The imperative is that mood which commands, exhorts, or entreats; as,

*Hacédl*o (116).	*Do*-it.
*Veamos*los.	*Let*-us-*see*-them.
*Tráiga*melos vmd.	*Bring*-them-to-me.

(*a.*) The imperative mood is not used in the first person singular; nor is it used in Spanish for *forbidding*, that is, *it is not employed with a negative adverb*, but the persons of the present subjunctive are used when a *negative* command or a prohibition is expressed; as,

No temas.	Fear not (*i. e.* mayest thou not fear).
No temais.	Fear not (*i. e.* may ye not fear).

(*b.*) The *s* of the first person plural and the *d* of the second are suppressed before *nos* and *os;* as,

*Congratulémo*nos.	Let us congratulate ourselves.
*Congratuláo*s.	Congratulate yourselves.

(*c.*) The *s* of the first person plural of the tenses of the indicative mood is suppressed when the reflective pronoun comes after it (see 113, *a*); as,

*Amamo*nos.	We-love ourselves.

(*d.*) When the imperative is negative in English, as the subjunctive is employed in Spanish, the pronouns of the first-objective case (see 116) are not joined to it, but come before it; as,

No lo *hagas*	*Do* (thou) it not.
No me lo *traigais.*	*Bring* (ye) it not to-me.
No lo *haga* ella.	*Let* her not *do* it.

(*e.*) *Que* is sometimes used before the persons of the imperative mood; as,

Que uno de nosotros *vaya.*	*Let* one of us *go* (that one of us *may-go*).

(*f.*) The persons of the imperative, except the second persons, singular and plural, are to be rendered into English by "may" or "let;" as, "bendiga*nos el Señor,*" "*may* the Lord *bless* us;" "vaya *Juan,*" "*let* John *go.*" But *vmd.*, with its objective cases, although of the third person, is to be rendered as the second person; as, "venga *vmd. conmi-*

go," "*come* with-me" (*let* your-worship *come* with-me); "alábese *vmd.*," "*praise* yourself" (*let* your-worship *praise* himself).*

OF THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

310. The tenses of the subjunctive mood differ in signification from those of the indicative only in expressing what they affirm in a *conditional* or *doubtful* manner, while the tenses of the indicative express certainty. Whenever, therefore, there is no doubt about what we affirm, we must use the tenses of the indicative. Thus, if we say "*aunque Roderigo* habla," "though Roderick *speaks*," by using the indicative mood we show that there is no uncertainty about Roderick's speaking. But if we say "*aunque Roderigo* hable," "though Roderick *may-speak*," we show, by using the subjunctive mood, that it is not certain that Roderick will speak.

311. The present tense of the subjunctive affirms some doubtful action or event that *may* take place, and is generally preceded by some conjunction or conjunctive phrase; as,

Aunque sea así.	*Though* it-*may-be* so.
Estáte allí *hasta que* yo te lo *diga*.	Remain there *until* I *may-tell* it to-thee.
Hacéd esto *para que vean* vuestras buenas obras.	Do this *in order that* they-*may-see* your good works.
Que vivamos ó que muramos, del Señor somos.	*Whether* we-*may-live* or *whether* we-*may-die*, we are the Lord's.

(*a.*) As futurity is implied in the present tense of the subjunctive, the first-future of the subjunctive may be used in its place; thus we may say, "*aunque lloremos*," "though we-*may-weep*;" or "*aunque lloraremos*," "though *we-should-weep*." The present may, therefore, be used instead of the future, and the future instead of the present, unless the conjunction *si* (if) be employed, in which case the present subjunctive can not be used.

(*b.*) The relative pronouns are generally followed by the present or some other tense of the subjunctive, when the sentence is interrogative or negative, or expresses a *doubt*, *wish*, or *condition*; as,

* In both Spanish and English the future is sometimes used as a command; as, *no matarás*, "thou shalt not kill," *i. e.* "do not kill," or "do not commit murder."

No conozco una sola muger, *cuya* alma *sea* mas sensible que la de la Señora Loader.	I-know not a single woman *whose* soul (*is*) *may-be* more sensible than that of Mrs. Loader.

(*c*.) Words which in English are compounds of *ever*, such as *quien-quiera*, "whoever;" *cualquiera*, "whosoever," "whichsoever;" *siempre que*, "whenever;" *por mas que*, "however;" *por mucho que*, "whatever;" in Spanish generally require the present or some of the tenses of the subjunctive; as,

Cualquier cosa que *vea* vmd.	*Whatever* thing that you *may-see*.
Por grande que *sea* tu mérito.	*However* great that thy merit *may-be*.

312. The imperfect tense of the subjunctive affirms an action or event of a doubtful or contingent kind as having to be, or to be done, or as conceived by the mind as having taken place at some time under certain conditions; as,

Juan *leería*, si *tuviera* libros, or, Juan *leería*, si *tuviese* libros.	John *would-read*, if-he-should-have (if he had) books.
Quisiera que mi madre lo *comiese*.	I-*would-like* (I-wish) that my mother *would-eat*-it.

313. There are in Spanish three forms of the imperfect subjunctive, one ending with *ra* (in the first person singular), another with *ría*, and the third with *se*. Each of these forms is generally to be rendered in English by some one of the auxiliaries *should*, *would*, *might* or *could*, as the sense may require. These forms of the imperfect are thus used:

314. The form ending with *se* is employed only when a conditional conjunction, or an ejaculatory expression of desire, or a verb of command or permission (see also 314, *b*), comes before it; as,

Si yo *tuviese* libros, leería.	If I *should-have* books, I-would-read.
¡Ojalá no *arriesgase* así su vida!	O-that he-*would-risk* not thus his life!
Era preciso que *espusiese* mis razones.	It-was necessary that I-*should-explain* my reasons.
Le dije que *tomase* esos libros.	I-told him that he-*might-take* those books.

(*a.*) Sometimes the conjunction *que* is not expressed, but understood; as,

Encargó le *enviasen* mayor cantidad.	He ordered (that) they-*should-send* him a greater quantity.

(*b.*) The form ending with *se* can be employed after the relative pronouns, and after *cuanto*, "as much as," *cuantos*, "as many as," when they are preceded by a verb expressive of an action which the other part of the sentence shows to depend on choice or mere contingency; as,

Prometió que me daría todo lo *que* le *pidiese*.	He-promised me that he-would-give me everything *which* I-*might-ask* of-him.

315. The form ending with *ría* is employed (generally to express a *wish* or *condition*, or what *would be* or *might be* done) when no conditional conjunction comes immediately before the imperfect tense; as,

¿ Cual de los dos *preferiría* vmd. ?	Which of the two *would* you *prefer ?*
Si ella viniese (314), *irían*.	If she should come, they-*would-go*.

(*a.*) This form can likewise be used when the imperfect is preceded by a verb that expresses a *belief*, *trust*, or *promise;* and also when the conjunction *si* (if) is used in the sense of "*whether;*" as,

Prometió que me *daría* dos libros.	He-promised that he-*would-give* me two books.
Le preguntó *si* su hijo *iría* allá.	He-asked him *if* (whether) his son *would-go* there.

316. The form of the imperfect ending with *ra* may in general be used for either the form in *se* or that in *ría;* and is especially to be preferred to the form in *ría*, when interrogative pronouns come before the imperfect; as,

Si yo *tuviera* dinero, compraría libros (314).	If I *should-have* (if I *had*) money, I-would buy books.
Ojalá me *hallara* con ella (314).	O-that I-*could-find* myself with her.
Yo *quisiera* que viniesen (315).	I-*should-like* that they would-come.
¿ Quien lo *creyera ?*	Who *would-believe* it ?

(*a.*) It will be seen from the foregoing rules that the form in *ra* can generally be used instead of the forms in *se* and *ría*, for we can say, *si yo* amara, or, *si yo* amase, "if I *should-love;*" and we can say, *él* amara, or, *él* amaría, "I *would-love.*" But *we can not use the form in* ría *and that in* se, *the one for the other.*

(*b.*) In English there are various forms of speaking of a contingent action or event; thus we can say, "*if she were to see it*,"—"*were she to see it*,"—"*should she see it*,"—"*if she see it*,"—"*could she see it*,"—"*if she should see it*;" but in Spanish these forms must all be rendered as the last example, "*if she should see it*;" thus, "*si ella lo viese.*" And so with all the tenses of the subjunctive mood.

(*c.*) Sometimes the English auxiliaries *could*, *might*, *should*, and *would*, are expressed in Spanish by a separate verb, followed by the infinitive; as,

No *podía* ver.	He-*could* not see (*was* not *able* to-see).
Debía hacerlo.	He-*should* do-it (*ought* to-do-it).
No *quería* entrar.	He-*would* not enter (*was* not *willing* to-enter).

317. The perfect-indefinite tense of the subjunctive mentions a doubtful or contingent action or event as being completed, or that it would have been done in past time under certain conditions; as,

Me admiro que no *haya llegado.*	I-am-surprised that he-*may* not *have arrived.*
¿Temes que no *haya ganado* en juego límpio?	Fearest-thou that he-*may* not *have won* in fair play?
Poco me importa que lo *haya oido* decir ó no.	It-concerns me little whether he-*may-have-heard* it spoken or not.

318. The pluperfect tense of the subjunctive mentions a doubtful or contingent action or event that would or might have been completed under certain conditions; and is also used in Spanish whenever in English a conditional conjunction or expression of fear, doubt, or wish, precedes the pluperfect indicative; as,

Ella *habría ido* ayer á la catedral, si *hubiese estado* buena.	She *would-have gone* yesterday to the cathedral, if she-*had been* well.
¡Ojalá *hubiese* yo *sido* estudioso!	O-that I *had been* studious!
No era creible que *hubiese* vmd. *abandonado* á unos amigos antiguos como nosotros.	It-was not credible that you *would-have abandoned* such old friends as we.

(*a.*) This compound tense of the subjunctive is used with the endings in *ra*, *ría*, and *se* of the auxiliary verb *haber* (*hubiera*, *habría*, and *hubiese*), under the same conditions and in the same manner as these endings are employed in the imperfect tense; (see 314, 315, 316); as,

Si no te *hubiera pagado*, yo te *habría prestado* dinero: *or*, Si no te *hubiese pagado*, yo te *habría prestado* dinero: *or*, Si no te *hubiese pagado*, yo te *hubiera prestado* dinero: *or*, Si no te *hubiera pagado*, yo te *hubiera prestado* dinero.	If he-*should* not *have* (if *he-had* not) *paid* thee, I *would-have lent* thee money.

☞ The form of the last example, though permitted, is not to be recommended, since the ending *ra* occurs in the conditional preposition (si no te *hubiera* pagado), and also in the principal preposition (yo te *hubiera* prestado dinero). Nor could we change in any case the principal proposition of the sentence, by substituting "*hubiese* prestado," since the form in *se* can be employed only with conditional conjunctions or exclamations, etc. (see 314; 314, *b*).

(*b*.) There is in Spanish a peculiar method sometimes employed for expressing such a contingency of an action as is implied in the pluperfect tense: this consists in prefixing the preposition *á* before the infinitive *haber*, and affixing the past participle of the verb to be used; thus, "*á haber venido*" is to be rendered the same as "*si hubiera* (or *hubiese*) venido," "if he-*should-have* come," or, as it is generally expressed in English, "if he-*had* come," or "*had*-he come." So "*á haber hablado*" is to be rendered the same as "*si hubiese hablado*," "if he-*had* spoken."

319. The first-future tense of the subjunctive mentions a doubtful or contingent action or event as to take place at a future time; as,

Si así *fuere*, mis deseos quedarán satisfechos.	If thus it-*should-be*, my desires will-remain satisfied.
Si yo *hablare* lénguas de hombres y de ángeles, y no tuviera caridad, nada soy.	If I *should-speak* languages of men and of angels, and should not have charity, I-am nothing.

(*a*.) The imperfect and first-future of the subjunctive can not be used indiscriminately for each other. The contingency implied in the imperfect refers to time past; and that implied in the first-future refers to future time, reckoning from the moment in which it is said. Thus if we say, "John said that the boys *should remain* at home," there is contingency and even futurity denoted, but it does not necessarily go beyond the present moment, for the boys may have already complied with John's request. In such a case the imperfect must be used. But if we say, "John says that if the boys *should* (or *shall*) not remain at home, he will not reward them," then it is evident that the event of staying at home is not yet supposed to have taken place, and of course the first-future subjunctive is used. So, "if I *have* (i. e. *shall have*) money, they

will-rob me of it," would be expressed by the first-future, and "if I *had* (*should have*) money, I would be generous," would be expressed by the imperfect. (See 311, *a*).

320. The second-future of the subjunctive mentions a doubtful or contingent action or event as having taken place at a future time at or before some other future action or event shall occur; as,

Si Pedro no *hubiere llegado* ántes de amanecer, le escribiré una carta.	If Peter *shall* not *have arrived* before daybreak, I-shall-write him a letter.

321. A verb is not necessarily in the subjunctive mood because a conjunction may precede it; for an action or event, which is known to be *certain*, requires the verb to be in the indicative mood, even though a conjunction precede it; as, "*though John was-speaking* low, I heard him distinctly," "*aunque Juan hablaba*," etc. If, however, there is uncertainty or doubt expressed, the subjunctive mood is required; as, "*though John were-speaking*, I would not listen," "*aunque Juan hablara*," etc.

☞ On account of the irregular and elliptical manner of using the tenses in English, it is sometimes difficult for the learner to know which to use in Spanish. But he must learn to distinguish the meaning of the English tense, whether certainty or uncertainty is expressed (see 310; 311, *b*; 311, *c*; 316, *b*).

(*a*.) After the relative pronouns or the adjective *cuanto*, "how much," or the adverb *cuando*, "when," if these pronouns or this adjective or adverb are themselves preceded by a verb expressive of an action which the other part of the sentence shows to depend on mere choice or contingency, the subjunctive mood is used (though in English in such cases the indicative is generally employed); as,

Elige, pues, de estas naranjas la que mas te *agrade* (or *agradare*; see 311, *a*).	Choose, then, from these oranges that which most *pleases* thee (*may-please* or *shall-please* thee).
Seré rico, cuando *quiera* (or *quisiere*) la fortuna (see 311, *a*).	I-shall-be rich when fortune *wills*, (*i. e.* when fortune *may-will* or *shall-will*).
Prometió darme el dinero que yo *necesitara* (see 314, *b*).	He-promised to-give me the money that I-*wanted* (*might-want*).

(*b*.) Verbs expressing *will*, *desire*, *command*, *permission*, *promise*, *fear*,

doubt, probability, fitness, or *necessity,* followed by the conjunction *que* (or any other conditional conjunction), generally require the verb which follows the conjunction to be in the subjunctive mood (and not in the indicative, as in English); as,

Dudo que *tengas* aciete.	I-doubt whether thou-*hast* (*mayest-have*) oil.
No creo que *tenga* peras.	I-do not think that he-*has* (*may-have*) pears.
Temo que no *tengan* dinero.	I-fear that they-*will* not *have* (*may* not *have*) money.
Es posible que *tengan* uvas.	It-is possible that they-*have* (*may-have*) grapes.
Es preciso que me *vaya.*	It-is necessary that I-*go* (*may-go*).

(*c.*) There are some conjunctive phrases, which, as they imply a condition or doubt in themselves, are always followed by the subjunctive mood: these are, *para que,* "in order that;" *dado que,* "granted that;" *no sea que,* "lest;" *á ménos que,* "unless;" *á fin de que,* "to the end that;" *con tal que,* "provided that;" *ántes que,* "before that;" *supuesto que,* "suppose that;" *en caso de que,* "in case that;" *bien que,* "although;" *sin que,* "without *or* unless that;" *como quiera que,* "notwithstanding that;" *por mas que,* "however;" *siempre que,* "whenever that;" *ojalá,* "would that," *or,* "would to God that;" as, *hablo* para que *puedas juzcar,* "I-speak *in order that* thou-mayest be able to judge."

(*d.*) The conjunction ought always to be expressed in Spanish; as, "he promised us [that] he would-come," *nos prometió* que *vendría.**

OF THE PASSIVE VERB.

322. The passive verb is generally rendered in Spanish by *ser* (see 170), and always when the subject of the verb is acted upon by an agent, that is, when in English it would be accompanied with the preposition *by;* as,

Este discurso *fué escrito* por Diego.	This discourse *was written* by James.

(*a.*) The passive verb must be rendered in Spanish by *estar* (see 174) when the past participle is used adjectively, that is, when the subject of the verb does not seem so

* The verb *prometir* is generally followed by the infinitive in such a case; thus, *prometió darme el dinero,* "he-promised to-give me the money."

much to be acted upon by an agent as to have its state or condition described; as,

El discurso *estuvo* bien *escrito*.	The discourse *was* well *written*.
El libro *está correjido*.	The book *is corrected*.

323. The passive verb formed by *ser* is used in Spanish in the present and imperfect of the indicative mood, only when it is designed to express a mental act or a state of the emotions; as,

María *es amada* de Cárlos.	Mary *is loved* by Charles.

(*a*.) When a mental act or a state of the emotions is not expressed, the passive verb, if it be used, must not be in the present or imperfect of the indicative mood: thus we can not say, "*el libro* es escrito *por un Español*," "the book *is written* by a Spaniard," but *el libro* ha sido escrito *por un Español*, "the book *has been written* by a Spaniard."

(*b*.) When a mental act or state of the emotions is expressed, the prepositions *de* or *por* may be used after the passive verb before the agent; but when a mental act or state of the emotions is not expressed, *por* only can be used; as,

María es amada *de* (or *por*) Cárlos.	Mary is beloved *by* Charles.
Todas las cosas fueron hechas *por* Dios.	All things were made *by* God.

(*c*.) The reflective pronoun *se* is often used with verbs of the active voice, which are required to be rendered in English by the passive. (See 173.)

OF THE REGIMEN OF VERBS.

324. The object or regimen of the verb is either direct or indirect. The direct regimen is that on which the action immediately falls without the aid of any preposition; as,

Doy una *pluma*.	I give a *pen*.

(*a*.) The indirect regimen is that on which the action of the verb can not fall without the aid of a preposition; as,

Dijo *á* la *muger*.	He-said *to* the *woman*.

(*b*.) Sometimes both regimens are required after the verb; as,

Dió una *pluma* á la *muger*.	He-gave a *pen* to the *woman*.

325. When the object of an active verb is a person or

inanimate thing personified, it must be preceded by the prepostion *á*;* as,

Diego vió *á* la madre de Juan.	James saw the mother of John.
Dios recompensará *á* los buenos.	God will-reward the good.
La muger *á* quien vimos no es rica.	The woman whom we saw is not rich.
Vió *á* la que me dió dinero.	He-saw her who gave me money.
El sol alumbra *á* la tierra.	The sun enlightens the earth.

(*a.*) Sometimes the harmony of the sentence requires the *á* to be suppressed, especially after the persons of the verb *tener*, "to have," or "to possess;" as,

Tengo un hijo y tres hijas.	I-have one son and three daughters.

326. One verb governs another in the infinitive mood; as,

Quieren *imitar*le.	They-want *to-imitate* him.

(*a.*) Some verbs, as a general rule, require the preposition *á* before the infinitive which they govern; such are those which mean *to attempt, to come, to go, to begin, to devote, to offer, to dare, to serve, to invite, to learn, to teach, to urge, to assist, to call, to advise, to submit, to prepare, to compel, to decide, to remain,* and *to accustom one's self;* as,

Probó *á levantar*se.	He-attempted *to raise* himself.
Voy *á ver*la.	I-am-going *to see* her.

(*b.*) Some verbs generally require the preposition *de* before the infinitive which they govern; such as those which mean *to cease, to be glad, to be ashamed, to resolve, to deprive, to fail, to finish, to abstain, to pity;* as,

Dejó *de estudiar*.	He-ceased *to-study*.
No faltaré *de hacer*lo.	I-will-fail not *to do* it.

(*c.*) When the preposition *to* in English is used before the infinitive in the sense "*in order to*" (as, "he labors *to* acquire fame," meaning "he labors *in order to* acquire fame"), the preposition *para* is used in Spanish before the infinitive: as,

El hombre fué criado *para aspirar* á la felicidad.	Man was created *in-order-to aspire* to felicity.

(*d.*) When the preposition *to* in English is used in the sense "*for the sake of,*" the preposition *por* is used in Spanish before the infinitive; as,

Juan lo dice, *por decir*lo.	John says it *for-the-sake-of saying* it.

---

* See No. 670, Part IV. *This is a very important rule of Spanish syntax.*

(*e.*) Sometimes *que* precedes the infinitive instead of *por* or *para;* as,

Tiene *algo que decirte.*	He-has something (which) *to-tell* thee.

(*f.*) The infinitive is often used without any preposition before it, especially when it is governed by verbs which mean *to be able, to permit, to wish, to endeavor, to make, to feign, to owe, to seem, to be wont, to know, to avail, to see, to hear, to succeed, to hope, to be necessary, to think, to believe, to promise, to deign, to be the duty, to pretend, to judge, to prescribe, to require, to suffice;* as,

No puede *hacerlo.*	He-is not able *to-do* it.
Deseo *aprender.*	I-wish *to-learn.*

327. The infinitive in Spanish, when used as a present participle in English, may take any preposition before it (see 298, *a*); as,

Sintió la necesidad *de ponerle* en manos de la juventud.	He-felt the necessity *of-placing* it in the hands of the youth.
Es constante *en amarla.*	He-is constant *in-loving* her.

(*a.*) The verbs *to see* and *to hear* never govern the gerund in Spanish, but always the infinitive; thus we can not say, *le vió viendo,* "I-saw him *coming,*" but *le vió venir,* "I saw him *come.*"

(*b.*) "*To know how*" is expressed in Spanish by "*to know;*" as,

Yo no *sé* nadar.	I know not (*how*) to swim.

(*c.*) The infinitive, when governed by another verb in Spanish, is sometimes required to be rendered by another mood in English; as,

Piensa *morir* de alegría.	He-thinks *to-die* (that he will die) of joy.
Creo *ver* á mi padre.	I-believe *to-see* (that I see) my father.
Sabe *deber* su mérito á Dios solo.	He-knows *to-owe* his merit (that his merit is owing) to God alone.

(*d.*) When in English a reflective verb, or a verb implying command, governs an infinitive in the passive voice, in Spanish this infinitive must be in the active voice; as,

El rey se lo mandó *dar.*	The king ordered it *to-be-given* to-him.
No te dejes *vencer* de lo malo.	Suffer not thyself *to-be-overcome* of evil.

☞ The above examples literally would be rendered, "the king to-him it ordered *to-give,*" and "not thyself suffer *to overcome* of that which is evil."

328. When a verb is governed by another in English, and can be rendered in another mood by using the conjunction *that*, this latter mood should be employed in Spanish; thus, instead of saying "I think him to be learned," we can say, "I think *that* he is (or may be) learned;" and instead of "I requested him to go," we can say, "I requested *that* he should go;" which latter form of construction should generally be adopted in Spanish; as,

Espero que *tendré* el gusto de verle en breve.	I-hope *to have* (that *I-shall-have*) the pleasure of seeing him soon.

OF VERBS FOLLOWED BY CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS.

329. Verbs which signify *to compare, to give, to yield, to resist, to concern, to belong, to refuse, to ask*, generally require the preposition *á* before the noun to which the action of the verb passes over; as,

Ella se parece *á* su madre.	She resembles her mother.
Demanda sabiduría *al* Señor.	He asks wisdom *from* (to-the) Lord.

(*a.*) Sometimes verbs having the sense *to remove* or *to take away*, require the preposition *á* before the noun to which the action of the verb passes over; as,

Cortaron la cabeza *á* Saul.	They-cut-off the head *of* (to) Saul.
Cain quitó la vida *á* su hermano Abel.	Cain took-away the life *of* (to) his brother Abel.

330. Verbs denoting *to be abundant, to lack, to be astonished, to blame, to repent, to pity, to make use, to absolve, to make sport, to remember, to forget*, indirectly govern a noun by means of the preposition *de;* as,

Los valles abundan *de* trigo.	The valleys abound *with* (*of*) wheat.
Llenaron la casa *de* perros.	They-filled the house *with* (*of*) dogs.
Los discipulos se asombraron *de* sus palabras.	The disciples were astonished *at* (*of*) his words.

(*a.*) *Olvidar*, to forget, is followed by *de* only when it is used as a reflective verb; as,

Olvidarse de lo pasado,* *or*,	To-forget the past.
Olvidar su nombre.	To forget his name.

* Literally, "to-forget oneself *of* the past."

(*b.*) The verb *ser*, when used to imply *property* or *possession*, requires the noun denoting the possessor to be preceded by the preposition *de;* as,

El libro *es de* mi padre.	The book *belongs to* (is of) my father.

(*c.*) *De* generally precedes nouns which denote the causes of which the verb explains the effect; as,

Tiembla de miedo.	He-trembles *with* (from) fear.
Tirita de frio.	He-shivers *with* (of) cold.
Sus ojos se bañaron de lágrimas.	His eyes were wet *with* (of) tears.

331. When a noun refers to the instrument with which the action of the verb is effected, it requires the preposition *con* before it; when the noun is the name of the blow and the object with which it is effected (see 257), it requires the preposition *de* or *con* before it, when it is employed in the singular number, and the preposition *á* when employed in the plural; as,

Los soldados le mataron *con* un dardo.	The soldiers killed him *with* a dart.
Ellos le mataron *de* (or *con*) una dardada.	They slew him *with* a blow-of-a-dart.
Le mataron *á* dardadas.	They slew him *by* blows-of-a-dart.

(*a.*) Sometimes the preposition *á* is found preceding the name of the instrument in the singular; as,

Quien *á* hierro mata, *á* hierro muere.	He-who *with* steel* kills, *by* steel dies.

(*b.*) When the reflective verb *meterse* is used to signify *to meddle, to interfere*, it requires the preposition *con* before the noun to which it refers as its object, if such noun be the name of a person, and *en* if it be the name of any thing inanimate: as,

No te metas *con* estas detractores.	Meddle not thyself *with* those slanderers.
No te metas *en* los negócios agenos.	Meddle not thyself *in* the affairs of-others.

332. The preposition *á* (to) should not be used in Spanish when we speak of motion merely directed *towards* a place, but *hácia* and *para;* as,

---

* Literally, *iron*, meaning the *sword*.

Está caminando *hácia* Tolosa.	He-is journeying *towards* Tolosa.
Mi padre salió *para* Madrid.	My father set-out *for* Madrid.

(*a.*) Gerunds require the same prepositions as the verbs from which they are derived; as,

Acordándose *de* (330) sus obras.	Remembering his works.

☞ The idiomatic use of many verbs followed by certain prepositions will be found in the Appendix, Number III.

OF THE USE OF THE VERBS SER AND ESTAR.

333. The different parts of the verbs *ser* and *estar* are generally to be rendered in English alike; but in Spanish these verbs are not used indiscriminately for each other. Each predicates the existence of some property or quality in an object; but *ser* predicates *absolute*, and *estar* a *relative* existence. When the property or quality is *essential*, *natural*, or *inherent* in the object, *ser* is to be used. When the quality is not *natural* (that is, *not produced by nature*), or when it is expressive of a *transient* state, *estar* is to be used. *Ser*, then, is used to affirm *what* a thing is *naturally* or *by nature*, or to express any *permanent* state or *characteristic* quality or property of an object; while *estar* is used to affirm *how* a thing exists *at any period of time*, or *where* any thing is or exists. *Ser* affirms *what* a thing is; *estar* expresses *how* or *where* a thing is. Thus, *el cuarto* es *espacioso*, "the room *is* spacious;" with *ser*, because it tells *what* the room is; and *el cuarto* está *límpio*, "the room *is* clean;" with *estar*, because it tells *how* the room is. *Juan* está *en el campo*, "John *is* in the country;" with *estar*, because it tells *where* John is. "Mary *is* beautiful," affirms *what* Mary is; "Mary *is* glad," affirms *how* Mary is: and of course *es* would be used in the former sentence, and *está* in the latter. "Peter *is* sick," affirms *how* or *in what state* Peter exists *at a certain period of time*, and *estar* must be used; thus, *Pedro* está *enfermo*; but "Peter *is* sickly," expresses *what* Peter is, namely, of a sickly or unhealthy

constitution, and *ser* must be used; thus, *Pedro* es *enfermizo.*

(*a.*) In Spanish it may be said, *Cárlos* es *ciego*, or *Cárlos* está *ciego*, and each sentence would be rendered in English, "Charles *is* blind." But in Spanish, the former would mean that Charles is blind *by nature*, or *permanently* blind; and the latter that Charles is in a state of blindness for the time being only, which might be the case from temporary illness, or from dust thrown into his eyes. *Esta muger* es *loca*, means "this woman *is* insane," that is, permanently destitute of reason; and *esta muger* está *loca*, means "this woman *is* frantic;" that is, in a temporary fit or phrenzy, acting like a madman. In this latter case, *está* might be rendered "*seems*" or "*appears*," as, "this woman *seems* (or *acts like* one) mad." So of a man of a generous disposition, it would be said, "he is (*es*) generous;" but of a notorious miser, who might happen on a certain occasion to exhibit a little generosity, it would be said, "he is (*está*) generous;" that is, he shows himself generous for the time being, though generosity is no real trait in his character. *María* es *jóven*, means "Mary *is* young," that is, "Mary *is* a young woman;" youthfulness being at her period of life a *natural* (though not *permanent*) state. We can also say, *el viejo* está *jóven*, "the old-man *is* young," that is, "the old-man seems young," "has a youthful appearance," or "acts like a youth;" *estar* being used because youthfulness is not natural to his years.

☞ The right manner of using the verbs *ser* and *estar* being of great importance, and yet attended with some difficulty to learners, we will give a few *more explicit* rules, the substance of all, however, being contained in the foregoing remarks.

334. *Ser* is used to affirm the existence of essential, natural, permanent, or characteristic states or qualities of the mind, persons or things, and to affirm *what*, or *of what* a person or thing *is*, *was*, or *will be;* as,

El yelo *es* frío.	Ice *is* cold.
El plomo *es* pesado.	Lead *is* heavy.
Juan *es* bueno y sábio.	John *is* good and wise.
Soy sobérbio.	I-*am* proud.
Lóndres no *es* pequeña.	London *is* not small.
La miel *es* dulce.	Honey *is* sweet.
El hombre *es* polvo.	Man *is* dust.
Vmd. *es* rico. *Es* tarde.	You *are* rich. It *is* late.
Perdonar las injúrias *es* obrar como Cristianos.	To-forgive injuries *is* to act like Christians.
Pedro *era* capitan, ahora *es* mayor, y *será* coronel.	Peter *was* captain, now *is* major, and *will-be* colonel.

(*a.*) The natural beauties of the body, and its defects when regarded as permanent, are affirmed with *ser;* as,

Lucía *es* hermosa.	Lucy *is* beautiful.
Ella *es* corcobada y ciega.*	She *is* hump-backed and blind.

(*b.*) The materials of which any thing is made are affirmed by *ser;* also the possession or destination of any thing; as,

La taza *es* de oro.	The cup *is* of gold.
La mesa *es* de cedro.	The table *is* of cedar.
La corona *es* de la reina.	The crown *is* the queen's.
El libro *es* mio.	The book *is* mine.
Cervántes *es* de Alcalá.	Cervantes *is* from Alcala.
Este vino *es* de España.	This wine *is* from Spain.
Esta flor *es* para María.	This flower *is* for Mary.
La carta *era* para él.	The letter *was* for him.
Es de dia. *Es* de noche.	It-*is* day. It-*is* night.

335. *Estar* is used to affirm the temporary, non-natural, accidental, or contingent condition or location of persons or things, transient emotions of the mind; that is, to affirm *how* or *where* a thing exists, existed, or will exist, at any period of time; as,

Estoy alegre.	I-*am* merry.
Está enfadado. Yo *estaba* ciego.†	He-*is* angry. I-*was* blind.
El tiempo *estará* nublado.	The weather *will-be* cloudy.
El mar *está* airado.	The sea *is* raging.

(*a*) The physical changes, and state of the health of the animal body, as also the chemical and mechanical changes of substances, are affirmed by *estar;* as,

Ella *está* enferma.	She *is* unwell.
Estoy bueno. Yo *estaba* cojo.	I-*am* well. I-*was* lame.
La leche *está* ágria.	The milk *is* sour.
El água *está* caliente.	The water *is* hot.
Vmd. *está* despierto.	You *are* awake.
La carne *estaba* asada.	The meat *was* roasted.

(*b.*) In affirming any manner, situation, position, or location of persons or things, *estar* is used; as,

Juan *está* de moda.	John *is* in the fashion.
Está de rodillas.	He-*is* on (his) knees.
Estoy de prisa.	I-*am* in haste.
Estoy de tu parecer.	I-*am* of thy opinion.

---

* That is, "permanently *blind*." † That is, "transiently *blind*."

Clara *está* en la iglésia	Clara *is* in the church.
Estaba en la calle.	He-*was* in the street.
Estan á la puerta.	They-*are* at the door.
La comida *está* en la mesa.	The dinner *is* on the table.
¿Donde *está* mi padre?	Where *is* my father?
Está en la cama.	He-*is* in bed.
Estos quisantes ya *están* en flor.	These peas *are* already in blossom.
Está entre dos soldados.	He-*is* between two soldiers.
Estaba en Paris.	He-*was* in Paris.

(*c.*) *Estar* (and not *ser*) is always employed before the gerund, since this serves to show the manner of being occupied; as,

Jorge *está* silbando.	George *is* whittling.
Ella *estará* regañando.	She *will-be* scolding.
Ellos *están* leyendo.	They *are* reading.
Estoy escribiendo.	I-*am* writing.

(*d.*) *Estar* is sometimes used with a preposition to form a particular idiomatic phrase; thus *estar sin* means "to be destitute of;" *estar á*, "to understand;" *estar en*, "to be resolved on," "to know." (See 338; 338, *a.*)

(*e.*) *Ser* and *estar* may sometimes be used with the same adjective, but in such cases the meaning of the adjective can not remain the same, since *ser* affirms *what* a person or thing is, and *estar* affirms *how* it is for the time being; as,

Es bueno. *Está* bueno.	He-is *good*. He-is *well*.
Es malo. *Está* malo.	He-is *wicked*. He-is *ill*.
Es callado. *Está* callado.	He-is *taciturn*. He-is *silent*.
Es cansado. *Está* cansado.	He-is *tiresome*. He-is *tired*.
Es vivo. *Está* vivo.	He-is *lively*. He-is *alive*.
Esta naranja *es* ágria.	This orange is *sour* (*of a sour kind*).
Esta naranja *está* ágria.	This orange is *sour* (*unripe*).

☞ The manner of using *ser* and *estar* in forming the passive voice, has already been explained (see 322 and 322, *a*).

IDIOMATIC USE OF CERTAIN VERBS.

336. *Volver á*, "to return," "to repeat," is used before an infinitive when it is required to repeat the action denoted by the infinitive, in which case the adverb "*again*" would be used in English, and the infinitive be rendered in the same tense as *volver;* as,

Volví á verle.	I-saw him *again* (literally, I-*returned* to see him).

Volvió á escribir la carta.*	He-*re-wrote* (or *wrote again*) the letter.

337. *Acaber de*, "to finish from," is used before an infinitive in the sense of "*to have just*," and the infinitive is rendered in English as a past participle; as,

Juan *acaba de* llegar.	John *has just* arrived.
Acabo de verle.	I-*have just* seen him.

338. *Estar para*, "to be towards," is used before an infinitive in the sense of "*to be ready*," or, "*to be about to;*" as,

Estaban para acabar sus estúdios.	They-*were about to* finish their studies.

(*a.*) *Estar por*, "to be for," is used before an infinitive to show that the action implied in this infinitive is not yet performed, but that there is a disposition to accomplish it; that is, in the sense of "*to be not yet*," or, "*to have a mind to;*" as,

La casa *está por* acabar.	The house *is to* finish, *i. e.* the house *is not yet* finished.
Estoy por ir á verle.	I-*am for going* (or *have a mind to go*) to see him.

(*b.*) *Quedar por*, "to remain for," is used before an infinitive in the same manner as *estar por*, in the sense of "*to remain yet;*" as,

La carta *queda por* escribir.	The letter *remains yet to* write (*remains to be* written).

339. *Haber de*, "to have of," is used before an infinitive in the sense of "*to be to*," or "*must;*" as,

No *han de* hacer uso de ellos.	They-*are* not *to* (*must* not) make use of them.
He de trabajar.	I *am to* (I *must*) work (or, I *have to* work).

340. *Tener que*, "to have what," is used before an infinitive in the sense of "*to have to*," or "*must;*" as,

Tiene que levantarse al romper del dia.	He-*has to* rise by break of day.

341. *Llegar á*, "to arrive at," is used before an infinitive in the sense of "*to come to*," or "*to succeed in;*" as,

---

* Literally, "he *returned* (or *repeated*) to write the letter." It must be kept in mind that this is the usual mode in Spanish for expressing the repetition of an action, instead of using a word corresponding to "*again*" in English.

Cuando el hombre *llega á* gustar los encantos de la virtud, la prefiere al vício.	When man *comes to* taste the delights of virtue, he-prefers it to vice.

(*a.*) *Venir á*, "to come to," is used as *llegar á*, in the sense of "*to come to*;" as,

Los dones *vienen á* ser perjuiciales.	Gifts *come* to be injurious.

342. *Tener* is used with the noun in such expressions as *to be hot, cold, hungry, thirsty, afraid, ashamed;* thus, *to have heat, to have hunger, to have fear*, etc.; which in English must be rendered by the verb *to be* and the corresponding adjectives; as,

Tiene hambre. *Tiene* temor.	He-*is* hungry. He-*is* afraid.

(*a.*) *Hacer* is used impersonally before nouns referring to the weather, and is to be rendered by the verb *to be*, and sometimes with the adjective; as,

Hace calor. *Hace* buen tiempo.	It-*is* hot. It-*is* fair weather.

343. *Tener* is used in the sense of "*to be*," before nouns of measurement, with the preposition *de* in the sense of "*in*;" as,

Goliáth *tenía de* altura seis codos y un palmo.	Goliath *was in* height six cubits and a span.

344. *Gustar*, when it is to be rendered in English by "*to like*," has for its nominative case in Spanish what is the objective in English, and its objective in Spanish is the nominative in English, preceded by the preposition *á*, the sentence generally containing what in English would be regarded as a *redundant* pronoun (see 285, *b*; 285, *c*); as,

¿ Le *gustan* á vmd. patatas?	Do you like potatoes?
Ella me *gusta* á mí.	I like her.

☞ These sentences, rendered more literally, mean, "do potatoes *please* (or suit) you?" "she *pleases* me."

345. *Faltar*, when it is to be rendered in English by "*to want*," or "*to have need of*," requires the same idiomatic construction of the sentence as *gustar* (see 344); as,

Le *faltan* tres vasos.	He *wants* (or *needs*) three tumblers.
A Pedro no le *falta* dinero.	Peter *wants* (or *needs*) not money.

☞ Rendered more literally, these examples mean, "three tumblers *are wanting* to (or *needed* by) him;" "to Peter money is not wanting."

(*a.*) *Hacer falta*, "to make need," is used in the same manner as *gustar* and *faltar* (see 344, 345), in the sense of "*to have need of*," "*to stand in need of*;" as,

Me *hace* mucha *falta* el consejo de vmd.	I *stand in* much *need of* your advice.

☞ More literally rendered, this example would be, "the advice of your-worship *makes* much *need* to (*is* much *needed* by) me."

346. *Pesar*, when it is to be rendered in English by "*to repent of*," "*to be sorry for*," is subject to the same peculiarity of construction as *gustar* and *faltar* (see 344, 345), except that it is used before an infinitive with the preposition *de*, which infinitive would in English be used as a participle; as,

A Dios le *pesa de* haber hecho rey á Saul.	God *repents of* having made Saul king.

☞ "It-*repents* God for having made Saul a king," would be a more literal rendering of this last example.

OF THE ADVERB.

347. Adverbs are either derivative (or primitive), or adverbial phrases. (See 225; 225, *a.*)

348. The simple adverb, when it qualifies a verb, generally comes after the verb; as,

La religion expresa *sublimemente* esta verdad.	Religion expresses this truth *sublimely*.

(*a.*) There can be no regular rules given for the position of the adverb; in most instances it may vary according to the taste of the writer. Some adverbs generally precede the verb; such are, *cuando*, when; *luego*, immediately; *apénas*, scarcely; *cuanto*, as much; *donde*, where; and *negative* and *interrogative* adverbs.

349. The adverb, when it qualifies an adjective or another adverb, generally comes before the word it qualifies; as,

Ella es *muy* ignorante.	She is *very* ignorant.
He obrado *muy* neciamente.	I-have acted *very* foolishly.

350. Adverbs, like adjectives, admit of comparison; as,

Alaban *mas* á los muertos *que* á los vivos.	They-praise *more* the dead *than* the living.
Reciben *mas alegremente que* dan.	They-receive *more gladly than* they-give.

(*a.*) The adverb *no* is sometimes used in comparisons in a manner that does not imply a negation, in which case it would be redundant in English, and might be properly omitted in Spanish; as,

Mejor es el buen nombre que *no* las riquezas.	Better is the good name than the riches.

351. *Muy*, "very," "very much," is used to qualify adjectives, participles, and other adverbs, but is never used to modify verbs. *Mucho*, "much," "very much," is used to qualify verbs and sometimes adverbs of comparison; as,

Ella es *muy* rica.	She is *very* rich.
Lucía lee *muy* bien.	Lucy reads *very* well.
Para amar *mucho* al hombre, preciso es estimarle *mucho*.	In-order to-love a man *much*, it-is necessary to esteem him *much*.
Te has hecho *mucho* mas poderoso que nosotros.	Thou-hast made thyself *much* more mighty than we.

(*a.*) *Muy* sometimes is employed to qualify nouns, especially at the beginning of a note or letter addressed to any person; as,

Muy amigo mio.	*Very much* my friend (*dear* friend).
Muy caballero.	*Very much* a gentleman (*dear* sir).
Muy señor mio.	*Very much* my gentleman (*dear* sir).
Muy señora mia.	*Very much* my lady (*dear* madam).

(*b.*) *Bien*, joined to adjectives or adverbs, is equivalent to *very;* as, *bien rico*, "*very rich;*" and to verbs, *much;* as, *él bebió bien*, "he drank *much*."

352. Negative adverbs and all negations generally precede the verb; as,

No puede escribir.	He-can *not* write.
A *ninguno* dió el libro.	To *no-one* gave-he the book.

(*a.*) If a word implying negation come after the verb, the adverb *no* must precede the verb; as,

No dió el libro á *ninguno*.	He-gave the book to *no-one*.
No tiene *nada*.	He-has *nothing*.

(*b.*) From the last two rules it will be seen that, in Spanish, it can be said, *nada tiene*, or *no tiene nada*, "he-has nothing;" *á ninguno habló*, or *no habló á ninguno*, "he-spoke to nobody;" *ella nunca ha hablado*, or *ella no ha hablado nunca*, "she has never spoken."

(*c.*) *Nunca*, "never," and *jamas*, "never," are sometimes both used in a sentence to give additional force to the negation; as,

Nunca jamas tendrá sed.	*Never, never* will-he-be thirsty.

(*d.*) *Jamas*, "never," is used with *siempre*, "always," in the sense of "*ever and ever;*" as,

Dios reina por *siempre jamas*.	God reigns for *ever and ever*.

(*e.*) In interrogative sentences, *jamas* is rendered by *ever* in English; as, *¿ha jamas hablado?* "has he *ever* spoken?"

353. *Sí*, "yes," and *no*, "no," when used after verbs in such sentences as, "he replied *no*," "they answered *yes*," "I believe *not*," take *que* before them in Spanish; as,

Me dijeron *que no*.	They-told me *no*.
Respondió *que sí*. Creo que *no*.	He replied *yes*. I-think *not*.

(*a*.) *Sí*, "yes," and *no*, "no," serve to affirm or deny what is predicated in a preceding verb without repeating the verb; as,

Yo no sé nadar, y Juan *sí*.	I know not how to swim and John *does* (*yes*).
Ella pueda cantar, pero yo *no*.	She can sing but I *can not* (*no*).

354. *Derivative* adverbs are nearly all formed from adjectives, by suffixing *mente*, which in Spanish corresponds to *ly* added to adjectives in English; as,

Cierto; *ciértaméntе*.	Certain; *certainly*.
Bastante; *bastántemén*te.	Sufficient; *sufficiently*.

(*a*.) When more adverbs than one ending with *mente* qualify the same verb, the suffix *mente*, for the purpose of preventing a disagreeable repetition of sound, is placed to the last adverb only; as,

Mi ánimo es explicar *lisa* y *llanamente*.	My intention is to explain *clearly* and *plainly*.

☞ It would not be more correct to say in Spanish *explicar* lisamente *y llanamente*, than it would to say in English (what the Spanish idiom literally requires), "to explain *clear* and *plainly*."

355. Two or more words used in connection to qualify a verb or adjective, are called an *adverbial phrase* or *adverbial locution*: such are *por cierto*, "for certain;" *á lo ménos*, "at least;" *por lo comun*, "in general."

Remark.—In all languages there are certain phrases used adverbially, the words of which, taken collectively, have an idiomatic meaning, but taken separately, would make no sense. Thus in English the adverbial locutions "*by and by*," "*at least*," "*none at all*," would signify nothing intelligible if taken literally, word by word; but as adverbial phrases, they are very expressive. It is often thus in Spanish: a mere literal translation of the words will do little or nothing toward assisting us to comprehend the meaning. Such phrases will generally be found explained in their adverbial sense in dictionaries. Some of the most common are given in the list on the next two pages.

356. Explanation of certain Adverbial Phrases:

ADVERBIAL LOCUTIONS.	MEANING IN ENGLISH.	ADVERBIAL LOCUTIONS.	MEANING IN ENGLISH.
A conciéncia,	*conscientiously.*	A saltos y córcovos,	*by fits and starts.*
A la verdad,	*truly.*	A la corta ó á la larga,	*sooner or later.*
A vista de ojos,	*evidently; at a glance.*	A ojos cerrados,	*without reflection; rashly.*
A sabiendas,	*knowingly.*	Al ojo,	*at sight.*
Al seguro,	*securely.*	Al punto,	*instantly.*
A' buen seguro,	*certainly.*	A tientas,	*in a groping manner.*
Antes con ántes,	*as soon as possible.*	A mas tirar,	*to the utmost.*
Ahora, ahora,	*just now.*	A tuerto ó á derecho,	*right or wrong; hit or miss.*
A cuestas,	*on one's shoulder* or *back.*	A secas y sin llover,	*without preparation* or *advice.*
A porfía,	*emulously.*	A solas,	*by one's self; in private.*
A gatas,	*on all fours.*	A buena luz,	*carefully; with due examination.*
A coces,	*by dint of kicking; by kicks.*	A dos luces,	*ambiguously.*
A mas correr,	*with the utmost speed.*	A trompa y talenga,	*helter-skelter; confusedly.*
A mas tardar,	*after great delay.*	Baxo mano,	*in an underhanded manner.*
A la improvista,	*unexpectedly.*	Bien como,	*just as.*
A trechos,	*at intervals.*	Casi casi,	*very nearly.*
A una,	*together; in company.*	Cuanto ántes,	*as soon as possible.*
A la continua,	*continually.*	Cuanto tiempo,	*how long.*
A hecho,	*indiscriminately.*	Cuando ménos,	*at least.*
Al paso que,	*in proportion as.*	Cuando mucho,	*at most.*
A pié,	*on foot.*	De contado,	*readily; immediately.*
A buen hora,	*early; seasonably.*	De seguro,	*of course.*
A la hora,	*at the nick of time.*	De cuando en cuando,	*from time to time; now and then.*
Algun tiempo hace,	*some time since.*	De improviso,	*unexpectedly; on a sudden.*
Al revés,	*wrong side outwards; on the contrary way.*	De aquí para allí,	*to and fro; here and there.*
A mas no poder,	*with all one's might.*	De ántes,	*of old; of yore.*
A la sordina,	*noiselessly; slyly.*		
A escondidas, / A escondidillas,	*secretly.* / *stealthily.*		
Al buen punto,	*pointedly; opportunely.*		

ADVERBIAL LOCUTIONS.	MEANING IN ENGLISH.
De contínuo,	*continually.*
De intento,	*purposely.*
De proposito,	*on purpose.*
De hecho,	*in fact; actually.*
De noche,	*by night.*
De dia,	*by day.*
De salto,	*suddenly.*
De por sí,	*by one's self; apart.*
De silla á silla,	*face to face.*
De tropel,	*in confusion; pell-mell.*
De lance,	*cheaply; second-hand.*
De repente,	*suddenly.*
De rodillas,	*on one's knees.*
De consiguiente,	*consequently.*
De véras; de verdad,	*truly.*
En conciéncia,	*in good earnest.*
En especial,	*especially.*
En seguida,	*afterward.*
En tanto, / Entre tanto,	*in the mean time; whilst.*
En alguna parte,	*somewhere.*
En ninguna parte,	*nowhere.*
En otra parte,	*elsewhere.*
En alguna otra parte,	*somewhere else.*
En ninguna otra parte,	*nowhere else.*
En cualquiera parte,	*any where.*
En adelante,	*forward; in the future.*
En lo sucesivo,	*afterward; hereafter.*
El año que viene,	*next year.*
En derechura,	*by the most direct way.*
En piernas,	*bare-legged.*
En resúmen,	*in short; briefly.*
Hasta no mas,	*to the highest pitch.*
Hasta que,	*as far as.*
Hoy dia, / Hoy en dia,	*now-a-days.*
Hoy por hoy,	*this very day.*

ADVERBIAL LOCUTIONS.	MEANING IN ENGLISH.
La semana pasada,	*last week.*
La semana que viene,	*next week.*
Mucho tiempo ha,	*long time ago.*
Mañana á la noche,	*to-morrow night.*
No bien,	*no sooner; scarcely.*
No mucho ha,	*not long since; a short time ago.*
Por atras,	*behind.*
Poco ha,	*of late; lately.*
Poco á poco,	*by degrees.*
Por el tanto,	*on that ground; for the reason.*
Por entónces,	*at that time.*
Por supuesto,	*of course.*
Por puntos,	*from one moment to another.*
Por salto,	*on a sudden.*
Por lo largo,	*along.*
Por razon,	*consequently.*
Por fin,	*finally.*
Por instantes,	*incessantly.*
Por poco,	*but little; nearly.*
Por acá ó por allá,	*here or there.*
Por encima,	*superficially.*
Pocas veces,	*seldom.*
Rara vez,	*not often; seldom.*
Rato ha,	*short time ago.*
Sin suelo,	*without bounds; to excess.*
Sobre seguro,	*confidently: securely.*
Sin ton y sin son,	*without rhyme or reason.*
Sobre manera,	*excessively.*
Sobre sí,	*separately; selfishly.*
Tal vez,	*perhaps; once at a time.*
Una vez,	*once.*
Ya ha rato,	*some time ago.*

☞ Very few adverbial phrases can be literally translated from one language to another so as to give a correct idea of their meaning: thus, of those in the above list, *á mas correr* literally means, "to more to run;" *algun tiempo hace*, "some time it makes;" *á mas no poder*, "to more not to be able;" *de cuando en cuando*, "of when in when;" *en lo sucesivo*, "in that which is successive." Occasionally such a phrase may be found of which a literal translation will furnish a sufficient explanation of its meaning; as, *en alguna otra parte*, "in some other part;" *en ninguna parte*, "in no part;" *la semana pasada*, "the week past;" *la semana que viene*, "the week which comes;" *pocas veces*, "few times."

357. Adverbs are variously classified according to their signification, as follows:

I. Adverbs of time; *present, past, future*, and *indefinite*.

(*a.*) Adverbs of time present; as, *ahora*, now; *hoy*, to-day.

(*b.*) Adverbs of time past; as, *ayer*, yesterday; *entónces*, then.

(*c.*) Adverbs of time future; as, *mañana*, to-morrow.

(*d.*) Adverbs of time indefinite; as, *cuando*, when; *siempre*, always; *temprano*, early.

II. Adverbs of place; *in a place, to a place, toward a place*, and *from a place*.

(*a.*) In a place; as, *donde*, where; *aquí*, here; *allá*, yonder; *dentro*, within.

(*b.*) To a place; as, *¿adonde?* whither? *acá*, hither.

(*c.*) Toward a place; as, *¿hacia donde?* whitherward?

(*d.*) From a place; as, *de allí*, thence; *de donde*, whence.

III. Adverbs of *order*; as, *primero*, first; *finalmente*, finally.

IV. Adverbs of *quality*; as, *confusamente*, confusedly; *bien*, well.

V. Adverbs of *quantity*; as, *poco*, little; *bastánteménte*, sufficiently.

VI. Adverbs of *affirmation* and *certainty*; as, *si*, yes; *ciertamente*, certainly.

VII. Adverbs of *negation* and *uncertainty*; as, *no*, no; *dudosamente*, doubtfully; *acaso, quizá*, perhaps.

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

358. Conjunctions are *simple*, that is, such as consist of a single word, or *conjunctive* phrases, such as consist of more than one word. They may be divided according to their meaning into the following classes:

I. *Copulative*, which simply unite words or sentences together; as, *y*, and (see 226, *a*); *tambien*, also.

II. *Disjunctive*, which connect words or sentences at the same time that they *disjoin* the sense; as, *ó*, or (see 226, *b*).

III. *Adversative*, which express *opposition* of meaning while they connect; as, *mas*, but; *pero*, but; *sin embargo*, notwithstanding.

IV. *Comparative*, which serve to compare words or propositions; as, *como*, as; *así*, so; *como si*, as if.

V. *Conditional*, which express a *condition;* as, *si*, if; *con tal que*, provided that.

VI. *Concessive*, which serve to express something *granted;* as, *aunque*, even if; *dado que*, granted that.

VII. *Conclusive*, which express a *conclusion* or *inference;* as, *de aquí*, hence; *por esto*, therefore.

VIII. *Casual*, which express a *cause* or *reason;* as, *porque*, because; *pues que*, since.

IX. *Temporal*, which serve to express a relation of *time;* as, *ántes que*, before; *despues que*, after.

X. *Final*, which express an *end* or *purpose;* as, *para que*, that, in order that; *á fin de que*, to the end that.

MANNER OF USING CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.

359. *Sino*, meaning "but," is used *after* a negative, unless the verb be repeated; and *pero* or *mas*, also meaning "but," is used when no negative *precedes;* as,

El reino de Dios *no* está en palabras, *sino* en virtud.	The kingdom of God is *not* in words, *but* in power.
Ella es hermosa, *pero* (or *mas*) no es prudente.	She is beautiful, *but* she is not prudent.

(*a.*) If after a negative the verb be repeated, *pero* or *mas* is to be used instead of *sinó;* as,

Ella no lo dijo á Juan, *pero* (or *mas*) lo dijo á Pedro.	She did not tell it to John, *but* she told it to Peter.

360. *Sino*, meaning "*except*," is used after an interrogation or after a negative; and *ménos*, also meaning "except," is used when no interrogation or negative precedes; both words being rendered in English by "*but;*" as,

¿Quién lo hizo *sino* el carpintero?	Who did it *but* the carpenter?
Ninguno hay bueno, *sino* solo Dios.	There-is no one good, *but* God alone.
Vinieron todos *ménos* el juez.	They all came *but* the judge.

361. The conjunction "*but*" is used in English with such a variety of meanings that it is necessary, before rendering it into Spanish, to find what other word or words it really represents, as this latter word or phrase is generally that which is used to represent it in Spanish; thus,

(*a.*) I am-distant from death but [*only*] one step.	Un *solo* paso disto yo de la muerte.
(*b.*) We have but [*no more than*] five loaves and two fishes.	*No* tenemos *mas de* (270, *a*) cinco panes y dos peces.
(*c.*) He-arrived but [*not till*] yesterday.	*No* llegó *hasta* ayer.
(*d.*) I can not but [*do less than*] go.	Yo no puedo *ménos de* ir.
(*e.*) He has but [*done no more than*] gone (*i. e.* he has but just gone).	El *no* ha *hecho mas que* irse.
(*f.*) But [*if it were not*] for me, he-would-perish.	*Si no fuese* por mí, él perecería.
(*g.*) There-is no-one of them but [*who is not*] is a general.	No hay ninguno de ellos *que no sea* general.
(*h.*) He-went no day to-the village but [*that not*] he-returned drunk.	Ningun dia fué al lugar *que no* volvió borracho.

☞ It will at once be perceived that the irregularity in the use of the word "*but*" is chargeable to the English, not the Spanish language. In the latter, "*but*" is not used with ten different meanings as in English.

362. The conjunction "*unless*" is to be rendered in Spanish by *á ménos de que*, or by the word or words which it really represents; as,

(*a.*) He-will-do nothing *unless* you speak (may-speak) to him.	Nada hará, *á ménos de que* vmd. le hable
(*b.*) No-one can do these miracles *unless* [*if not*] God be (should-be) with him.	Ninguno puede hacer estos milagros, *si* Dios *no* estuviere con él.

363. The conjunction "*except*," when it means the same as "unless," is rendered in Spanish in the same manner (362); and when it means privation, as, for instance, in the sentence, "I bought all his books *except* the histories," it is rendered by *ménos*, "less," "minus." (See 360.)

364. The conjunction "*whether*" is to be rendered in Spanish by *si* or *que*, and sometimes by the subjunctive of the verb *ser*: as,

(*a.*) I doubt whether [*that*] thou-hast any oil.	Dudo *que* tengas aceite.
(*b.*) I asked him whether [*if*] his mother would come.	Le pregunté *si* su madre vendría.
(*c.*) *Whether* he-may have grapes or not, is nothing to me.	*Que* tenga uvas ó no, nada me importa.
(*d.*) *Whether* it rains, or *whether* it rains not.	*Que* llueva ó *que* no llueva.
(*e.*) *Whether* or not *we-may-be* (*let us be or not*) worthy of such an honor.	*Seamos* ó no dignos de tal honra.

365. The conjunction "*as*" is rendered by "*como*," when used by way

of comparison; by *así como*, when followed by "*so*;" by *cuando*, when it means "*when*;" and after *mismo* by *que*; as,

(*a.*) John is as* strong *as* a lion.	Juan es tan fuerte *como* un leon.
(*b.*) *As* modesty attracts, so dissoluteness repels.	*Así como* la modéstia atrae, así huye la disolucion.
(*c.*) He-saw her *as* [*when*] he-was-going home.	La vió *cuando* iba á casa.
(*d.*) It-is not the same to-promise *as* to-fulfil.	No es lo mismo prometer *que* cumplir.

366. The conjunction "*neither*," followed by "*nor*," is rendered in Spanish by *ni*; and "*nor*" also by the same word; as,

Swear not, *neither* by heaven, *nor* by the earth, *nor* any other oath.	No jureis, *ni* por el cielo, *ni* por la tierra, *ni* otro juramento alguno.

(*a.*) At the end of a sentence, "*neither*," and also "*either*," if preceded by a negative, are rendered by *tampoco*; as,

She will not do it, nor he *either* (or *neither*).	Ella no quiero hacerlo, ni él *tampoco*.

367. The conjunction "*either*," followed by "*or*," is rendered in both cases by *ó* (see 226, *b*); as,

Either he-is a knave *or* he-is a fool.	*O* es picaro *ó* es tonto.

368. The conjunction "*both*," followed by "*and*," is rendered by *así* or *tanto*, and the "*and*" by *como*; as,

(*a.*) *Both* John *and* James will-be here.	*Así* Juan *como* Diego estarán aquí.
(*b.*) *Both* in time of peace *and* in time of war.	*Tanto* en tiempo de paz, *como* en tiempo de guerra.

☞ These examples might be rendered by "*as well as*;" thus, "John *as well as* James will be here;" "in time of peace *as well as* in time of war."

369. The conjunction "*lest*," when it means "*for fear that*," is rendered by *no ser que*; when it means "*in order that not*," by *para que no*; and when it means simply "*that not*," by *que no*; as,

(*a.*) Thou wilt-accompany him to his house directly, *lest* any accident may-happen to-him.	Tú le acompañarás á su casa al instante, *no sea que* le suceda algun fracaso.
(*b.*) Love not sleep, *lest* want may-oppress thee.	No ames el sueño, *para que no* te oprima la indigéncia.
(*c.*) We were-careful *lest* you should awake.	Cuidábamos de *que no* se despertase vmd.

* The first "*as*" is here an adverb, qualifying the adjective "*strong*."

370. The conjunction "*rather*," when used in the sense of "*but*," is rendered by *ántes* or *ántes bien*; as,

I do not owe him anything; *rather* he owes me something.	Yo no le debe nada, *ántes bien* él me debe algo.

☞ The manner of using other conjunctions will be found in other parts of the work.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

371. The prepositions are employed in such a variety of ways in Spanish and in English, especially in the latter language, that each one is not always to be rendered from one language to the other by the same word. Thus *de* is not always to be translated into English by *of*; nor *of* into Spanish always by *de*. The following observations will serve to show the manner in which the prepositions are to be used.

372. *About*, when it means "through," is rendered by *por*; when it means "on," by *sobre*; when it means "within," by *en*; when it means "of," by *de*; as,

(*a*.) She went singing *about* the village.	Ella iba cantando *por* el lugar.
(*b*.) Locke wrote *about* Christianity.	Locke escribió *sobre* el Cristianismo.
(*c*.) They are *about* the palace.	Ellos están *en* el palácio.
(*d*.) He does not talk *about* politics in public.	No habla *de* política en público.

373. *Above* is rendered by *sobre*; as,

The bird flies *above* the earth.	El ave vuela *sobre* la tierra.

374. *Against*, meaning "*in opposition to*," or "*contrary to*," is rendered by *contra*; as,

(*a*.) They fought *against* the Mexicans.	Ellos pelearon *contra* los Mejicanos.
(*b*.) *Against* the law.	*Contra* la ley.

375. *After*, meaning "*later in time*," is rendered by *despues de*; when it means "*according to*," by *á*, or *segun*; and when it means "*immediately behind*," by *tras*; as,

(*a*.) *After* six o'clock.	*Despues de* las seis.

(*b.*) *After* the French fashion.	*A'* la moda francesa.
(*c.*) *After* this manner.	*Segun* este modo.
(*d.*) He throws the rope *after* the bucket.	Echa la soga *tras* el caldero.

376. *According to* is rendered by *segun*, and sometimes by *para con;* as,

(*a.*) *According to* the orders of your-worship.	*Segun* los órdenes de vmd.
(*b.*) *According to* him it-is-worth nothing.	*Para con* él no vale nada.

377. *Among*, when it means "*of the number of*," is rendered by *entre* or *para entre;* when it means "*in the midst of*," by *en médio de;* and when it means "*in*," by *en;* as,

(*a.*) *Among* the men there-is not one that is upright.	*Entre* los hombres no hay uno, que sea recto.
(*b.*) *Among* friends compliments are unnecessary.	*Para entre* amigos los cumplimientos son escusados.
(*c.*) I send you as lambs *among* wolves.	Yo os envio como corderos *en médio de* lobos.
(*d.*) *Among* many nations there-was not a king like him.	*En* muchas naciones no había rey semejante á él.

378. *At*, when it denotes "*in*" or "*on*," is rendered by *en;* when it denotes proximity, precedes the price of any thing or the time of day, or means "*in readiness for*," it is rendered by *á;* as,

(*a.*) They are *at* home.	Ellos están *en* casa.
They are *at* peace.	Ellos están *en* paz.
(*b.*) John is *at* Rome.	Juan está *en* Roma.
(*c.*) They are *at* sea.	Ellos están *en* la mar.
(*d.*) *At* the bridge. *At* hand.	*Al* puente. *A* la mano
(*e.*) *At* six dollars a bushel.	*A* seis pesos la fanega.
At four o'clock.	*A* las cuatro.
(*f.*) He-is *at* my command.	Está *á* mi mando.
At work.	*Al* trabajo.

379. *Before*, meaning "*in the presence of*," is rendered by *ante;* meaning "*in front of*," or the opposite of *behind*, by *delante de;* meaning *precedence* in rank, or *previous* in time (that is, the opposite of *after*), by *ántes de;* as,

(*a.*) The cause will-be brought *before* the judges.	La causa se llevará *ante* los jueces.
(*b.*) He-went *before* them to point-out the way.	Iba *delante de* ellos para monstrar el camino.
(*c.*) Prostrated on the earth *before*-the ark of-the Lord.	Prostrado en tierra *delante del* arca del Señor.

(*d.*) The Dukes take-rank *before* the Marquises.	*A'ntes de* los Marqueses van los Duques.
(*e.*) *Before* night-fall. *Before* day.	*A'ntes de* anochecer. *A'ntes de*l dia.

380. *Behind* is rendered by *tras*, or *detras de;* as,

Behind the door. *Behind* them.	*Tras* la puerta. *Detras de* ellos.

381. *Below* is rendered by *debajo de;* as,

Below the lip.	*Debajo de*l lábio.

382. *Between* is rendered by *entre;* as,

To-discern *between* the good and the evil.	Discernir *entre* lo bueno y lo malo.

383. *By*, meaning "*at*" or "*in*," is rendered by *de* (see also 299, *a;* 323; 323, *b;* 331); meaning future time *when*, by *para;* meaning "*close to*" or "*along side of*," by *junto á;* and meaning "*through*," by *por;* as,

(*a.*) *By* day. *By* night.	*De* dia. *De* noche.
(*b.*) I shall-need it all *by* Saturday.	Yo lo necesitaré todo *para* el sábado.
(*c.*) Please to seat yourself *by* the window.	Sírvase vmd. sentarse *junto á* la ventana.
(*d.*) He-has made himself rich *by* wicked means.	Se ha hecho rico *por* malos médios.

384. *Concerning*, meaning "*about*" or "*in regard to*," is rendered by *acerca de* or *tocante á;* as,

(*a.*) *Concerning* that which we-have spoken.	*Acerca de* lo que hemos hablado.
(*b.*) *Concerning* (or *touching*) this affair.	*Tocante á* esta pendéncia.

385. *For*, meaning "*during;*" "*on account of*," "*for the sake of*" or "*in behalf of;*" "*in exchange for;*" "*for the purpose of getting;*" '*as;*" "*by*" (*per*); is rendered by *por;* and when it means "*for the use of*," or "*with the intention of going to*," it is rendered by *para;* as,

(*a.*) Can you give me a room *for* this night?	¿Puede vmd. darme un cuarto *por* esta noche?
(*b.*) They-think that *for* much speaking they-will be heard.	Piensan que *por* mucho hablar serán oidos.
(*c.*) They-died *for* their country.	Murieron *por* su pátria.
(*d.*) I will give him my flute *for* his violin.	Le daré mi flauta *por* su violin.
(*e.*) To-go *for* money.	Ir *por* dinero.
(*f.*) She received him *for* a husband.	Ella le recibió *por* esposo.

For a beginner he has done it well.	*Para* un principiante lo ha hecho bien.
(*g.*) How much *for* a day?	¿Cuánto *por* día?
(*h.*) I-have-bought it *for* my wife.	Lo he comprado *para* mi muger.
(*i.*) He set out *for* Spain.	Salió *para* España.

(*j.*) *For* is sometimes used in English when it would not be in Spanish; thus, "I want to alight *for* a moment," *necesito bajar un momento.* *Por* is sometimes used in Spanish when it would be redundant in English; as, *uno vale* por muchos, "one is-worth many."

386. *From*, when it means "*since*" or "*from the time of*," and "*of distance from*," is generally rendered by *desde;* in other cases, by *de;* as,

(*a.*) *From* childhood thou-hast-known the holy Scriptures.	*Desde* la niñez aprendiste las sagradas letras.
(*b.*) It-is fifty miles *from* Vera Cruz to Jalapa.	Hay cincuenta millas *desde* Vera-Cruz á Jalapa.
(*c.*) When did you return *from*-the country?	¿Cuando ha vuelto vmd. *del* campo?

387. *In*, meaning "*in the time of*," "*within*," and "*into*," is rendered by *en;* when it means "*through the course of*" or "*during*," by *por;* and when, after superlatives or other adjectives, it means "*of*," by *de;* as,

(*a.*) *In* the winter. *In* Spain.	*En* el invierno. *En* España.
(*b.*) *In* the morning.	*Por* la mañana.
(*c.*) This ward is one of the best *in* the city.	Este bárrio es de los mejores *de* la ciudad.
(*d.*) Austere *in* disposition.	Acre *de* génio.

388. *Instead of* is rendered by *por;* and by *en lugar de*, when it means "*in the place of;*" as,

(*a.*) He-came *instead of* his father.	Vino él *por* su padre.
(*b.*) Archelaus was-reigning in Judea *instead of* Herod his father.	Arquelás reinaba en Judéa *en lugar de* Herodes su padre.

389. *Into*, when it comes after the verb "*enter*," and when it means "*inside of*," is rendered by *en;* but after all verbs of motion (*to enter* excepted) it is rendered by *á;* as,

(*a.*) Let-us-enter *into* this grove.	Entremos *en* este bosque.
(*b.*) Pour oil *into* the lamp.	Eche vmd. aciete *en* la lámpara.
(*c.*) Let-us-go *into*-the dining-room.	Vamos *al* comedor.

390. *Of* is rendered by *de;* as,

A friend *of* the king.	Un amigo *del* rey.

391. *On* or *upon*, meaning "*along*," is rendered by *en;* meaning

"*through*," by *por;* meaning "*by*," it is rendered by *de;* and meaning "*in contact with the upper surface of any thing*," by *sobre;* as,

(*a.*) Is-there danger *on* (or *upon*) the road?	¿Hay peligro *en* el camino?
(*b.*) Nothing ought to be affirmed *upon* mere probability.	Nada debe afirmarse *por* una mera probabilidad.
(*c.*) Man lives not *on* bread alone.	El hombre no vive *de* solo pan.
(*d.*) It is *on* (or *upon*) the chair.	Está *sobre* la silla.

(*e.*) Sometimes *on* is rendered by *á;* as, *á* caballo, "*on* horseback;" *á* pié, "*on* foot;" *á* bordo, "*on* board." *Upon*, after the verbs, *to count, rely*, etc., is rendered by *con;* as, *conto* con *la amistad de Diego*, "I rely *upon* the friendship of James."

(*f.*) When *on* in English is used before the days of the week or month, it is not rendered in Spanish; thus, *ella llegó allí el sábado*, "she arrived there *on* Saturday."

392. *Out of*, meaning "*removed from*," "*beyond*," and "*outside of*," is rendered by *fuera de;* meaning "*on account of*," by *por;* meaning "*from*," by *de;* as,

(*a.*) *Out of* danger.	*Fuera de* peligro.
(*b.*) *Out of* my power.	*Fuera de* mis alcances.
(*c.*) I have beans that are *out of* the ground.	Tengo habas que están *fuera de* tierra.
(*d.*) *Out of* friendship.	*Por* amistad.
(*e.*) He-drinks *out of* a tumbler.	Bebe *de* un vaso.

393. *Over* is rendered by *encima de* when it means "*above;*" and otherwise by *sobre;* as,

(*a.*) *Over* the window.	*Encima de* la ventana.
(*b.*) He-wept *over* the city.	Lloró *sobre* la ciudad.

394. *Through*, meaning "*from one end* or *side to another*," or "*on account of*," is rendered by *por;* when it means "*by reason of*," by *de;* as,

(*a.*) He-traveled *through* Spain.	Viajó *por* España.
(*b.*) *Through* the fear of death they were in bondage all their life.	*Por* el temor de la muerte estaban en servidumbre toda la vida.
(*c.*) She trembles *through* fear.	Ella tiembla *de* temor.

395. *Till* is rendered by *hasta;* as,

The office is open *till* ten o'clock at night.	La oficina está abierta *hasta* las diez de la noche.

396. *To*, when preceded by *from*, in such phrases as "from bad *to* worse," "from time *to* time," is rendered by *en;* when it means "*of*," by *de;* and in other cases generally by *á;* as,

(*a.*) From day *to* day.	De dia *en* dia.
(*b.*) A friend *to* his country.	Un amigo *de* su pátria.
An uncle *to* John.	Un tio *de* Juan.
(*c.*) He-gave the inkstand *to* Mary.	Dió el tintero *á* María.

397. *Towards* is rendered by *hácia;* as,

Here comes *towards* us the lady of the house.	Aquí viene *hácia* nosotros la señora de la casa.

398. *Under* is rendered by *debajo de* or *bajo;* as,

Under the bridge. *Under* the table.	*Debajo de*l puente. *Bajo* la mesa.

(*a.*) *Under* is rendered by *so* in the following phrases, *so capa de*, "*under* cover of;" *so color de*, "*under* color of," *so pena de*, "*under* penalty of;" *so pretexto de*, "*under* pretext of."

399. *With*, when meaning "*of*" or "*from*" or "*by*," is rendered by *de;* in most other cases by *con;* as,

(*a.*) We-are covered *with* dust.	Estamos cubiertos *de* polvo.
(*b.*) We are-dying *with* cold.	Nos morimos *de* frío.
(*c.*) John killed him *with* a sabre-stroke.	Juan le mató *de* un sablazo.
(*d.*) *With* permission of the captain.	*Con* permiso del capitan.

400. *Within* is rendered by *dentro de;* as,

I-shall-need it *within* three days.	Lo necesitaré *dentro de* tres dias.

401. *Without*, meaning "*destitute of*," "*with exemption from*," is rendered by *sin;* and when it means "*outside of*" or "*beyond*," by *fuera de;* as,

(*a.*) Treat me *without* ceremony.	Tráteme vmd. *sin* ceremónia.
(*b.*) To-buy *without* money.	Comprar *sin* dinero.
(*c.*) They-cast him *without* the city.	Le echaron *fuera de* la ciudad.

(*d.*) *Sin* in Spanish is regarded as a *negative* preposition, and is therefore often followed by a negative conjunction; as,

Sin otro fin *ni* motivo.	Without another end or (*nor*) motive.

402. There are other prepositions in Spanish, which, as they can be rendered in most cases by the corresponding English preposition, offer no difficulty to the learner. Such are *para con*, "in respect to;" *además de*, "besides;" *a pesar de*, "in spite of," "notwithstanding;" *cerca de*, "near to;" *frente á*, or *en frente de*, "opposite;" *en orden á*, "with regard to;" *junto á*, "adjoining;" *por el médio de*, "across;" *durante*, "during."

403. The preposition *entre*, "between," when it comes before personal pronouns, does not govern them in the objective case in Spanish, but is

followed by them in the nominative; as, "*entre tú y yo*" (and not *entre tí y mí*), "between thee and me."

404. Prepositions, as in English, are placed before the word which they govern.

(*a.*) Care must be taken to distinguish the use of the same word in English, whether employed as a preposition or an adverb or conjunction. Thus in the phrases "*after* breakfast," "*before* dinner," the words "*after*" and "*before*" are prepositions, and are to be rendered by *despues de* and *ántes de*, respectively; while in the phrases, "*after* I had departed," "*before* I had dined," the words "*after*" and "*before*" are adverbs, and are to be rendered by *despues que* and *ántes que*.

(*b.*) *Segun*, when used before a verb in Spanish, is not a preposition, but an adverb, meaning "*according as*;" as, *segun creo*, "*according as* I-believe;" *segun pareció*, "*according as* it-appeared."

☞ The idiomatic use of certain prepositions connected with verbs or other parts of speech will be found in the Appendix, Number III.

OF THE INTERJECTION.

405. The position of the interjection in a sentence is determined by no fixed rules, but is allowed to vary, as in English, according as harmony and propriety may require.

406. The interjection *ete*, "lo," "behold," is used with the first objective case of the personal pronouns only, being joined to them and forming one word; as,

¡*Ete*me! ¡*Ete*le! ¡*Ete*la!	*Behold* me! *Behold* him! *Behold* her!
¡*Ete*los que vienen!	*Lo*, they come

(*a.*) The interjection *he*, "see," "behold," is prefixed to the first objective case of personal pronouns, and precedes adverbs, such as *aquí*, "here," *allí*, "there;" as,

¡*He*le aquí! ¡*He*la aquí!	Here he is! Here she is!
¡*He*los allí!	There they are!

☞ More literally these exclamations might be rendered, "*see him here!*" "*see her here!*" "*behold them there!*"

407. When adjectives are employed as interjections, they are followed by the preposition *de*, if a noun or pronoun come after; as,

¡ Desgraciado *de* mi!	Unlucky me! (or, Unfortunate that I am!)

(*a.*) The interjection *ay* is followed by *de* when used before a noun or pronoun; as,

¡ Ay *de* me!	Alas for me! (or, Wo to me!)

APPENDIX TO PART III.

NUMBER I.

OF PROSODY.

408. Prosody properly includes the principles which pertain to the sounds of a language, the rules of syllabication, accentuation, quantity of the syllables, punctuation, and versification.

☞ The general rules of pronunciation, syllabication, and accentuation have been given in Part I. A few additional remarks on these subjects will be made here.

PRONUNCIATION.

409. In Spanish prosody, words are classed according to their accentuation, into *agudas*, *llanas*, and *esdrújulas:* those are called *agudas* which are accented on the last (ultimate) vowel; as, *amar*, *fiel*, *amó*, *salió:* those are called *llanas* which are accented on the vowel next to the last (the penultimate); as, *amo*, *corre*, *comía*, *comiendo*, *fortificaron*, *órden:* those are called *esdrújulas* which are accented on the second vowel from the last (the antepenultimate); as, *lógico*, *médico*, *gramática*, *amábamos*.

410. The accented vowel of any word is to be pronounced with a greater stress of voice and longer duration of sound than the other vowels of the same word.

(*a.*) When a word ends with an unaccented vowel, this final vowel is to be accented rather softly; as *carne*, pronounced in ordinary conversation as it would be in English if written *cár-ny*.

411. In ordinary conversation, as well as in reading prose or scanning poetry, two vowels of the same name coming together, the one being at the end of a word and the other at the beginning of the word following, are made to glide into one sound, somewhat prolonged; as, *la amiga*

*ha** *venido*, pronounced *la-amiga-a venido; Santa-Anna*, pronounced *Sant'-Anna.*

OF VOWELS FORMING OR NOT FORMING DIPHTHONGS OR TRIPHTHONGS.

412. When two or three vowels come together in the same word, sometimes they form a diphthong (that is, a single syllable), and at other times two syllables.

413. The diphthongs and triphthongs in Spanish are *ái* (or *áy*), *áu*, *ea*, *éi* (or *éy*), *eo*, *éu*, *ia*, *ié*, *io*, *íu*, *oe*, *ói* (or *óy*), *ou*,† *ua*, *ué*, *uí* (or *úy*), *uo ; iái*, *iéi*, *uái* (or *uáy*), *uéi* (or *uéy*). Some of these are always, and others not always diphthongs, as will be seen from the following rules:

(*a.*) *Ae*, *ao*, and *oa* are never diphthongs, but always form two syllables; as, *aecho*, *nao*, *canoa*, pronounced *a-é-cho*, *ná-o*, *ca-nó-a.*

(*b.*) *Au*, *ay*, *eu*, *ey*, *iu*, *ou*, *oy*, *uy*,‡ are always to be considered as diphthongs; so also *uay* and *uey* as triphthongs. Thus, *páu-sa*, *cam-bráy*, *déu-da*, *vi-réy*, *vīu-da*, *triún-fo*, *es-tóy*, *Pa-ra-guáy.*§

(*c.*) *Ai*, *ei*, *oi*, and *ia*, *ie*, *io* are diphthongs in all cases except when the *i* is accented; thus, *es-táis*, *réi-na*, *sóis*, *no-tí-cia*, *tié-ne*, *ne-ce-sá-rio.* When the *i* is accented (whether marked or not) these vowels do not form a diphthong; thus, *tra-ī-do*, *o-ī-do*, *por-fī-a*, *na-vī-o*, *frī-o.* If *io* terminate a verb, and either letter have the marked accent over it, a diphthong is not formed; thus, *co-mi-ó*, *te-mi-ó.*

(*d.*) *Ea*, *eo*, *oe*, when they are the final letters of a word, and the accent (whether marked or not) is upon the preceding syllable, form a diphthong; but in all other cases, two syllables; thus, *Bó-reas*, *vir-gí-neo*, *hé-roe;* and *sé-a*, *a-fe-ár*, *i-dé-a*, *tro-fé-o*, *po-é-ta.*

(*e.*) *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uie* are diphthongs when the accent is not on the *u;* as, *lé-gua*, *hué-vo*, *ruī-do*, *mû-tuo*, *quién.* But when the accent is on the *u*, they do not form a diphthong; as, *e-fec-tú-an*, *gan-zú-a*, *e-fec-tú-e*, *trú-e-no*, *e-fec-tú-o.*

(*f.*) *Ia* are not a diphthong when they occur in the terminations of the imperfect tenses of the indicative and subjunctive, because the *i* is always

---

* *H* being a silent letter, of course its intervention between two vowels does not prevent their union of sound, as required by the above rule.

† The diphthong *ou* is seldom found in Spanish writings; never, in fact, except in foreign proper names.

‡ This list can be readily remembered, as it comprehends all the diphthongs ending with *u* or *y*.

§ All words ending with *y*, preceded by a vowel, it must be kept in mind, are accented on the last syllable.

to be accented in these tenses, whether marked or not; as, *ha-bī-a, ha-bī-a-mos, a-ma-rī-a, a-ma-rī-ais.*

(*g.*) The above rules are general; yet in Spanish poetry, as in English, vowels which ought to form a diphthong are sometimes found forming two syllables; as, *rū-ī-do, sū-á-ve,* instead of *ruí-do, sua-ve.* So likewise two vowels which ought to form two syllables, are often found united into one; as, *poé-ta,* instead of *po-é-ta.*

☞ Thus also in English poetry, two vowels which properly form two syllables are often united into one; as in the words *power, period, influence.*

OF VERSE AND RHYME.

414. A verse is a line containing a certain number of poetic feet, or syllables arranged according to certain rules of prosody. There are many kinds of verse distinguished by the number of syllables they contain; this constitutes the *metre* or *measure.* This measured division of syllables, with the musical cadence of the voice in repeating them, is called *rhythm.*

415. *Rhyme* consists in the similarity of sounds at the end of two or more verses. This similarity of sound may exist between one, two, or three syllables of different words; as, *pintór* and *primór; vído* and *vestído; utilidád* and *habilidád.* Verses without rhyme are called *versos sueltos,* or blank verses.

(*a.*) Rhyme in Spanish poetry is of two kinds; that of *consonance* (*consonáncia*), and that of *assonance* (*asonáncia*). By *consonáncia* is meant the sameness or similarity of sound between certain vowels and consonants; as, *canto* and *tanto.* By *asonáncia* is meant the rhyming of the vowels alone; thus, *señora, española, otra, toda, coma,* all rhyme by *asonáncia,* since the accented vowel and final vowel are alike.

416. A verse terminated with a word that is accented on the last syllable is called *verso agudo* (see 409); with a word accented on the penultimate, is called *verso llano;* and with a word accented on the antepenultimate, is called *verso esdrújulo.*

(*a.*) In the *versos llanos*, the number of syllables is precisely equal to that determined by the metre; in *versos agudos*, the number of syllables is one less than that indicated by the metre; and in *versos esdrújulos*, the number of syllables is one more than that belonging to the metre; thus,

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Verso llano.	Ha-	cien-	do	del	lo-	ro	mó-	fa.
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
Verso agudo.	La	car-	ca-	ja-	da	sol-	to.	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Verso esdrújulo.	De	to-	dos	los	es-	pe-	cí-	fi-	cos.

☞ In these examples the metre belongs to that consisting of eight syllables, and every verse is accented on the seventh syllable; but, as will be perceived, only the verse *llano* contains the number denoted by the measure. *Versos llanos* are in most common use in Spanish.

417. When in a verse a word ends with a vowel and the following word begins with a vowel or an *h*, the final vowel forms a diphthong with the other, and both are reckoned only as one syllable; and three vowels coming together in the same manner, are reckoned as one syllable, the sounds of each being made to glide into one sound; as,

Q*ue un*	tor-	*do en*	a-	ques-	*te en-*	gá-	ño.
E' hi-	cie-	*se a-*	llí	su	ra-	pí-	na.
Di-	*jo á u-*	na	mo-	na	tai-	má-	da.
Sa-	ló-	se	del	cor-	*ro, y**	dí-	jo.

(*a.*) This union of all the vowels sometimes does not take place; thus when the second word begins with an *h*, or when there is a natural pause, or when the conjunction *y* comes between two vowels.

Gran-	de es,	si es	bue-	*na, u-*	na ó-	bra.
Díc-	tan-	la el	cie-	*go*	*y* el	mán-	co.

EXAMPLES FOR SCANNING.

Y si caigo,	4.
¿ Qué es la vida?	4.
Por perdida	4.
Ya la dí,	3.
Cuando el yugo	4.
Del esclavo,	4.
Como un bravo	4.
Sacudí.	3.

☞ The figures at the close of each verse indicate the number of

* *Y*, when a consonant, that is, when it begins a word, can not thus form a diphthong with another vowel.

syllables which that verse contains, when scanned according to the directions in the preceding rules.

Pescadorcita mia, 7.
Desciende á la ribera, 7.
Y escucha placentera, 7.
Mi cántico de amor; 6.
Sentado en su barquilla, 7.
Te canta su cuidado, 7.
Cual nunca enamorado 7.
Tu tierno pescador. 6.

J. DE ESPRONCEDA.

Todos süave reposo 8.
En tu calma ¡oh noche! buscan, 8.
Y aun las lágrimas tus sueños 8.
Al desventurado enjugan. 8.

J. DE ESPRONCEDA.

Si querer entender de todo 9.
Es ridícula presuncion, 8.
Servir solo para una cosa 9.
Suele ser falta no menor. 8.

T. DE IRIARTE.

De sus hijos la torpe avutarda 10.
El pesado volar conocía, 10.
Deseando sacar una cría 10.
Mas lijera, aunque fuese bastarda. 10.

T. DE IRIARTE.

Hubo un rico en Madrid (y aun dicen que era 11
Mas nécio que rico), 6.
Cuya casa magnífica adornaban 11.
Muebles esquisitos. 6.
¡Lástima que en vivienda tan preciosa, 11.
Le dijo un amigo, 6.
Falte una librería! bello adorno, 11.
U'til y preciso. 6.

T. DE IRIARTE.

Cuando veo yo algunos que de otros escritores 14.
A la sombra se arriman, y piensan ser autores 14.
Con poner cuatro notas ó hacer un proloquillo, 14.
Estoy por aplicarles lo que dijo el tomillo. 14.

T. DE IRIARTE.

Remark.—These vowel-sounds at the end of one word and beginning of the succeeding word, glide into one diphthongal sound, just as in the following distich in English the vowels *e* and *u* of the words "the-unbroken" run into one sound, the syllables "*the*" and "*un*" forming in the metre but a single syllable:

"With naked feelings and with aching pride,
He hears *the un*broken blast on every side."

S. T. Coleridge.

418. The rhyme must always begin at that vowel upon which the accent is placed (whether marked or not); thus in *versos agudos*, the rhyme is to begin at the vowel of the ultimate syllable; in *versos llanos*, at the vowel of the penultimate; and in *versos esdrújulos*, at the vowel of the antepenultimate; as,

Agudo. ¡Cuan presto se va el placer,
Llano. Como despues de acordado,
Agudo. Da dolor!
Agudo. ¡Como á nuestro paracer
Llano. Cualquiera tiempo pasado,
Agudo. Fué mejor!

Jorge Manrique.

Versos Esdrújulos.
Ello es que hay animales muy científicos
En curarse con varios específicos,
Y en conservar su construccion orgánica
Como hábiles que son en la botánica.

T. de Iriarte.

APPENDIX TO PART III.

NUMBER II.

A SUMMARY OF THE RULES OF GENDER OF SPANISH NOUNS.

419. In Spanish, as in English, all nouns which from their signification refer to male beings are *masculine;* as un *hombre*, a *man ;* un *sombrerero*, a *hatter ;* un *juez*, a *judge ;* un *leon*, a *lion :* and all nouns which from their signification refer to female beings are *feminine ;* as, una *muger*, a *woman ;* una *lavandera*, a *laundress ;* una *actriz*, an *actress ;* una *leona*, a *lioness.* Such nouns are said to be masculine or feminine from their *signification.*

420. As all nouns in Spanish (including those which in English are said to be of the *neuter* gender) are considered as either masculine or feminine, it is important to know how to distinguish the gender of such nouns as are properly neither masculine nor feminine from their signification. The following simple rules will show that the gender of such nouns depends with but few exceptions on their *terminations*:

421. Nouns that terminate in *a*, *d*, *ie*, *umbre*, *ion*, *is*, or *ez* (unless they may be masculine from their *signification ;* see 419), are *feminine ;* as, una *casa*, a *house ;* la *pared*, the *wall :* la *espécia*, the *species ;* una *costumbre*, a *custom ;* una *ocupacion*, an *occupation ;* una *tesis*, a *thesis ;* la *tez*, the *complexion.*

(*a.*) Nouns that terminate in *ié* (that is, such as are accented on the last syllable) form an exception to the above rule, being always masculine. The only nouns which come under this class are *pié* and all its compounds : as, el *pié*, the *foot ;* el *aguapié*, the *small-wine ;* un *puntapié*, a *kick.* So *buscapié*, *hincapié*, *paspié*, *rodapié*, *sobrepié*, *traspié*, etc.

422. Nouns that do not terminate in *a*, *d*, *ie*, *umbre*, *ion*, *is*, or *ez* (unless feminine from their *signification ;* see 419),

are *masculine;* as, un *camino*, a *road;* un *buque*, a *ship;* el *alelí*, the *gilliflower;* el *jabon*, the *soap;* el *caliz*, the *chalice;* un *clarin*, a *clarion;* un *fusil*, a *gun;* un *gas*, a *gas;* un *huracan*, a *hurricane;* un *convoy*, a *convoy*.

EXCEPTIONS TO THE GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

423. The nouns in the following list are *feminine*, though they do not terminate in *a*, *d*, *ie*, *umbre*, *ion*, *is*, or *ez:*

Aguachirle,	*small-wine.*	Cargazon,	*cargo.*
Aguamiel,	*hydromel.*	Cariátide,	*cariatydes.*
Anagalide,	*pimpernel.*	Cáries,	*cariosity.*
Anémone,	*anemone.*	Carne,	*flesh.*
Anime,	*a kind of resin.*	Carraspique,	*candy-tuft.*
Apócope,	*apocope.*	Castrazon,	*the gelding-season*
Apófise,	*apophysis.*	Catanance, } Catananque, }	*the plant lion's foot.*
Apomeli,	*apomel.*	Castástrofe,	*catastrophe.*
Apóstrofe,	*apostrophe.*	Catedral,	*cathedral-church.*
Armazon,	*carcase.*	Cerachates (plu.),	*wax-stones.*
Ave,	*a bird.*	Cerrazon,	*cloudy weather.*
Base,	*base.*	Cerviz,	*nape.*
Beladin, } Beram, }	*a sort of muslin.*	Champan,	*a kind of sloop.*
Bezar, } Bezoar, }	*bezoar.*	Chile,	*a sort of pepper.*
Binazon,	*second ploughing.*	Chinche,	*a bug.*
Bocacalle,	*end or opening of a street.*	Chochaperdiz,	*a wood-cock.*
Cachunde,	*a kind of paste.*	Cicatriz,	*a scar.*
Cal,	*lime.*	Ciclóide,	*cycloid.*
Caladre,	*a species of lark.*	Clase,	*class; rank.*
Calicut,	*a sort of silk goods.*	Clavazon,	*a set of nails.*
Calle,	*street.*	Clave,	*a key-stone; key.*
Camedafne,	*spurge-olive.*	Clemátide,	*clematis.*
Caniquí,	*a sort of muslin.*	Clin,	*mane.*
Capital,*	*capital-city.*	Codorniz,	*a quail.*
Car,	*end of the mizen-yard.*	Cohechazon,	*last ploughing.*
Caramel,	*a kind of pilchard.*	Col,	*cabbage.*
Cárcel,	*prison.*	Coliflor,	*cauliflower.*
Cardamouri,	*a kind of drug-dye*	Colzal,	*colewort-seed.*
		Concóide,	*conchoid.*
		Conóide,	*conoid.*
		Consonante,	*a consonant.*

* *Capital*, when it means "*a sum of money*," is masculine.

Contraluz,	*counterlight.*	Faringe,	*pharynx.*
Conventual,	*convent-church.*	Fasces (plural),	*fasces.*
Corambre,	*hides of animals.*	Fase,	*phase.*
Corriente,	*current.*	Fauces (plural),	*fauces.*
Corte,	*court.*	Faz,	*face.*
Cose,	*a kind of measure.*	Fé,	*faith.*
Cotangente,	*cotangent.*	Fiebre,	*fever.*
Coz,	*a kick.*	Fleme,	*fleam.*
Creciente,	*a rise of waters.*	Flor,	*flower.*
Credencial,	*credential.*	Frase,	*phrase.*
Criazon,	*breed of animals.*	Frente,	*forehead.*
Crin,	*mane.*	Fretes (plural),	*frets.*
Cruz,	*cross.*	Fronte,	*front.*
Cuspide,	*cuspis.*	Fuente,	*fountain.*
Dendrite,	*dendrites.*	Fustan,	*fustian.*
Desazon,	*disquietness.*	Galactite	*fuller's earth.*
Diócesi,	*diocese.*	Gente,	*people.*
Díplas,	*a species of serpent*	Goguerin,	*a frill.*
Doral,	*fly-catcher.*	Granazon,	*seeding.*
Egílope,	*a sort of wild oats.*	Grey,	*flock.*
Eglantine,	*smooth speedwell.*	Hambre,	*hunger.*
Elipse,	*ellipsis.*	Haz,	*surface.*
Enjambrazon,	*swarming of bees.*	Helice,	*helix.*
Entrecanal,	*space between the flutings of a column.*	Hemionite,	*hart's-tongue.*
		Hiel,	*gall.*
		Higiene,	*hygiene.*
Epiciclóide,	*epicycloid.*	Hinchazon	*swelling.*
Epígrafe,	*epigraph.*	Hipérbole,	*hyperbole.*
Epipactide,	*epipactis.*	Hojaldre,	*a sort of pan-cake.*
Eringe,	*field-eringo.*	Hoz,	*sickle.*
Escorpiode	*caterpillar.*	Hueste,	*host.*
Esferóide,	*spheroid.*	Imágen,	*image.*
Espicanarde,	*spikenard.*	Indole,	*temper.*
Estirpe,	*a race.*	Ingle,	*groin.*
Estriga,	*screech-owl.*	Isagoge,	*introduction*
Etiópide,	*clary.*	Labor,	*labor.*
Etites,	*eagle-stone.*	Lande,	*acorn.*
Extravagante,	*a kind of papal constitution.*	Landre,	*swelling of the glands.*
Falange,	*phalanx.*	Lapade,	*acorn shell-fish.*
Falaride,	*canary-grass.*	Lapislazuli,	*lapis lazuli.*
Falce,	*sickle.*	Laringe,	*larynx.*
Faldetes (plu.),	*tassels.*	Laude,	*a tombstone with an epitaph.*
Fame,	*hunger.*		

Leche,	*milk.*	Péplide,	*peplis.*
Lente,	*lens.*	Perdiz,	*partridge.*
Ley,	*law.*	Perífrase,	*periphrasis.*
Liebre,	*hare.*	Piel,	*skin.*
Liendre,	*nit.*	Pirámide,	*pyramid.*
Ligazon,	*contexture.*	Píxide,	*pyx.*
Lite,	*law-suit.*	Plebe,	*common people.*
Loche,	*loach.*	Podre,	*pus.*
Lombriz,	*a sort of worm.*	Portapaz,	*portapax.*
Loor,	*praise.*	Prole,	*offspring.*
Luz,	*light.*	Prostaféride,	*prostaferis.*
Llave,	*key.*	Puches (plural),	*a sort of fritters.*
Madriz,	*place of a quail's nest.*	Raigambre,	*collection of roots.*
		Raiz,	*root.*
Mano,	*hand.*	Rascazon,	*an incitement to scratch.*
Matriz,	*matrix.*		
Melindre,	*sort of fritters.*	Razon,	*reason.*
Menguante,	*ebb-tide.*	Res,	*head of cattle.*
Meninge,	*meninges.*	Sal,	*salt.*
Merey,	*cashew-tree.*	Salazon,	*seasoning.*
Metrópoli,	*metropolis.*	Sangre,	*blood.*
Miel,	*honey.*	Sardoniz,	*sardonyx.*
Mies,	*harvest; crop.*	Sarten,	*frying-pan.*
Mole,	*massiveness.*	Sazon,	*seasoning.*
Moral,	*ethics.*	Sebe,	*enclosure of high pales.*
Muerte,	*death.*		
Nariz,	*nose.*	Sede,	*a see.*
Nave,	*nave; ship.*	Segazon,	*harvest-season.*
Nicle,	*a species of agate.*	Segur,	*axe.*
Nieve,	*snow.*	Selenites,	*selenites.*
Noche,	*night.*	Seleícide,	*a species of bird.*
Nube,	*cloud.*	Senites,	*serinites.*
Oenate,	*fallow-finch.*	Serpiente,	*serpent.*
Palmachristi,	*palmachrist.*	Sien,	*temple of the head.*
Palude,	*lake.*	Sierpe,	*young serpent.*
Panace,	*all-heal.*	Simiente,	*seed.*
Paráfrase,	*paraphrase.*	Síncope,	*a syncope.*
Paragoge,	*paragoge.*	Sinrazon,	*injustice.*
Paralaje,	*parallax.*	Sirte,	*quicksand.*
Pareselene,	*mock-moon.*	Sístole,	*systole.*
Parroquial,	*parochial-church.*	Sobrefaz,	*superficies.*
Parte,	*part.*	Sobrehaz,	*surface.*
Patente,	*patent.*	Sobrellave,	*double key.*
Paz,	*peace.*	Sobrepelliz,	*surplice.*

Sobretarde,	*close of evening.*	Trabe,	*beam.*
Suerte,	*chance; fate.*	Tragaluz,	*sky-light.*
Tarde,	*afternoon.*	Tragazon,	*gluttony.*
Teamide,	*a stone repelling iron.*	Trireme,	*trireme.*
Tilde,	*the character (~) over n.*	Troj, Troje,	*a granary.*
Tingle,	*an instrument for glaziers.*	Ubre,	*udder.*
Torre,	*tower.*	Urdiembre,	*warp.*
Tos,	*cough.*	Várice,	*varix.*
Trabazon.	*juncture.*	Vocal,	*vowel.*
		Vorágine,	*vortex.*
		Voz,	*voice.*

424. The following nouns are *masculine*, although they have the terminations which belong in all other cases to feminine nouns:

Agrion,	*a species of tumor*	Argiritas (plu.),	*marcasites of silver mines.*
Agropila,	*German bezoar.*	Aroma,	*odorant principle of plants.*
Ajedrez,	*chess.*	Artritis,	*arthritis.*
Ajimez,	*an arched window*	Aspid,	*a species of serpent.*
Alarguez,	*dog-rose.*	Asturion,	*pony.*
Alcion,	*a king-fisher.*	Ataud,	*coffin.*
Alcríbis,	*a tube for bellows.*	Avion,	*martin.*
Alefris,	*a mortise.*	Axioma,	*axiom.*
Alerta,	*a watchword.*	Bastion,	*bastion.*
Aljez,	*gypsum.*	Berberis,	*barberry.*
Almez,	*lote-tree.*	Biribis, Bribis,	*a sort of game.*
Almirez,	*a mortar*	Brandis,	*a kind of great-coat.*
Almud,	*a dry measure.*	Budion,	*peacock-fish.*
Alguez,	*a wine measure.*	Busilis,	*the point of difficulty.*
Alumbre,	*alum.*	Calamis, Calanis,	*sweet-flag.*
Amaúris,	*a kind of linen.*	Camédris,	*wild germander.*
Anagrama,	*anagram.*	Carpion,	*a kind of fish.*
Análasis,	*analysis.*	Cazumbre,	*a sort of cord.*
Anfion,	*opium.*	Céncris,	*a kind of serpent.*
Anis,	*anise.*	Cercion,	*a species of mocking bird.*
Antípodas (plu.),	*antipodes.*		
Antuvion,	*a sudden stroke.*		
Apocalípsis,	*apocalypse.*		
Aporisma,	*echymosis.*		
Apotegma,	*apothegm.*		
Archilaud,	*a kind of lute.*		
Ardid,	*stratagem.*		
Argema,	*an ulcer of the eye*		

Césped,	*sod.*	Lácris,	*fruit of rosemary.*
Chirrion,	*a sort of cart.*	Laud,	*a lute.*
Cicion,	*intermittent fever.*	Lema,	*lemma.*
Clarion,	*crayon.*	Lid,	*conflict.*
Clima,	*climate.*	Maná,	*manna.*
Col-pez,	*isinglass.*	Mapa,	*map.*
Cometa,	*comet.*	Morrion,	*murrion.*
Corion,	*chorion.*	Náo,	*ship.*
Crisma,	*chrism.*	Pais,	*country.*
Cuaternion,	*union of four things.*	Paradigma,	*paradigm.*
		Paréntesis,	*parenthesis.*
Dia,	*day.*	Parúlis,	*gum-bile.*
Diafragma,	*diaphragm.*	Pez,	*fish.*
Diagrama,	*diagram.*	Planeta,	*planet.*
Dilema,	*dilemma.*	Poema,	*poem.*
Diploma,	*diploma.*	Postema,	*aposteme.*
Dogma,	*dogma.*	Prisma,	*prism.*
Drama,	*drama.*	Problema,	*problem.*
E'nfasis,	*emphasis.*	Progimnasma,	*essay.*
Enigma,	*enigma.*	Prois,	*ship-rope.*
Entimema,	*enthymeme.*	Relumbre,	*coppery taste.*
Epigrama,	*epigram.*	Rondis, Rondiz,	*face of a precious stone.*
Escorpion,	*scorpion.*		
Esperma,	*sperm.*	Sarampion,	*measles.*
E'stasis,	*ecstacy.*	Sintoma,	*symptom.*
Estilion,	*a species of lizard.*	Sirascósis,	*syssarcosis.*
Frontis,	*frontispiece.*	Sistema,	*system.*
Gabion, Gavion,	*gabion.*	Sofá,	*sofa.*
		Sofion,	*a hoot.*
Génesis,	*genesis.*	Sofisma,	*sophism.*
Gis,	*crayon.*	Solivion,	*a sudden lifting up.*
Glácis,	*glacis.*		
Gorbion,	*a kind of edging.*	Sud,	*south wind.*
Gris,	*gray.*	Tapaboca,	*slap on the mouth.*
Guion,	*standard.*	Tema,	*theme.*
Gurbion,	*gum-spurge.*	Teorema,	*theorem.*
Historion,	*a tedious story.*	Torticolis,	*torticollis.*
Idioma,	*idiom; language.*	Tris,	*noise of breaking glass.*
Jamis,	*a kind of cotton goods.*		
		Turbion,	*hurricane*
Jibion,	*cuttle-fish bone.*	Viva,	*a huzza.*

425. The nouns in the following list are of both genders, and of course may be used with the masculine and

the feminine article; thus, *el* puente or *la* puente, *the* bridge.

Albalá,	*a certificate.*	Mar,	*sea.*
Anatema,	*anathema.*	Márgen,	*margin.*
Arte,	*art.*	Nema,	*seal.*
Canal,	*canal.*	O'rden,	*order.*
Cisma,	*schism.*	Puente,	*bridge.*
Cutis,	*skin.*	Reuma,	*rheum.*
Dote,	*dowry.*	Tribú,	*tribe.*
Emblema,	*emblem.*		

426. Some nouns are applied to male or female beings, and the article in such cases will serve to distinguish the gender; thus, *el* cliente, the *male* client; *la* cliente, the *female* client.

427. Some nouns, the names of both male and female beings are always used as if belonging only to one gender; thus, *un* caracol, a snail; *una* serpiente, a serpent; *un* salmon, a salmon; *una* trucha, a trout.

428. The proper names of cities, towns, villages, and islands, etc., generally take the gender of the common nouns *ciudad* (city), *villa* (town), *lugar*, (village), *isla* (island), *mes* (month), to which they refer. Thus *París* is feminine, because *villa* is understood; and *Fuencarrál* is masculine, because *lugar* is understood. But it must also be mentioned that many proper names of countries, cities, etc., follow the rule of their termination. Thus *Cairo* is masculine, and *Habana*, feminine.

(*a.*) The names of the letters of the alphabet are feminine; the months of the year and days of the week are masculine.

APPENDIX TO PART III.

NUMBER III.

IDIOMATIC USE OF CERTAIN ADJECTIVES AND VERBS WITH PREPOSITIONS.

429. The idiomatic use of some adjectives and verbs accompanied by prepositions will be exhibited in the following list, selected chiefly from a table in the Grammar of the Spanish Academy:

Abocarse *con* alguno,	*to confer* with *any one.*
Aborrecido *de* todos,	*hated* by *all.*
Abrasarse *en* deséos,	*to be inflamed* with *desires.*
Abundar *de* ó *en* riquezas,	*to abound* with *or* in *riches.*
Abusar *de* la amistad,	*to abuse friendship.*
Acabar *de* venir,	*to have just come.*
Acordarse *de* lo pasado,	*to remember the past.*
Acre *de* génio,	*sour* in *disposition.*
Acreditarse *de* nécio,	*to show one's self a fool.*
Acreedor *á* la confianza,	*worthy* of *confidence.*
Afirmarse *en* lo dicho,	*to affirm what has been said.*
Ageno *de* verdad,	*foreign* to *truth.*
Agradecido *á* los beneficios,	*grateful* for *benefits.*
Agudo *de* ingénio,	*acute* in *intellect.*
Ahorrar *de* razones,	*to be sparing of arguments.*
Alabarse *de* valiente,	*to brag* of *one's own bravery.*
Alto *de* cuerpo,	*tall* in *stature.*
Ancho *de* boca,	*wide-mouthed.*
Andar *de* capa,	*to go* with *a cloak on.*
Andar *á* cuerpo,	*to go* without *a cloak.*
Andar *á* gatas,	*to go* on *all fours.*
Andar *por* tierra,	*to go humbled* to *the earth.*
Angosto *de* manga,	*tight-sleeved.*
Apasionarse *á*, *de*, ó *por* alguno,	*to be enamored* with *any one.*
Apearse *de* su opinion,	*to alter one's opinion.*
Apercibirse *de* armas,	*to prepare one's self* with *arms.*

Apercibirse *á*, ó *para* la batalla,	*to prepare* for *battle.*
Apetecible *ál* gusto,	*desirable* to *the taste.*
Apetecido *de*, ó *por* todos,	*desired* by *all.*
Apiadarse *de* los pobres,	*to pity the poor.*
Apostar *á* correr,	*to bet* on *running.*
Apresurarse *á* venir,	*to hasten to come.*
Aprobado *de* cirujano,	*approved* as *a surgeon.*
Aprovecharse *de* la ocasion,	*to improve the occasion.*
Apurado *de* médios,	*destitute* of *means.*
Arder *en* deséos,	*to burn* with *desires.*
Arderse *en* quimeras,	*to abound* in *quarrels.*
Arrimarse *á* la pared,	*to lean against the wall.*
Atento *con* sus mayores,	*attentive* to *one's betters.*
Aventajarse *á* otros,	*to gain the advantage* over *others.*
Bajo *de* cuerpo,	*low* in *stature.*
Benéfico *á*, ó *para* la salud,	*good* for *the health.*
Blanco *de* cutis,	*white-complexioned.*
Blando *de* corteza,	*soft-skinned.*
Blasfemar *de* la virtud,	*to blaspheme* against *virtue.*
Bordar *al* tambor,	*to embroider* on *a tambour frame.*
Bordar *de* pasados,	*to embroider* on *both sides.*
Boto *de* punto,	*blunt* at *the point.*
Bramar *de* corage,	*to roar* from *passion.*
Brear *á* chasco,	*to vex* with *joking.*
Bueno *de*, ó *para* comer	*good* to *eat.*
Caber *de* piés,	*to have room to stand* on *one's feet.*
Calificar *de* docto,	*to qualify one* as *learned.*
Calzarse á alguno,	*to manage any one.**
Caminar *á* pié,	*to journey* on *foot.*
Capaz *de* cien arrobas,	*capable of containing a hundred arrobas.*
Cargarse *de* razon,	*to maintain one's own opinion*
Chico *de* cuerpo,	*small* in *body.*
Comerse *de* invídia,	*to pine away* from *envy.*
Complacerse *de*, ó *en* alguna cosa,	*to be pleased* with *any thing.*
Concebir *por* bueno,	*to conceive* as *good.*
Conceptuar á alguno *de*, ó por sabio,	*to regard any one* as *wise.*
Concurrir *á* alguna parte,	*to meet* at *some place.*
Conferir *con*, ó *entre* los amigos,	*to confer* with *friends.*
Confesarse *con* alguno.	*to confess* to *any one.*
Confesarse *de* sus culpas,	*to confess one's faults.*
Conformarse *con* el tiempo	*to conform* to *the times.*
Congratularse *de* alguna cosa,	*to rejoice* in *any thing.*

* Literally, "to put on the shoes to any one;" meaning, "to lead any one by the nose."

Consentir *en* algo,	*to consent* to *any thing.*
Constar *por* escrito,	*to appear* in *writing.*
Contrapuntearse *de* palabras,	*to revile one another.*
Contravenir *á* la ley,	*to violate the law.*
Contribuir *con* dinero,	*to contribute money.*
Correrse *de* vergüenza,	*to be ashamed.*
Corresponder *á* los beneficios,	*to make return, to be grateful* for *benefits.*
Crecido *de* cuerpo,	*increased, or, large* in *stature.*
Creerse *de* alguna cosa,	*to be convinced* of *anything.*
Cumplir *con* alguno,	*to discharge one's duty* to *any one.*
Cumplir *con* su obligation,	*to discharge one's duty.*
Cumplir *de* palabra,	*to perform* by *word only.*
Cutirse *al* aire,	*to be tanned* by *the air.*
Dar á alguno *de* palos,	*to strike any one* with *sticks.*
Dar *en* el blanco,	*to hit the mark.*
Dar en manías,	*to be foolish.*
Dar *á* reir,	*to set* to *laughing.*
Dar *con* la entretenida,	*to put off* with *words and excuses.*
Dar *con* uno,	*to meet a person sought for.*
Dar *tras* uno,	*to persecute one.*
Dar *por* visto,	*to suppose* as *seen.*
Dar *sobre* la calle,	*to overlook the street.*
Darse *por* vencido,	*to own one's self* as *conquered.*
Delante *de* alguno,	*before any body.*
Dentro *de* casa,	*within the house.*
Desagradecido *á* alguno beneficio,	*ungrateful* for *any benefit.*
Desconfiar *de* alguno,	*to distrust any one.*
Desconocido á los beneficios,	*ungrateful* for *benefits.*
Dividir *por* mitad,	*to divide* into *halves.*
Dotado *de* ciéncia,	*endowed* with *learning.*
Dudar *de* alguna cosa,	*to be doubtful* concerning *any thing.*
Echar á alguno *á* patadas,	*to force any one out* with *kicks.*
Echar *de* manga,	*to make a cat's paw* of *one.*
Empaparse *en* água,	*to be soaked* with *water.*
Emparentar *con* alguno,	*to be related* to *any one.*
Empeñarse *en* algo,	*to take a fancy* to *a thing.*
Empeñarse *por* alguno,	*to recommend any one,* or *take his part.*
Enamorarse *de* alguna,	*to be enamored* with *any one.*
Encaramarse *en, por, ó sobre* la pared,	*to climb* up *or* over *the wall.*
Encenderse *en* ira,	*to be enkindled* with *anger.*
Enfermar *del* pecho,	*to be weak* in *the breast.*
Entender *de* alguna cosa,	*to understand* about *a thing.*
Escaso *de* médios,	*limited* in *means.*
Espantarse *de* algo,	*to be frightened* at *any thing.*

Estar *á* la órden de otro,	*to be* at *the service of another.*
Estar *de* buen humor,	*to be* in *a good humor.*
Estar *de* viage,	*to be* on *a journey.*
Estar *de*, ó *en* pié,	*to be* on *foot; to stand.*
Estar *de* por médio,	*to interpose.*
Estar *en* ánimo *de*,	*to have an inclination* to.
Estar *en* lo que se dice,	*to understand what is said.*
Estar *para* salir,	*to be ready* to *start.*
Estar *por* alguno,	*to be* in favor of *any one.*
Estar (algo) *por* suceder,	*to be* (something) near *happening.*
Escusarse *con* alguno,	*to apologize* to *any one.*
Fácil *de* digerer,	*easy to digest.*
Faltar *á* la palabra,	*to fail* in *one's word.*
Faltar *de* algo,	*to be wanting* in *any thing.*
Fastidiarse *de* manjares,	*to loathe victuals.*
Fatigarse *de*, *en*, ó *por* alguna cosa,	*to worry one's self* about *any thing.*
Fiarse *de*, ó *en* alguno,	*to confide* in *any one.*
Fuerte *en* condicion,	*strong* in *temper.*
Gordo *de* talle,	*large* at *the waist; thick set.*
Gozar *de* alguna cosa,	*to enjoy any thing.*
Guiado *de* alguno,	*guided* by *any one.*
Guiarse *por* alguno,	*to guide one's self* by *any one.*
Gustar *de* alguna cosa,	*to like any thing.*
Hacer *á* todo,	*to be ready* at *doing any thing.*
Hacer *de* valiente,	*to act* as if *valiant.*
Hacer *de* escribano,	*to act* as *a scribe.*
Hacer *para*, ó *por* salvarse,	*to endeavor* to *save one's self.*
Hacerse *con* algo,	*to provide one's self* with *any thing.*
Hincarse *de* rodillas,	*to kneel down.*
Holgarse *con*, ó *de* alguna cosa,	*to delight* in *any thing.*
Inapeable *de* su opinion,	*stubborn* in *one's opinion.*
Inductivo *de* error,	*leading* to *error.*
Infecto *de* heregías,	*infected* with *heresies.*
Ingrato *á* los beneficios,	*ungrateful* for *benefits.*
Ingrato *con* los amigos,	*ungrateful* to *friends.*
Ir *con* alguno,	*to agree* with *any one.*
Jugar *á* tal juego,	*to play* at *such a game.*
Largo *de* manos,	with *a liberal hand.*
Lastimarse *de* alguno,	*to have compassion* on *any one.*
Leer los pensamientos *á* alguno,	*to read the thoughts* of *any one.*
Limitado *de* talentos,	*limited* as to *talents.*
Malquistarse *con* alguno,	*to incur the hatred* of *any one.*
Mantenerse *de* yerbas,	*to live* upon *herbs.*
Maravillarse *de* alguna cosa,	*to marvel* at *any thing.*

Mas *de* cien ducados,	*more* than *a hundred ducats.*
Matarse *en* trabajar,	*to kill one's self* with *labor.*
Mediano *de* cuerpo,	of *middling stature.*
Mejorar *de* empléo,	*to better one's employment.*
Menor *de* edad,	*under age; minor.*
Meterse *á* sábio,	*to affect the sage.*
Meterse *con* alguno,	*to pick a quarrel* with *any one.*
Meterse *en* todo,	*to be jack* of *all trades.*
Meterse *en* los peligros,	*to expose one's self* to *dangers.*
Mirar *por* alguno,	*to look* after *any one's interest.*
Molido *de* andar,	*fatigued* with *walking.*
Montar *á* caballo,	*to mount a horse.*
Montar *en* mula,	*to mount a mule.*
Montar *en* colera,	*to fly* into *a passion.*
Morir *de* poca edad,	*to die* at *an early age.*
Morirse *de* frío,	*to be dying* with *cold.*
Mudar *de* intento.	*to alter one's mind.*
Murmurar *de* alguno,	*to murmur* against *any one.*
Nacer *con* fortuna,	*to be born* to *a fortune.*
Nacer *para* trabajos,	*born* to *labor.*
Notar á alguno *de* hablador,	*to find fault with any one* as *a talker.*
Oblividarse *de* lo pasado,	*to forget the past.*
Optar *á* los empléos,	*to seek* for *an office.*
Ordenarse *de* sacerdote,	*to be ordained* as *a priest.*
Pagarse *de* buenas razones,	*to be satisfied* with *good reasons.*
Partir *por* mitad,	*to divide* into *halves.*
Pasar *á* cuchillo,	*to put to the sword.*
Pasar *de* Sevilla,	*to go* beyond *Seville.*
Pasar *por* cobarde,	*to pass* for *a coward.*
Pasarse *con* poco,	*to be satisfied* with *a little.*
Pasarse *de* bueno,	*to be* too *good.*
Pecar *de* ignorante,	*to sin* through *ignorance.*
Pedir algo *á* alguno,	*to ask any thing* of *any one.*
Pedir *de* justícia,	*to claim* in *law.*
Pedir *en* justícia,	*to sue* at *law.*
Perecer *de* hambre,	*to perish* with *hunger.*
Persuadirse *á* alguna cosa,	*to be persuaded* of *any thing.*
Precedido *de* otro,	*preceded* by *another.*
Preciarse *de* valiente,	*to boast of one's self* as *courageous.*
Presumir *de* docto,	*to make pretensions* for *a man of learning.*
Quedar *de* asiento,	*to remain* in *a spot.*
Quedar *de* piés,	*to remain* on *foot.*
Quedar *en* casa,	*to remain* at *home.*
Quedar *por* andar,	*to have* to *go farther.*

Quedar *por* valiente,	*to be reputed* as *a valiant man.*
Quedar *por* alguno,	*to go surety* for *any one.*
Recebirse *de* abogado,	*to be admitted* as *a counsellor.*
Redundar *en* benefício,	*to redound* to *the benefit.*
Revolver *hácia*, ó sobre el enemigo,	*to return* to *the enemy.*
Saber *á* vino,	*to taste* like *wine.*
Saber *á* trabajos,	*to be acquainted* with *labor.*
Sacar *en* límpio,	*to clear up all doubts.*
Salir *á* alguna cosa,	*to co-operate* in *any thing.*
Salir *con* la pretension,	*to obtain one's end.*
Salir *por* fiador,	*to act* as *surety.*
Servir *de* mayor-domo,	*to serve* as *major-domo.*
Sordo *de* un oido,	*deaf* with *one ear.*
Suplicar *de* la senténcia,	*to supplicate* against *the sentence.*
Suspirar *por* el mando,	*to aspire* after *the command.*
Teñir *de* azul,	*to dye* in *blue.*
Triunfar *de* los enemigos,	*to triumph* over *the enemy.*
Utilizarse *en* ó *con* alguna cosa,	*to reap benefit* from *any thing.*
Vecino *al* trono,	*near the throne.*
Vencerse *á* alguna cosa,	*to conquer one's self* in *any thing.*
Vengarse *de* otro,	*to revenge one's self* on *another.*
Verse *con* alguno,	*to meet any one* (*for settling differences*).
Vestir *á* la moda,	*to dress* according to *the fashion.*
Verstirse *de* paño,	*to be dressed* in *cloth.*
Volver *por* la verdad,	*to stand out* for *the truth.*
Volver *en* sí,	*to come* to *one's self.*

APPENDIX TO PART III.

NUMBER IV.

A LIST OF THE MOST COMMON IDIOMATIC PHRASES.

430. The general laws of the Spanish and English languages are the same; yet there are many forms of expression peculiar to each, which can not be translated from one language into the other by an exactly literal combination of words: such words or phrases are termed *idioms.*

(*a.*) In English we speak of "*playing on* a flute," while in Spanish the same idea is expressed by "*tocando* la flauta," which literally means "*touching* the flute." One form of expression is as good as the other, since those who speak either language know what is meant. In English, "what *o'clock* is it?" is a very common colloquial idiom, which in Spanish is expressed by "¿ qué *hora* es?" ("what *hour* is-it?") In English we say, "I *am afraid,*" "I *am hungry;*" while according to the Spanish idiom it would be said, "I *have fear,*" "I *have hunger.*" "Hacer *gran papel*" (which rendered literally would be, "to make *great paper*"), is a Spanish idiomatic term, meaning "to make *a great display,*" or as it is often, though not very elegantly, said in English, "to make *a figure,*" or "to cut *a dash.*" These two latter phrases rendered literally into Spanish, "hacer *una figure,*" or "cortar *un choque,*" would be as little understood as "to make *a great paper*" would be in English. Some of the most common Spanish idioms will be given in the following list:

431. *A.*—When in English the indefinite article *a* is used after the price or rate of any thing, as "ten dollars *a* yard," in Spanish the definite article *el* or *la*, or the preposition *por* is employed; as, "at fifteen crowns *a* volume," *á quince escudos* el *tomo* (or, por *tomo*).

(*a.*) When *a*, used as above, comes before a noun implying time, the preposition *á* is used with the definite article; as, "six hundred francs *a* year," *seiscientos francos* al *año.*

432. *Above.*—In such phrases as "*above* mentioned," this word is rendered by *ya;* as, "the author *above* cited," *el autor* ya *citado.*

433. *Account.*—"On no *account*," *de ninguna* manera; "on your *account*" (that is, "for your *sake*"), *por* amor *de vd.*—"to your *account*" (that is, "to *your charge*," or "*debt*"), *á* cargo *de vd.*

434. *Act.*—"*To act as*," is rendered by *hacer de;* as, "he-*acted as* porter," hizo de *portero.*

435. *After.*—This word in such phrases as "ten minutes *after* three," is rendered by *y;* as, it is twenty minutes *after* eight, *son las ocho* y *viente minutos.*

436. *Ago.*—This word is generally rendered by the verb *hace* or *ha* (see 304, *c*); as, a few days *ago*, *pocos dias* ha, or, hace *pocos dias;*—how long *ago? ¿cuanto tiempo* ha?—long *ago*, *mucho tiempo* ha;—some time *ago*, hace *algun tiempo;* a while *ago*, hace *ya mucho tiempo.*

437. *Agree.*—"*To agree*," when referring to a climate, is rendered by *probar;* as, the country *agreed* well with me, *me* probó *bien el pais.*

(*a.*) "*To agree*," when referring to food, is rendered by *sentar bien;* as, coffee does not *agree* with me; *el café no me* sienta bien.

438. *Ail.*—"*To ail*" is rendered by *tener* or *doler*; as, what *ails* you? *¿qué* tiene *vd.?* or, *¿qué le* duele *á vd.?*—nothing *ails* me, *nada* tengo, or *nada me* duele.

439. *Amiss.*—"*It would not be amiss if*," is rendered by *no ser malo que*, or by *no ser fuera del caso que;* as, it would not be *amiss if* you should go there, *no sería* malo que *vd. fuese allá*, or, *no sería* fuera del caso que *vd. fuese allá.*

(*a.*) "*To take amiss*," is rendered by *llevar á mal;* as, do not *take* it *amiss*, *no lo* lleve *vd.* á mal.

440. *And.*—Such sentences as "go *and* see who it *is*," "go *and* open the door," etc., would be rendered in Spanish, "go *to* see who it is," "go *to* open the door; as, *vaya vd.* á *ver quien es; vaya vd.* á *abrir la puerta.*

441. *Answer.*—"*To answer*," when meaning "*to correspond to*," is rendered by *corresponder á;* as, this year's crop does not *answer* our expectations, *la cosecha de este año no* corresponde á *nuestras esperanzas.*

442. *As.*—When *as* is used after *such* in the sense of *who*, in Spanish, the relative pronoun is employed; as, all such *as* went there, *todos los* que *fueron allí.*

443. *Aware.*—"*To be aware of*," is rendered by *saber;* as, you *are* not *aware of* such a thing, *vd. no* sabe *tal cosa.*

444. *Become.*—"*To become*," when referring to entering upon some office or profession, is rendered by *hacerse* or *meterse á;* as, he *became* a carpenter, se hizo *carpintero;* he *became* a knight, se metió á *caballero.*

(*a.*) Before an adjective, "*to become* is rendered by *hacerse;* as, he *became* poor, se hizo *pobre.*

(*b.*) "*To become*," meaning "*to suit*" or "*to be suitable to*," is rendered by *sentar*, or *caer*, or *venir bien;* as, this hat *becomes* you perfectly, *este*

sombrero le sienta *á vd. perfectamente;* that suit *becomes* you well, *ese vestido le* cae *á vd. bien;* this coat *becomes* you well, *este frac le* va *á vd.* bien.

(*c.*) "*To become of*," is rendered by *ser de* and *hacerse de* in the phrase, "what has *become of;*" as, what *will become of* my brother? *¿qué* será de *mi hermano?* what *has become of* my shoes? *¿qué* se ha hecho de *mis zapatos?*

445. *Bespeak.*—"*To bespeak*," meaning "*to evince*," by *demostrar;* as, his behavior *bespeaks* a composed mind, *su porte* demuestra *un ánimo tranquilo.*

446. *Bite.*—"*To bite*," is rendered by *quemar* in such expressions as, this mustard *bites* my mouth, *este mostaza* quema *la boca.*

447. *Blow.*—"*To blow*" a trumpet, tocar *un trompeta.*

(*a.*) "*To blow*" one's nose, sonarse *las narices.*

448. *Break.*—"*To break*" a horse, domar *un caballo.*

449. *Broad.*—"*Broad* as long," is rendered, igual *en todo.*

450. *Care.*—"*To care*" is thus rendered in such expressions as these: what *care* I? *¿qué me* importa *á mi?* I *care* nothing for his laughing, *no* se *me* da *nada por su reir.* Will you come to walk? I don't *care* if I do, *¿quiere vd. venir á paseo? me* importa *poco el hacerlo ó no hacerlo.*

451. *Choose.*—"*To choose*," when meaning "*to have a disposition to*," is rendered by *dar la gana;* as, why don't you tell me your age? because I don't *choose, ¿por qué no me dice vd. cuantos años tiene? porqué no me* da la gana.

452. *Come.*—"How *comes* that?" is rendered, *¿como* es *eso?*

453. *Conceit*—"*To be out of conceit* of any thing," is rendered, perder el gusto por *alguna cosa.*

454. *Confess.*—"I must *confess*," is rendered, *debo decir.*

455. *Confine.*—"He is *confined* to his bed," is rendered, no puede salir *de la cama*, or, está *en cama* enfermo.

456. *Count.*—"*To count*," meaning "*to regard*" or "*hold for*," is rendered by *tenerse por;* as, he *counts* himself a learned man, *él* se tiene por *hombre docto.*

457. *Depth.*—"In the *depth* of winter," is rendered, *en el* rigor *del invierno.*

458. *Do.**—"*To do*," meaning "*to make*" or "*to perform*," is rendered by *hacer*, or *ejecutar*, or *obrar;* as, *do* good to those who hate you, haced *bien á los que os aborrecen.*

(*a.*) "How do you *do?*" may be rendered, *¿cómo le* va *á vd.?* or *¿cómo* está *vd.?* or *¿cómo* se halla *vd.?*

459. *Else.*—"Nobody *else*," is rendered, *ninguna* otro; "nothing *else*," *nada* mas.

---

* It must be kept in mind that *do* is not expressed in Spanish when used in English as an auxiliary verb; thus, *does* he know? would be rendered, *¿sabe* él? knows he?

460. *End.*—"My hair stands on an *end*" is in Spanish, se *me* erizan *los cabellos.*

461. *Fair.*—"To play *fair*" is rendered, *jugar* límpio.

462. *Fare.*—"*To fare like*" is rendered by *tratarse como;* as, he *fares* like a king, se *le* trata como *á rey.*

463. *Fault.*—"*To be in fault for,*" or "*to be to blame for,*" is rendered by *tener la culpa de;* as, *am* I *in fault for*, or *am* I *to blame for* this? ¿ tengo *yo* la culpa de *eso?*

(*a.*) "*To find fault with,*" *hallar que decir;* as, he *finds fault with* every thing, *en todo* halla que decir.

464. *Favor.*—"*To favor,*" meaning to resemble, is rendered by *parecerse;* as, this gentleman *favors* his father, *este caballero* se parece *á su padre.*

(*a.*) "*To do a favor,*" *hacer un favor;* as, *do* me the *favor*, hagame *vd. el* favor.

465. *Feel.*—"*To feel,*" referring to the state of health," is rendered by *sentirse* or *hallarse;* as, how do you *feel?* *¿cómo* se siente *vd.?* or *¿cómo* se halla *vd.?*

(*a.*) "*To feel* thirsty," "*to feel* pain," etc., are rendered by *tener;* as, I *feel* hungry, tengo *hambre;* I *feel* nervous spasms, tengo *espasmos nerviosos.*

(*b.*) "*To feel* the pulse" is expressed by *tomar;* as, permit me to *feel* your pulse, *permita vd. que le* tome *el pulso.*

466. *Fellow.*—"*Fellow,*" meaning something corresponding to or mated with another thing, is rendered by *compañero* or *compañera;* as, my buckles are not *fellows*, *mis hebillas no son* compañeras.

467. *Figure.*—"*To cut* or *make* a figure," *hacer papel;* as, he *makes a figure* in the world, hace papel *en el mundo.*

468. *Find.*—"*To find one's self,*" referring to the state of health, is rendered by *hallarse*, or *sentirse*, or *pasar;* as, how do you *find* yourself? *¿cómo* se halla *vd.?* or *¿cómo* se siente *vd.?* or *¿cómo lo* pasa *vd.?*

469. *Fit.*—"*To fit,*" meaning "*to suit*" or "*to be adapted to,*" is rendered by *sentar*, or *caer*, or *venir*, in the same manner as "*to become*" (see 444, *b*).

(*a.*) "*To think fit*" is rendered by *parecer;* as, if you *think fit, si á vd. le* parece.

470. *Fond.*—"*To be fond of*" is often rendered by *ser amigo de* or by *ser amante de;* as, Santa Anna is very *fond of* cocks, *Santa-Anna es muy* amigo de *gallos;* he was very *fond of* literature, *era muy* amante de *las letras.*

(*a.*) But more frequently, "*to be fond of*" is rendered by *gustar* (see 344); as, I *am fond of* singing, *á mí me* gusta *el cantar.*

471. *Forbear.*—"*Not to forbear,*" meaning "*not to be able to help* or *avoid,*" is rendered by *no poder ménos de;* as, I *can not forbear* laughing at it, no puedo ménos de *reirme de ello.*

472. *Glad.*—"*To be glad*" is rendered by *alegrarse;* as, I *am glad* to see you well, me alegro *de verle á vd. bueno.*

473. *Handsome.*—"*To look handsome.*" (See *look*, 487.)

474. *Happen.*—"*To happen to be,*" *hallarse por casualidad*, or *hallarse;* as, I *happened to be* there, por casualidad *me* hallaba *allí;* I unfortunately *happened* not *to be* there, *por desgrácia no* me hallé *allí.*

475. *Have.*—"*To have,*" employed in the sense of "*to desire,*" is rendered by *querer* or *pedir;* as, what would you *have? ¿qué* quiere *vd.?* or *¿qué* pide *vd.?* I will *have* it so, *así lo* quiero.

476. *Help.*—"*To help to,*" meaning "*to serve at table,*" is rendered by *servir;* as, shall I *help* you to a wing of this capon? *¿quiere vd. que le* sirva *un ala de este capon?*

(*a.*) "*To help,*" meaning "*to avoid*" or "*to prevent,*" is rendered by *remediar*, or *dejar de hacer;* as, I can not *help* it, *no* remediar*lo*, or *no* dejar*lo* de hacer. "*Not to help,*" meaning "*not to prevent,*" is rendered as "*not to forbear*" (see 471); as, I can not *help* believing it, *no puedo* ménos de *creerlo.*

(*b.*) "There *is no help* for it" is rendered, *no tiene remédio.*

477. *Hit.*—"*To hit the mark*" is rendered by *dar en el blanco.*

(*a.*) "*To hit the nail on the head,*" meaning "*to come to the point,*" is rendered by *dar en el hito*, or *acertar*, or *dar en*; as, you *hit* it right, or, you *hit the nail on the* head, *vd.* dió en el hito, or, *vd. lo* acertó, or, dió *vd.* en *ello.*

478. *How.*—"*How,*" succeeded by "*ever,*" used to qualify adjectives, is expressed by *por*, and the adjective followed by the conjunction *que;* as, *how* great *soever* your merit may be, por *grande* que *sea vuestro mérito: how ever* amiable thou mightest be, por *amable* que *fueses.*

(*a.*) "*How*" is rendered in various ways in Spanish, according to its meaning and manner of use in English;

How is the weather?	*¿Qué tal* tiempo hace?
How happy I am!	*¡Qué* feliz soy!
How can you be so wicked?	*¿Cómo* puede V. ser tan malo?
How well it fits you!	*¡Qué* bien le sienta á V.!
How do you like the symphony?	*¿Qué* tal le parece la sinfonía?
How shall we spend the afternoon?	*¿En que* emplearemos la tarde?
How pure and healthful is the country air!	*¡Cuan* puro y saludable es el aire del campo!

(*b.*) The following examples will also serve to show the manner in which "*how*" before an adjective or adverb in English, is used before a verb or noun in Spanish; thus,

How far is it from here to Madrid?	*¿Cuanto* dista de aquí á Madrid?
How far is it to the hotel?	*¿Qué* distáncia hay á la fonda?
How long is this street?	*¿Cual* es la estencion de esta calle?
How high is that pillar?	*¿Qué* altura tiene esa columna?
How much do you ask for this?	*¿Cuanto* pide V. por esto?

How many miles from here to Rome?	*¿Cuantas* millas hay de aquí á Roma?
How often does the steamer sail?	*¿Con qué* frecuéncia sale el vapor?

479. *In.*—"*Not to be in* a person," signifying *a want of ability*, is rendered by *no poder*, or *no ser capaz de;* as, it *is not in* him to do it, no puede *hacerlo*, or no es capaz de *hacerlo.*

480. *Instant.*—"*Instant,*" used to point out the *present* month, is rendered by *corriente;* as, the fifth *instant, el cinco del* corriente.

481. *Kind.*—"*To be so kind as,*" is rendered by *tener la bondad de*, or *ser bastante bondadoso para;* as, *be so kind as* to repeat what you said, tenga *vd.* la bondad de *repetir lo que ha dicho vd.*, or, sea *vd.* bastante bondadoso para *repetir lo que ha dicho.*

482. *Last.*—"*Last week*" is rendered, *la semana pasada.*

483. *Laugh.*—"*To laugh* in one's sleeve," *reir entre sí.*

484. *Leave.*—"*Leave,*" meaning "*permission,*" is rendered by *permiso* or *licéncia;* as, by your *leave, con el* permiso *de vd.*, or *con* licéncia *de vd.*

(*a.*) "*To take leave of*" is rendered by *despedirse de;* as, he *took leave of* his friends, se despidió de *los amigos.*

485. *Like.*—"*To like,*" meaning "*to be fond of,*" is rendered by *gustar* (see 344); as, do you *like* chocolate? *¿le* gusta *á vd. el chocolate?*

(*a.*) "*To like,*" meaning "*to suit,*" is rendered by *hallar;* as, how do you *like* this beer? *¿cómo* halla *vd. esta cerveza?*

(*b.*) "*To like,*" meaning "*to wish,*" "*to desire,*" "*to esteem,*" by *querer;* as, who *likes* soup? *¿quién* quiere *sopa?*—as you may-*like* it, *como vd.* quisiere;—he *likes* nobody, él *no* quiere *á nádie.*

(*c.*) "*He has not his like,*" *no tiene* igual.

486. *Long.*—"*Long ago,*" mucho tiempo *ha;*—"*long* afterward," mucho *despues;*—"ere *long,*" *ántes de* mucho;—"*not long* before," poco *ántes*, or poco tiempo *ántes;* "how *long* is it?" *¿cuanto* tiempo *hace?*

487.—*Look.*—"*To look beautiful, homely,*" etc., is rendered by *parecer*, or tener *apariéncia;* as, how handsome she *looks! ¡qué hermosa ella* parece! or *qué hermosa* aparéncia tiene *ella.*

(*a.*) "*To look well, ill,*" etc., is rendered by *tener semblante*, or *tener cara de;* as, how does he *look? ¿qué* semblante tiene? He *looks* sick, tiene *mal* semblante, or tiene semblante *de enfermo*, or tiene cara *de enfermo.*

488. *Manners.*—"Good *manners,*" *buena* crianza;—he has no *manners*, es un mal *criado*, or no tiene *crianza;*—I shall teach you better *manners, yo te enseñaré á* portarte *mejor.*

489. *Matter.*—"*To matter,*" by *importar;* as, what *matters* it? *¿qué* importa *eso?*—it *matters* not, *no* importa.

(*a.*) "*To be the matter with,*" by *tener;* as, what is *the matter with* you? *¿qué* tiene *vd.?* When it refers to illness, *doler* may be used, as in *ail* (see 438).

(*b.*) "*What is the matter?*" (meaning "what is going on?") ¿de qué *se trata?*

490. *Mean.*—"*To mean,*" signifying "*to wish,*" "*to express,*" is rendered by *querer decir;* as, what do you *mean* by that? *¿qué* quiere *vd.* decir *con* eso?

(*a.*) "*To mean,*" signifying "*to intend,*" by *estar en,* or *tratar de;* as, I *mean* to go to-morrow, estoy en *ir* mañana;—what do you *mean* to do? *¿qué* trata *vd.* de *hacer?*

(*b.*) "He *means* well," *tiene buenas intenciones.*

491. *Mind.*—"*To mind,*" meaning "*to take care of,*" is rendered by *tener cuidado con;* as, *mind* him, ten cuidado con *él.*

(*a.*) "*To have a mind,*" by *tener gana;* as, I *had a mind* to ask him, *yo* tenía gana *de* pedirle; I *have* a great *mind* to go, *muchas* ganas tengo *de ir.*

(*b.*) "*To call to mind,*" by *traer á la memória;* as, I *called to mind* the promise, *me* traje á la memória *la promesa.*

492. *Miss.*—"*To miss,*" meaning "*to find missing,*" is rendered by *echar ménos;* as, he *missed* his watch, echó ménos *su reloj.*

(*a.*) "*To miss,*" meaning "*to omit,*" by *dejar;* as, we can not *miss* finding it, *no podemos* dejar *de hallarlo.*

(*b.*) "*To miss* the mark," errar *el blanco.*

493. *Mistress.*—"*To be mistress* or *master of,*" meaning "*to understand thoroughly,*" is rendered by *poseer;* as, she *is mistress* of the English language, *ella* posee *la lengua Inglesa.*

494. *Muster.*—"*To pass muster,*" meaning "*to avail,*" is rendered by *valer;* as, such excuses *will* not *pass muster* with the judge, *semejantes disculpas no* valdrán *nada para con el juez.*

495. *Must.*—"*Must*" is rendered by *haber de,* by *ser preciso,* by *ser menester,* by *deber,* or by *tener que;* as, I *must* be there at two o'clock, he de *estar allí á las dos;*—I *must* go, es preciso *que me vaya;*—I *must* wash my hands, es menester *que me lave las manos;*—I *must* have done it, *yo hubiera* debido *hacerlo;* it *must* be, debe *ser;*—I *must* go, tengo que *irme.*

496. *Near.*—"*To come near* or very near" doing a thing, meaning "*to have like* to have done it," or "*to be upon the point* of doing it," is rendered by *estar á pique de,* by *estar en punto de,* by *estar para,* by *faltar poco para que,* or by *por poco;* as, I *came near* being killed, estuve á pique de *matarme;*—I *had like* to have been killed, estuve á punto de *matarme;*—I *came very near* writing to thee this morning, estuve para *escribirte* esta mañana;—they *were very near* being punished, poco faltó para que *fuesen castigados;*—I *was very near* falling, por poco *me caí.*

497. *Need.*—"*To need,*" or "*to stand in need of,*" by *hacer falta á;* as, we *need* a little rain, *nos* hace falta *un poco de água;* John *stands in* much *need of* your advice; á *Juan le* hace *mucha* falta *el consejo de vd.* (see 345, *a*). "*To need*" is also sometimes rendered by *necesitar,* or by *haber menester.*

498. *Next.*—"*Next* Sunday," *el domingo* que viene, or *el domingo* próximo;—"the *next* house," *la casa* inmediata;—"*next* to impossible," casi *imposible.*

499. *Nothing.*—"*To be nothing* or *as nothing* to any one," by *nada importar;* as, that *is nothing* to me, *eso* nada *me* importa.

(*a.*) "*To be good for nothing,*" by *para nada servir;* as, it *is good for nothing,* para nada sirve.

(*b.*) "*To mean* or *signify nothing,*" by *nada querer decir;* as, it *signifies nothing;* nada quiere decir.

500. *Obligation.*—"*To be under obligations to,*" by *deber favores;* as, I *am under many obligations to* him, *le* debo *muchos* favores.

501. *Oblige.*—"*To oblige,*" meaning "*to do a favor* to any one and *bring under obligations,*" is rendered by *estimar;* as, you *will* greatly *oblige* me by writing to me, *le* estimaré *á vd. mucho que me escriba.*

(*a.*) "*To be obliged,*" is rendered by *agradecer,* by *estar agradecido,* or by *estar reconocido;* as, I *am obliged* to you for your attention, *le* agradezco *á vd. su atencion;*—I *am* very much *obliged* to you, *le* estoy *á vd. muy* agradecido, or *le* estoy *á vd. muy* reconocido.

502. *Offer.*—"*Not to offer* to do any thing" is rendered by *guardar de;* as, *do not offer* to do it, guárdese *vd.* de *hacerlo.*

503. *Old.*—"*Old,*" when referring to the age of any one, is rendered by *edad* or *año* with the verb *tener;* as, how *old* are you? *¿ cuantos* años tiene *vd.?* or *¿ qué* edad tiene *vd.?* I am twenty years *old,* tengo *viente* años.

504. *Opinion.*—"*To have a high opinion* of one's self," *estar muy lleno de sí mismo;* as, he *has* a very *high opinion of himself,* está *muy* lleno de sí mismo.

(*a.*) "This is my *opinion,*" by *esto es* lo que *yo* pienso.

505. *Ought.*—"*Ought*" may be rendered by *deber,* by *ser menester,* or by *preciso es;* as, you *ought* to remember that we must all die, *vd.* debe *acordarse que todos hemos de morir;*—I *ought* to go, es menester *que me vaya.*

506. *Over.*—"*To be over,*" in the sense of "*to be past,*" is rendered by *pasar;* as, winter *is* already *over,* pasó *ya el invierno;* I wish that the summer was already *over; quiesiera que ya hubiese* pasado *el verano.*

507. *Own.*—"*To own,*" meaning "*to possess,*" by *ser de;* as, who *owns* this house? John *owns* it, ¿ de *quién* es *esta casa?* es de *Juan.*

(*a.*) "*To own,*" meaning "*to confess,*" by *confesar* or *reconocer;* as, she *owns* it, *ella lo* confiesa.

508. *Part.*—"*To act the part of,*" by *hacer el papel de;* as, he *acted the part of* an emperor, hizo el papel de *emperador.*

(*a.*) "*For my part,*" by *por mi parte,* or *por lo que á mí toca,* or *en cuanto á mí.*

509. *Pass.*—"*To pass* compliments," by *hacer* or *dar* cumplimientos.

(*a.*) "*To pass* sentence," by *pronunciar* la senténcia.

510. *Past.*—"*To be past,*" meaning "*to be over,*" by *pasar* (see 506).

(*a.*) "*To be past,*" meaning "*to be more than,*" by *ser mas de;* as, it *is past* four o'clock, son mas de *las cuatro.*

(*b.*) "He is *past* recovery," no hay esperanzas de *que se cure;* "he is *past* cure," está incurable.

511. *Piece.*—"*Apiece,*" meaning "*each one,*" is rendered *cada uno;* as, I gave them ten shillings *apiece, les dí diez chelines á* cada uno.

512. *Play.*—"*To play,*" referring to musical instruments, by *tocar;* as, he *plays* the flute very well, toca *la flauta muy bien.*

(*a.*) "*To play,*" meaning "*to act the part of,*" by *hacer;* as, he *plays* the fool, *él* hace *el tonto.*

513. *Please.*—"*To please,*" meaning "*to gratify*" or "*to give pleasure,*" is rendered by *agradar,* by *dar gusto,* or by *gustar* (see 344); as, the proposal *pleases* me very much, *muchísimo me* agrada *la propuesta;*—if you *please, si vd.* gusta.

(*a.*) "*To please,*" meaning "*to be pleased,*" and used as a word of request or ceremony, is rendered by *servirse;* as, *please* to accept this homage, sírvase *vd. aceptar este homenage; please* lend me two pens, sírvase *vd. prestarme dos plumas.*

514. *Pray.*—"*Pray,*" used as a request, as, "*pray do it,*" is rendered by *servirse* (see 513, *a*), or by *hacer el favor de;* as, *pray* give me my hat, sírvase *vd. darme el sombrero,* or hagame *vd.* el favor de *darme el sombrero.*

515. *Rather.*—"*Rather*" is generally rendered in Spanish according to its meaning in connection with the accompanying words in English; as, I would *rather* go than stay, mas *quisiera irme que quedarme;*—this work *is rather* dear, *esta obra* no deja *de ser cara* (literally, "this work *fails not* in being dear").

516. *Regard.*—"*With regard to,*" or "*in regard to,*" or "*as it regards,*" by *en cuanto á,* or by *tocante á;* as, *with regard to* what you say, en cuanto á *lo que vd. dice,* or tocante á *lo que vd. dice.*

517. *Respect.*—"*It respects,*" meaning "*it concerns,*" by *toca;* as, *it respects* you directly, toca *á vd. en derechura.*

(*a.*) "*With respect to,*" by *tocante á,* or by *con respecto á;* as, *with respect* to what you say, tocante á *lo que vd. dice.*

(*b.*) "In some *respect,*" *de alguno* modo;—"in another *respect,*" *por otra* parte;—"out of *respect* for you," *por* consideracion *á vd.*

(*c.*) "To give one's *respects* to," *dar expresiones,* or *rendar respetos,* or *dar memórias;* as, *give* my *respects* to him, déle *vd. mis* expresiones; or *present* my *respects* (or *regards*) to your brother, rinda *vd. mis* respetos *á su hermano.*

518. *Right.*—"*To be right* or *in the right,*" by *tener razon;* you are *right, vd.* tiene razon; you are not *right* (or you are *wrong*) *vd. no* tiene razon.

519. *Sake.*—"For God's *sake,*" *por* amor *de Dios;* "for your *sake,*" *por* respeto á *vd;*—"do it for my *sake,*" *húgalo vd. por* mí.

520. *Same.*—"*To be all the same to,*" by *ser todo uno para;* as, it is *all the same to* me, para *mí* es todo uno.

521. *Short.*—"*Short of,*" meaning "*not to have a supply of,*" is rendered by *escaso de;* as, he finds himself *short of* money, *se halla* escaso de *dinero.*

(*a.*) "*To fall short* or *come short of,*" meaning "*to be inferior,*" by *no llegar á,* or *ser inferior á;* as, the translation *falls short of* the original, *la traduccion* no llega al *original,* or *la traduccion* es inferior al *original.*

522. *Since.*—"*Since,*" when meaning "*ago,*" is rendered in the same manner (see 436); as, some months *since, algunos meses* ha;—long *since,* hace *mucho tiempo;*—not long *since,* hace *poco,* or hace *poco tiempo.*

(*a*) "*Since* it is so," by siendo *esto así,* or, pues que *esto es así.*

523. *Smell.*—"*To smell of* or *to smell like,*" by *oler á;* as, he *smells of* garlic, huele á *ajo.*

524. *So.*—"*So,*" when meaning "*it,*" is rendered by *lo* or *eso;* as, do you *so? ¿hace vd.* eso? you think that she is rich, but she is not *so, vd. piensa que ella es rica, pero no* lo *es.*

525. *Soon.*—In such expressions as, "how *soon* will he return," meaning "how long will he be in returning," *tardar* (to delay, to stay long) is used: as, how *soon* will we arrive? *¿cuanto* tardaremos *en llegar?*—how *soon* shall you return? *¿cuanto* tardará *vd. en volver?*

526. *Sorry.*—"*To be sorry for,*" by *sentir;* as, I am very *sorry for* it, *mucho lo* siento.

527. *Spare.*—"*To spare,*" meaning "*to leave untried,*" by *perdonar;* as, we *spare* not any effort to carry out our project, *no* perdonamos *esfuerzo alguno para llevar á cabo nuestro proyecto.*

528. *Spend.*—"*To spend,*" meaning "*to pass,*" by *pasar;* as, I *shall spend* the winter with my sister, pasaré *el invierno con mi hermana.*

529. *Stand.*—"*To stand,*" meaning "*to be upon the feet,*" is rendered by *estar en pié;* as, the Pharisee *standing,* prayed, *el Fariséo* estando en pié, *oraba;* she *stood* warming herself, *ella* estaba en pié, *calentándose.*

530. *Strike.*—"*To strike,*" referring to the sounding by percussion of a clock, is rendered by *dar* as, the clock *strikes* eight, *el reloj* da *las ocho;* it has just *struck* nine, *las nueve acaban de* dar (see 337).

(*a.*) "*To strike* the flag," meaning to haul down the colors, by *arriar la bandera.*

531. *Succeed.*—"*To succeed,*" is rendered by *salir bien,* or by *tener buen éxito,* or by *ser afortunado;* as, I wish that you *may-succeed, desío que vd.* salga bien, or *desío que vd.* tenga buen éxito;—if I *succeed* in this business, *si* soy afortunado *en este negócio,* or *si* salgo bien *en este negócio.*

532. *Such.*—"In *such* a time," *en* tal *tiempo;*—"Mr. *Such-a-one,*" *el señor* fulano de tal.

533. *Suit.*—"*To suit.*" (See 437, *a,* and 444, *b.*)

534. *Sure.*—"*To be sure not,*" by *guardarse bien de;* as, *be sure not* to do it, guarde vd. bien de *hacerlo.*

535. *Taste.*—"*To taste of,*" by *saber á;* as, this honey *tastes of* (or *like*) pitch, *esta miel* sabe á *la pez.*

536. *Teens.*—"*To be in teens,*" by *no llegar á los viente;* as, she *is not* yet *out of* her *teens, ella aun* no llega á los viente.

537. *Test.*—"*To stand the test,*" by *ser de prueba;* as, she *stands the test, ella* es de prueba.

538. *There.*—"*There,*" used in English before verbs in such expressions, "there is a man in Boston," "there are some people who are never satisfied," etc., is rendered in Spanish by the tenses of the verb *haber* used impersonally (see 218), and sometimes by the third person singular or plural of other verbs; thus, *there is* a place in Spain, hay *un lugar en España;—there are* many things, hay *muchas cosas;—there were* many soldiers, hubo *muchos soldados;—there can* not be, *no* puede *haber;—there came* a man from Rome, vino *un hombre de Roma.*

539. *Thereabouts.*—"*Thereabouts,*" referring to number or quantity, is rendered by *poco mas ó ménos;* as, my sister is eighteen years old or *thereabouts, mi hermana tiene diez y ocho años ó* poco mas ó ménos.

540. *To.*—"*To*" is sometimes rendered in Spanish by *de;* as, he is a friend *to* the poor, *es amigo* de *los pobres;*—Philip the Second was successor *to* Charles the Fifth, *Felipe segundo fué sucesor* de *Cárlos quinto;*—the road *to* London, *el camino* de *Lóndres.*

541. *Upwards.*—"*Upwards,*" meaning more, is rendered by *mas;* as, ten pounds and *upwards, diez libras ó* mas.

542. *Usual.*—"*As usual,*" employed in speaking of the state of the health, is rendered by *como siempre;* as, how is your father? *As usual. su señor padre de vd., ¿cómo está?* Como siempre.

543. *Wage.*—"*To wage* war," *hacer* guerra.

544. *Want.*—"*To want,*" is rendered by *querer* and by *necesitar;* as, what do you *want? ¿qué es lo que vd.* quiere?—do you *want* nothing else? *¿nada mas* necesita *vd.?*

(*a.*) "*To be wanted,*" in such sentences as, "you *are wanted,*" and "he *is wanted,*" may be rendered by *le* llaman *á vd.*, and *le* buscan.

545. *Wind.*—"*To wind up* a watch or clock," by dar cuerda *al reloj.*

546. *Wonder.*—"*To wonder*" is not rendered in Spanish in such sentences as, "I *wonder* whether she will sing to-night? *¿si ella cantará esta noche?*

547. *Worth.*—"*To be worth*" (speaking of persons), is rendered by *poseer*, or by *tener;* as, he *is worth* a house, *él* tiene *una casa.*

(*a.*) "*To be worth*" (speaking of the value of things), is rendered by *valer;* as, how much *is* this watch *worth? ¿cuanto* vale *este reloj?*

(*b.*) "*To be worth while,*" by *merecer* or *valer la pena de*, or by *haber para qué;* as, it *is worth while* to do it, vale la pena de *hacerlo;*—it *is* not *worth while, no* hay para qué.

548. *Wrong.*—"*To be wrong,*" or "*to be in the wrong,*" by *no tener razon;* as, he *is wrong,* no tiene razon.

549. In English, a negative interrogative is frequently added to an

affirmative, and an affirmative to a negative sentence, to render them more expressive; thus, "she is here, *is she not?*"—"they will come, *will they not?*"—"you have studied Spanish, *have you not?*"—or, "she is not here, *is she?*"—"they will not come, *will they?*"—"you have not studied Spanish, *have you?*" In Spanish, this sort of interrogatory is rendered after affirmative sentences by *¿no es verdad?* ("is it not true?") and after negative sentences by *¿es verdad?* ("is it true?") as, "you will do me the pleasure to dine with me, *will you not?*" *me hará vd. el gusto de comer conmigo*, ¿no es verdad?—"you have not eaten any fish, *have you?*" *no ha comido vd. pescado*, ¿es verdad?—"the traitor would have disclosed every thing, *wouldn't he?*" *todo lo hubiera declarado el traidor*, ¿no es verdad?

550. The particle "*it*," followed by a relative pronoun, is frequently used in English in sentences like these: "*it* was John who did that;"—"*it* is the king who is to be blamed;"—"*it* was the French who first discovered it." In Spanish, the word "*it*" is not rendered, and the verb which in English agrees in the singular number with "it," is in Spanish in the number of the noun to which it refers; as, *fué Juan el que lo hizo;—fueron los Españoles los que conquistaron á Méjico;* that is, John was he who did it,—the Spaniards were they who conquered Mexico.

551. In translating English phrases into Spanish, it will generally be found necessary to resolve them into their most obvious meaning; thus, "he *stood up for* the robbers," means, "he *defended* (or took the part of) the robbers," and can be rendered, defendió *á los ladrones*. "He *stood* (*stands*) godfather to the child," means, "he *is* godfather to the child," and may be rendered, es *padrino del niño*. "John *takes after* his father," may mean, "John *imitates* his father," or "John *resembles* his father," and may be rendered, *Juan* imita *á su padre*, or *Juan* se parece *á su padre*. "The judge *took up with* this bed-room," means, "the judge *contented himself* (or was contented) *with* this room," and may be rendered, *el juez* se contenta con *esta alcoba*. "To *coin* words," means "to *invent* words," and is rendered, inventar *palabras;*—"to *coin* a lie," is rendered, forjar *una mentira*. "He *keeps up* his usual retinue," is rendered, mantiene *su tren acostumbrado*. "He eats nothing but what *comes up*," means, "he *vomits* whatever he eats," and is rendered, vomita *cuanto come*.

552. The word "*que*" in Spanish, like the word "*that*" in English, is employed with various meanings, as is shown by the following examples:

(*a.*) La muger *que* vimos.	The woman *whom* (*that*) we-saw.
(*b.*) El hombre *que* habla.	The man *who* (*that*) is-speaking.
(*c.*) *Lo que* es própio en uno, es impropio en otro.	*What* (*that which*) is proper in one, is improper in another.
(*d.*) No sé *que* hacer.	I know not *what* to do.
(*e.*) No sé *que* pluma tomar.	I know *which* pen to take.

(*f.*) Ofrecimientos es la moneda *que* corre en este siglo.	Promises are the coin *which* is current in this age.
(*g.*) ¡*Qué* desgrácia!	*What a* misfortune!
(*h.*) Le mandó *que* viniese.	I ordered *that* he should come.
(*i.*) El pintor es mas docto *que* el cirujáno.	The painter is more learned *than* the surgeon.
(*j.*) No es lo mismo prometer *que* cumplir.	It is not the same to promise *as* to perform.
(*k.*) ¡*Qué* enfadoso es vd.!	*How* tedious you are!
(*l.*) Allí no es lícito que las lágrimas lleguen á los ojos, *que* eso es flagueza.	Here it is not proper that tears should-come to the eyes, *for* (or *because*) this is a weakness.
(*m.*) *Que* llueva, *que* no llueva.	*Whether* it may-rain, *or* not rain.
(*n.*) Tarde *que* temprano.	Late *or* early.
(*o.*) ¿*Que* es del libro?	*Where* is the book?
(*p.*) Sentiría *que* fuesen rehusados.	I-should-be-sorry *if* they-should-be refused.
(*q.*) Esperaba *que* yo tuviese verduras.	He-was-waiting *till* I should-have vegetables.

553. Sometimes *que* is employed in Spanish when it would be redundant in English; as,

Cualquier cerveza *que* yo tuviese.	Whatever beer I might have.
Estáte allí hasta *que* yo te lo diga.	Remain-thou there until I tell it thee.
Antes de *que* estuviesen de vuelta.	Before they-were returned.
Que sus tesoros sean cojidos.	Let his treasures be seized.
Que no se engañe.	Let him not deceive himself.

554. *Que* is sometimes preceded by a preposition which is not translated in English; as,

A fin *de que* yo sea rico.	In order *that* I may-be rich.
Espera *á que* yo esté necesitado.	He-is-waiting *till* I may-be needy.
En caso *de que* seais engañados.	In case *that* you should-be deceived.
Cuidábamos *de que* no se despartase vd.	We-were-careful *that* you should not awake.

OTHER IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS.

Es de dia. Es de noche.	It is day. It is night.
El sol sale. El sol se pone.	The sun rises. The sun sets.
Hace calor. Hace mucho frío.	It is hot. It is very cold.
Corre mucho viento.	The wind blows hard.
Hace oscuro. Hace luna.	It is dark. It is moonlight.
Hace un tiempo húmido.	The weather is damp.
¿Que tal tiempo hace?	How is the weather?

¿Cuantos años tiene vd.? ¿Qué edad tiene vd.?	How old are you? What is your age?
Tengo quince años cumplidos. Acabo de cumplir veinte años.	I am past fifteen. I am just twenty years old.
¿Qué edad le echaría vd. á mi padre?	How old do you think my father is?
Ya debe haber pasado de los cincuenta.	He must be above fifty years old.
¿Quiere vd. hacerme un favor?	Will you do me a favor?
¿Puedo pedirle á vd. un favor?	May I ask you a favor?
Cuento con vd. ¿no es verdad?	I can rely upon you, can't I?
Llaman á la campanilla.	Some one rings the door-bell.
Oigo llamar. Es el señor S——.	I hear a knock, a ring. It is Mr. S——.
Vd. come dentro de média hora corta.	You dine in less than half an hour.
Yo estoy hecho á todo.	I am used to every thing.
Ese fuego está bien muerto.	This fire is almost out.
Ya empieza á hacer llama.	It just begins to blaze.
¿Qué dia del mes tenemos?	What day of the month is it?
Enseñeme vd. botas. Aquí tiene vd. un par.	Show me some boots. Here is a pair.
No tenga vd. cuidado.	Make yourself easy.
El tiempo está tan cubierto que apénas se ve.	The weather is so cloudy that we can scarcely see each other.
Quisiera un sombrero á la moda.	I want a fashionable hat.
¿Se siguen haciendo sombreros altos de forma?	Are high crowned hats still made?
Algunos se ven.	Some are still seen.
Aquí tiene vd. uno.	Here is one (Here you have one).
¿Cuanto vale?	What is the price of it? (how much is it worth?)
¿Cuando estará corriente?	When will it be ready?
Me duele mucho la cabeza.	My head aches very much.
Veamos la lengua.	Let me see your tongue.
Todas los dias doy un paséo de tres ó cuatro horas.	I walk three or four hours every day.
¿Tiene vd. habitaciones que alquilar?	Have you any apartments to let?
¿Da el cuarto sobre la calle?	Does the room look into the street?
No señor, da sobre el jardin.	No, sir, it looks into the garden.
¿Monta vd. á caballo?	Do you ride on horseback?
Pronto van á acabar los encantos del otoño.	The pleasures of autumn are about to disappear.
Ya estamos en invierno.	It is winter. (We are in winter.
¿Cómo se puede gustar del invierno?	How can any one like winter?

Andaré el camino á caballo.	I will perform the journey on horseback.
¿Se duerme en el camino?	Do we sleep on the road?
Es cerca de las dos.	It is nearly two o'clock.
Han dado las tres.	It has struck three.
¿Cuanto tiempo hace que está vd. en los Estados Unidos?	How long have you been in the United States?
Hace mas de un año.	It is more than a year.
Le tuve por un Ingles.	I took him for an Englishman.
¿Qué noticias tenemos?	What is the news? (What news have we?)
¿Qué noticias corren?	What news is current?
¿Qué se dice en la ciudad?	What do they say in the city?
¿No ha oido vd. hablar de la guerra?	Have you not heard the war spoken of?
No se dice nada de ella.	Nothing is said of it.
Se habla de un sítio.	They talk of a siege.
Todos necesitan de la paz.	Every body wishes for peace.
¿Qué le parece á vd. de mi sombrero?	How does my hat appear to you?
Buenos dias tenga vd.	Good morning to you.
Le diremos á vd. nuestro parecer.	We will give you our opinion.
Pues, ¿qué tal?	Well, how do you like it?
Buenas noches.	Good night.

APPENDIX TO PART III.

NUMBER V.

A LIST OF THE MOST COMMON ABBREVIATIONS.

556. The following list comprehends the most common abbreviations employed by Spanish writers:

A.	*Arroba,*	Twenty-five pounds weight.
AA.	*Autores,*	Authors.
A. C.	*Año Cristiano,*	Christian year.
Ag^to.^	*Agosto,*	August.
Art. ó Artic.	*Artículo,*	Article.
B.	*Beato, Bachiller,*	Blessed, Bachelor of Arts.
B. L. M.	*Beso, ó besa la mano, ó las manos,*	I kiss the hands.
B. L. P.	*Beso, ó besa los piés,*	I kiss the feet.
Bmo. P.	*Beatísimo Padre,*	Most blessed Father.
C. ó Cap. ó Capit.	*Capítulo,*	Chapter.
C. M. B.	*Cuyas manos beso, ó besa,*	Whose hands I kiss.
Col.	*Coluna,*	Column.
Conoci^to.^	*Conocimiento,*	Bill of lading.
Cor^te.^	*Corriente,*	Current.
C. P. B.	*Cuyos piés beso, ó besa,*	Whose feet I kiss.
C^ta.^	*Cuenta,*	Account.
D. ó Dn.	*Don,*	Mr.
D^a.^	*Doña,*	Mrs.
DD.	*Doctores,*	Doctors.
Dha.	*Dicha,*	Ditto *or* said.
Dho.	*Dicho,*	Ditto *or* said.
Dic^re.^	*Diciembre,*	December.
Dr.	*Doctor,*	Doctor.
E. g. ó E. gr.	*Exempli gratia (por ejemplo),*	For example.
En^o.^	*Enero,*	January.
Es^mo.^ ó Esc^mo.^	*Escelentísimo,*	Most excellent.
Feb^o.^	*Febrero,*	February.
Fha.	*Fecha,*	Dated.

Fho.	*Fecho,*	Dated.
Fol.	*Folio,*	Folio.
Fr.	*Fray, ó frey,*	Friar, Brother.
Ib.	*Ibidem,*	Same.
Ill^{e}., Illmo., Illma.	*Ilustre, Ilustrísimo, Ilustrísima,*	Illustrious, Most Illustrious.
J. C.	*Jesucristo,*	Jesus Christ.
L.	*Ley,*	Law.
Lib.	*Libro,*	Book.
Lin.	*Línea,*	Line.
M. P. S.	*Muy poderoso señor,*	Most powerful Lord.
Mr. ó M^{r}.	*Monsieur, ó mister,*	Mr.
M^{s}. a^{s}.	*Muchos años,*	Many years.
MS.	*Manuscrito,*	Manuscript.
MSS.	*Manuscritos,*	Manuscripts.
N.	*Fulano,*	Such a one.
N. B.	*Nota bene,*	Take notice.
N. S.	*Nuestro Señor,*	Our Lord.
N. S^{ra}.	*Nuestra Señora,*	Our Lady.
N. S. J. C.	*Nuestro Señor Jesucristo,*	Our Lord Jesus Christ.
Novb^{re}.	*Noviembre,*	November.
N^{o}. ó núm.	*Número,*	Number.
Nro.	*Nuestro,*	Our.
Oct^{r}.	*Octubre,*	October.
Onz.	*Onza,*	Ounce.
Orn.	*Orden,*	Order.
Orns.	*Ordenes,*	Orders.
P. ó Pág.	*Página,*	Page.
P^{a}.	*Para,*	For.
Pár.	*Párrafo,*	Paragraph.
P. D.	*Postdata,*	Postscript.
P^{o}.	*Pero,*	But.
P^{r}.	*Por,*	For *or* By.
Q. á V. B. L. M.	*Que á usted besa la mano,*	Who kisses your hand.
Q^{e}.	*Que,*	That.
R. P. M. ó Mtro.	*Reverendo padre maestro,*	Reverend father.
R^{l}. R^{les}.	*Real, Reales,*	Royal.
R^{bi}.	*Recibí,*	I received.
R^{do}.	*Reverendo,*	Reverend.
Rev^{mo}.	*Reverendísimo,*	Most reverend.
S. S^{to}., Sto, S^{t}.	*San, ó santo,*	Saint.
S. A.	*Su alteza,*	His highness.
S. A. A	*Su afecto amigo,*	Your affectionate friend.
S. M.	*Su magestad,*	His majesty.
Sr. S^{or}.	*Señor,*	Sir, Lord.

S. S$^{a.}$	*Su Señoría,*	His lordship.
S. S$^{d.}$	*Su Santidad,*	His holiness.
Set$^{bre.}$	*Setiembre,*	September.
Seg$^{o.}$ ser$^{or.}$	*Seguro servidor,*	Obedient servant.
Spre.	*Siempre,*	Always.
SS. ó S$^{res.}$	*Señores,*	Sirs, Messrs.
SS$^{mo.}$	*Santísimo padre,*	Most holy father.
SS. PP.	*Santos padres,*	Holy fathers.
S. S. S.	*Su seguro servidor,*	Your obedient servant.
Suma$^{te.}$	*Sumamente,*	Totally.
T. ó tom.	*Tomo,*	Volume.
Tpo.	*Tiempo,*	Time.
V.	*Véase,*	See.
V. V$^{e.}$ ó Ven.	*Venerable,*	Venerable.
V., Vd., Vm., ó Vmd.	*Usted ó vuesa merced,*	Your worship; you.
VV., Vs., Vms., ó Vds.	*Ustedes, ó vuesas mercedes,*	Your worships; you.
V. A.	*Vuestra alteza,*	Your highness.
V. E., ó V. Esc$^{a.}$	*Vuecelénciа,*	Your excellency.
V. G., ó V. gr.	*Verbi grácia,*	For example.
Vers$^{o.}$	*Versículo,*	Versicle.
V. M.	*Vuestra magestad,*	Your majesty.
Vol.	*Volúmen,*	Volume.
V. P.	*Vuestra paternidad,*	Your paternity.
V. S.	*Vueseñoría, ó usía,*	Your lordship.
V. S.	*Vuestra santidad,*	Your holiness.
V. S. S.	*Vueseñorías,*	Your lordships.
V. S. I.	*Vueseñoría ilustrísima,*	Your grace.
Vro. Vra.	*Vuestro, vuestra,*	Your.
X$^{mo.}$	*Diezmo,*	Tithe.
Xp$^{tno.}$	*Cristiano,*	Christian.

APPENDIX TO PART III.

NUMBER VI.

SPANISH MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

557. The following table contains the names of Spanish coins, with their value in Spanish and approximate value in United States currency:

NAMES.				SPANISH VALUE.		U. STATES VALUE.		
Copper.				*R.**	*m.*	$	*cts.*	*m.*
Maravedí,					1			1.47
2 Maravedíses	*make one*		Ochavo,		2			2.94
2 Ochavos	"		Cuarto,		4			5.88
2 Cuartos	"		Doble Cuarto,		8		1	1.76
Silver.								
8½ Cuartos	"		Real de vellon,		34		5	0
1¼ Reales	"		Cuarto de Peseta,	1	8½		6	2.5
2½ Reales	"		Média Peseta,	2	17		12	5.
5 Reales	"		Peseta,†	5	0		25	0.
2 Pesetas	"		Escudo de vellon,	10	0		50	0.
2 Escudos, *or* 20 Reales,	"		Peso Duro,	20	0	1	00	0.
Gold.								
20 Reales	"		Peso de oro,	20	0	1	00	0.
2 Pesos	"		Escudo de oro,	40	0	2	00	0.
2 Escudos de oro	"		Doblon,	80	0	4	00	0.
2 Doblones	"		Média Onza,	160	0	8	00	0.
4 Doblones	"		Onza,	320	0	16	00	0.

☞ The value in United States currency, given in the preceding table, is determined by estimating the *real* at its true value, five cents.

* *R* here is an abbreviation for *reales*, and *m* for *maravedí*.

† In some parts of Spain, the *peseta* is the name for the pistareen or twenty-cent piece of money, and then the piece of five *reales* is called *peseta columnária*.

The *onza* has a relative value in exchanges of a little more than sixteen dollars. The *cuarto de peseta* has long been in circulation in the United States, and valued at six and a quarter cents, and the *média peseta* valued at twelve and a half cents.

☞ In the Spanish States of America, money is reckoned by the *peso*, *real*, and *médio real*. The *peso*, or dollar, is divided into *cuatro pesetas*, four quarters of a dollar; the *peseta* into *dos reales*, two twelve and a half cent coins; and the *real* into *dos médios*, two six and a quarter cent coins, which last is the coin of lowest value used in those States. Copper coin is not known there.

558. Table of Spanish weights with their equivalent in *Avoirdupois* and *Troy* weight in English:

NAMES.	SPANISH VALUE.	AVOIRDUPOIS.	TROY.
		lb. oz. dr. gr.	*lb. oz. pwt. gr.*
Quintal, - - -	4 arrobas, - -	101 7 0 19	123 3 4 19
Arroba, - - -	25 libras, - - -	25 5 12 4.8	30 9 16 4.8
Libra, - - - -	2 marcos, - -	1 0 3 20	1 2 15 20
Marco, - - - -	8 onzas, - - -	8 1 25	7 7 22
Onza, - - - -	8 ochaves, - -	1 0 7	18 12
Ochava, - - -	2 adarmes, - -	2 1	2 7
Adarme, - - -	3 tomines, - -	1 0	1 3
Tomin, - - -	12 granos, - - -	10	9
Grano, - - - -	—	0.83	0.75

☞ The *quintal de Castilla* is equivalent to 6 *arrobas*, or 152 *lbs.* 2 *ozs.* 8 *drs.* 29 *grs.* avoirdupois.

559. Tables of Spanish measures with their equivalents in English measure:

(*a.*) LONG MEASURE.*				
NAMES.	SPAN. EQUIVALENT.	ENGL. EQUIVALENT.		
		ft.	*in.*	*l.*
Estado, - - - - - - -	6 piés, - - - -	5	6	9.9
Pié, - - - - - - - -	12 pulgados, - - -		11	1.66
Pulgado, - - - - - - -	12 líneas, - - - -			11.14
Línea, - - - - - - -	—			0.92

* The *légua* or league, of Spain, contains 8,000 *varas* or Spanish yards, equivalent to 3.797 English miles, that is, somewhat more than 3¾ English miles. Sometimes the Spaniards reckon by a *légua* of 5,000 *varas*, or 2⅓ English miles.

(*b.*) CLOTH MEASURE.				
NAMES.	SPAN. EQUIVALENT.	ENGL. EQUIVALENT.		
		ft.	*in.*	*l.*
Vara, - - - - - - - -	4 palmos, - - -	2	9	4.3
Palmo, - - - - - - -	12 dedos, - - - -		8	4.1
Dedo, - - - - - - - -	12 líneas, - - - -			8.3
Línea, - - - - - - -	—			0.7
(*c.*) DRY MEASURE.				
		bu.	*pks.*	*qts.*
Cahiz, - - - - - - - -	12 fanegas, - - -	18	3	6.53
Fanega, - - - - - - -	12 celemines, - -	1	2	2.54
Celemin, - - - - - -	4 cuartillos, - - -			4.21
Cuartillo, - - - - - -	—			1.05
(*d.*) LIQUID MEASURE.				
		gals.	*qts.*	*pts.*
Moyo, - - - - - - - -	16 cantaros, - - -	56	1	1.04
Pipa, - - - - - - - -	27 cantaros, - - -	95	0	1.1
Bota, - - - - - - - -	30 cantaros, - - -	105	2	1.7
Cantaro, *or* Arroba mayor, - - -	8 azumbres, - -	3	2	0.19
Azumbre, - - - - - -	4 cuartillos, - -		1	1.52
Cuartillo, - - - - - -	—			.88

(*e.*) In Spanish land measure, the *fanegada* contains about 5,500 English square yards, or $1\frac{3}{22}$ English acres.

APPENDIX TO PART III.

NUMBER VII.

SPANISH PROPER NAMES.

560. Many proper names are spelled alike both in Spanish and in English; as, *América*, America; *Arábia*, Arabia: many differ slightly in the orthography; as, *Europa*, Europe; *Fráncia*, France; *Corcega*, Corsica; *Vizcaya*, Biscay: and some names differ entirely in their orthography; as, *Alemánia*, Germany.

561. SOME COMMON GEOGRAPHICAL PROPER NAMES.*

Alejandría,	*Alexandria.*	Brasil,	*Bazil.*
Alemánia,	*Germany.*	Brema,	*Bremen.*
Amberes,	*Antwerp.*	Bretaña,	*Great Britâin*, or *Brittany.*
Antioquía,	*Antioch.*	Brujas,	*Bruges.*
Antuérpia,	*Antwerp.*	Burdéos,	*Bourdeaux.*
Argel,	*Algiers.*	Cabo de Buena Esperanza,	*Cape of Good Hope.*
Asíria,	*Assyria.*	Cabo de Hornos,	*Cape Horn.*
Atenas,	*Athens.*	Caldéa,	*Chaldea.*
Aviñon,	*Avignon.*	Calés,	*Calais.*
Ayácio,	*Ajaccio.*	Canal de la Mancha,	*English Channel.*
Babilónia,	*Babylon.*	Cantórberi,	*Canterbury.*
Báhia Botanica,	*Botany Bay.*	Cartagena,	*Carthagena.*
Bajo Rin,	*Lower Rhine.*	Cartago,	*Carthage.*
Barbada,	*Barbadoes.*	Castilla la Nueva,	*New Castile.*
Berbería,	*Barbary.*	Castilla la Vieja,	*Old Castile.*
Bizáncio,	*Byzantium.*	Ceilan,	*Ceylon.*
Bolonia,	*Bologna.*	Cerdeña,	*Sardinia.*
Boloña,	*Boulogne.*	Chipre,	*Cyprus.*
Bona,	*Bonn.*		
Borgoña,	*Burgundy.*		
Bosforo,	*Bosphorus.*		

---

* In general, those proper names which do not differ, or but slightly, in the two languages, are not given, as they present no difficulty to the reader.

Colónia,	*Cologne.*
Constanza,	*Constance.*
Copenhágue,	*Copenhagen.*
Corcega,	*Corsica,*
Corinto,	*Corinth.*
Delfinado,	*Dauphiny.*
Dinamarca,	*Denmark.*
Dresde,	*Dresden.*
Duay,	*Douay.*
Dunas,	*The Downs.*
Dunquérque,	*Dunkirk.*
Edinburgo,	*Edinburgh.*
Efeso,	*Ephesus.*
Egipto,	*Egypt.*
Escafusa,	*Schaffhausen.*
Escalda,	*Scheldt.*
Escánia,	*Scania.*
Escío,	*Scio* or *Chio.*
Escócia,	*Scotland.*
Esmirna,	*Smyrna.*
España,	*Spain.*
Esparta,	*Sparta.*
Espizberga,	*Spitzbergen.*
Estados de la Iglésia,	*States of the Church.*
Estados Unidos,	*United States.*
Estocolmo,	*Stockholm.*
Estrasburgo,	*Strasburg.*
Ex,	*Aix.*
Ex-la-Chapela,	*Aix-la-Chapelle.*
Fenícia,	*Phœnicia.*
Filadélfia,	*Philadelphia.*
Filipinas,	*Phillipines.*
Flándes,	*Flanders.*
Flesinga,	*Flushing.*
Fráncia,	*France.*
Frígia,	*Phrygia.*
Frísia,	*Friesland.*
Gáles,	*Wales.*
Gália,	*Gaul.*
Gascuña,	*Gascony.*
Genova,	*Genoa.*
Ginebra,	*Geneva.*
Gotinga,	*Gottingen.*
Gran Bretaña,	*Great Britain.*
Groenlándia,	*Greenland.*
Habana,	*Havanna.*
Habra de Grácia,	*Havre de Grace.*
Haíti,	*Hayti.*
Haya,	*Hague.*
Henáo,	*Hainault.*
Hungría,	*Hungary.*
Indostán,	*Hindoostan.*
Inglaterra,	*England.*
Irlanda,	*Ireland.*
Islanda,	*Iceland.*
Japon,	*Japan.*
Lapónia,	*Lapland.*
Leida,	*Leyden.*
Leon,	*Lyons.*
Lila,	*Lisle.*
Liorna,	*Leghorn.*
Lisboa,	*Lisbon.*
Lóndres,	*London.*
Luisiana,	*Louisiana.*
Madera,	*Madeira.*
Magúncia,	*Mayence.*
Mallorca,	*Majorca.*
Mar Bermejo,	*Red Sea.*
Mar Egéo,	*Ægean Sea.*
Mar Glacial,	*Frozen Sea.*
Mar Negro,	*Black Sea.*
Marañon,	*Amazon.*
Marruécos,	*Morocco.*
Marsella,	*Marseilles.*
Méjico,	*Mexico.*
Menorca,	*Minorca.*
Miño,	*Minho.*
Nápoles,	*Naples.*
Niza,	*Nice.*
Noruéga,	*Norway.*
Nueva Bretaña,	*New Britain.*
Nueva Gáles,	*New Wales.*
Nueva Orleans,	*New Orleans.*
Nueva York,	*New York.*
Olimpo,	*Olympus.*
Otaíta,	*Otaheite.*
Paises Bajos,	*The Low Countries.*
Piamonte,	*Piedmont.*
Polónia,	*Poland.*
Ponto Euxino,	*Black Sea.*
Praga,	*Prague.*

Puerto Mahon,	*Port Mahon.*	Tierra Santa,	*Holy Land.*
Puerto Rico,	*Porto Rico.*	Tolon,	*Toulon.*
Rin,	*Rhine.*	Tolosa,	*Toulouse.*
Rodano,	*Rhone.*	Tornay,	*Tournay.*
Ruan,	*Rouen.*	Toscana,	*Tuscany.*
Rúsia,	*Russia.*	Trento,	*Trent.*
Saboya,	*Savoy.*	Tréveris,	*Treves.*
Sajónia,	*Saxony.*	Troya,	*Troy.*
Salónica,	*Thessalonica.*	Tunez,	*Tunis.*
San Gotardo,	*St. Gothard.*	Turquía,	*Turkey.*
Sena,	*Seine.*	Turs,	*Tours.*
Setúbal,	*St. Ubez*	Ulma,	*Ulm.*
Severna,	*Severn.*	Undervald,	*Unterwalden.*
Suécia,	*Sweden.*	Valáquia,	*Wallachia.*
Suiza,	*Switzerland.*	Varsóvia,	*Warsaw.*
Tajo,	*Tagus.*	Vidin,	*Widin.*
Tamésis,	*Thames.*	Viena,	*Vienne.*
Tanger,	*Tangier.*	Virtemberg,	*Wurtemburg.*
Tébas,	*Thebes.*	Vizcaya,	*Biscay.*
Terranova,	*Newfoundland.*	Zaragoza,	*Saragossa.*
Tesália,	*Thessaly.*	Zelanda,	*Zealand.*

562. The proper names applied to persons from the place of their nativity, in general differ but little from the orthography of the name of the place itself; thus, *Alemánia*, Germany, and *Aleman*, a German (or *Alemana*, a German-woman). Sometimes, however, such proper names differ somewhat from the name of the place; thus, *Flándes*, Flanders, and *Flamenco*, a native of Flanders; *Cádiz*, Cadiz, and *Gaditano*, a native of Cadiz.

563.—NAMES APPLIED TO PERSONS ACCORDING TO THEIR COUNTRY OR TOWN.

Africano,	*an African.*	Bavaro,	*Bavarian.*
Aleman,	*a German.*	Belga,	*Belgian.*
Algerino, Argelino,	*Algerine.*	Berberisco,	*native of Barbary.*
		Brasileño,	*Brazilian.*
Americano,	*American.*	Breton,	*Briton.*
Andaluz,	*Andalusian.*	Castellano,	*Castilian.*
Arabe,	*Arabian*	Catalan,	*Catalonian.*
Asiatico,	*Asiatic.*	Chileño,	*Chilian.*
Ateniense,	*Athenian.*	Chino,	*Chinese.*
Austriaco,	*Austrian.*	Chipreño,	*Cyprian.*

Cipayo,	*Sepoy.*	Malayo,	*Malay.*
Corso,	*Corsican.*	Malagueño,	*native of Malaga.*
Criollo,	*Creole.*	Manchego,	*native of La Mancha.*
Dinamarqués,	*Dane.*	Mejicano,	*Mexican.*
Escosés,	*Scotchman.*	Montañés,	*Highlander.*
Español,	*Spaniard.*	Moro,	*Moor.*
Européo,	*European.*	Napolitano,	*Neapolitan.*
Estremeño,	*Estramadurian.*	Noruego,	*Norwegian.*
Flamenco,	*Fleming.*	Persa,	*Persian.*
Francés,	*Frenchman.*	Peruano,	*Peruvian.*
Frison,	*Frieslander.*	Polaco,	*Pole.*
Gaditano,	*native of Cadiz.*	Portugués,	*Portuguese.*
Gallego,	*Galician.*	Porteño,	*native of Port St. Mary.*
Galés,	*Welchman.*	Prusiano, / Pruso,	*Prussian.*
Ginebrés,	*Genevese.*		
Genoves,	*Genoese.*	Ruso,	*Russian.*
Griego,	*Greek.*	Sardo,	*Sardinian.*
Groenlandés,	*Greenlander.*	Sajon,	*Saxon.*
Heses,	*Hessian.*	Sueco,	*Swede.*
Holandés,	*Dutchman.*	Suizo,	*Swiss.*
Indio,	*Hindoo; Indian.*	Sírio,	*Syrian.*
Inglés,	*Englishman.*	Tejano,	*Texan.*
Irlandés,	*Irishman.*	Toscano,	*Tuscan.*
Islandés,	*Icelander*	Tunecí,	*Tunisian.*
Isleño,	*Islander.*	Turco,	*Turk.*
Japon,	*Japanese.*	Válaco,	*Wallachian.*
Jerezano,	*native of Xeres.*	Valon,	*Walloon.*
Judio,	*Jew.*	Vizcaino,	*Biscayan.*
Lapon,	*Laplander.*	Zelandés, / Celandés,	*Zealander.*
Madrileño,	*native of Madrid.*		

564. CHRISTIAN NAMES OF MEN.

Adan,	*Adam.*	Balduino,	*Baldwin.*
Adolfo,	*Adolphus.*	Baltasár,	*Balthasar.*
Alano,	*Alan*, or *Allen.*	Bernabé,	*Barnaby.*
Alberto,	*Alberto.*	Bartolomé,	*Bartholomew.*
Alejandro,	*Alexander.*	Basílio,	*Basil.*
Alfredo,	*Alfred.*	Beníto,	*Benedict.*
Alfonso,	*Alphonsus.*	Benjamín,	*Benjamin.*
Andrés,	*Andrew.*	Bernárdo,	*Bernard.*
Anton, António,	*Anthony.*	Beltran,	*Bertram.*
Archibaldo,	*Archibald.*	Bonifácio,	*Boniface.*
Artúro,	*Arthur.*	César,	*Cæsar.*
Augusto,	*Augustus.*	Cárlos,	*Charles.*
Agustin,	*Augustin* or *Austin.*	Christóbal,	*Christopher.*
Anibal,	*Hannibal.*	Chrisóstomo,	*Chrysostom.*

Cláudio,	*Claudius.*
Cleménte,	*Clement.*
Conrádo,	*Conrad.*
Constantino,	*Constantine.*
Constáncio,	*Constantius.*
Cornélio,	*Cornelius.*
Ciprián,	*Cyprian.*
Cirilo,	*Cyril.*
Daniel,	*Daniel.*
David,	*David.*
Donstáno,	*Dunstan.*
Edmóndo,	*Edmund.*
Eduardo,	*Edward.*
Eleázaro,	*Eleazar.*
Elías,	*Elias.*
Eliséo,	*Elisha.*
Enríque,	*Henry.*
Estéban,	*Stephen.*
Ethelredo,	*Ethelred.*
Eugénio,	*Eugene.*
Eusébio,	*Eusebius.*
Eustáquio,	*Eustace.*
Ezequías,	*Ezechias.*
Ezequiél,	*Ezekiel.*
Felipe,	*Philip.*
Félix,	*Felix.*
Fernando,	*Ferdinand.*
Francisco,	*Francis.*
Frederico,	*Frederick.*
Gabriél,	*Gabriel.*
Geofredo,	*Geffery.*
Gedónio,	*Gideon.*
Gerónimo,	*Jerome.*
Gilbérto,	*Gilbert.*
Gil,	*Giles.*
Godefrédo,	*Godfrey.*
Gedevíno,	*Goodwin.*
Gregório,	*Gregory.*
Gúido,	*Guy.*
Guillermo,	*William.*
Gualtério,	*Walter.*
Hectór,	*Hector.*
Henríque,	*Henry.*
Hebérto,	*Herbert.*
Hilário,	*Hilary.*
Hubérto,	*Hubert.*
Horácio,	*Horace.*
Húgo,	*Hugh.*
Humfrédo	*Humphrey.*
Ignácio,	*Ignatius.*
Irenéo,	*Ireneus.*
Isaác,	*Isaac.*
Jacób,	*Jacob.*
Jay'me, Jacóbo, Diego, or Santiago,	*James.*
Jeremias,	*Jeremy.*
Job,	*Job.*
Juan,	*John.*
Jonatás,	*Jonathan.*
Jorge,	*George.*
José,	*Joseph.*
Josué,	*Joshua.*
Josias,	*Josiah.*
Júdas,	*Judas.*
Júlio,	*Julius.*
Lorénzo,	*Laurence.*
Lázaro,	*Lazarus.*
Leopoldo,	*Leopold.*
Lúcas,	*Luke.*
Luis,	*Lewis.*
Lucio,	*Lucius.*
Malaquias,	*Malachy.*
Manuel,	*Emanuel.*
Márco,	*Mark.*
Martin,	*Martin.*
Matéo,	*Matthew.*
Matias,	*Matthias.*
Maurício,	*Maurice.*
Maximiliano,	*Maximilian.*
Miguél,	*Michael.*
Moisés,	*Moses.*
Natán,	*Nathan.*
Natanaél,	*Nathaniel.*
Nehemias,	*Nehemiah.*
Nicolás,	*Nicholas.*
Octávio,	*Octavius.*
Olivério,	*Oliver.*
Otón,	*Otho.*
Patricio,	*Patrick.*
Pábio,	*Paul.*
Pédro,	*Peter.*

Phineés,	*Phineas.*	Silvestre,	*Silvester.*
Rodolfo,	*Ralph* or *Rolph.*	Salomón,	*Solomon.*
Rafael,	*Raphael.*	Tadéo,	*Thaddeus.*
Raimunde,	*Raymond.*	Theobáldo,	*Theobald.*
Reinaldo,	*Reynold.*	Theodóro,	*Theodore.*
Ricardo,	*Richard.*	Theodorico,	*Theodoric.*
Roberto,	*Robert* or *Rupert.*	Theodósio,	*Theodosius.*
Rodrigo,	*Roderic.*	Theófilo,	*Theophilus.*
Rogério,	*Roger.*	Tomás,	*Thomas.*
Rolando,	*Rowland.*	Timotéo,	*Timothy.*
Sanson,	*Sampson.*	Tito,	*Titus.*
Samuél,	*Samuel.*	Tobias,	*Toby.*
Sebastián,	*Sebastian.*	Urbano,	*Urban.*
Sigismundo	*Sigismund.*	Valentin,	*Valentine.*
Simeón,	*Simeon.*	Vicente,	*Vincent.*
Simón,	*Simon.*	Zacarías,	*Zachary.*
Silvano,	*Silvan.*		

565. CHRISTIAN NAMES OF WOMEN.

Abigail,	*Abigail.*	Flora,	*Flora.*
A'gatha,	*Agatha.*	Floréncia,	*Florence.*
Adeláida,	*Alice.*	Francisca,	*Frances.*
Alitéa,	*Alithea.*	Gertrudis,	*Gertrude.*
Amelia,	*Amelia.*	Isabel,	*Isabel* or *Elizabeth.*
Ana,	*Ann* or *Anne.*	Juana,	*Jane.*
Antoneta,	*Antonette.*	Judit,	*Judith.*
Bárbara,	*Barbara.*	Juliana,	*Julia.*
Beatriz,	*Beatrix, Beatrice.*	Leanor,	*Eleanor.*
Benita,	*Benedicta.*	Luisa,	*Louisa.*
Bona,	*Bona.*	Lucía,	*Lucy.*
Brigida,	*Bridget.*	Lucrécia,	*Lucretia.*
Carolina,	*Caroline.*	Magdalena,	*Magdalen.*
Casandra,	*Cassandra.*	Margarita,	*Margaret.*
Catalina,	*Catharine.*	María,	*Mary.*
Cecília,	*Cecily.*	Matilde,	*Maud* or *Matilda.*
Carlota,	*Charlotte.*	Paula,	*Paulina.*
Cristina,	*Christiana.*	Penélope,	*Penelope.*
Clara,	*Clara.*	Prudéncia,	*Prudence.*
Claudina,	*Claudia.*	Raquél,	*Rachael.*
Clotildè,	*Clotilda.*	Rebeca,	*Rebecca.*
Constanza,	*Constance.*	Rosa,	*Rose.*
Dionísia,	*Diona.*	Sabina,	*Sabina.*
Dorotéa,	*Dorothy.*	Sara,	*Sarah.*
Elena or Helena,	*Ellen* or *Helen.*	Sofía,	*Sophia.*
Engrácia,	*Grace.*	Susana,	*Susan.*
Estér,	*Hester, Esther.*	Teresa,	*Theresa.*
Eva,	*Eve.*	Ursula,	*Ursula.*

PART IV.

SPANISH AND ENGLISH EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION.

SECTION FIRST.

Remark.—The exercises which follow consist of Spanish phrases and sentences to be translated into English, and of English phrases and sentences to be translated into Spanish. Such exercises, on the method of "constant imitation and repetition," will be found highly useful to the learner. By means of the definitions, the model sentences, the explanations, and the references to rules and remarks, the English exercises can be readily rendered into Spanish.

566. The abbreviations employed in the following exercises are those generally used in grammatical works;—thus, *masc.*, for *masculine; fem.*, for *feminine; sing.*, for *singular; plur.*, for *plural.* Other abbreviations will be explained as they occur.

567. When two or more words in English are connected by a *hyphen*, they are to be rendered by one word in Spanish; thus, "a *thrust-with-a-sword*," is rendered by una *estocada;* "*thou-shouldst-speak*," by the single word *hablaras;* "the *poor-man*," by el *pobre;* "*he-is blind-of-one-eye*," by *es tuerto.*

568. A word, abbreviation, or number, *in Roman characters, inclosed in a parenthesis*, is designed to give some direction or reference to assist the learner; thus, "the brother of the (87; 88) housekeeper." Here the figures 87 and 88 are designed to call attention to those respective paragraphs, which will be found on pages 31 and 32.

569. A word or phrase *in Italics, inclosed in a parenthesis*, shows that the preceding word is to be translated by the *italicised* word or words. Thus, in the sentence, "he-is (*está*) in Spain," the words "*he-is*" are to be rendered by *está.* So in the sentences, "you (*vmd.*) are rich," and, "you (*vms.*) are poor," the word "*you*" in the former case is to be rendered by *vmd.* and in the latter by *vms.*

570. A word or phrase *inclosed in brackets* must not be expressed in the language in which the sentence is to be translated. Thus, la virtud de [la] fortaleza, is to be rendered in English by, "*the virtue of fortitude;*" and, "[he] has [a] fever," in Spanish, by *tiene calentura.*

☞ The learner must endeavor to retain the meaning of the words and their manner of arrangement, as well as the rules and remarks to which reference is made, as he will thus be the better enabled to proceed

with each succeeding exercise, and when no such aids are furnished; for after a few examples and references to any particular rule, we shall give him no further directions in the exercises which come under that rule, except where there may be expected to be cases of considerable doubt on his part. The vocabulary should be carefully read before attempting to translate the exercises.

EXERCISE I.

571. *Vocabulary.*

Hombre, *man.*	Médico, *physician.*
Muger, *woman, wife.*	Criado, *male-servant.*
Marido, *husband.*	Criada, *female-servant.*
Hermano, *brother.*	Americano, *American.*
Hermana, *sister.*	Francesa, *French-woman.*
Hijo, *son.*	Alma, *soul.*
Hija, *daughter.*	Ama, *mistress, housekeeper.*
Juez, *judge.*	Hambre, *hunger, famine.*
Bello, *beautiful.*	Cierto, *true.*
Pasado, *past.*	Futuro, *future.*

572. *Model Phrases.*

(*a.*) El marido de la Francesa.	The husband of the French-woman.
(*b.*) Al hermano del médico.	To-the brother of-the physician.
(*c.*) A un Americano.	To an American.
(*d.*) Lo bello.	The beautiful, *or*, that-which-is beautiful (84).
(*e.*) Los maridos de las Francesas.	The husbands of the French-women.

573. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

El juez. El médico. La criada. Una Francesa. La muger. El hermano. Un criado. El alma. Un ama. El alma del (88) hombre. La hermana del Americano. La hija de la Francesa. La criada de la muger. Lo (84) cierto. Lo bello. Un criado del juez. Una hija del médico. Lo futuro. Al (88) marido de la Francesa. A la muger de juez. Al alma del ama. El hambre del criado. El hijo del hermano del médico. El criado de la muger. Al hermano del juez. A la hermana del Americano. Al hijo de la Francesa. A una hija del Americano. Lo pasado. A lo (84) bello.

☞ The plural of such words in the above vocabulary as end with a vowel, is formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, *hombre*, man; *hombres*, men.

Los hombres. Los maridos. Las criadas. Las hermanas de la Francesa. Los hijos del médico. A las hijas de la muger. A los hermanos del juez. Las almas (84, a) de las Francesas. Las hijas del Americano. Las criadas de los médicos. Los hermanos del marido de la Francesa. Las hijas de los Americanos. Los hermanos de las criadas.

574. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

The (80) man. The (81) woman. The (87) soul. The (82) men. The physician. The (83) daughters. A (86) woman. A (85) judge. A (87) famine. A (87) mistress. The brother of-the (88) physician. The son of the (88, a) French-woman. The husband of the woman. The male-servant of-the American. The sister of-the judge. The female-servant of the woman. The wife of-the physician. The son of-the American. To-the (88) brother of the female-servant. To the (88, a) sister of the French-woman. To-the (87; 88) soul of-the (87; 88) housekeeper. The (84) beautiful. To (88, a) that-which-is (84) beautiful. The past. That-which-is true. The future. To the future.

The brothers. The sisters. The sons of-the American. To the (88, a) brothers of-the physician. To the (87, a) souls of the female-servants. The daughters of the French-woman. The sisters of-the judge. The male-servants of the sons of-the physician. The sons of the sisters of-the American. The husbands of the daughters of-the judge. The brothers of the female-servants.

SECTION SECOND.

Remark.—That the learner may be able to translate and to form complete sentences, a few verbs will be placed in the vocabulary. As he is

not yet supposed to be acquainted with the form of conjugating verbs in Spanish, it is necessary to mention that of the few verbs for the present given in the vocabulary, those ending with *n* are in the third person plural, and of course are to be used when plural nouns are nominative to them: those in the vocabulary not ending with *n* are in the third person singular. In English we say, "the man *wrote*," and "the men *wrote*" (the verb being spelled alike in both the third persons singular and plural); but in Spanish we would say, el hombre *escribió*, "the man *wrote*," and, los hombres *escribieron*, "the men *wrote*."

575. In Spanish, the general rule of constructing sentences is to produce *clearness* and *harmony*. Hence it is by no means important to place the nominative before the verb, as is usually the case in English. Thus in Spanish we can say, *Pedro dió el libro á María*, "Peter gave the book to Mary;" or, *Pedro dió á María el libro*, "Peter gave to Mary the book;" or, *Pedro á María dió el libro*, "Peter to Mary gave the book;" or, *Pedro á María el libro dió*, "Peter to Mary the book gave;" or, *á María dió Pedro el libro*, "to Mary gave Peter the book;" or, *dió Pedro á María el libro*, "gave Peter to Mary the book;" and each of these positions of the words is allowed by the rules of Spanish construction, that form which is most *clear*, *forcible*, and *harmonious* being always preferred.

576. The learner will be able to distinguish the gender of nouns, either from their sex, or from their termination (see 92, c; and 92, d). Any noun forming an exception to the general rules of gender, will have its gender specified in the vocabulary, and should be remembered by the learner.

EXERCISE II.

577. *Vocabulary.*

Padre, *father*.	Libro, *book*.
Madre, *mother*.	Carta, *letter*.
Impresor, *printer*.	Dinero, *money*.
Pintor, *painter*.	Oro, *gold*.
Carpintero, *carpenter*.	Plata, *silver*.
Caballo, *horse*.	Hoja, *leaf*.
Navío, *ship*.	Casa, *house*.
Buey, *ox*.	Cuchara, *spoon*.
Hambre (fem.), *hunger*.	Sed, *thirst*.
El pintor tiene, *the painter has*.	Los pintores tienen, *the painters have*.
El pintor fué, *the painter went*.	Los pintores fueron, *the painters went*.
El pintor dió, *the painter gave*.	Los pintores dieron, *the painters gave*.
El pintor escribió, *the painter wrote*.	Los pintores escribieron, *the painters wrote*.

578. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) El pintor escribió una carta al hijo del juez.	The painter wrote a letter to the judge's son (97).
(*b.*) Las mugeres escribieron cartas al carpintero de navío.	The woman wrote letters to the ship carpenter (97, a).
(*c.*) El juez fué á casa del médico.	The judge went to the doctor's (97, a).
(*d.*) El Americano tiene dinero.	The American has money.
(*e.*) La muger tiene hambre.	The woman has hunger, *i. e.* the woman is hungry.

579. The Spanish for "*ship carpenter*," as seen above (578, b), is *carpintero de navío*, "carpenter of ship." So "*ship surgeon*," "*coach horses*," would be "*surgeon of ship*," "*horses of coach*."

580. It can not be said in Spanish, "*I am hungry*," "*I am thirsty*," "*I am afraid*," but, "*I have hunger*," "*I have thirst*," "*I have fear*." *El impresor* tiene hambre, should be translated in English, "the printer *is hungry*," and not "the printer *has hunger*." So "John *is thirsty*," should be translated in Spanish, *Juan* tiene sed, "John *has thirst*."

581. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

Los impresores (93) tienen dinero. Las mugeres (93) tienen hambre (580). Los pintores tienen libros (94). Los jueces (95, a) tienen sed. Las mugeres dieron libros al padre de la Francesa. Los hombres dieron dinero á la madre del Americano. Los carpinteros fueron á casa* del pintor. Los médicos fueron á casa del juez. Los criados del juez escribieron cartas á las criadas de la Francesa. Los jueces escribieron cartas á la madre del pintor. Los carpinteros de navío (579) tienen dinero.

La hermana del impresor escribió una carta al padre del carpintero. El marido de la Francesa escribió una carta á la madre del juez. El hermano de la Francesa fué á casa del Americano. El pintor escribió al médico una carta. El médico fué á casa del impresor. La hija del carpintero tiene dinero. La hermana del médico tiene una cuchara de plata (97, a). El libro tiene hojas de oro (97, a). El caballo tiene hambre. Los bueyes (93) tienen

* *Casa*, when it means a house, as a place of residence, or *home*, does not take the article before it, as in English.

sed. El carpintero de navío tiene hojas de plata (97, a). El hermano del impresor dió al pintor una cuchara de oro (97, a). El hijo del carpintero dió un libro á la hermana del Americano.

Al médico dió el Americano (575) una cuchara de plata. Al juez la Francesa escribió una carta. A los criados dió la muger (575) libros. Escribió la madre de la Francesa cartas á las hijas del médico. Dió el hermano del impresor al pintor una cuchara de oro. A las mugeres dieron los jueces cucharas de plata.

582. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

The painters (93) have money. The printers (93) have books. The women have husbands (94). The carpenters gave a (85) book to the son of the judge. The sons of the American gave money to the male-servants of the physician. The daughters of the French-woman wrote letters to the sons of the judges (95, a). The physician wrote letters to the mother of the painter. The male-servants of the physician wrote letters to the female-servants of the French-woman. The printers went to [the] house of the judge. The horses are (580) hungry. The men are (580) thirsty. The oxen (93) are thirsty.

The ship carpenter (97, a) went to the physician's* (97, a). The judge's son (97) went to the painter's (97, a). The French-woman's daughter gave to the carpenter a silver spoon (97, a). The printer's brother gave to the painter a gold spoon. The carpenter's son has money. The physician's sister wrote a letter to the judge's daughter. The male-servant is hungry (580). The woman is thirsty (580). The painter is hungry. The American is thirsty. The judge's daughter wrote a letter to the physician's sister. To the judge the French-woman wrote a letter.

---

* That is, "to [the] house of the physician."

SECTION THIRD.

583. In cases in which the position of adjectives would present any difficulty to the learner, the order of the words will be numbered: thus, *los hombres*[2] *magnánimos*[1] *son bienhechores del género*[2] *humano*[1]. The figures here indicate that in translating into English, "*magnánimos*" is to come before "*hombres*," and "*humano*" before "*género;*" as, "the magnanimous men are benefactors of the human race." The order in which English words must be placed in Spanish, will be indicated in the same manner when deemed necessary; thus, "the[3] open[5] rebuke[4] is[2] better[1] than [the] secret[2] love[1]." Here the figures show the order in which the words should be arranged in translating into Spanish; as, *mejor es la correccion manifiesta, que el amor escondido*, that is, "better is the rebuke open, than the affection hidden."

584. A sentence is rendered negative in Spanish by placing the adverb *no* (*not*) before the verb; as, *Juan* no *es sábio*, "John is *not* wise;" *Pedro* no *tiene dinero*, "Peter has *not* money;" *María* no *tiene sed*, "Mary is *not* thirsty;" *Diego* no *escribió cartas*," James wrote *not* letters" (or, "James did *not* write letters").

EXERCISE III.

585. *Vocabulary.*

Sábio, *wise.*
Ignorante, *ignorant.*
Impío, *impious, wicked.*
Falaz, *deceitful, false.*
Rico, *rich.*
Pobre, *poor.*
Bueno, *good.*
Malo, *bad, evil.*
Nuevo, *new.*
Ingles, *English.*
Español, *Spanish.*
Frances, *French.*
Amigo, *friend.*
Léngua, *tongue, language.*
General, *general.*
Es, *is.*
El Español ama, *the Spaniard loves.*
Y, *and.*
Tenebroso, *dark, gloomy.*
Fuerte, *strong.*
Robusto, *robust.*
Estrecho, *narrow, close.*
Sobérbio, *proud.*
Viejo, *old.*
Espacioso, *spacious, wide.*
Hermosa, *beautiful, handsome.*
Grande, *great.*
Lindo, *pretty.*
Dos, *two.*
Tres, *three.*
Camino, *road, way.*
Verdad, *truth.*
Ejército, *army.*
Son, *are.*
Los Españoles aman, *the Spaniards love.*
E', *and* (before *i*).

586. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) El Español no tiene libros[2] franceses.[1]

The Spaniard (100) has not (584) French books.

(*b.*) La Española tiene una léngua[2] falaz.[1]	The Spanish-woman (100, a) has a deceitful tongue.
(*c.*) El general es fuerte y robusto.	The general is strong and robust.
(*d.*) El viejo es sábio.	The old-man (102) is wise.
(*e.*) Las hijas son sobérbias é ignorantes.	The daughters are proud (100, a) and (587) ignorant.

587. *Y* is used for the conjunction "*and*," except before words beginning with *i* or *hi*, when *é* is used; as, *el hombre* y *la muger*, "the man *and* the woman;" *viejo* é *impío*," old *and* impious;" *hijos* é *hijas*, "sons *and* daughters."

588. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

El camino es estrecho. La casa es espaciosa (100, a). Las mugeres son sobérbias (99, and 100, b). Los Ingleses (102) no (584) tienen dinero. Las Inglesas (100, b) no tienen hambre. Los Españoles (99 and 100, b) no tienen sed. Las Americanas (100, b, and 102) son hermosas. Los libros son nuevas. Un buen (101) general es el (87) alma de un ejército. El Frances (102) es pobre y sobérbio. El amigo del médico es ignorante. El juez es sábio y rico. La léngua[2] falaz[1] no ama la verdad. Los Americanos aman dinero. Los hijos del pintor son fuertes y robustos. Los pobres tienen hambre.

El camino de los impíos (102) es tenebroso. El hermano del carpintero dió un libro[2] frances[1] á la hermana del Ingles. El padre de la Francesa es viejo y pobre. El criado del pintor tiene dos libros[2] malos[1]. Las hijas del impresor tienen tres cucharas[2] nuevas[1]. Los jueces escribieron cartas[2] inglesas[1] á las hermanas del general. El caballo es fuerte. Los hijos del médico son malos é ignorantes. Las mugeres[2] falaces[1] (95, a) no aman la verdad. Las hijas del amigo del impresor dieron al criado tres libros nuevas y hermosas. El general del ejército es un gran (101, a) hombre. Los grandes generales del ejército son amigos del juez. Los caminos de los impíos son malos. Las Francesas no son lindas. Los pobres y los ricos son sobérbios. La hija del Español es linda y rica. El Americano es sobérbio é ignorante.

589. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

The Frenchman (100) wrote letters to the Spanish-woman (100). The Americans are friends of the English (*Ingleses*). The way of the wicked (102) is dark. The daughters of the Spaniard (*Español*) are pretty. The books are new. The house of the physician is spacious. The horses of the Englishman are strong. The sons of the judge are poor and proud. The daughter of the French-woman is proud and (587) ignorant. The sisters of the painter are rich and handsome. A good (101) man loves the truth. A false[2] tongue[1] loves not (584) the truth. The Spaniards and the Americans love money. The silver spoons (*cucharas de plata*) are new. The road is narrow. The judge's son (97) is bad and (587) ignorant. The printers are rich. The physician's male-servant is robust.

The physician's horse is old. The poor-man (102) wrote a letter to the rich-man's (102) sons. The carpenter gave three books to the friend of the painter. The father of the French-woman gave two French[2] books[1] to the mother of the printer. The judge's father gave three English[2] books[1] to the general's mother. The sisters of the American are not (584) wise. The house is not (584) spacious. The general of the army wrote not letters to the father of the judge. The Frenchmen are hungry (*tienen hambre*). The Englishmen are thirsty. The judge is not hungry. The women are not thirsty. The general gave a great (101, a) sum (*suma*) of money to the poor-men. The road is wide. The road is not narrow. The sisters of the Englishman are not beautiful. The male-servant has not money. The American is proud and ignorant. The Spaniard's father is old and poor.

590. In Spanish, proper names employed as adjectives are not generally written with a capital initial letter; thus, we write, *libros españoles*, "Spanish books," and not *libros Españoles*.

SECTION FOURTH.

EXERCISE IV.

591. *Vocabulary.*

Alto, *high, lofty.*
Culpable, *culpable.*
Amable, *amiable.*
Bello, *fine, elegant.*
Escrupuloso, *scrupulous.*
Todo, *every, all.*
Sol, *sun.*
Luna, *moon.*
Estrella, *star.*
Planeta (masc.), *planet.*
Prudéncia, *prudence.*
Tesoro, *treasure.*
El médico halló, *the doctor found.*
Brillante, *brilliant.*
Gárrulo, *garrulous, talkative.*
Armonioso, *harmonious.*
Benigno, *benign.*
Aleman, *German.*
Sombrero, *hat.*
Leon, *lion.*
Béstia, *beast.*
Torre, (fem.), *tower.*
Monte, *mountain.*
Génio, *genius, disposition.*
En, *in, on.*
Los médicos hallaron, *the doctors found.*

592. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) El médico halló un libro aleman en el camino.	The physician found a German book in the road.
(*b.*) La Alemana es de muy gran prudéncia.	The German-woman (100, a) is of very great prudence.
(*c.*) María es una muger muy amable.	Mary is a woman very amiable.
(*d.*) Los montes son altísimos.	The mountains are most high.
(*e.*) El caballo es mas útil que el buey.	The horse is more useful than the ox.
(*f.*) El sol es el mas brillante de todos los planetas.	The sun is the most brilliant of all the planets.

593. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

La muger es muy (108) amable. El juez es muy (108) viejo. La Francesa es muy vieja. El criado es muy culpable. La léngua[2] española[1] es bella y muy armoniosa. La luna es muy brillante. Las estrellas son muy brillantes. Las torres son altísimas (108). Las Españoles son muy sobérbios. El juez es muy escrupuloso. La casa es altísima (108). El buey es tan (104) fuerte como (104) el caballo. El caballo es tan viejo como el buey. El pintor es mas (106) robusto que (106) el impresor. Las criadas

de la Española (100, a) son mas gárrulas que los criados del Aleman. El sol es mas brillante que la luna. La luna es ménos (105) brillante que (105) el sol. La hija del médico es ménos (105) hermosa que la hija del juez. Las casas no son tan altas como las torres.

El sol es un planeta brillantísimo. La Francesa es la mas (109) hermosa de todas las mugeres. Los Inglesas son mas (106) sobérbios que los Alemanes. Los pintores son los mas (109) ricos de todos los hombres. Las hermanas del impresor son las ménos (109) gárrulas de todas las mugeres. La Española es de muy gran prudéncia. El marido de la Inglesa es un hombre sobérbio y muy ignorante. El leon es el mas fuerte de las béstias. El juez es de génio benignísimo. El amigo del general dió al Frances tres libros[2] alemanes[1].

El viejo halló un tesoro en el camino. Los hijos del pintor hallaron un sombrero[2] nuevo[1] en el camino. Los hermanas del carpintero escribieron cartas á los jueces[2] escrupulosos[1]. Los generales del ejercito son culpables. La madre del impresor es muy viejo. Las hijas del carpintero tienen hambre. Los buenos (102) aman la verdad. La muger halló dos cucharas de oro en el camino. El médico tiene tres libros[2] franceses[1]. El juez ama lo (84) bueno.

594. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

The mountain is very (108) high. The male-servant is very (108) old. The Spanish[2] language[1] is elegant and very harmonious. The sun is most (108) brilliant. The stars are very brilliant. The painter is as (104) proud as (104) the judge. The horse is as (104) strong as (104) the ox. The carpenter is as rich as the printer. The daughters of the German-woman (*Alemana*) are less (105) culpable than (105) the daughters of the Spanish-woman (*Española*). The stars are less (105) brilliant than the moon. The moon is less brilliant than the sun. The

carpenter is more (106) ignorant than (106) the painter. The lion is stronger* than the horse. The judge is wiser than the physician.

The sister of the printer is the most talkative (109) of all the women. The mother of the German is the most (109) proud of all the women. The general is a man of very great (101, a) prudence. The physician is the least (109) ignorant of the judge's friends. The lion is the strongest (most strong) of all the beasts. The judge is the wisest of the men. The German is of [a] disposition most (108) benign. The English[2] language[1] is not as harmonious as the Spanish[2] language[1]. The hat is newer than the book. The book is less new than the hat.

The printers are hungry. The male-servant is thirsty. The carpenter found a new[2] spoon[1] of silver in the road. The judge's daughters found a treasure in the road. The painter's sons love the truth. The (84) good is preferable (*preferible*) to the (84) beautiful. The mountains are very high. The Englishman gave to the German two French[2] books[1]. The sister of the painter wrote not letters to the sons of the carpenter. The (87) housekeeper is proud and ignorant.

SECTION FIFTH.

595. Personal pronouns must always agree with the nouns for which they are substituted, in gender, person, and number. Thus, if it is said, "John lost his pen (*pluma*) and Peter found *it*," the pronoun "*it*" must be rendered, in Spanish, by *la*, because *pluma* is feminine.

EXERCISE V.

596. *Vocabulary.*

Confianza, *confidence.*
Alguno, *some, any.*
Hablô, (*he*) *spoke.*
Viô, (*he*) *saw.*
Vino, (*he*) *came.*
Para, *for.*
Mucho, *much, many.*
Hablaron, (*they*) *spoke.*
Hizo, (*he*) *made*, (*he*) *did.*
Vinieron, (*they*) *came.*

---

* That is, as it would be expressed in Spanish, "*more strong.*"

Yo* soy, *I am.*	Tú eres, *thou art.*
Nosótros somos, *we are.*	Yo voy, *I go, I am-going.*
Traed, *bring* (*ye*).	Comprar, (*to*) *buy.*
Dar, (*to*) *give.*	Hablar, (*to*) *speak.*
Ver, (*to*) *see.*	Pedro, *Peter.*

597. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) Los jueces os le llevaron (115, a).	The judges brought him to-you.
(*b.*) Yo voy á verla (116).	I am-going to see her.
(*c.*) Traédmelo (116).	Bring it to-me (Bring-me-it).
(*d.*) Pedro me vió (113).	Peter saw me.
(*e.*) El Frances me habló (114).	The Frenchman spoke to-me.

598. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

[The personal pronouns are in Italics.]

Pedro *me* (113, and 114) escribió dos cartas. *Ella le* (113, and 114, b) dió un libro. *El los* (114, a) halló. *Ella les* (114, b) escribió algunas cartas. El médico *les* (114, b) habló. *Yo* soy pobre y viejo. *Tú* eres muy sábio. *El* es ignorante. *Nosotros* somas fuertes y ricos. El pintor *te* (114) dió una cuchara de plata. La muger *nos* (114) vió. El carpintero *nos* habló. Los Españoles *le* hablaron. El juez *le* vió. La Francesa *los* (114, a) vió. La Inglesa *las* vió. El carpintero *lo* hizo para (115) *él.* El impresor tiene mucha confianza en *ella* (115). Los pintores tienen confianza en *él.* El Aleman *lo* hizo para *mí.* El médico tiene mucha confianza en *ellos.* El padre del impresor tiene confianza en *nosotros.* El Frances *la* vió. El juez *las* vió.

El Americano halló un sombrero en el camino, y *le*† dió al hermano del juez. La muger halló una cuchara en el camino, y *la* dió á la hija de Pedro. Pedro halló tres cucharas, y *me las* (115, a) dió. La Española halló dos sombreros, y *nos los* (115, a) dió. *Ellos nos* escribieron

---

* For the present, we shall use the nominative personal pronouns with the verb, though it is not in general required. (See 139, a.)

† "*Le*" here means "*it*," and refers to *sombrero*, being of the same gender. (See 595.)

algunas cartas. *Yo* voy á hablar*le* (116). *Yo* voy á ver*le* (116). *Yo la* (116, a) voy á ver. Pedro tiene muchos libros, y *me* dió algunos de *ellos* (115). El médico vino con*sigo* (115, c). La Inglesa vino con*tigo* (115, c). Los pintores vinieron con*migo*. Traéd*melos* (116). Trad*mele* (116). Traed*me* (116) una cuchara. Traé*os* (116, b) algunas cucharas. *Yo* voy á dar*les* (116) tres sombreros. *Ella* tiene algunos libros; *yo* voy á comprar*los*. La muger tiene muchas cucharas de oro; *yo* voy á comprar*las*. Pedro *os* dió dos sombreros; *yo los* voy á comprar.

599. In forming a negative sentence, the adverb *no* must come not only before the verb, but also before personal pronouns of the first-objective case; as, *Juan no me lo dijo*, "John not to-me it said," *i. e.*, "John said it not to-me," or as it would be commonly expressed in English, "John did not say it to me."

600. *Vmd.* (pronounced *ustéd*) is generally used in common conversation, and though of the third person, is equivalent to the English word "*you*" (see 110, c): thus the sentence, "you are rich," if addressed to one person, would be *vmd. es rico* ("your-worship is rich"); if addressed to more than one person, *vms. son ricos* ("your-worships are rich"). When females are referred to, the feminine form of the adjective must be used.

Vmd. es muy sábio. *Vmd.* tiene hambre. *Vd.* (110, c) me dió un libro. *Vm.* tiene una casa. *Vms.* tienen sed. *Vms.* aman la verdad. *Vms.* no son sobérbios. El juez tiene mucha confianza en *vd.* Pedro *le* (see 112, II.) dió el libro. El Aleman no *le* dió dinero. La Alemana no *le* habló. La muger no *me* habló. El pintor no *te* vió. El carpintero no *los* halló. *Yo* voy á dar*le* un libro. *V.* (110, c) es rico. *VV.* (110, c) son pobres. *Vds.* son sobérbios.

601. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

Peter wrote me (113 and 114) two letters. The painter gave him (113 and 114, b) a book. She found them (114, a). He wrote to-them (114, b) some letters. I am old and poor. The judge spoke to-them (114, b). Thou art very rich. He is wise. We are ignorant. They are

strong and rich. The painter gave thee (114) a silver spoon. The woman saw us (114). The carpenter spoke to us (114). The Spanish-women spoke to him (114, b). The physician saw him (114, a). The French-woman saw them (masc.). The German-woman saw them (fem.). The carpenter made it (*lo*) for him (115). The painter has confidence in her (115). The printers have much confidence in him (115). The American made it for me (115). The physician has much confidence in them (masc.). The mother of the painter has much confidence in us. The Spaniard saw her. The Frenchman saw them. Peter saw him. They spoke to-me (114).

The French-woman found two hats, and gave them to Peter. The woman found a book in the road, and gave it (595) to the physician. The American found a spoon in the road, and gave it (595) to the judge's daughter. Peter found three spoons, and gave them to-me (115, a). They wrote us some letters. They (fem.) spoke to-us (114). I am-going to speak to him (116, and 116, a). I am going to see her (116, and 116, a). I her (116, a) am-going to see. The physician came with-him (115, c). Peter has many books, and he-gave (*dió*) me some of them (115). The Frenchman came with-thee (115, c). The carpenters came with-me. Bring me (116) a book. Bring him-to-me (116). Bring-me-them (116) Bring (116, b) yourselves (*os*) some spoons. I am-going to give-him (116) three books. I am-going to give them (116) three hats. She has some books; I am-going to buy them (116). The judge has many gold spoons (97, a); I am-going to buy them. Peter gave you three books; I them (116, a) am-going to buy. I am-going to see them (masc.). I am-going to see them (fem.).

☞ The remaining exercises in this section are to be rendered by *vmd.* and its objective cases, when the second person "*you*" occurs in English (see 600). Instead of *vmd.*, any of the other abbreviations, *V.*, *Vd.*, *Vm.* (all pronounced *usted*), may be used; and instead of *vmdes.*, the other abbreviations in the plural, *VV.*, *Vs.*, *Vms.*, *Vds.*, may be used. (See 110, c).

You gave me a book. You are very wise. You are hungry. You have a house. You (plur.) are thirsty. You (plur.) are not proud. You (plur.) love the truth. The physician has much confidence in you (115). The judge gave you the book. The American gave you (*le*) not money. The painter spoke not to-you (*le*). The woman spoke not to-you (plur.). She spoke not to-me. The painter saw thee not. The carpenter found them not. I am-going to give you (*le*) a book. Peter saw you (*le*).

☞ Every sentence in the preceding English exercises should be carefully written, and the rules for the position of the pronouns well studied. By examining the Spanish exercises, the private learner will be able to know whether or not he renders the personal pronouns in the English sentences correctly in the Spanish. We would recommend to the learner to write and re-write these exercises, as well as the preceding ones, till he becomes perfectly familiar with the rules referred to in translating from one language to the other.

SECTION SIXTH.

EXERCISE VI.

602. *Vocabulary.*

Calle (fem.), *street.*	Cabeza, *head.*
Mano (fem.), *hand.*	Garganta, *throat.*
Sobrino, *nephew.*	Ojo, *eye.*
Levantó, (*he*) *raised.*	Tomó, (*he*) *took.*
Duele, (*it*) *pains*, (*it*) *aches.*	Por, *by*, *through.*

603. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) Las casas son *suyas* (119, a; 120).	The houses are *his* (or *hers*, or *theirs*).
(*b.*) Los sombreros son *suyos de él* (120, a).	The hats are *his.*
(*c.*) Tu (119) hermana y *la mía* (121) tienen hambre y sed.	Thy sister and *mine* are hungry and thirsty.
(*d.*) Pedro es amigo *mio* (121, b).	Peter is a friend *of mine.*
(*e.*) La muger levantó *los* ojos (122).	The woman raised *her* (the) eyes.
(*f.*) Le duele la garganta de Pedro (122, a).	The throat of Peter pains him,* *i. e.*, Peter's throat is sore.

---

* Literally, "*to-him pains the throat of Peter.*"

604. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

Mis (119) amigos hallaron un tesoro en el camino. Un amigo mío (119, a) halló un sombrero. Tu (119) hijo vió un libro en la calle. El juez habló á sus (119) amigos. Mi madre tiene hambre. Su (120) criado tiene sed. Su (120) hija tiene tres cucharas. Todos mis libros son tuyos (119, a). Yo voy á su casa. Nuestras criadas son culpables. El libro es mio (119, a). La cuchara es tuya (119, a). Los sombreros son nuestros. Mi padre me vió. Las casas son suyas de él (120, a). Los caballos son suyos de ella (120, a). Las cucharas son suyas de ellos. Las casas son mias.

Tu (119) madre y la mia (121) tienen prudéncia. Tus hermanos y los mios (121) son muy pobres. Sus (120) hermanas y las nuestras son sobérbias. Pedro es sobrino mio y suyo de ella (121, a). El médico es amigo mio y suyo de él (121, a). Una criada mia (121, b) halló un sombrero en la calle. El dió el libro á un amigo nuestro (121, b). El levantó las (122) manos. Ella levantó los (122) ojos. Pedro levantó la cabeza. El criado tiene un sombrero en la (122) mano. Ella le tomó por la (122) mano. El la tomó por la (122) mano. La (122, a) cabeza me (122, a) duele. Te (122, a) duele la (122, a) cabeza.* La cabeza les (122, a) duele. Me (122, a) duele la garganta. La cabeza nos (122, a) duele. La garganta le (122, a) duele. La garganta les duele. El pintor le (122, a) tomó el (122, a) sombrero, y fué á casa del médico. La muger les (122, a) tomó los (122, a) sombreros. Mi sobrino levantó la (122) cabeza.

Vmd. tiene su (123) dinero. La muger tiene su (123) libro. Vmd. escribió algunas cartas á sus (123) amigos. Vms. dieron tres libros á sus criadas. El médico le (123, a) dió á vmd (123, a) muchos libros. Su (123, a) hijo de

---

* "*Te duele la cabeza*" means the same as "*la cabeza te duele,*" the difference in construction not altering the meaning. (See 575.)

vmd. (123, a) es muy amable. Sus (123, a) hijas de vmdes. son muy hermosas. Las casas son suyas de V. (120, a). Los caballos son suyos de VV. (120, a). Sus hermanas de Vd. son amabilísimos. Sus libros de Vms. son buenos. Vm. halló su (123) dinero.

695. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

My (119) friend is rich. My (119) mother is poor. My (119) friends found a treasure in the road. Thy (119) sister saw a book in the street. A friend of mine (121, b) found a hat. The physician spoke to his (119) friends. My brother is hungry. His (120) horse is strong. All my books are thine (119, a). His (120) female-servant is thirsty. I am-going to his (or her) house. Our (118) female-servants are talkative. The book is mine (119, a). The spoon is thine (119, a). The hats are mine (119, a). The houses are mine (119, a). The books are ours. My father saw me (113). The houses are his (*suyas de él*). The spoons are hers (120, a). The horses are theirs (fem.; 120, a).

Thy (119) house and mine (*la mia;* 121) are beautiful. Thy mother and mine (121) have prudence. Thy brothers and mine (121) are very poor. Thy sisters and ours (121) are proud. Peter is [a] nephew of mine (121, b) and hers (121, a). The painter is a friend of mine (126, b) and his (120. a; 121, a). A female-servant of mine (121, b) found a hat in the street. He gave the book to a friend of ours (121, b). She raised her (122) hands. He raised his (122) eyes. Peter raised his (122) head. She raised her (122) eyes. The male-servant has a hat on (*en*) his (*la;* 122) head. He took her by her (122) hand. She took him by his (122) hand. My (122, a) head aches (the head to-me aches; 122, a). Thy (122, a) head aches (to-thee aches the head, 122. a). His (122, a) head aches. Peter's head aches (603, f). My (122, a) throat pains me. Thy (122, a) throat is-sore (*duele*). The physician

took his (122, a) hat, and went to [the] house of the painter. The women took their (122, a) hats.

(*a.*) In the remaining exercises, when the second person (*you* or *your*) occurs, it is to be rendered by *vmd.* and its objective cases and possessive pronouns; thus, "*You* found *your* book," vmd. *halló* su *libro*, literally, "*your-worship* found *his* book." So, "John gave the book to *you*," *Juan* le *dió el libro*, or *Juan* le *dió* á vmd. *el libro*, literally, "John gave the book *to him*," *i. e.*, "to *your-worship*."

The painter has your (123) book. You have your (123) money. You wrote letters to your (123) friends. You gave a book to your father. You (plur.) gave to your male-servants two silver spoons (97, a). The physician gave you (to-him gave to your-worship; 123, a) many books. Your* (123, a) son is very amiable. Your (123, a) daughters are very beautiful. The houses are yours (*suyas de vmd.*; 120, a). The horses are yours (120, a). The oxen are yours. The painter gave you (123, a) three hats. Your (123, a) sons are proud. Your (123, a) sisters are most amiable (108). You have not your money. The woman has not your book. You wrote not letters to your friends. Your father is rich.

SECTION SEVENTH.

EXERCISE VII.

606. *Vocabulary.*

Cuidado, *care, anxiety.*
Juan, *John.*
Cuarto, *room.*
Ciudad, *city.*
Agradable, *agreeable, pleasant.*
Posible, *possible.*
Sabe, (*he*) *knows.*
Hacer, *to make, to do.*
Leer, *to read.*
Dios, *God.*
María, *Mary.*
Nombre, *name.*
Sabiduría, *wisdom.*
Desgraciado, *unfortunate, unhappy.*
Imposible, *impossible.*
Saben (*they*) *know.*
Decir, *to say.*
Tomar, *to take.*

---

* That is, "*his* son of *your worship*," *su hijo de vmd.* (See 123, a).

607. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) Mis hermanos son *quienes* (124, a) los vió.	My brothers are (*they*) *who* saw them.
(*b.*) Los pintores *á quienes* (124, b) vmd. vió, y de *los cuales* (124, c) Juan habló, son muy ricos.	The painters *whom* you saw, and of *whom* John spoke, are very rich.
(*c.*) El hombre cuyo (124, d) hermano es general del ejército, halló un tesoro en la ciudad.	The man whose brother is general of the army, found a treasure in the city.
(*d.*) Ella sabe lo que (125, b) es bueno.	She knows what is good.
(*e.*) La que (125, c) tiene dinero, tiene cuidado.	She who has money, has care.

608. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

El juez es quien (124, a) vió las cartas que (124, c) vmd. escribió. Las Francesas son quienes (124, a) dieron los libros á Pedro. El hombre á quien (125, a) el Aleman dió los sombreros, es muy rico é ignorante. Las mugeres á quienes (125, a) el médico escribió las cartas, son muy pobres é ignorantes. El juez dió los libros á un pintor[2] ingles[1] (100, c) en quien (125, a) el médico tiene mucha confianza. Los mugeres para quienes (125, a) Pedro escribió las cartas, son muy hermosas y ricos. La Española á quien (124, b) Pedro ama, es muy hermosa. Las Francesas á quienes (124, b) vmd. vió, me (113; 114) escribieron muchas cartas. Las cucharas que (124, c) María tiene, y las cuales (124, c) el Frances halló, son mias. El caballo que (124, c) Juan vió, y del cual (124, c) Pedro habló, es robusto y fuerte. Las calles cuyas (124, d) casas son hermosas, son agradables.

El criado cuyo (124, d) nombre es Pedro, vino á mi casa. Las casas cuyos (124, d) cuartos son espaciosos, son muy agradables. Juan dió el libro á una muger cuyo nombre es María. El pintor y el impresor vinieron á Madrid, en cuya (124, d) ciudad el pintor halló un tesoro. El hombre que (125) tiene prudéncia, es muy sábio. El hombre que tiene dinero, tiene cuidado. La muger que (125) es sobérbia é ignorante, es desgraciada. Los hom-

bres que (125) tienen dinero, tienen cuidados. Lo que (125, b) es imposible para los (230) hombres, es posible para Dios. Lo que (125, b) es nuevo, no es viejo. El pintor tiene el tesoro que el médico halló en la calle. Pedro ama lo que (125, b) es bueno. Ella sabe que (125, b) hacer. El hombre no sabe que (125, b) hacer. Pedro sabe lo que es bueno. La Francesa no sabe que decir. Las hijas del juez no saben que comprar. El pintor no sabe que (125, b) libro leer. Los Alemanes no saben cual (125, b) sombrero tomar. Mi hermana no sabe cuales libros leer.

La que (125, c) es sobérbia, no es amable. Los que (125, c) aman la verdad, son sabios. El que (125, c) tiene sabiduría, tiene prudéncia. Mi hermano tiene un tesoro, que (124, c) su criado halló en la ciudad. El que tiene prudéncia, es sábio. Los que nos dieron los libros, son amigos nuestros (121, b). La que no es agradable, es desgraciada. La ciudad en que (126) Juan halló el tesoro, es grande y hermosa. La muger á quien María habló, es muy amable. El que tiene oro, tiene mucho cuidado. El Aleman dió dos libros al hombre á quien (124, b) Juan vió. El médico dió tres libros á la Francesa en quien mi madre tiene mucha confianza. El pintor fué á Madrid, en cuya (124, d) ciudad las calles son agradables y las casas hermosas. Las criadas no saben que hacer.

609. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

The physician is [he] who (124, a) wrote the letter which (124, c) you (*vmd.*) saw. The judge is [he] who (124, a) saw the letters which (124, c) you (*vmd*) wrote. The Spanish-women are [they] who (124, a) gave the books to Peter. The man to whom (125, a) John gave the hats, is very rich and (587) ignorant. The women to whom (125, a) the judge wrote the letters are very poor and ignorant. The women for whom (125, a) Mary wrote the letters, are very amiable and beautiful. The physician

gave the spoons to an English[2] painter[1] (100, c), in whom (125, a) the judge has much confidence. The French-woman whom (124, b) Peter loves, is very beautiful. The German-woman whom (124, b) you (*vmd.*) saw, wrote me many letters. The spoons which (124, c) Mary has, and which (124, c) the Frenchman found, are mine. The male-servant who (125) came with me (115, c), is strong and robust. The horse which (124, c) John saw, and of which (*del cual;* 124, c) Peter spoke, is strong. The streets whose (124, d) houses are beautiful, are agreeable.

The man whose (124, d) name is John came to my house. The woman whose name is Mary gave me three books. The houses whose (124, d) rooms are spacious, are very pleasant. John gave three silver spoons to a woman whose name is Mary. The painter and the printer came to Madrid, in which (124, d) city the painter found a treasure. The man who (125) has prudence, is wise. The woman who (125) is proud and ignorant, is unhappy. The men who have money, have cares. That which (125, b) is possible for Peter, is possible for John. What (125, b) is possible for the painter, is not possible for the carpenter. The Frenchman has the treasure that (124, c) the physician found in the street of the city. Peter loves what (125, b) is good. Mary knows what (125, b) is good. The German knows what (125, b) to-do. The painter knows not what (125, b) to-do. The French-woman knows not what to-say. The physician's sister knows not what to-buy. The male-servants know not what to-say. My father knows not what (125, b) book to-read. My brothers know not which (125, b) books to-buy. The Germans know not which (125, b) hat to-take. She knows not what spoon to-take.

He that (125, c) has much gold, has much care. She that (125, c) is proud, is not amiable. They who (125, c) love the truth, are wise. He who has wisdom, has pru-

dence. He who has prudence, is wise. My father has a treasure which (124, c) his male-servant found in the city. They who gave us the books, are friends [of] ours (121, b). She who is not agreeable, is unfortunate. Those who are ignorant and impious, are unhappy. The city in which (126) Peter found the books, is large and beautiful. The woman to whom Mary spoke, is very agreeable. The painter went to Madrid, in which (124, d) city the streets are pleasant and the houses handsome.

SECTION EIGHTH.

610. In Spanish, all that is necessary to form an interrogatory sentence, is to place the interrogation mark before (inverted) and after the sentence. Thus, *Juan tiene dinero*, means, "John has money," and *¿Juan tiene dinero?* means, "has John money?" *It is, however, common* (though not necessary) *in Spanish, to place the nominative after the verb in interrogations;* as, *¿tiene Pedro dinero? ¿tienen los pintores libros?* "has Peter money?" "have the painters books?"

611. The auxiliary verb *do* is unknown in Spanish (as also in all the languages of Europe except the English), and all such expressions as, "*does* John speak?"—"*do* they love?"—"how much *do* you ask a week?"—"*did* it not snow during my absence?"—"*did* they see her?"—"Peter *did* speak," must be rendered in Spanish by the simple form of the verb; as, *¿habla Juan?—¿aman ellos?—¿cuánto pide vd. por semana?—¿no nevó durante mi ausénciа?—¿la vieron ellos?—Pedro habló;* that is, "*speaks* John?"—"*love* they?"—"how much *ask* you per week?"—"*snowed* it not during my absence?"—"her *saw* they?" (or, "*saw* they her?") "Peter *spoke*."

EXERCISE VIII.

612. *Vocabulary.*

Azúcar, *sugar.*
Manteca, *butter.*
Espécie (fem.) *species, sort.*
Señor, *sir.*
Sí, *yes.*
Toma, (*he*) *takes.*
Dice (*he*) *says.*
Habla (*he*) *speaks.*
Quiere (*he*) *wishes,* (*he*) *wants.*
Pan, *bread.*
A'gua, *water.*
Boton, *button.*
Señora, *madam, lady.*
No, *no.*
Dicen, (*they*) *say.*
Dijo, (*he*) *said.*
Entiende, (*he*) *understands.*
Quieren, (*they*) *wish,* (*they*) *want.*

613. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) ¿ Quién tiene azúcar ?	Who has sugar ?
(*b.*) ¿ Quién habla Ingles ?	Who speaks English ?
(*c.*) ¿ Cual de los dos pintores tiene dinero ?	Which of the two painters has money ?
(*d.*) ¿ Qué dijo la hija del juez ?	What said the judge's daughter ?
(*e.*) ¿ Qué libro tiene vm. ?	What book have you ?
(*f.*) ¿ De quién es el tesoro ?	Whose is the treasure ?
(*g.*) ¿ Quiere su hijo pan, señor ?	Does your son want bread, sir ?
(*h.*) No, señor, mi hijo tiene pan.	No, sir, my son has bread.

614. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

¿ Quién (127) es bueno ? ¿ Quiénes (127) son ricos ? ¿ De quién (127) son las casas ? ¿ Cuyos (127) libros tiene Vmd. ? ¿ Cual (127) de los dos hijos del juez halló un tesoro ? ¿ Qué (127) dijo Vmd. ? ¿ Qué (127) sombrero tiene vmd. ? ¿ Qué tesoros halló Pedro ? ¿ Qué quiere Vm. ? ¿ Qué léngua habla el general ? ¿ Para quién (127, a) escribió María las cartas ? Para el muger (127, a). ¿ A quiénes (127, a) dió Juan los libros[2] españoles[1] ? A los Alemanes (127, a). ¡ Qué (127, b) hombre es Vm. ! ¡ Qué (127, b) hermosa muger ! ¿ Quién quiere pan ? ¿ Quién quiere azúcar ? ¿ Quién habla Español ? ¿ Quién entiende el Ingles ? ¿ Quién ama la verdad ? ¿ Quién habla el Frances ? ¿ Quién entiende lo que (125, b) Juan dice ? ¿ Qué espécie de botones quiere Vm. ? ¿ Qué espécie de azucár tiene Pedro ? ¿ Qué quieren Vms. ? ¿ Qué libros quieren los pintores ? ¿ Qué dicen los jueces ?

¿ Toma Vmd. água ? ¿ Qué dijo el hermano del médico ? Señora, ¿ quiere Vmd. manteca ? ¿ Habla su (123) hijo Español, señor ? Sí, señor, mi hijo habla Español. ¿ Entiende su hija de Vmd. (123, a) el Ingles, señora ? No, señor, ella no entiende el Ingles. ¿ Cuyas cucharas tiene la Francesa ? ¿ Cuyos botones tienen los criados ? ¿ Cuyo sombrero tiene Juan ? ¿ Qué libros tiene Pedro ? ¿ Quién tiene hambre ? ¿ Quiénes tienen sed ? ¿ Qué espécie de cucharas tienen las hermanas del Americano ? ¿ Qué dicen los Españoles ? ¿ Qué quieren Pedro y Juan ?

¿ Toma el pintor água? ¿ Quién entiende lo que Vms. dicen? ¿ Qué dijo el padre del médico? ¿ Quién tiene pan? ¿ De quién son los libros? ¿ Cual de los dos Franceses habla Español? ¿ A quién habla Vm.?

¿ Tiene Vm. dinero? ¿ Tienen los carpinteros muchos amigos? ¿ Tiene V. muchos libros? ¿ Tiene el libro hojas de oro? ¿ Tienen los jueces hambre? ¿ Es V. Español? ¿ Son las casas nuevas? ¿ No son sus amigos ricos? ¿ Sus hermanas 610 no son tan 104 ricas como él? ¿ Mis hermanos no son mas 106 ricos que 106 los carpinteros de navío? ¿ Escribió el criado de juez cartas á las criadas de la Francesa? ¿ Es la muger amable? ¿ Son los Ingleses mas sobérbios que (106) los Alemanes? ¿ Halló el pintor dos libros en la calle de la ciudad? ¿ Tienen los criados hambre? Sí, señor, los criadas tienen hambre. ¿ Tienen las Españolas sed? No, señor, las Españolas no tienen sed.

615. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

Who (127) is wise? Who is rich? Who (127) are good? Who are culpable? Who is strong? Who are robust? Of whom (127, a) speaks John? Of the physician (127, a). Whose (of whom; 127, a) are the houses? Peter's (127, a). Whose (127) books has Mary? Whose (127) buttons have the male-servants? Whose spoons have my sisters? Which (127) of the two sons of the physician found a treasure in the road? Which of the two men is culpable? What (127) say you?* (what says your worship?) What (127) said you? What does (611) John wish? (what wishes John?) What does (611) Peter say? What do (611) the judges say? What (127) hat have you? What (127) treasures did Peter find? (what treasures found Peter?) What wish you? What language speaks the general? For whom (127, a) wrote John the

* The learner can use *vm.*, *vmd.*, *V.*, *Vm.*, *Vd.*, or *Vmd.* in the singular for *you*. (See remark at the bottom of p. 245.)

letters? For the French-woman (127, a). To whom (plur.) gave John the French[2] books[1]? To the daughters of the judge. What a (127, b) woman! What a (127, b) beautiful city! Who (127) wishes bread? Who wishes sugar? Who speaks English? Who understands the Spanish? Who speaks the French? Who understands what (125, b) Mary says? Who understands what the Americans say? What sort of buttons do (611) you want? What sort of sugar has John? What sort of spoons do (611) my friends want? What do (611) the women say?

Do (611) you take water? Do you take sugar? What said the sister of John? What said the brother of the physician? Sir, do you want butter? (sir, wishes your-worship butter?) Does (611) your (123) son speak Spanish, sir? (speaks his son Spanish, sir?) Yes, madam, my son speaks Spanish. Does (611) your (123, a) daughter understand the English, madam? No, sir, my daughter does (611) not understand the English. Whose spoons has the female-servant? Whose hat has Peter? Whose buttons have the painters? What books has Mary? What bread have you? Who is thirsty? (who has thirst?) Who are hungry? What do (611) the Spaniards say? What wish Peter and John? What sort of spoons has the daughter of the carpenter? Does the German take water? Who understands what (125, b) you (plur.) say? What says the father of the painter? Who has butter? Whose (of whom) are the books? Which of the two Spaniards speaks English? To whom do (611) you speak?

Have you money? Have the Frenchmen many friends? Have you many books? Has the book leaves of gold? Are the women hungry? Are you [a] Spaniard? (is your worship Spanish?) Are you [a] Frenchman? Are you [a] German? Are the houses new? Are not his

friends rich? Are not his brothers as (104) rich as (104) he? My brothers are-they (*son*) not richer (106) than (106) the judge's sons? Wrote the son of the painter letters to the French-woman? Is the woman amiable? Are the Spaniards more proud than the English? Did the painter find (found the painter) two books in the road? Are the Germans hungry? Yes, sir, the Germans are hungry. Are the Spanish-women thirsty? No, madam, the Spanish-women are not thirsty. Is John [a] carpenter? Yes, sir, John is [a] carpenter.

SECTION NINTH.

616. The English demonstrative pronoun "*that*" is rendered in Spanish by the definite article when it refers to something having preceded it and is followed by the preposition "of;" as, "my house and *that* of my servant," *mi casa y* la *de mi criado;*" "his only desire was *that* of freeing his country from the Saracen yoke;" *su único deséo era* el *de libertar á su patria del yugo sarraceno;* "the repose of the poor-man is not a cheerless leisure like *that* of the rich-man," *el descanso del pobre no es un ócio insípido, como* el *del rico;* "Saguntum endured a siege equal *to-that* of Numantia," *Sagunto sufrió un sítio igual* al *de Numáncia;* "the soldiers of General Taylor are as brave as *those* of General Scott," *los soldados del general Taylor son tan valientes como* los *del general Scott.*

617. When in cases like those referred to in the preceding rule, the possessive case in English is employed instead of the demonstrative pronoun "*that,*" the definite article is used in Spanish; as, "my house and my *servant's,*" *mi casa y* la *de mi criado;* "I-have my book and my *father's,*" *tengo mi libro y* el *de mi padre;* "my wine is better than *John's,*" *mi vino es mejor que* el *de Juan;*" that is, "my house and *that* of my servant,"—"my book and *that* of my father,"—"my wine is better than *that* of John."

EXERCISE IX.

618. *Vocabulary.*

Pronunciacion, *pronunciation.*
Lámpara, *lamp*
Cuchillo, *knife.*
Brisa, *breeze.*
Diego, *James.*
Caballero, *gentleman.*
Espejo, *looking-glass.*
Tenedor, *fork.*
Pluma, *pen, feather.*
Lucía, *Lucy.*

Panadero, *baker.*
Sombrerero, *hatter.*
Librero, *bookseller.*
Posadero, *innkeeper.*
Lóndres, *London.*
Fácil, *easy.*
Pero, *but.*
Zapatero, *shoemaker.*
Zapato, *shoe.*
Cerveza, *beer.*
Vino, *wine.*
Nueva-York, *New York.*
Ancho, *wide.*
O', *or.*

619. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) Aquellas (128) mugeres tienen prudéncia.	Those women have prudence.
(*b.*) Aquellos á quienes (129) mi padre habló, no tienen dinero.	Those (or they) to whom my father spoke, have not money.
(*c.*) Pedro dió una lámpara á aquella (129, b) que halló su sombrero.	Peter gave a lamp to her who found his hat.
(*d.*) Juan habló á aquella á quien (129, a) Vm. vió; *or,* Juan habló á la que (129, a) Vm. vió.	John spoke to her whom you saw.
(*e.*) La pronunciacion del* Español es mucho mas fácil que *la* del Ingles.	The pronunciation of the Spanish is much more easy than *that* of the English.
(*f.*) ¿Tiene Vm. mi espejo ó el (617) de María?	Have you my looking-glass, or Mary's?

620. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

Este (128) hombre es rico. Aquella (128) muger es sobérbia. Esos (128) libros son nuevos. Estas (128) cucharas son de oro. Aquellos (128) pintores son pobres. Estas casas son nuestras. Esos sombreros son mios. Este vino ès bueno. Esa cerveza no es bueno. ¿De quiénes son aquellas casas? ¿De quién es esta casa? ¿Quién es ese caballero? ¿Habla este caballero la lénguaa² española¹? ¿Habla esa señora la lénguaa² inglesa¹? Esta lámpara es nueva. Ese espejo es viejo. Aquel hombre habla Frances. ¿Son estos mis zapatos? ¿Cuyo es este cuchillo? ¿Cuyos son esos tenedores? La Francesa y la Española tienen prudéncia; esa (128, c) es mas amable que (106) esta. Aquel (129) á quién (129) mi padre escribió las

* The masculine article is here used before *Español* and *Ingles*, because these agree with *idioma* (idiom, or language) understood. *Idioma* is masculine (see 424).

cartas, tiene mucho dinero. Aquellos á quienes (129) Pedro dió los libros, son pobres é ignorantes. Aquella (129) á quién (129) Juan dió un espejo, es muy hermosa.

Diego dió los libros á los (129, a) que Vm. vió. Lucía dió vino á aquella (129, b) que tiene sed. El librero dió dos libros á la (129, b) que le (113) escribió las cartas. Esta casa y la que vmd. vió, son mias. ¿No es este el hijo del panadero? ¿No es esta la hija del zapatero? ¿No son estas las hermanas del posadero? El sombrerero escribió estas cartas. Esos tenedores son suyos de ella (120, a). Estos cuchillos son suyos de él (129, a). Este espejo es mio. Este hombre es mi amigo. ¿Quién es esa muger? ¿Quién es este caballero? ¿Es este el libro de su (123, a) hermana de Vm.? No, señor, este es el libro de mi padre. Esta brisa es agradable. ¿No es esta brisa agradable? ¿Cuya es esta pluma?

Diego halló mi sombrero y el (129, c) del médico. Las cucharas de Lucía y las (616) de María, son de oro. La pronunciacion del Aleman no es tan fácil como la (616) del Español. Juan no tiene mi libro, pero él tiene el (617) de mi hermana. Las calles de Lóndres son mas anchas que (106) las (616) de Madrid. La ciudad de Nueva-York no es tan grande como la (616) de Lóndres. Mi cerveza no es tan bueno como la (617) de Diego. Mi casa es alta, pero la (617) de mi hermano es mas alta. ¿Tiene Vm. mis plumas ó las (617) de mi padre? ¿Tiene el sombrerero mi sombrero ó el (617) de mi amigo? El sombrerero no tiene su sombrero de Vm. (123, a), pero tiene (*he-has*) el de su amigo de Vm. ¿Tiene el panadero mi pan ó el del posadero? ¿Tienen los libreros tus espejos ó los de tu madre? Los libreros no tienen mis espejos, pero tienen (*they-have*) los de mi madre. La cerveza del posadero es tan bueno como la del zapetero. Los zapatos del librero son tan viejos como los del panadero. El vino de Diego es tan bueno como el de Pedro. Las calles

de Nueva-York son mas anchas que (106) las de Lóndres.

621. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

This (128) gentleman is good. This (128) woman is rich. That (128) man is rich. That (128) woman is proud. Those (128) spoons are new. Those (128) books are old. Those painters are poor. These spoons are of gold. These houses are lofty. Those hats are ours. This beer is good. That wine is not good. Of whom are those houses? Whose (of whom) is this house? Who is that gentlemen? Who (plur.) are those gentlemen? Does (611) that lady (*señora*) speak the Spanish[2] language[1]? Does this gentleman speak the French[2] language[1]? This lamp is not new. That looking-glass is not old. That man speaks English. Are these my shoes? Whose is this hat? Whose are these knives? Whose is this fork? The Spanish-woman and the English-woman have prudence; the former (128, c) is more amiable (106) than the latter (128, c). He (129) to whom (129) my mother wrote the letters, has much money. Those to whom (129) James gave the pens, are poor and ignorant. She (129) to whom (129) the hatter gave a looking-glass, is poor and proud.

Lucy gave the spoons to them (129, a) whom you saw. James gave the knives to him (129, a) whom John saw. John gave wine to him (129, b) who is thirsty. Mary gave bread to her (129, b) who is hungry. The bookseller gave three books to her (129, b) who wrote him (113) the letters. This house and that (*la*) which you saw, are mine. Is not this the brother of the hatter? Is not this the daughter of the baker? Are not these the sons of the shoemaker? Are not these the sisters of the innkeeper? Is not this the mother of the bookseller? The carpenter wrote these letters. Those knives are hers (120, a). These forks are his (120, a). This looking-

glass is ours. This man is my friend. Who is this lady? Who is that woman? Who is this gentleman? Is this the book of your (123, a) brother. No, sir, this is my father's book. Whose is this pen? Whose are those pens? This breeze is agreeable. Is not this breeze agreeable?

Peter found my hat and that (129, c) of the physician. The spoons of Lucy and those (616) of Mary are of gold. Mary's spoons and Lucy's (617) are of silver. James has not my book, but he has my sister's (617). The streets of New-York are wider than (106) those (616) of London. The pronunciation of the French is not so easy as that (616) of the Spanish. The city of Madrid is not so large as that of London. My beer is not as good as John's (617). My wine is not as good as James' (617). My house is lofty, but my father's (617) is more lofty. Have you (*Vm.*) my pens or my father's (617)? Has the hatter my hat, or my friend's (617)? The hatter has not your (123, a) hat, but he has your (123, a) friend's (617). Has the baker my bread, or the inn-keeper's (617)? Have the shoemakers my shoes, or those (617) of my brother? The shoemakers have not my shoes, but they have (*tienen*) my mother's (617). The inn-keeper's wine is not as good as the shoemaker's. Peter's shoes are as old as John's. The streets of New York are wider than those of Madrid.

SECTION TENTH.

622. In Spanish, two negatives serve to strengthen a negation. Thus, *este autor* no *vé* nada *de honroso en el carácter de los Españoles*, "this author *not* sees *nothing* of honorable in the character of the Spaniards," or, as it would be expressed in good English, "this author sees *nothing* honorable in the character of the Spaniards." *If in a negative sentence only one negative word is used, it must always come before the verb; if two negative words are used, the adverb of negation must come before the verb, and the other negative word after it;* thus we can say, *Diego* nada *tiene*, or, *Diego* no *tiene* nada, "James *nothing* has," or, "James *not* has *no-*

thing," the meaning in English being, "James has *nothing*." The former mode of expression in Spanish is generally considered more elegant.

EXERCISE X.

623. *Vocabulary.*

Obra, *word, deed.*	Idioma, (masc.) *idiom, language.*
Mérito, *merit.*	Mal, *evil, ill.*
Peso, *dollar.*	Cosa, *thing.*
Aldeano, *villager.*	El Señor, *the Lord.*
Falta, *fault, defect.*	Sexo, *sex.*
Rosa, *rose.*	Espina, *thorn.*
Diferente, *different.*	Premiado, *rewarded.*
Doce, *twelve.*	Diez, *ten.*
Segun, *according-to.*	Sin, *without.*
Serán, (*they*) *shall be*, or, *will be.*	Séa, (*he*) *may-be.*
Tendrá, (*he*) *shall-have*, or, *will-have.*	Dé, (*he*) *may-give.*
Dará, (*he*) *will-give.*	Diga, (*he*) *may-say.*
Aborrece, (*he*) *hates.*	Brilla, (*il*) *shines*, (*il*) *glitters.*
Hay, *there-is; there-are.*	Comer, *to-eat.*

624. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) El juez no dijo mal de nádie (131).	The judge said evil of nobody.
(*b.*) De nádie el juez dijo mal.	
(*c.*) Hay una casa en el camino.	There-is a house on the road.
(*d.*) Hay muchas casas en el camino.	There-are many houses on the road.
(*e.*) ¿ Qué hay en ese sombrero ?	What is-there in that hat ?
(*f.*) ¿ No hay médico en la cuidad ?	Is-there not à physician in the city ?
(*g.*) ¿ Hay en Madrid doce pintores ?	Are-there in Madrid twelve painters ?

☞ For other model sentences, the learner is referred to the examples under the indefinite pronouns, on pages 52, 53, and 54.

625. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

Las tres mugeres cada uno (131) de ellas, tiene dos espejos. Estos hombres serán premiados, cada cual (131) segun sus obras. Pedro tiene doce libros, cada uno en un idioma[2] diferente[1]. Todas (133) las mugeres serán premiadas, cada cual segun sus méritos. Ella y todas (133) sus hijas son robustísimas (108, a). María dió libros á cada

uno de ellos. Uno y otro (131) saben lo que es bueno. ¿Hay algo (131) de (134, b) nuevo? No (622) hay nada (622) de (134, b) nuevo. Juan no quiere (622) nada. Los libreros no quieren nada. Todo lo que (131) brilla, no es oro. Todo lo que (131) Diego tiene, es mio. Todo (133) libro tiene hojas (577). Nádie (131; 622) habla mal de él. A nádie (622) habla el librero (575). El posadero no (622) habla á nádie (622). A ninguno (133; 622) dió María los cuchillos y tenedores. El zapatero no dió los zapatos á ninguno (622). Nada* es bueno para él. Pedro no tiene nada (622). El juez no me dijo nada. Ninguna (134) de estas señoras es rica. No[3] sabe[2] uno[1] (133) que decir (606). No sabe uno que comprar (596).

¿Tiene vmd. otro (133) hermano? ¿Vió alguien (131) mi sombrero? ¿Habla alguien (131) Español? El juez tiene dos criados; y dió al uno (131) doce pesos, y al otro (131) diez, á cada uno segun su mérito. El librero tiene dos hijas el nombre de la una es María, y el nombre de la otra es Lucía. Diego halló algo (131) en el camino. Las mugeres tienen algo (131) que comer. Todo lo que (131) brilla, no es plata. Pedro dió algo á los pobres. La Francesa tiene algo que comer. Una de las señoras vino (596) conmigo (115, c). Mi hermano tiene todo lo que mi padre le dió. El que es rico, quienquiera que (131) él séa, tendrá cuidados. A cualquiera que (131) Vmd. dé pan, Diego dará dinero. A cualquiera que (131) María dé libros, Lucía dará zapatos. Cualquier (132) cosa que Juan diga, sus casas no son hermosas. Todos los que son buenos, aman la verdad. Dios aborrece todos los caminos de los impíos. El Señor aborrece todo (133) camino malo. ¿Dió Juan libros á algunos (134) de estos Alemanes? Sí, señor, Juan dió libros á unos (133). ¿Tiene alguno (133) mi sombrero? Ninguno tiene tu sombrero. Tiene al-

---

* *Nada* requires the adjective which agrees with it to be in the masculine.

guien (131) mi espojo? Nádie tiene tu espojo. Todo eso (128, a) es muy cierto.

¿ Tienen algunas (134) de estas mugeres cucharas de plata? Cada uno (131) de nosotros tiene algun (101) mérito. Pedro dió dinero á uno de las hermanas de María. A ninguno (133) escribió (575) María cartas. La criada no halló tesoros algunos (134, a) en la ciudad. Unos (133) hombres tienen dinero, otros (133) no lo (117) tienen. Muchos aldeanos de ambos (133) sexos vinieron (596) á la ciudad. El pintor dió un sombrero al Aleman, y un libro al Español; ambos son pobres. María no habla de las faltas agenas (134, c).

626. Instead of *ninguno*, the adverb *no* is often used in the sense of "*not a*," "*not any*," or "*no*," especially with verbs denoting possession; as, *ella* no *tiene marido*,* "she has *not a* husband," or "she has *no* husband;" *estas señoras* no *tienen libros*," these ladies have *no* books," or, "*not any* books."

Mi madre no (626) tiene cuchara. Mi padre no (626) tiene hermano. Ella no tiene tenedor. Mis hermanas no tienen cuchillos. María no tiene padre. Mis hijos no tienen sombreros. Mi hermano no tiene casa. El librero no tiene espejo. Diego no tiene dinero. Juan no tiene oro. Ella no tiene hijas. Pedro no es Americano. María no es Francesa. ¿ No (626) tiene Juan libros? Los pintores no tienen botones. Mi sobrino (602) no tiene plumas. Este caballero no tiene manteca. El pandero tiene pan, manteca, azúcar, vino y cerveza. ¿ Hay (624, g) cartas para mí? No, señor, no hay (624, d) cartas para vmd. ¿ Qué hay en el camino? Hay casas y ciudades. ¿ Qué hay en esa cuchara? Hay água en esta cuchara. ¿ Hay rosas sin espinas? No, señora, no hay rosas sin espinas. ¿ Hay hombres sin faltas? No, señor, no hay hombres sin faltas. ¿ Hay una rosa sin espinas? No hay rosa sin espinas. No hay nada. No hay casas en el camino. ¿ No

* Literally, "she has not husband." (See 242.)

hay zapatero en esta ciudad? Sí, señor, hay uno. ¿Hay en esa casa muchos cuartos? Hay diez cuartos (606).

627. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

The ten male-servants, every one (131) of them has three roses. The three women, every one of them has twelve looking-glasses. These carpenters shall be rewarded (plur., *premiados*), each (131) according-to his works. Lucy has ten books, each one in a different[2] language[1]. All (133) the female-servants shall-be rewarded (plur., fem.), each according-to her merits. She and all (133) her daughters are very handsome (108, a). Mary gave knives to each one of them. Both (131) are amiable. Is-there (624, f) anything (131) new (134, b)? There-is nothing (622; 131) new (134, b). Peter wants nothing (622). The gentlemen want nothing. Every thing which* (131) glitters is not gold. Every thing which (131) my brother has is mine. Every (133) book has leaves (577). Nobody (131; 622) speaks evil of him. To nobody speaks the bookseller (575). The innkeeper speaks to nobody (622). To no-one (133; 622) gave John the pens and spoons. The bookseller gave the books to no-one (622). Peter has nothing. The French-woman said nothing to-me (113). Nothing is good (masc.) for her. No-one (134) of these ladies is rich. One[3] (133) knows[2] not[1] what to-say (606). One[3] knows[2] not[1] what to-buy (596).

No-one (134) of those painters shall-be rewarded. Have you (*vmd.*) another (133) sister? Did (611) any-one[2] (131) see[1] my hat? Does (611) any-one[2] (131) speak[1] Spanish? That gentleman has two male-servants; and [he] gave to-the one (131) ten dollars and to-the other (131) twelve; to each one according-to his merit. The shoemaker has two daughters; the name of the one is Lucy, and the name of the other is Mary. The baker found something

* "*Every thing that,*" or, "*every thing which,*" is rendered "*todo lo que.*"

(131) in the road. The booksellers have something (131) which to-eat. Every thing that (131) shines is not silver. Peter said something to the poor-men. She has something (*algo que*) to eat. One of the ladies came with-me (115, c). My sister has every thing that (131) my father gave her. He who is rich, whoever that (131) he may-be, will have cares. To whomsoever that (131) you (*vmd.*) may-give bread, my father will-give money. To whomsoever that Mary may-give knives, Lucy will-give forks. Whatever (132) thing that John may-say, his houses are not handsome. All those who are good, love the truth. The Lord hates all the ways (*caminos*) of the impious. God hates every wicked[2] way[1]. All this (128, a) is very true (571). Nobody (131) has thy looking-glass. No-one (133) has thy hat. Has anybody (131) my books? Has any-one (133) my pens? Gave Peter shoes to any (134) of these poor-women?* Yes, sir, Peter gave shoes to some (133). Each (132) painter found a treasure.

Have any (134) of those women silver (97, a) forks? Have any of these ladies gold spoons? Each one of us (115) has some (101) merit. The shoemaker gave money to one of (130) the sisters of Lucy. Mary wrote letters to no-one (622). The physician found not any (134, a) treasures in the city. Some (*unos;* 133) men have money, others (133) have it not. Many villagers of both (133) sexes came to London. The judge gave a hat to the Frenchman and a book to the Englishman; both are poor. She speaks not of another's (134, c) faults.

She has no (626) daughters. Peter is no (626) Spaniard. My father has no (626) brother. John has no (626) hat. James has no money. Mary has no father. You (*vmd.*) have no looking-glass. John has not-any (626) books. These ladies have not-any (626) roses. My

---

* "*These poor women*" is to be rendered "*estas pobres.*" "These poor men" would be "*estos pobres.*"

nephew has not-any (626) pens. My mother has not a (626) spoon. My sister has not-a (626) fork. The (87) housekeeper (571) has no (626) butter. Are-there* (624, g) letters for me (115)? No, sir, there-are (624, d) no (626) letters for you (*vmd.*). What is-there (624, e) on the road? There-are houses and cities. What is-there in that spoon? There is sugar in it (*ella*). Are-there roses without thorns? There-are no (626) roses without thorns. Are-there women without faults? No, sir, there are no (626) women without faults. There-is nothing (622). There-are no (626) houses on the road. Is-there no (626) physician in that city? Yes, sir, there-is one. There-are no books without leaves.

☞ We would recommend to the learner to review carefully all the preceding sections, especially the last six; and then, after having attentively studied the following rules, to translate the sentences of the remaining exercise of this section.

628. In Spanish, the definite article is to be used before all common nouns taken in a general sense, or which denote a whole class or species of things; as, la *paciéncia y* la *actividad remueven montañas*, "patience and diligence remove mountains;" *le prohiben el uso* del *vino*, "they-forbid him the use of wine; *jamas* la *sobérbia ni* la *ira podrán acordarse con* la *amabilidad y* la *mansedumbre*, "never pride nor anger can agree with amiability and meekness; *todas* las *cosas tienen su tiempo*, "all things have their season." Here *patience, diligence, wine, pride, anger, amiability, meekness*, and *things*, are taken in an absolute or general sense, and each requires the definite article in Spanish, though not in English, to precede it.† (See 230.)

629. The definite article is not to be used in Spanish before nouns not taken in a general or determinate sense, or which do not refer to the *whole* class or species of things, or the *whole* of any object; as, *ella tiene azúcar*, "she has sugar;" *Juan bebe vino al almuerzo*, "John drinks wine at breakfast." Here *sugar* and *wine* are to be taken in a partitive sense, meaning "*some* sugar," "*some* wine."

---

* "*There is*" and "*there are*" are each rendered by "*hay.*" "*Is-there?*" and "*are-there?*" are each rendered "*¿hay?*"

† This is an important rule of Spanish syntax, and it should be well studied by the learner.

EXERCISE XI.

630. *Vocabulary.*

Caridad, *charity.*
Beneficéncia, *beneficence.*
Ignoránciа, *ignorance.*
Error, *error.*
Vida, *life.*
Sueno, *dream, sleep.*
Tiempo, *time.*
Virtud, *virtue.*
Vício, *vice.*
Paz, *peace.*
Sociedad, *society.*
Muerte (fem.), *death.*
Paciente, *patient.*
Precioso, *precious.*
Mejor, *better.*
Mortal, *mortal.*
Odioso, *odious.*
Terrible, *terrible.*
Juan hace, *John makes.*
Pedro prefiere, *Peter prefers.*
Año, *year.*
Harina, *flour.*
Yelo, *ice.*
Religion, *religion.*
Gratitud, *gratitude.*
Hermosura, *beauty.*
Juício, *judgment.*
Histórія, *history.*
Maestra, *mistress, instructress.*
Justícia, *justice.*
Riqueza, *wealth, riches.*
Leche (fem.), *milk.*
U'til, *useful.*
Caro, *dear.*
Frío, *cold.*
Blanco, *white.*
Dulce, *sweet.*
Necesário, *necessary.*
Ella teme, *she fears.*
El depende, *he depends.*

631. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) El (628) hombre es polvo (629).	Man is dust.
(*b.*) La (628) hermosura es despojo (629) del (628) tiempo.	Beauty is the spoil of time.
(*c.*) El (628) despotismo los embrutece, la (628) severa disciplina[2] militar[1] los degrada, la (628) supersticion los condena al (628) error y á la (628) ignoránciа.	Despotism stupefies them, severe military discipline degrades them, superstition condemns them to error and ignorance.
(*d.*) El (87) alma de la (628) muger es naturalmente mas sensible que la del (628) hombre.	The soul of woman is naturally more sensitive than that of man.
(*e.*) El hambre (87) es la (265, a) mejor salsa.	Hunger is the best sauce.

632. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

El (628) tiempo* es mas precioso que el (628) oro. La

---

* The learner must not in these cases translate the article in English; thus, he must not render *el tiempo*, by "*the* time," but by "time." So, *el yelo es frío*, by "ice is cold," and not by "*the* ice is cold." *Los vinos son buenos este año*, "wines are good this year;" *la guerra hace mucho daño al comércio*, "war does much injury to trade."

(628) caridad es paciente. La (628) beneficéncia nos (113) hace amables. La (628) vida no es un sueno. El tiempo es precioso. La ignorância es madre del (628) error. El (87) água es tan bueno como el vino. La sabiduría (606) es mas preciosa que todas las (628) riquezas. La prudéncia es mas preciosa que la plata. Mejor es la sabiduría que (106, a) la hermosura. El (628) hombre teme la (628) muerte. El hombre no teme la vida. La virtud es amable. El vício es odioso. Los (628) hombres son mortales. El oro es precioso. La prudéncia es útil. Ella tiene prudéncia (629). Juan tiene oro (629). El (628) dinero es útil. Pedro tiene dinero (629). Los (628) libros son útiles. María no halló libros (629). Este año la (628) harina es muy cara. Los vinos serán buenos este año. El vino es muy caro este año. La manteca es muy cara. La cerveza es buena. El yelo es frío. La muerte es terrible. La leche es blanca. El azúcar es dulce. La gratitud es el (87) alma de la religion. Juan prefiere el vício á la virtud. María no prefiere el error á la verdad. Pedro prefiere las (628) riquezas á la sabiduria. El médico prefiere la cerveza al vino. La prudéncia y el juício son necesarios (260, d) á todo (591) hombre. La história es maestra de la vida. La paz de la (628) sociedad depende de (*on*) la justícia. La plata es preciosa. Los tenedores son útiles. Este año la harina no es cara. La religion es amable. El oro es mas precioso que la plata. Mejor es la prudéncia que el dinero.

633. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

Time (628) is precious. Prudence (628) is useful. Vice (628) is odious. Money (628) is useful. Ice (628) is cold. Sugar (628) is sweet. Religion (628) is lovely (*amable*). Virtue (628) is lovely. Books (628) are useful. Time (628) is more precious than gold (628). Ignorance (628) is [the] mother of (628) error. Prudence is more precious than silver (628). Water (87) is as good as wine

(628). Charity is patient. Life is not a dream. Wisdom is more precious than all (628) riches. Beneficence makes us (113) amiable. Wisdom[3] is[2] better[1] than beauty. Men (628) are mortal. Man (628) fears death (628). Man fears not life. Gold is precious. She has prudence (629). Peter has money (629). Lucy found no (626) books (629). John has gold (629). Butter (628) is very dear. Milk is white. Beer is good. This year flour (628) is very dear. Wine is very dear this year. Death (628) is terrible. Gratitude is the (87) soul of religion (628). Prudence and judgment are necessary to every (591) man. Wines will be good this year. Peter prefers vice to virtue. The shoemaker prefers beer to wine. Forks are useful. This year flour is not dear. Gold is more precious than silver. History (628) is [the] instructress of life (628). John prefers riches (628) to wisdom. This gentleman prefers truth to error. The peace of society (628) depends on (*de*) justice (628). Prudence is better than money.

SECTION ELEVENTH.

Remark.—To commit to memory the conjugations of the Spanish verbs may seem a difficult task, yet if the learner will faithfully follow the directions as contained in the remaining sections of this Part (IV.), we think he will be enabled to learn the variations of person and number in all the moods and tenses of the different verbs, without any very laborious effort on his part. The irregular auxiliary verb, HABER, should be copied and re-copied, each tense at a time, till it is thoroughly learned, that is, till the pupil can readily write all the persons of each tense without referring to the conjugated form, pronouncing and accenting all properly as he copies. After having committed this verb to memory, he will be prepared to conjugate the compound tenses of any other verb.

☞ This section contains exercises on the verb SER, to be. (See 158.)

EXERCISE XII.

634. *Vocabulary.*

Abogado, *lawyer, barrister.*
Jóven, *young.*
Soldado, *soldier.*
Criado, *created.*

Pequeño, *little, small.*
Fiel, *faithful.*
Feliz, *fortunate, happy.*
Prudente, *prudent.*
Barato, *cheap.*
Puntual, *punctual.*
Negligente, *negligent.*
Frugal, *frugal.*
Créo, *I-believe.*
Pretende, (*he*) *pretends.*
¡Ojalá! *O that! would to God that!*
Nunca, *never.*
Castigado, *punished.*
Escrito, *written.*
Engañado, *deceived.*
Imprudente, *imprudent.*
Económico, *economical.*
Probable, *probable.*
Diligente, *diligent.*
Quiero, *I-wish.*
Puede, (*he*) *can,* (*he*) *is-able.*
Preciso es, } *it-is necessary.*
Es preciso, }
Ahora, *now.*

635. *Model sentences*

(*a.*) Somos (158) Alemanas.	We-are German-women.
(*b.*) Madrid era pequeña, pero ahora es grande.	Madrid was small, but now is large.
(*c.*) Pedro será abogado.	Peter will-be a lawyer.
(*d.*) Es posible que V. no séa premiado.	It-is possible that you may not be rewarded.
(*e.*) Si yo fuese rico, no sería sobérbio.	If I were rich, I-should not be proud.
(*f.*) No créo que tú séas mas diligente que yo.	I do not believe that thou mayest-be more diligent than I.
(*g.*) ¡Ojalá hubiese yo sido fiel á él.	O-that I had been faithful to him!
(*h.*) Siendo, como V. es, tan negligente, ¿quién le dará á V. libros?	Being as you are so negligent, who will give you books?

636. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

Soy (158) hijo del juez. Tú eres jóven. ¿Soy yo rico? Vms. son jóvenes. La cuchara no es de oro. Pedro es robusto. El azúcar (628) es dulce. Este libro es de (97) María. Estos tendores son de plata. Estas señoras son Francesas. V. es (243) Español. Vms. son Alemanes. Somos Españoles. Sois Inglesas. Son Ingleses. Somos Inglesas. Vms. son Ingleses. Soy (243) Aleman. Es Española.* Eres Inglesa. Somos carpinteros. Sois pintores. Eres zapatero. Es (243) médico. Soy librero. Somos jueces.

---

* *Es Española,* "she-is a Spanish-woman." *Es Español,* "he-is a Spanish-man," or "Spaniard."

Pedro era (158) posadero. Mis hermanos eran sombereros, pero ahora son carpinteros. Tu padre era (243) panadero, y ahora es librero. Eras médico. Yo era abogado. Eran soldados. E'ramos zapateros. Erais abogados. Vm. era juez. Vms. eran libreros. Eran impresores, pero ahora son carpinteros. Ella no era una hermosura. ¿No era yo mas robusto que él? ¿Eran abogados? ¿Mis hermanas no eran tan culpables como ella? Erais impresores. Yo era general. Estas ciudades eran pequeñas, pero ahora son grandes.

El (628) hombre fué (158) criado. Fuí castigado. Esta carta fué escrita para mi madre. Fuimos castigados. Las cartas fueron escritas para las Francesas. Fuiste castigado. Vmd. fué premiado. Vms. fueron premiados. Fuísteis castigados. ¿Fuí premiado? La Española fué premiada. Fuí jóven.

Mi madre ha sido (158) desgraciada. He sido desgraciado. Has sido premiado. Han sido fieles. Hemos sido castigados. He sido castigado. Habeis sido fieles. Ella ha sido hermosa. El abogado ha sido desgraciado. Vms. han sido premiados. He sido feliz. Vm. ha sido fiel. Mi hermana había sido (158) imprudente. Habíamos sido imprudentes. Yo había sido castigado. V. había sido premiado. Vms. habian sido imprudentes. Habíais sido castigados.

Serán (158) premiados. Juan será soldado. Mis hermanos serán abogados. María será una hermosura. Seré médico. Seréis soldados. Vms. serán premiados. Serás castigado. Seré rico. Pedro será mas rico que Juan, pero Juan será ménos ignorante que Pedro. El vino (628) será barato este año. La harina (628) será barata. El azúcar será caro. Nunca serás juez. No serán premiados segun (623) sus obras. ¿Los criados serán castigados? Nunca seréis abogados. Los buenos serán premiados.

Sé (158) fiel. Sé bueno. Sed fieles. Sed puntuales.

Sé puntual. Seámos buenos y sábios. Séa (309, f) el criado premiado. Séan (309, f) las criadas castigadas. Sea (309, f) Juan tan fiel como Pedro. Séan (309, f) Vms. felices. Séa V. muy feliz. Séan los impíos castigados. Que (309, e) las cartas séan escritas. Séa el impresor premiado.

Quiero que* (552, h) Juan séa (158) rico. Quiero que mis amigos sean buenos. Quiero que V. sea económico. Quiero que seas feliz. Quiero que seáis económicos. Es posible que no seas pobre. Muy probable es† que nunca seáis ricos. Es† posible que Juan no sea castigado. Muy probable es que estas señoras nunca sean premiadas.

Preciso era‡ que ella fuese (158) castigada. Preciso era que fuesen puntuales. Era‡ preciso que no fuésemos negligentes. Era preciso que los pintores fuesen económicos. ¿No sería (158) este librero el mejor de los dos? Si (635, e) yo fuese vmd., yo sería puntual. Si yo fuera rico, yo sería económico. Si fueran ricos, serían sobérbios.

No créo (635, f) que vuestra madre haya jamás (*ever*) sido (158) linda (585). No créo que Vms. hayan jamás (*ever*) sido prudentes. ¡Ojalá hubiese yo sido (158) frugal! ¡Ojalá hubiesen sido prudentes! ¡Ojalá hubiéseis sido frugales! Serás (158) premiado, si fueres (158) diligente. Quiero ser (158) prudentes. Quiero ser diligente. El que es mal (101) hijo no puede ser buen (101) padre. El que es impío, no puede ser amable. Pretende no haber sido (158) engañado. Pretende no haber sido castigado. Siendo (158) como (635, h) eres, tan (635, h) imprudente ¿quién te dará (623) dinero? Habiendo sido (158) engañado por sus amigos, les escribió muchas cartas.

---

* *Que*, before the subjunctive mood, is generally a conjunction, meaning "*that*;" as, *quiero* que *María* sea buena, "I wish *that* Mary may-be good."

† "*Es*" is here used as an impersonal verb, and means "*it is*."

‡ *Era*, used impersonally, meaning "*it was*."

637. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

I (139, a) am (158) a (243) soldier. Thou (139, a) art (158) a (243) lawyer. They are young. He (139, a) is diligent. I am frugal. Ye are negligent. You (*Vmd.*) are (161) punctual. They are fortunate. I am small. She is small* and pretty. You (*Vms.*) are (161) prudent. I am a (243) son of the judge. Am I imprudent? The spoon is of gold. These forks are of silver. The ladies are French-women. You (*Vmd.*) are a (243) Spaniard. Ye are English-women. We are Germans I am an (243) Englishman. She is a Spanish woman. Thou art a physician. He is a bookseller. Ye are painters. They are shoemakers.

[In the following paragraph, the imperfect tense in English is to be rendered in Spanish by the imperfect of the indicative.]

Peter was (158) an (243) innkeeper. My brothers were hatters, but now are carpenters. Thy father was a baker, and now is a bookseller. Thou wast a physician. I was a lawyer. They were soldiers. We were shoemakers. Ye were lawyers. You (*Vmd.*) were (161) a judge. You (*Vms.*) were (161) booksellers. They were printers, but now are carpenters. She was not a (*una*) beauty. Was I not more robust than he? Were they lawyers? Were [4] not[3] my[1] sisters[2] as culpable as she? Ye were printers. I was general. These cities were small, but now they are large (*grandes*).

[In the following paragraph, the Spanish perfect-definite of the indicative is to be used.]

Man (628) was (158) created. I was punished. This letter was written† for my mother. We were punished.† The letters were written† for the French-women. Thou

---

* There is no necessity for employing the pronoun "*ella*" here, as the gender of the adjective terminations indicates the gender of the nominative of the verb, thus, "*es pequeña y linda.*"

† The participle after neuter verbs must agree in gender and number with the word to which it belongs. (See 300, a.)

wast punished. You (*Vmd.*) was rewarded. You (*Vms.*) were rewarded. Ye were punished. I was rewarded. I was young. The Spanish-woman was rewarded.

My mother has been (158) unfortunate. I have been unfortunate. Thou hast been rewarded. They have been faithful. We have been punished. I have been punished. Ye have been faithful. She has been beautiful. The lawyer has been unfortunate. You (*Vms.*) have been rewarded. I have been fortunate. You (*Vm.*) have been faithful. My brother had been (158) imprudent. We had been imprudent. I had been punished. You (*V.*) had been rewarded. You (*Vms.*) had been imprudent. Ye had been punished.

They shall-be (158) rewarded. John will be a (243) soldier. My brothers will be lawyers. You (*Vms.*) will be rewarded. Thou wilt be punished. I will be rich. Peter will be richer than John, but John will be less ignorant than Peter. Wine (628) will be cheap this year. Flour (628) will be cheap. Sugar (628) will be dear. Never wilt-thou-be a (243) judge. They will not be rewarded according-to (623) their works. Will[3] the[1] male-servants[2] be[3] rewarded? Never will-ye-be lawyers. The good shall-be rewarded.

Be-thou (158) faithful. Be-thou good. Be-ye faithful. Be-ye punctual. Be-thou punctual. Let-us-be good and wise. May (309, f) the male-servant be rewarded. Let (309, f) the female-servants be rewarded. May John be as faithful as Peter. May (309, f) you (*Vms.*) be happy. May you (*Vm.*) be very fortunate. Let the impious be punished. Let (309, e) the letters be written. Let the printer be rewarded.

I-wish that (*que*; 552, h) John may-be (158) rewarded. I-wish that my friends may be good. I-wish that you (*V.*) may be economical. I-wish that thou mayest-be happy. I-wish that ye may be economical. It-is (*es*) possible that

thou mayest-not be poor. Very probable it-is that ye may never (622) be rich. It-is possible that John may not be punished. Very probable it-is that these ladies never may be rewarded.

It-was (*era*) necessary that she should-be (314) punished. It-was necessary that they should-be (314) punctual. It-was necessary that we should not be (314) negligent. It-was necessary that the painters should-be (314) economical. Would not this bookseller be (315) the better of the two? If (*si*) I were (should-be; 314) you (*Vmd.*) I would-be (315) punctual. If I should-be (314) rich, I would be (315) economical. If they should-be (316) rich, they would be (315) proud.

I do (611) not believe that the physician's mother may have ever (*jamás*) been (158) pretty (585). I do not believe that you (*Vms.*) may-have ever (*jamás*) been prudent. O-that I had (should-have) been (318; 314) prudent! O-that I had (314) been (318) frugal! O-that ye had been frugal! Thou shalt-be rewarded if thou shouldst-be (319) diligent. I-wish to-be (158) prudent. I-wish to-be diligent. He who is a (243) bad (101) son, can not be (*ser*) a (243) good (101) father. He who is impious can not be amiable. He-pretends not to-have been deceived. He-pretends not to have been punished. Being (158) as thou art so (*tan*) imprudent, who will-give (628) thee money? Having been (158) deceived by his friends, he wrote them many letters.

☞ The learner should now write out, for practice, the different persons of all the tenses of the various moods of the verb *ser* (omitting the nominative personal pronouns), as directed in the *Remark* at the beginning of this section. The distinctions between the tenses will be found in a proper place.

SECTION TWELFTH.

638. The different persons of the verb ESTAR are generally rendered in English the same as those of the verb *ser;* but in Spanish these

verbs are not employed indiscriminately, the one for the other. *Ser* is used to affirm what a person or thing is *naturally* (or *by nature*), as well as *habitual* qualities, or *permanent* or *characteristic* properties of an object. *Estar* is used to affirm *how* any thing exists at *any period of time*, or *where* any thing exists. Thus the sentences, *la doncella* es *amable*, and *la doncella* está *amable*, would each be rendered in English by "the maid *is* amiable;" but in Spanish the former means "the maid *is* amiable" naturally or permanently, *i. e.*, of an amiable disposition; the latter means "the maid *is* amiable" for the time being, though her disposition may be far from being amiable. "Mary *is* beautiful," is rendered *María* es *hermosa*, since it is intended to affirm a natural quality of Mary, or *what* she is; and "Mary *is* sad," is rendered *María* está *triste*," since it is intended to affirm a merely accidental or transient quality, or *how* she is: "Mary *is* in the country," is rendered *María* está *en el* campo, since *estar* (and not *ser*) is used to affirm *where* a thing is. *Juan* es *bueno*, means "John *is* good," affirming what John is; *Juan* está *bueno*, means "John *is* well," *i. e.*, in good health, affirming *how* John is. (For a more complete illustration of this subject, see 333—336.)

EXERCISE XIII.

639. *Vocabulary.*

Fonda, *hotel.*
Inglaterra, *England.*
Campo, *country, field.*
La señora T—, *Mrs. T—.*
Triste, *sad, sorrowful.*
Enfadado, *angry.*
Ocupado, *busy, occupied.*
Caliente, *warm.*
Bueno, *well.*
Aquí, *here.*
¿ Cómo ? *how?*
Siempre, *always.*
¿ Cuanto ? *how much?*
Mesa, *table.*
Los Estados Unidos, *the United States.*
El señor T—, *Mr. T—.*
La señorita T—, *Miss T—.*
Contento, *contented, pleased.*
Enfermo, *sick, ill.*
Cansado, *weary, tired.*
Presente, *present.*
Sobre, *upon.*
Allí, *there.*
¿ Dónde ? *where?*
Luego, *soon, immediately.*
En casa, *at home.*
Con, *with.*

640. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) ¿ Cómo está vmd.? Estoy muy bueno.	How are you? I-am very well.
(*b.*) Los pintores están en el campo.	The painters are in the country.
(*c.*) La señorita T— siempre está ocupada.	Miss T— is always busy.
(*d.*) ¿ Dónde está mi libro? Aquí está.	Where is my book? Here it-is.

641. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

El Frances está (159) en la ciudad. Estoy en la calle. Estamos tristes. Están contentos. Estáis enfadados. Estás enfermo. Está ocupado. Estoy cansado. El (87) água está caliente. Estás en tu casa. Los abogados están en la fonda. Mi padre está en la ciudad. ¿ Estáis cansados? No estamos cansados. El impresor siempre está ocupado. Siempre estás ocupado. ¿ Dónde está la fonda? Aquí está. ¿ Dónde está el libro de Juan? Aquí está. ¿ Dónde están mis cucharas, cuchillos y tenedores? Aquí están. ¿ Dónde está mi sombrero? Está sobre la mesa. ¿ Cómo está V.? Estoy bueno (335, e). ¿ Cómo está la señora B—? Está buena. ¿ Cómo está la señorita B—? No está muy buena. ¿ Está el señor B— en casa? Está en casa. ¿ Están Vms. buenos? Estamos buenos. ¿ Está Vmd. cansado? No estoy cansado. ¿ Está Pedro en los Estados Unidos? No, señor, está en Inglaterra. Diego está en el campo. El libro está sobre la mesa.

Estaba (159) enfermo. Yo estaba contento. Estábamos presentes. Estaban cansados. La señora B— estaba ocupada. Vms. estaban presentes. Estabas enfermo. Estábais presentes. ¿ No estaba V. en el campo? ¿ No estaba mi padre en la calle? ¿ Estábamos en la ciudad? Estabas con tu amigo.

Estuve (159) triste dos años. ¿ Estuvísteis allí muchos años? ¿ Estuviste allí? ¿ Estuvo allí? ¿ Estuvieron tristes? ¿Estuvo vmd. mucho* tiempo con el juez? Nunca he estado (159) en Inglaterra. Nunca han estado en los Estados Unidos. ¿ Cuanto tiempo† ha estado Vmd. en los Estados Unidos? ¿ Cuanto tiempo has estado en Inglaterra? Nunca hemos estado en Inglaterra. He estado muy enfermo. Habíamos estado (159) muy enfermos.

---

* *Mucho tiempo*, "much time," equivalent to "long time," or, "a great while," in English.

† *Cuanto tiempo*, "how much time," meaning "how long."

Juan estará (159) en su casa. Estaré ocupado. Estarán con Vmd. luego. Estarás presente. Estaremos en nuestras casas. Estaréis presentes. Estaré con Vms. luego. Pedro estará con nosotros luego. Estaré en Lóndres luego.

Estad (159) contentos. Estemos (309, f) contentos. Estén (309, f) presentes. Está contento. Esté (309, f) el água caliente. Es posible que Pedro esté (311) en su casa. Es posible que estéis presentes. Probable es que los abogados estén cansados. Sí Juan estuviese (314) presente, María estuviera (316) contento. No creo que la señora B— haya estado (159) jamás (*ever*) contento. ¡ Ojalá no hubiese yo estado enfermo. ¡ Ojalá V. hubiese estado presente! Estado enfermo (299) el juez dió su dinero á sus hijos.

642. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

The Spaniard is (159 ; 638) in the city. I-am (638) in the street. We-are sad. They-are contented. Ye are angry. Thou art ill He-is busy. I am tired. The (87) water is hot. Thou art in thy house. The lawyers are in the hotel. My father is in the city. Are-ye tired? We-are not tired. The printer always is occupied. Thou-art[2] always[1] busy. Where is the hotel? Here it-is. Where is John's book? Here it-is. Where are my spoons, knives, and forks? Here they-are. Where is my hat? It-is upon the table. How are you? (how is your-worship?) I-am well (335, e). How is Mrs. (233) B—? She-is well. How is Miss B—? She-is not very well. Is Mr. B— at home? He-is at home. Are you (*Vms.*) well? We-are well. Are you (*Vmd.*) tired? I-am not tired. Is Peter in the United States? No, sir, he is in England. James is in the country. The book is upon the table. The buttons are in the hat. The printer is in the hotel. The painter is busy. My brothers are in the country. How are my friends? They are not very well.

[The verb in the following paragraph is to be rendered by the imperfect tense in Spanish.]

He was (159) ill. I was contented. We-were present. They-were tired. Mrs. B— was busy. You (*Vms.*) were present. Thou-wast ill. Ye-were present. Were you (*V.*) not in the country? Was not my father in the city? Were we-not in the street? Thou-wast with thy friend.

I-was (perf. def.) sad two years. Were-ye (303) there many years? Wast-thou there? Was-he there? Were-they sad? Were you (*Vmd.*) [a] long (*mucho*) time with the judge? Never have-I been in England. Never have-they been in the United States. How long (how much time) have you (*Vmd.*) been in the United States? How long hast-thou been in England? We-have never (622) been in England. I-have been ill. We-had been (159) very sick.

John will-be (159) in his house. I-shall-be busy. They-will-be with you (*Vmd.*) soon. Thou-wilt-be present. We-shall-be in our houses. Ye-will-be present. I-shall-be with you (*Vms.*) soon. Peter will-be with us immediately. I-shall-be in London soon.

Be-ye (159) contented. Let-us-be (309, f) contented. May-they-be (309, f) present. May-he-be contented. Let the water be warm. It-is possible that Peter may-be (159) in his house. It-is possible that ye-may-be present. It-is probable that the lawyers may-be tired. If John should-be (314) present, Mary would-be pleased. I do not believe that Mrs. B— may-have ever (*jamás*) been contented. O-that I had (314) not been sick! O-that you (*V.*) might-have (314) been present! The[3] judge[4] being[1] (299) ill[2], gave his money to his sons.

☞ The learner can proceed to write and re-write all the parts of this verb (*estar*), continuing the practice till he has committed it to memory and afterward translate the following exercises on *ser* and *estar*.

EXERCISE XIV.

643. *Vocabulary.*

Plomo, *lead.*	Miel (fem.), *honey.*
Média, *stocking.*	Seda, *silk.*
Candelero, *candlestick.*	A'grio, *sour.*
Ciego, *blind.*	Enfermizo, *sickly.*
Pesado, *heavy.*	Escribiendo, *writing.*

644. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) Mi padre es ciego.	My father is blind.
(*b.*) Mi hermana está ciega de ira.	My sister is blind with passion.
(*c.*) Juan es enfermizo.	John is sickly.
(*d.*) Pedro está escribiendo.	Peter is writing.

☞ The following promiscuous examples on the use of *ser* and *estar* can be readily translated by means of the references.

645. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

Thou art (334) proud. Thou art (335) angry. Death (628) is (334) terrible. We are (335, b) in the street. My father is (334) very rich. My mother is (335) very sorrowful. Lead (628) is heavy. The milk is (335) sour. Honey (628) is sweet. The honey is (335) warm. I am a (243) German. I am angry. We are (334) imprudent. We are ill. She-is (334) old. She-is (335) contented. My mother is (334) blind. My daughter is (335) blind with (*de*) anger (*ira*). Mary is beautiful. Lucy is (335) busy. John is good. John is well (335, e). The spoon is (334, b) of gold. The spoon is (335, b) upon the table. The fork is (334, b) mine. The fork is (335, b) in the house. The stockings are (334, b) of silk. The stockings are (335, b) in the street. The book is for (334, b) Mary. The book is (335, b) in the hotel. The stockings are for Lucy. Here are (335, b) the stockings. I-am (334) young. I-am (335, c) writing. My mother is sickly. My mother is sick. The candlesticks are (334) of gold. The buttons are of silver. The looking-glass is (334) new. The candlestick is of silver. They-are (335, c) writing. Sugar (628) is (334) sweet. This hat is for John.

They-are wise. They-are sorrowful. Where is (335, b) my hat? Here it-is (335, b). My shoes are of silk.

SECTION THIRTEENTH.

646. The phrases, "*to be hungry*," "*to be thirsty*," "*to be afraid*," "*to be cold*," "*to be hot*," are rendered in Spanish by the verb *tener* (to have), and the corresponding noun; as, "*to have hunger*," "*to have thirst*," "*to have fear*," "*to have shame*," "*to have cold*," "*to have heat*."

EXERCISE XV.

647. *Vocabulary.*

Manzana, *apple.*
Nuez, *nut.*
Sopa, *soup.*
Calentura, *fever.*
Marmol, *marble.*
Paciéncia, *patience.*
Calor, *heat.*
Vergüenza, *shame.*
Silla, *chair.*
Es estraño, *it-is strange.*
Pera, *pear.*
Bota, *boot.*
Aceite, *oil.*
Memória, *memory.*
Hierro, *iron.*
Suceso, *success.*
Frío, *cold, coldness.*
Temor, *fear.*
Ayer, *yesterday.*
Con, *with.*

648. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) Esa muger no tiene vergüenza. — That woman has not shame (*i. e.*, is not ashamed).
(*b.*) Juan tiene calor. — John has heat (*i. e.*, John is hot).
(*c.*) Tenga Pedro dinero. — Let Peter have money.

649. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

¿Tiene (160) Vmd. manzanas? Tengo (160) manzanas. Tenemos plumas. Tienen peras. Vms. tienen sillas. Ella tiene hambre. Tengo sed (646). Tenemos calor (646). Tienen vergüenza (646). Tengo temor (646). Tenemos frío (646). ¿Tengo yo vergüenza? Tienes vergüenza. Tenéis una lámpara. ¿Quién tiene nueces? ¿Quienes tienen peras? Mis hermanos tienen hierro. Tengo manteca. Tenéis espejos. Tenemos tenedores. Tienes cuchillos. ¿Qué espécie de botones tiene V.? ¿Tenemos marmol? ¿Qué espécie de azucar tiene el

aldeano? Ella no tiene (626) marido. Tengo tres hijos y dos hijas. Tenéis tres hermanos. Tenemos una casa. ¿Tenemos médias? ¿Tienes candeleros? No tengo harina (626). No tenéis leche (626). La rosa tiene espinas. Vmd. tiene memória (242). María tiene mucha confianza en el juez. ¿Tienen Vms. sopa? Tenemos suceso. ¿Tenéis paciencia? El médico tenía (160) confianza en la Española. Ella no tenía lámpara. Teníamos hambre. Yo tenía una rosa. Tenían dinero. Vmd. tenía una média. Teníais plata. Vms. tenían confianza en mi hermano. Tenías oro. Ella tenía prudéncia. ¿Tenía yo zapatos? ¿Teníamos botas? ¿No tenían mesas

Tuvo (160) azúcar ayer. Tuvieron manteca ayer. Tuve botones ayer. Ella tuvo harina ayer. Tuvísteis dinero. Tuvimos lámparas. Tuviste candeleros. No tuvieron espejos. ¿Tuviste una pluma? Tuve una casa. Tuvimos medias de seda ayer. Tuvo sillas ayer.

El zapatero ha tenido (160) mucho cuidado. He tenido mucho hierro. Has tenido tres hijas. Hemos tenido dos hijos. María ha tenido calentura (242). Ella has tenido dos maridos. Han tenido muchos cuidados. Habéis tenido mucho dinero. Yo no había tenido (160) sopa.

Tendré (160) una candelero. Ella tendrá un tenedor. Tendrán aceite. Vmd. tendrá hambre. Tendrás calor (646). Tendremos sed. Tendrán vergüenza (646). Tendréis temor (646). Tendré frío (646). Habré tenido (160) dinero.

Tened (160) paz con todos los hombres. Ten paz con todos los hijos del médico. Tenga (309, f) plumas. Tengan (309, f) miel. Tengamos (309, f) espejos. Tenga (309, f) Vmd. confianza en él.

Quiero que mi madre tenga (160) harina. Es posible que tengas aceite. Probable es que tengan lámparas. Quiero que María tenga dinero. Quiero que yo tenga medias de seda. Probable es que tengamos algun (101)

mérito. Es posible que tengais hambre. Quiero que Vms. tengan candeleros.

No era estraño que tuviesen (314) peras. No era estraño que yo tuviese (314) dinero. No era estraño que Vmd. tuviese aceite. Era preciso que no tuviésemos azúcar. Si tuvieses (314) botas, yo tendría (315) zapatos. Juan tendría (315) un tenedor. No creo que Pedro haya tenido (160) manteca. ¡ Ojalá yo no hubiera tenido (160) estas lámparas ! ¡ Ojalá no hubieran tenido esos libros ! Si yo tuviere paciéncia, tendré suceso. Si mis hijos tuvieren paciéncia, tendrán suceso.

650. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

They-have (160) pears. Have you (*Vmd.*) apples? I-have apples. We-have pens. They-have pears. You (*Vms.*) have chairs. She is hungry (646). I am thirsty (646). We are hot (646). They are ashamed (646). I am afraid (646). We are cold (646). I am ashamed. Thou art ashamed (646). Ye have a lamp. Who has nuts? Who have pears? My brothers have iron. I have butter. Ye have looking-glasses. We have forks. Thou hast knives. What sort of buttons have you (*Vmd.*)? Have-we marble? What sort of sugar has the villager? She has no (626) husband. I have three sons and two daughters. Ye have three brothers. We have a house. Have we stockings? Hast thou candlesticks? I have no (626) flour. Ye have no (626) milk. The rose has thorns. You (*Vmd.*) have a (242) memory. Mary has much confidence in the judge. Have you (*Vms.*) soup? We have success. Have ye patience?

The physician had (imperf.) confidence in the Spanish-woman. She had (imperf.) no (626) lamp. We were (imperf.) hungry. You (*Vms.*) had (imperf.) confidence in my brother. Had (imperf.) we boots?

He had (303) sugar yesterday. They had (303) butter

yesterday. I had (303) buttons yesterday. We had a (242) fever yesterday. Ye had chairs yesterday.

The shoemaker has had (160) much care. I have had much iron. Thou hast had three daughters. We have had two sons. Mary has had a (242) fever. She has had two husbands. They have had many cares. Ye have had much money. I had not had (305) soup.

I shall have (160) a candlestick. She will have a fork. They-will have oil. You (*Vmd.*) will be hungry (646). Thou-wilt-be (646) hot. We shall-be (646) thirsty. They will be (646) ashamed. Ye will be (646) afraid. I shall be (646) cold. I will have had (160) money.

Have-ye (160) peace with all men (628). Have-thou peace with all the sons of the physician. Let-him-have (309, f) pens. Let-them-have (309, f) honey. Let-us-have looking-glasses. May you (*Vmd.*) have confidence in him.

I wish that my mother may-have (160) flour. It-is possible that thou-mayest-have oil. Probable it-is that they-may-have lamps. I-wish that Mary may-have money. I-wish that I may-have silk stockings (97, a). Probable it-is that we-may have some (101) merit. It-is possible that ye-may be (646) hungry. I wish that you (*Vms.*) may-have candlesticks.

It-was (*era*) not strange that they-should-have (314) pears. It-was not strange that I should have (314) money. It-was not strange that you (*Vmd.*) should have oil. It was necessary that we should not have (314) sugar. If thou shouldst have (314) boots, I would-have (315) shoes. John would (315) have a fork. I do not believe that Peter may-have had (160) butter. O-that I had not had (318) these lamps! O-that they-had not had (318) those books! If I shall have (319) patience, I shall have (307) success. If my sons shall have (319) patience, they will have success.

☞ The learner can now write all the persons of the tenses of the verb *tener*, as directed at the close of the last two sections.

SECTION FOURTEENTH.

Remark.—The exercises in this section are designed for practice in the conjugations of regular verbs of the three terminations, *ar*, *er*, and *ir*. Of course, all verbs whose present infinitive ends with *ar*, are of the first conjugation, and are to be conjugated like *amar* (168, a); those ending with *er*, are of the second, and to be conjugated like *comer* (168, b); and those ending with *ir*, of the third, and to be conjugated like *vivir* (168, c).

EXERCISE XVI.

651. *Vocabulary.*

Hablar, *to speak.*
Buscar, *to seek.*
Quedar, *to remain.*
Llevar, *to carry.*
Rehusar, *to refuse.*
Comer, *to eat, to dine.*
Leer, *to read.*
Vivir, *to live.*
Cumplir, *to fulfil.*
Terminar, *to terminate, to close.*
Reposo, *repose.*
Corréo, *post, mail.*
Deber, *duty.*
Mañana, *to-morrow, morning.*
Cuando, *when.*
A' las dos, *at two o'clock.*
Amar, *to love.*
Hallar, *to find.*
Llorar, *to weep.*
Viajar, *to travel.*
Llegar, *to arrive.*
Beber, *to drink.*
Responder, *to reply, to answer.*
Escribir,* *to write.*
Permitir, *to permit.*
Asunto, *business, matter.*
Palabra, *word.*
España, *Spain.*
Favor, *favor.*
Hasta entónces, *till then.*
Ya, *already.*
A' las tres, *at three o'clock.*

652. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) El Señor nos (113) ama.	The Lord loves us.
(*b.*) No hemos bedido vino.	We have not drunk any wine.
(*c.*) ¿ Me permitirá V. escribir dos cartas?	Will you permit me to-write two letters?
(*d.*) Cumplid vuestros deberes.	Fulfil-ye your duties.
(*e.*) Hable V. alto.	Speak loud.
(*f.*) Viva, Vmd., señora, muchos años.	May you live, madam, many years.

---

* *Escribir* is irregular in its past participle, having *escrito* and not *escribido*. (See 222, a.)

653. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

Dios nos (113) ama. Los pintores la (113) aman. Mi madre busca reposo. Ella no halla reposo. El Aleman ama la verdad. Hablan. Hablas. Lloran. Quedan contentos. Vmd. busca reposo. ¿ Hablan Vms. Español? Hablamos Español. Quedas triste. Habláis el Ingles. No hallo reposo. Bebes (168, b) vino. Bebo água. El Frances no come pan. Mis hermanos no beben vino. Como pan. Juan lee libros. Leen libros. No come V. nada (622). No beben Vms. nada. ¿ No respondes nada? Bebemos vino. Bebéis água. El medico vive (168, c) en Lóndres. Mis hijas viven en los Estados Unidos. María escribe cartas. Escribís muchas cartas. Cumples tu palabra. Cumplo mis deberes. Vmd. vive en la ciudad. ¿ Cómo halla V. este pan?

Llevábamos (168, a) mucho dinero con nosotros. María lloraba. Pedro hablaba. Las mugeres lloraban. Las señoras buscaban reposo. Yo lloraba. Yo bebía (168, b) vino. Diego bebía água. Comíamos pan. Vivían (168, c) en Lóndres. Vivíais en la ciudad. Yo escribía una carta. Vivías en Madrid. Escribíamos cartas. Yo buscaba reposo.

La Francesa no halló (168, a) reposo. Viajó por España. Viajé por los Estados Unidos. Viajamos por Inglaterra. Hallaron un tesoro en el camino. Juan lloró. Leí (168, b) estos libros. Comió pan y manteca. Comieron azúcar. Bebimos vino y leche. Escribí (168, c) dos cartas. Escribieron doce cartas. Juan no respondió nada. Vmd. vivió en Madrid.

Le (113) han rehusado (168, a) ese favor. Juan me ha rehusado ese favor. He hallado mis tesoros. ¿ Ha llegado el corréo? Hemos hallado las cucharas. ¿ Has viajado por España? ¿ Le habéis rehusado ese favor? ¿ No ha comido (168, b) V. pan? He comido mucho pan. He cumplido mi palabra. Han cumplido su palabra. ¿ Ha

llegado el juez? ¿Han hallado Vms. mis lámparas? ¿Has comido mucha miel? ¿Ha viajado V. por los Estados Unidos?

Hasta entónces habíais hablado (168, a) Español. Hasta entónces no habíamos terminado nuestros asuntos. Ya habían comido (168, b) cuando llegamos. ¿No habías vivido (168, c) ya en Lóndres? Hasta entónces habían vivido en paz.

Cuando hube hallado (168, a) el tesoro, escribí cartas á mis amigos. Cuando hubiste comido (168, b), tu padre llegó. Cuando hubimos hablado, nuestras hermanas lloraron.

Viajaré (168, a) por España. Vijaremos por Inglaterra. Hallará un tesoro. Comeré (168, b) este pan. Comerán manzanas. Leerás esos libros. Cumpliremos (168, c) nuestras palabras. Escribirán cartas. Mi criado llevará las cartas al corréo. Habré comido (168, b) á las dos.* Habrán llegado á las tres. El corréo habrá llegado á las dos.

Llorad (168, a) con los que lloran. Comed (168, b) este pan. Cumplid (168, c) vuestras palabras. Bebed água. Vivid en paz con todos los hombres. Habla alto. Llora tú con los que lloran. Come tú conmigo. Come tú con Pedro. Cumple tus deberes. Hable (309, f) Juan alto. Léa (309, f) María mis cartas. Lean (309, f) las señoras esos libros. Cumplan (309, f) los hombres sus deberes. Léa Vm. (309, f) esa carta. Hable Vmd. (309, f) Español. Coma V. manzanas y peras. Lean Vms. esa carta. No hable (309, a) V. de eso (128, a). No léa (309, a) Vmd. ese libro. No bebas (309, a) vino. No lloréis (309, a). Respondedme (116). Escribídles (116). Escríbenos (116).

Es posible que halles (168, a) un tesoro. Es posible que lean (168, b) esos libros. Es probable que no cum-

* See 280.

plan (168, c) sus deberes. Probable es que ella no le responda. ¡ Ojalá halléis reposo!

Si yo hallase (314) libros, yo los leería (315). Si María llorara (316), Juan lloraría (315). ¡ Ojalá no bebiesen (314) vino! ¡ Ojalá no llorase! ¡ Ojalá los hombres (628) cumpliesen (314) sus deberes! Preciso era que María no hablase alto.

¿ Es posible que no hayan hallado (168, a; 317) un tesoro? Es posible que no haya llegado. ¡ Ojalá yo no hubiese hablado (318)! Era estraño que no hubiesen hallado esos libros. Si Juan no hubiese hablado (318, a) María no habría llorado (318, a). Si mañana llegare (319) Pedro, te escribiré. Si mañana hallaren (319) un tesoro, nos escribirán. Si Diego no hubiere llegado (320) mañana á las tres, le escribiremos una carta.

Permitame (116) V. leer (298) eso libro. ¿ Me permitirá V. leer esa carta? Era preciso hablarles (116). Juan pretende (634) no haber hablado. Estaban comiendo (299) y bebiendo (299). Habiendo hallado (299) un libro, le leí. Habiendo hallado un tesoro en el camino, le llevamos en la casa del abogado.

654. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

I-weep (168, a). God loves us (113). The painters love her. My mother seeks repose. She finds not repose. The German loves the truth. They speak. Thou speakest. They weep. They remain contented (300, a). You (*Vmd.*) seek repose. Do you (*Vms.*) speak Spanish? We speak Spanish. Thou remainest sad. Ye speak the English. I find not repose. Thou drinkest (168, b) wine. I drink water. The Frenchman eats not bread. My brothers drink not wine. I eat bread. John reads books. They read books. You (*vmd.*) eat nothing (622). You (*Vms.*) drink nothing. Repliest-thou nothing? We drink wine. Ye drink water. The physician lives (168, c) in London. My daughters live in the United States.

Mary writes letters. Ye write many letters. Thou fulfillest thy word. I fulfil my duties. You (*Vmd.*) live in the city. How do you (*V.*) find this bread?

We-were-carrying (168, a) much money with us. Mary was-weeping. Peter was-speaking. The women were-weeping. The ladies were-seeking repose. I was-weeping. I was-drinking (168, b) wine. James was-drinking water. We were-eating bread. They were-living (168, c) in London. Ye were-living in the city. I was-writing a letter. Thou wast-living in Madrid. We were-writing letters.

The French-woman found (perf. def.) no (626) repose. He travelled through Spain (*España*). I travelled through the United States. We travelled through England. They found a treasure in the road. John wept. I read (168, b) these books. I-ate bread and butter. They ate sugar. We drank wine and milk. I wrote (168, c) two letters. They wrote twelve letters. John answered nothing (622). You (*Vmd.*) lived in Madrid.

They have refused (168, a) him (113) that favor. John has refused me that favor. I have found my treasures. Has the[2] post[3] arrived[1]? We have found the spoons. Hast-thou travelled through Spain? Have-ye refused him (113) that favor? Have you (*Vmd.*) not eaten bread? I have eaten much bread. I have kept (*cumplido*) my word. They have fulfilled their word. Has the[2] judge[3] arrived[1]? Have you[2] (*Vms.*) found[1] my lamps? Hast thou eaten much honey? Have you[2] (*Vmd.*) travelled[1] through the United States?

Till then ye-had spoken (168, a; 305) Spanish. Till then we-had not terminated (305) our business (plur.). They-had[2] already[1] eaten[3] (168, b; 305) when we arrived. Hadst-thou not already[2] lived[1] (305) in London? Till then they had lived (305) in peace.

When I-had found (306) the treasure, I wrote letters

to my friends. When thou-hadst (306) dined (306) thy father arrived. When we-had spoken (306) our sisters wept.

I-shall-travel (168, a; 307) through Spain. We-shall-travel through England. He-will-find a treasure. I-shall-eat bread. They-will-eat apples. Thou-wilt-read those books. We-shall-fulfil our words. They-will-write letters. My male-servant will-carry the letters to the post. I-shall-have dined (308) at two o'clock (280). They-will-have arrived (308) at three o'clock (280). The post will-have arrived (308) at two o'clock.

Weep-ye (309) with those who (125, c) weep. Eat-ye this bread. Fulfil-ye your promises (*palabras*). Drink-ye water. Live-ye in peace with all men (628). Speak-thou loud (*alto*). Weep thou with those who weep. Eat thou with me (115, c). Eat thou with Peter. Fulfil thy duties. Let John speak (309, f) loud. Let Mary read (309, f) my letters. Let the ladies read (309, f) those books. Let men (628) fulfil (309, f) their duties. Read (309, f) you (*Vmd.*) this letter. Speak (309, f) Spanish (let your-worship speak Spanish). Eat you (*Vmd.*) some (254, c) apples and pears. Read you (*Vms.*) that letter. Speak not* (309, a) of this (128, a). Read not (309, a) this book. Drink-thou not (309, a) wine. Weep-ye not (309, a). Answer-ye me (116). Write-ye to them (116). Write-thou to-us (116).

It-is possible that thou-mayest-find (168, a; 311) a treasure. It-is possible that they-may-read (168, b) those books. It-is probable that they-may not fulfil their duties. It-is probable that she may not answer him (113). O-that ye-may-find repose!

If I should-find (314) books, I would-read (315) them. If Mary should-weep (316), John would-weep (315). O-that they-would not drink (314) wine! O-that he-

* Literally, *no hable V. de eso*, "not let-speak your-worship of this."

would not weep (314)! O-that men (628) would-fulfil (314) their duties! It-was (*era*) necessary that Mary should not speak (314) loud (*alto*).

Is-it possible that they-may not have found (317) a treasure? It-is possible that he-may not have arrived (317). O-that I had not (might not have) spoken (318; 318, a)! It-was (*era*) strange that they-should not have found (318, a) those books. If John had not (should not have) spoken (318, a), Mary would not have wept (318, a). If Peter[3] should-arrive[2] (319) to-morrow,[1] I-will-write to-thee (113). If they-shall-find[2] (319) a[3] treasure[4] to-morrow,[1] they-will-write to-us. If James shall not have arrived (320) to-morrow at three o'clock, we will write him a letter.

Permit me (116) to-read (298) that book. Will you (*Vmd.*) permit me (113) to read that letter? It-was necessary to-speak to-them (116; 114). John pretends (634) not to-have spoken. They-were (*estaban*) eating (299) and drinking (299). Having found (299) a book, I-read it (113).

Remark.—In order to become thoroughly familiar with the conjugation of the regular verbs, the learner should write and re-write all the persons of the various moods and tenses (as before directed), until he finds himself able to write them without referring to the model-verbs. He must be careful to remember the changes in orthography sometimes required. (See 165; 165, a; and 166: 166, a; 166, b; 166, c.)

☞ The following verbs, together with those already given in the vocabulary of this section, will serve as examples for practice:

Pagar, *to pay.*	Tomar, *to take.*
Llamar, *to call.*	Ornar, *to adorn.*
Comprar, *to buy.*	Juzgar, *to judge.*
Pender, *to hang.*	Creer, *to believe.*
Temer, *to fear.*	Escoger, *to choose.*
Aprender, *to learn.*	Vencer, *to conquer.*
Unir, *to unite.*	Sufrir, *to suffer.*
Abrir, *to open.* (See 222, a).	Añadir, *to add.*
Asistir, *to assist.*	Admitir, *to admit.*

SECTION FIFTEENTH.

Remark.—The exercises in this section are designed for practice in reflective verbs and passive verbs. (See 169; 167, a, b; 170; 171; 172.)

655. *Se* and the other personal pronouns of the first-objective case, are often used in Spanish with neuter or active-intransitive verbs, and in such cases seem redundant in English; as *V.* se *burla*, "you jest;" *mucho* me *alegro*, "I rejoice much;" se *caerá Vmd.*, "you will-fall;" *retírese Vmd.*, "retire;" *no* se *enoje Vmd.*, "do not be angry." Those verbs designated with a (*) in the vocabulary, are thus used.

EXERCISE XVII.

656. *Vocabulary.*

Levantar, *to raise, to rise.*
Portarse,* *to behave, to conduct one's self.*
Quejarse,* *to complain.*
Acercarse,* *to approach, to draw near.*
Salvar, *to save.*
Alabar, *to praise.*
Armar, *to arm.*
Invierno, *winter.*
A' las seis, *at six o'clock.*
Bien, *well, properly.*
Meterse,* *to meddle, to interfere.*
Retirarse,* *to retire, to withdraw.*
Burlarse,* *to jest.*
Alegrarse,* *to rejoice.*
Juntarse,* *to assemble.*
Escondir, *to hide.*
Paìs (masc.), *country, region.*
Primavera, *spring.*
A' las siete, *at seven o'clock.*
Mal, *badly, improperly.*

657. *Model sentences.*

(*a*) Los amigos se juntaron (169, a) en Lóndres.	The friends assembled themselves in London.
(*b.*) Me hallo (169, a) contento.	I find myself contented.
(*c.*) Levantáos (116; 116, b).	Raise yourselves.
(*d.*) V. se burla (655).	You jest.
(*e.*) No se (655) queje V.	Do not complain.

658. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

¿Cómo se halla (169, a) Vmd.? Juan se porta bien. Los abogados se portan mal. Te portas bien. Os portáis mal. Ellas se juntaron en Madrid. El carpintero se halla contento. Le amas. Pedro se alabó. La muger se escondió. El general se armó. Se alaban mis hermanas (575). Se salvaron. Me alabo. Te armas. Me escondí. Nos armamos. Nos escondimos. Se han portado mal. ¡Ojalá me hallase con ella! ¡Ojalá se portasen

bien! Tus amigos se juntarán en Lóndres. Escóndete (116). Alabáos (116, b). Salváos (116, b). Armémonos (116, b). Alábese (116) Vmd. A'rmese (116) Vmd.

Te (655) burlas. Me (655) alegro mucho. Se (655) acerca la primavera (575). Se (655) acerca el invierno. Se (655) quejan. V. se (655) burla. Te (655) alegras. Pedro se (655) queja. Se ha levantado V. (575). ¿De quién se (655) quejan? ¿Me (655) he metido nunca (*ever*) en sus (123, a) asuntos (*affairs*) de Vmd.? Siempre me (655) levanto á las seis. Me (655) retiraré. ¿No se (655) retiraría (315) V. del pais? ¿No se (655) retirarían (315) del pais? Siempre nos (655) levantámos á las siete. Se (655) alegran. Alégrate (116). Alegráos (116, b). Alegrémonos (116, b). Alégrense (116). Levántese V. (309, f). No se (309, d) queje V. (309, f). No nos (309, d) quejemos (309, f). No nos (309, d) metamos (309, f) en los asuntos del juez.

659. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

How do you (*Vmd.*) find (169, a) yourself (how finds your-worship himself)? Peter behaves himself well. The lawyers conduct themselves badly. Thou behavest thyself well. Ye-behave yourselves badly. They assembled themselves in Madrid. The carpenter finds himself contented. Thou-lovest thyself. John praises himself. The woman hid herself. The general armed himself. My[3] brothers[4] praise[2] themselves[1] (575). They-saved themselves. I-praise myself. Thou-armest thyself. I-hid myself. We-arm ourselves. We-hid ourselves. They-have behaved themselves badly. O-that I-might-find (314) myself with her! O that they-would-conduct (314) themselves well! Thy friends will-assemble themselves in London. Hide (116) thyself. Praise-ye yourselves (116, b). Save (116, b) yourselves. Let-us-arm ourselves (116,

b). Praise (116) yourself (let your-worship praise himself, 309, f). Arm (116) yourself (309, f).

Thou-jestest (655). I-rejoice (655) much. The[2] spring[3] approaches[1] (655). The[2] winter[3] draws near[1] (655). They-complain (655). You (*V.*) jest (655). Thou-rejoicest (655). Peter complains (655). You[3] (*V.*) have[1] risen[2] (655). Of whom complain-they (655)? Have-I meddled (655) ever (*nunca*) in your (*de Vmd.;* 123, a) affairs (*asuntos*)? I always rise (655) at six o'clock. I-will-retire (655). Would (315) you (*V.*) not retire (655) from-the (*del*) country? Would-they (315) not retire (655) from-the country? We always rise (655) at seven o'clock. They-rejoice (655). Rejoice thou (655; 116). Rejoice-ye (116, b). Let-us-rejoice (655; 116, b). Let-them-rejoice (655; 116). Rise (655; 309, f; let your-worship raise himself). Complain not (309, d; let not your-worship complain himself). Let us not complain (309, d; 309, f). Let us not meddle (655; 309, d) in the affairs (*asuntos*) of the judge.

Remark.—The inflections of reflective verbs should now be written in all the moods and tenses of the three regular conjugations.

EXERCISE XVIII.

660. *Vocabulary.*

Quemar, *to burn.*
Maltratar, *to abuse.*
Calumniar, *to calumniate.*
Generosidad, *generosity.*
Embajador, *embassador.*
Ayer, *yesterday.*
Vencer, *to conquer, to surpass.*
Criar, *to create.*
Presentar, *to present.*
Tierra, *the earth.*
Presidente, *president.*
Abiertamente, *openly.*

661. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) Este libro fué escrito* para mis amigos.	This book was written for my friends.
(*b.*) Las casas han sido quemadas.	The houses have been burned.
(*c.*) María es amada (170) de José.	Mary is loved by Joseph.

* *Escrito* is the past participle (irregularly formed) of the verb *escribir.*

662. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

Lucía es amada (170; 171) de (323, b) Diego. La Española es amada (170; 171) del Frances. Fuimos vencidos (170; 171) en generosidad. La tierra fué criada (170) por (323, b) Dios. Ella fué calumniada (170) abiertamente. Fueron vencidos en generosidad. Todas las (628) cosas (623) fueron criadas por Dios. Esta carta fué escrita (170) para María. Esos libros fueron escritos por (323, b) el abogado. He sido (172) maltratado. La ciudad fué quemada. La casa fué quemada. Ayer fué[4] presentado[5] el[1] embajador[3] frances[2] al presidente de los Estados Unidos. Ayer fueron presentadas al presidente las hermanas y hijas del embajador[2] español[1] (575). Las Francesas fueron calumniados abiertamente. Estos caballeros han sido (172) maltrados. Las ciudades han sido quemadas. La ciudad será quemada. No seremos vencidos en generosidad. Ayer fué presentado al presidente el hijo del embajador[2] ingles.[1] Ayer fuí presentado al presidente de los Estados Unidos.

663. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

Mary is loved (170; 171) by (*de;* 323, b) James. The Spanish-woman is loved (170) by-the (323, b) Frenchman. We-were (perf. def.)* conquered (170) in generosity. The earth was (perf. def.) created (170) by (*por;* 323, b) God. She was (perf. def.) calumniated openly. They-were conquered in generosity. All things (628) were created by (323, b) God. This letter was written (*escrita*) for Mary. Those books were written by (323, b) the lawyer. I-have been abused (172). The city was (perf. def.) burned. The house was burned. Yesterday the[3] French[5] ambassador[4] was[1] presented[2] to-the president of the United States. Yesterday were presented to-the president the sisters and daughters of the Spanish[2] ambassador.[1] The French-wo-

---

* See 170, a; and 323; 323, a

men were calumniated openly. These gentlemen have been (172) abused. The cities have-been burned. The city will-be burned. We shall not be surpassed in generosity. Yesterday was presented to the president the son of the English[2] ambassador.[1] Yesterday I-was presented to the president of the United States.

Remark.—The inflections of passive verbs should now be written in all the moods and tenses of the three regular conjugations.

SECTION SIXTEENTH.

Remark.—The exercises in this section are designed to show the manner in which the reflective personal pronoun *se* is employed in Spanish to express passive action.

664. We can say in English, "the man deceives himself," or, "the man is deceived," and each sentence conveys about the same idea; but in Spanish this manner of expressing a passive act or emotion by means of the reflective pronoun is carried to a far greater extent than in English. Thus it can be said in Spanish, *en la Gaceta de Filadélfia de ayer* se leen *las siguentes líneas*, "in the Gazette of Philadelphia of yesterday *read themselves* the following lines," meaning, "in yesterday's Philadelphia Gazette the following lines *are* (or *may be*) *read.*" *¿ Cómo* se entenderá *lo que* se dice? "how *shall-understand itself* that which *says itself*," meaning, "how *shall be understood* that which *is said?*" *Las ventanas* se han cerrado, "the windows *have shut themselves*," meaning "the windows *have been shut.*" "It is believed," "it is said," "the book is opened," can be rendered in Spanish by the reflective pronoun, thus, *se cree; se dice; se abre el libro;* literally, "it-believes itself," "it says itself," "the book opens itself." This peculiar manner of expressing a passive act or emotion must be carefully noted. (See 173 and 173, a).

EXERCISE XIX.

665. *Vocabulary.*

Llamar, *to call, to name.*
Doblar, *to double, to increase.*
Usar, *to use.*
Creer, *to believe, to think.*
Abrir, *to open.*
Clamor, *noise, clamor.*
Humo, *smoke.*
Profecía, *prophecy.*
Llenar, *to fill.*
Continuar, *to continue.*
Engañar, *to deceive.*
Vender, *to sell.*
Botella, *bottle.*
Escuela, *school.*
Puerta, *door.*
Sítio, *siege.*

666. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) Aquí se[3] habla[2] Español.[1]	Here Spanish is spoken.
(*b.*) Pedíd, y se[2] os[3] dará.[1]	Ask-ye, and it shall be given to-you.
(*c.*) La isla se llamaba Melita.	The island was called Melita.
(*d.*) El río se ha helado.	The river is (has been) frozen.
(*e.*) Se[5] han[3] segado[4] los[1] prados.[2]*	The meadows have been mowed.

667. In many of the following sentences the nominative will be found placed after the verb (see 666, e), this being a very common order of construction in Spanish, especially in sentences in which *se*, with the active verb, is used in place of the passive verb.

668. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

Esta muger se llama (664) María. Aquí (639) se hábla el Ingles. Se cree. Llamad, y se os abrirá. Este vino se vende á (378) tres pesos (623) la (234) botella. Se dobla el clamor. Se enagaña V. ¿Se usan plumas de oro? ¿Qué libros se usan en esa escuela? La botella se llenará de (*with*) vino. Las botellas se llenarán de (399) água. La casa se llenará de (399) humo. Se llenó toda la cuidad de (399) humo. Se abrirán las puertas. Aquí se habla el Frances. Se cumple la profecía. Se abrirá la puerte. La cuidad se quemó (660). Las casas se quemaron. Se abrió el libro. Aquí se venden libros. Este vino se vende á (378) dos pesos la (234) botella. Se cumplen las profecías. Se continuará la carta. Este hombre se llama Pedro. Se abrieron todas las puertas. Se continuarán esas cartas. Se doblará el clamor. Se engañan los jueces. Esa profecía se ha cumplido. Se ha engañado Vmd. Se habla de un sítio. Se ha levantado (656) el sítio. ¿Se usan sombreros de seda? Las casas se llenaron de (399) humo.

669. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

This woman is called (173; 173, a) Mary. Here the

---

* It must be remembered that the literal rendering of these model sentences would be, "here *speaks itself* Spanish;" "ask-ye, and to-you (*os*) it-*shall give itself*;" "the island *called itself* Melita;" "the river *has frozen itself*;" "the meadows *have mowed themselves*."

French (667) is spoken. It is-believed (664). Knock (*llamád*), and it shall be opened to-you. This wine is sold at (*á*) three dollars a (*la*) bottle. The clamor (667) is doubled. You (*V.*) are deceived (667). Are gold pens (97, a) used (667)? What books are used in that school? The bottle will be filled with (*de*) wine. The bottles will be filled with (*de*) water. The house will be filled with (399) smoke. All the city (667) will be filled with (399) smoke. The doors (667) will be opened. Here the English (667) is spoken. The prophecy (667) is fulfilled. The door (667) will be opened. The city is burned (perf. def.). The houses are burned. The book (667) is opened (perf. def.). Here books (667) are sold (pres.). This wine is sold at (378) two dollars a (234) bottle. The prophecies (667) are fulfilled (pres.). The letter (667) will be continued. This man is called Peter. All the gates (667) were opened (perf. def.). Those letters (667) will be continued. The clamor (667) will be doubled. The judges (667) are deceived. This prophecy has been fulfilled. You (*Vmd.*; 667) have been deceived. It is spoken of a siege.* The siege (667) has been raised (656). Are silk hats (97, a) used (667)? The houses were filled (perf. def.) with smoke. Those prophecies have been fulfilled.

SECTION SEVENTEENTH.

670. One of the most important rules in Spanish syntax is that by which a noun in the objective case, if it be a person, or inanimate thing personified, and the direct object of a verb, is to be preceded by the preposition *á*. Thus, "John loves his brother" would be in Spanish, *Juan ama á su hermano*,† and not *Juan ama su hermano*; "Peter slew the barber" would be, *Pedro mató* al *barbero*,† and not *Pedro mató el*

---

* In English, it would be better to say, "a siege is spoken of." In Spanish it can be said, *hablan de un sítio*, "they (*i. e.*, people) speak of a siege."

† Literally, "John loves *to* his brother;" "Peter slew *to*-the barber."

barbero; "I love those who love me," would be, *amo á los que me aman*, and not *amo los que me aman*. These sentences can be altered in construction, as mentioned in paragraph 575, without any change of meaning. Of course the preposition is not to be translated in English, but must always be used in Spanish before nouns in the objective case, governed by an active verb, if these nouns express a rational being or personified object.*

EXERCISE XX.

671. *Vocabulary.*

Honrar, *to honor.*	Sanar, *to heal, to cure.*
Temer, *to fear.*	Perdonar, *to forgive, to pardon.*
Robar, *to rob.*	Matar, *to slay, to kill.*
Recompensar, *to reward.*	Visitar, *to visit.*
Deudor, *debtor.*	Noche (fem.), *night.*

672. *Model sentences.*

(*a.*) Ama *a* nuestra nacion.	He-loves our nation.
(*b.*) Cain mató *á* su hermano Abel.	Cain slew his brother Abel.
(*c.*) Ví *á* una muger.	I-saw a woman.
(*d.*) *A* nádie vió.	He saw nobody.
(*e.*) Le amo como *á* un hermano.	I-love him like a brother.

673. *Spanish to be translated into English.*

El padre ama *á* sus hijos. Honramos *al* juez. El médico sana *á* los enfermos. Este juez no teme *á* Dios. Perdonamos *á* nuestros deudores. Yo perdono *á* mis deudores. Dios ama *á* los que son buenos. Llamaron *á* los pintores. Ella teme *al* Americano. El médico sanará *á* muchos enfermos. El juez perdonó *al* hombre que robó *al* padre de Pedro. Robaron *á* la muger *á* quien (125) recompensamos. Mi criado mató *á* su padre. Honrad *á* vuestros padres (*parents*). Perdoné *á* todos mis deudores. Te amo como (*like*) *á* un padre. Pedro me ama como *á* un hermano. Las señoras recompensarán *á* sus criadas. Visitaremos *al* presidente esta noche (*to-night*). Visitaremos *á* algunos de mis amigos esta noche. Recompensaré *al* que me honra. La madre ama *á* sus hijas. Juan mató *á* su amigo.

---

* This rule applies only to *rational* beings or personified objects; thus we can not say, *amo á la verdad*, but *amo la verdad*, "I love the truth."

674. *English to be translated into Spanish.*

The mother loves (670) her daughters. We-honor the judge. The physician heals the sick (102). This judge fears not God. We-pardon our debtors. I forgive my debtors. God loves those who are good. They-called the painters. She fears the American. The physician will-heal many sick [*persons.*] The judge pardoned the man who robbed Peter's father. They robbed the woman whom (125) we rewarded. My male-servant slew his father. Honor-ye your parents (*padres*). I-pardoned all my debtors. I-love thee (113) like (*como*) a father. Peter loves me like a brother. The ladies will-reward their female-servants. We-will-visit the president this night. We-will-visit some of my friends to-night (*esta noche*). I will reward him who honors me. The father loves his sons. John killed his friend.

PART V.

SPANISH READING LESSONS.

FIRST SECTION.

Remark.—This section of the Reading Lessons consists of easy sentences. The words selected are among those in general use, and should be repeated by the learner till he can recall them and their signification at any moment, and thus be enabled to write the exercises at the close of the section.

The verbs are printed in italics. The learner should endeavor to find out what verbs are irregular, and this he can easily do by referring to the alphabetical list (see 221, a) of irregular, defective, and impersonal verbs of the three conjugations.* Every verb not found in this list is regular.

The meaning of the words will be found in the vocabulary at the end of the volume. Every word which is varied by inflection is to be sought in its first form; that is, a noun plural must be reduced to its singular form; an adjective to its masculine form, or if it be plural and feminine, to its singular, or singular masculine. Thus, if the word be *riquísimas*, it will be perceived from the termination, *ísimas*, that it is a superlative form of the feminine plural of some adjective; reducing it then to the masculine singular, it will be *riquísimo*, and then removing its superlative ending, and remembering the change which takes place in adjectives that end with *co* (see 108, b), it will be found that *riquísimas* is derived from *rico*. And so with other parts of speech that are subject to inflection. All the persons of verbs used in this First Section will be found in the Vocabulary.

Reference will frequently be made to some preceding paragraph of this work, and the pupil being thus obliged to refer to the specific rules so often, can hardly fail to learn them even without much seeming effort.

The learner is expected to begin to translate these Reading Lessons as soon as he shall have proceeded to page 86, in Part II. He can be committing to memory at the same time the irregular verbs.

---

* In this list the learner will find a reference either to the conjugation of the verb itself, or to the conjugation of one of similar irregularities. Thus the verb *preferir*, to prefer, is irregular, and by seeking it in the list (under the third conjugation, as it ends in *ir*) it will be seen that it is to be conjugated like *sentir* (see 209).

I.—SHORT SENTENCES.

El virtuoso[1] *ama* á[2] Dios. El mundo *abunda* en lazos, dificultades y peligros. *Debemos*[3] *sufrir* con paciéncia las incomodades de esta vida. Los males de esta vida *son* momentáneos; los bienes de la otra eternos. La[4] ambicion *aumenta* los muchos trabajos, y *disminuye*[5] los pocos placeres que se *hallan*[6] en el mundo. Las perezosos[1] *son* inútiles á la[4] sociedad. Cada uno *tiene* sus[7] quehaceres. Una ciudad que *esta*[8] puesta sobre un monte, no se[9] *puede*[10] *esconder*. Nádie *es* sin pecado. El conocimiento, que *tenemos* de Dios en esta vida, *es* imperfecta. La[4] sabiduría y la[4] modéstia *son* tan apreciable como la[4] locura y la[4] desfachatez *son* despreciable. Lo que[11] *es* própio en uno, *es* impróp io en otro. Dios *recompensará* á[2] los buenos[1] y *castigará* á[2] los malos.[1] Los mansos[1] *heredarán* la tierra.

El que[12] no *es* agradecido, no *puede*[10] *ser* bueno. Si alguna virtud *puede*[10] *neutralizar* los efectos de la[4] sobérbia, *es* ciértamente la[4] humilidad. Cada hora *es* un paso hácia el túmulo. Lo bueno[13] *es* perferible á lo[13] hermoso. El hombre virtuoso[14] *es amado* de[15] todos.[16] Los verdaderos amigos *deben*[3] *amar*se y *servir*se unos á otros.[17] La[4] paciéncia y la[4] diligéncia *remueven* montañas. No *es* oro todo lo que[18] *reluce*. Nádie *puede*[10] *dar* mas de[19] lo que *tiene*. Todo[20] *tiene* fin[21] en este mundo. Ninguno *puede*[10] *servir* á[2] dos señores. Todo[22] árbol bueno[14] *lleva* buenos

---

I.—[1] See 102.—[2] See 670.—[3] *Deber*, before an infinitive, means "*ought*." See 316, *c*; and 326, *f*.—[4] See 628.—[5] See 165.—[6] *Se hallen*, "*are found*." See 173.—[7] *Sus* here means "*his own*."—[8] See 335, *b*.—[9] See 116, *a*. *Esconderse*, "*to hide itself*," or passively, "*to be hidden*." See 173.—[10] *Puede*, before an infinitive, is to be rendered "*can*."—[11] See 125, *b*.—[12] See 125, *c*.—[13] See 263, *a*.—[14] See 264.—[15] See 323, *b*.—[16] *Todos*, "*every body*." See 133.—[17] *Amarse y servirse unos á otros*, "to love themselves and serve themselves some to others," that is, "*to love and serve one another*."—[18] See 131.—[19] See 270.—[20] *Todo*, "*every thing*." See 133.—[21] *Fin*, "an end." See 242.—[22] *Todo*, used with a noun in the singular, generally means "*every*." See 133.

frutos, y el mal[23] árbol *lleva* malos frutos. El que[12] *siembre* poco, *cogerá* poco. Para[24] *coger*, *es* necesário *sembrar*. La[4] ira *convierte* al[2] hombre en una fiera. Una burla picante[14] *es* la ponzoña de la[4] amistad. El momento actual[14] *es* el único[25] que nos[26] *pertenece*. El que[12] *es*[27] mal hijo ó hermano malévolo, jamás *merece* el nombre de amigo. Si los malos[1] se *unen*[6] para[24] *hacer* mal,[28] ¿ porqué no se *reunirán*[6] los buenos[29] para[24] *obrar* bien ?[30]

II.—SPANISH AND ENGLISH.

¿ *Habla*[1] V. Español ?[2] *Hablo*[3] un poco. ¿ Lo[4] *entiende*[1] ese caballero ?[5] No lo[4] *entiende*.[1] Algo[6] lo[4] *entiendo* y *hablo*. *Es*[7] una léngua muy útil y hermosa. La pronunciacion del Español *es* mucho mas fácil que la[8] del Ingles. ¿ *Habla* V. Ingles ? Mas *entiendo* de[9] lo que *hablo*. La léngua inglesa *es* muy dificultosa para los Españoles. ¿ Me[10] *habla* V. ? *Hable*[11] V. clara[12] y distintamente.[12] No *entiendo* bien[13] el Español. No *entiendo* lo que[14] V. *dice*.

III.—THE WEATHER.

¿ Qué tal[1] tiempo[2] *hace* ?[3] *Hace*[3] un tiempo hermosísimo. ¿ *Ha cambiado* el viento ?[4] El viento *ha caido*. El tiempo[2] *amenaza* llúvia. El cielo *está*[5] nublado. ¿ *Oye* V. el trueno ? *Está*[6] granizando. *Empieza* á[7] *nevar*. *Hace*[3] mucho viento. El tiempo[2] se *despeja*.[8] La nieve se *der-*

---

[23] See 101.—[24] See 326, *c*.—[25] *Unico*, "*only one*."—[26] *Nos*, "*to-us*." See 114 and 113.—[27] See 243.—[28] *Mal* is here a noun.—[29] See 575.—[30] *Bien* is here a noun.

II.—[1] See 611.—[2] *Español* is an adjective, and agrees with *idioma* (masc.) understood.—[3] See 113, *a*.—[4] See 113 and 117.—[5] See 575.—[6] *Algo*, "*somewhat*," "*some little*."—[7] *Es*, "*it-is*." See 220.—[8] See 616.—[9] See 270.—[10] See 114 and 113; also 611.—[11] See 309, *f*.—[12] See 354, *a*.—[13] See 351, *b*.—[14] See 125, *b*.

III.—[1] *Qué tal*, "*what sort of*," "*how*." See 478, *a*.—[2] *Tiempo*, "*weather*."—[3] See 218, *c*.—[4] See 575.—[5] See 335.—[6] See 335, *c*.—[7] See 326, *a*. [8] *Se despeja*, "*clears up*." See 284, *e*.

rite.[9] La nieve que *cayó*[10] esta mañana, *ha suavizado* mucho[11] el tiempo. *Hace*[3] buen[12] tiempo.[2] *Hace*[3] mal[12] tiempo. *Relampaguéa.*[13] *Truena.*[13] Toda el día *lloverá.*[13]

IV.—THE SEASONS.

La[1] primavera *es* la estacion mas[2] agradable. La[1] naturaleza *sónrie* en primavera. Toda la[1] naturaleza se *anima.*[3] La estacion *es* muy adelantada. *Temo* que *tengamos* un verano muy caluroso este año. La cosecha *será* muy abundante. El otoño *es* la estacion de los frutos. Los dias se *han acortado*[3] mucho.[4] Las hojas *amarillean* y *empiezan* á[5] *caer.* Las mañanas y las tardes *son* ya frías. Las noches *son* largas. Se *acerca*[6] el invierno.[7] No me *gusta*[8] el invierno.[7] Este invierno *es* muy frío.

V.—THE COUNTRY.

Mañana[1] *salgo* para[2] *ir* al campo. El campo *tiene* para mí un atractivo singular.[3] Mucho[4] *sentiría*[5] yo *pasar* en la ciudad la estacion mas[6] hermosa del año. ¡Cuán[7] puro y saludable *es* el aire del campo! Ese paséo *es* muy agradable. Ahora *vayamos* por este caminito. *Sentémonos*[8] sobre la yerba. *Entremos*[9] en este bosque. *Vamos*[10] por este sendero; *es* el camino mas[6] corto para[2] *volver* á casa.[11] *Veremos* una cascada y un lago. ¿No *oye* V. la dulce melodía de las aves? Estos árboles *hacen* bella sombra.

---

[9] See 284, *e.*—[10] See 165.—[11] See 351.—[12] See 101.—[13] See 216.

IV.—[1] See 628.—[2] See 268.—[3] See 173.—[4] See 351.—[5] See 326, *a.*—[6] See 284, *e.*—[7] See 575.—[8] This means literally, "*winter pleases me not,*" and is equivalent to "*I do not like winter,*" in English. See 344 and 485.

V.—[1] *Mañana,* "*to-morrow.*"—[2] See 326, *c.*—[3] See 264.—[4] See 351.—[5] *Sentiría yo,* "*I should-be sorry.*" See 315 and 526.—[6] See 268.—[7] See 478, *a.*—[8] See 309, *b.*—[9] See 309, *f.*—[10] See 204.—[11] *A' casa,* "*at home,*" or "*home.*" See 240.

VI.—A JOURNEY.

¿ Qué espécie de camino *hay*[1] de aquí á Nueva-York? El camino *es* casi impractable en esta estacion. ¿ Se *hallan*[2] buenas posadas en el camino? *Son* en general muy malas. ¿ Qué carruage *puedo tomar* de aquí á Nueva-York? *Puede* V.[3] *ir* por el camino de hierro,[4] ó por el barco de vapor.[5] *Puede* V.[3] *tomar* el corréo. *Prefiero viajar* por el ferro-carril.[4] *Prefiero viajar* por la diligéncia. ¿ Cuánto se *paga*[6] por[7] asiento? No *llevaré* mas que[8] una maleta. ¿ *Es* seguro el camino?[9] Sí, señor; *es* muy frecuentado. ¿ Cuántos dias se *necesitan*[10] para[11] *hacer* el viaje? ¿ *Hay*[1] en el camino ciudades notables?[12] ¿ *Es* ancho ó angosto el camino?[9]

VII.—MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES.

Acostumbráos[1] á[2] *imitar* las acciones de los virtuosos. Nunca *envidieis*[3] la dicha agena.[4] Siempre *debes*[19] *aliviar*[19] al[5] infortunado. No levantarás falso testimónio contra tu prójimo. *Contempla*[6] á[7] esos hombres sublimes[8] cuya conducta *es* la mejor[9] prueba de la grandeza moral[3] del género humano,[8] y *procura imitar*los.[1] Si *puedes cultivar*[19] tu ingénio y no lo[10] *haces*, *faltas* á[11] un deber sagrado.[8] En todos tus estúdios *trata* de[12] *unir* á un discernimiento tranquilo[3] una grande penetracion, la[13] paciéncia para la[13] análisis y

---

VI.—[1] See 218.—[2] See 173.—[3] See 575.—[4] *El camino de hierro*, literally "*the road of iron*," that is, "*the rail-road.*" "*El ferro-carril*" also means "*the rail-way.*"—[5] *Barco de vapor*, "*boat of steam*" (see 97, *a*), that is, "*steam-boat.*" *Vapor* is also often used for "*steamer*" or "*steam-boat.*"—[6] *Se paga*, "*is paid*," or, "*is to be paid.*" See 173.—[7] See 234, *a*.—[8] *Mas que*, "*more than.*" *No mas que*, "*no more than*," "*only.*"—[9] *¿ Es el camino seguro?* is the order in which these words are to be translated. See 575.—[10] See 173.—[11] See 326, *c*.—[12] See 264.

VII.—[1] See 116 and 116, *b*.—[2] See 326, *a*.—[3] See 309, *a*.—[4] See 134, *c*.—[5] See 670.—[6] *Contempla* is in the imperative mood, 2d pers. sing.—[7] See 670.—[8] See 264.—[9] See 265 and 265, *a*.—[10] See 287 and 287, *a*.—[11] *Faltar á*, "*to fail in.*"—[12] *Tratar de*, "*to aim at*," "*to manage to.*"

la[13] constáncia en la[13] sintesis. La[13] sociedad *sería*[14] ménos viciosa si cada cual *enfrenase*[15] su desarreglada ambicion y sus inquietudes. *Sé*[16] liberal en *dar*[17] todo género de asisténcia al[18] que la *necesita*. Si *quieres ser*[19] justo, no *aborrezcas* á[7] nádie.[20]

Remark.—After the learner shall have carefully translated the preceding Lessons, and examined the rules of Syntax and construction referred to in the notes, he should again translate all the Lessons by writing each sentence in good English, enclosing the references to rules in parentheses. Then, without looking at the Spanish Reading Lessons, he should endeavor to re-translate his English written sentences into Spanish, comparing and correcting only with the Reading Lessons after the whole Section is thus translated and re-translated. The following exercise, taken from sentences in the First Reading Lesson, will indicate the manner in which he should form his English translation.

EXERCISE.—*To be translated into Spanish.*

The virtuous man (102) loves God (670). The world abounds in snares, difficulties, and dangers. We ought (note 3, Lesson I.) to (326, f) suffer with patience the inconveniences of this life. What (125, b) is proper in one is improper in another. Nobody is without sin. The idle (102) are useless to society (628). Every one has his own business (*quehaceres*). A city that is (335, b) placed upon a mountain can (*puede*) not be hid (116, a; 173). God will reward (670) the good (102) and will punish (670) the wicked (102). Ambition (628) augments the many troubles (*trabajos*); diminishes (165) the few pleasures which are found (173) in the world. The meek (102) shall inherit the earth. Every (132) hour is a step towards the tomb. The good (263, a) is preferable to the beautiful (263, a).

SECOND SECTION.

Remark.—The Reading Lessons in this Section contain sentences somewhat more complicated than those in the former Section. The verbs are printed in italics. The persons of verbs used in this Section will be found in the Vocabulary. Care has been taken to select such reading matter as may be comparatively easy of translation, and at the same time useful in illustrating many idiomatical expressions.

---

[13] See 628.—[14] See 315.—[15] See 314.—[16] *Sé*, "*be-thou.*" See *Remark*, page 44.—[17] *En dar*, "*in-giving.*" See 298, *a*, and 327.—[18] *Al que*, "*to him who.*" See 129, *b*, and 291, *a*.—[19] See 326, *f*.—[20] See 352, *a*.

VIII.—GAINING AND LOSING.

Un escritor frances[1] *decía*[2] que solamente se *había visto*[3] arruinado dos veces[4] en su vida; la primera *fué* cuando *perdió* un pleito, y la segunda cuando *ganó* otro.

IX.—A GOOD REASON FOR WRITING A LONG LETTER.

Escribió un amigo[1] á otro una carta muy estensa, y al *concluir*[2] le[3] *decía*: "No *estrañes*[4] que te *escriba*[5] una carta tan larga, porque no *he tenido*[6] tiempo para *hacer*la[7] mas corta."

X.—REWARDING A DULL WRITER.

Una rica señora que *ha muerto*[1] recientemente en Lóndres, *legó* en su testamento mil[2] libras esterlines á un autor ingles,[3] para *recompensar* las horas de sueño que en momentos de desvelo la[4] *habían proporcionado*[5] sus obras.

XI.—EARLY RISING.

Un yanki *ha hecho*[1] el cálculo de lo que *vale*[2] *levantar*se[3] temprano. "En vez[4] de *dormir*[5] hasta las ocho,"[6] *dice* el calculista, *levánte*se[7] un hombre á las seis[6] de la mañana, y si durante cuarenta años *hace*[8] esto mismo,[9] *gánará* viente mil horas, lo cual[10] *será* equivalente á un aumento de diez años de vida, que *podría emplear* un hombre[11] en estúdios muy importantes.

VIII.—[1] See 264.—[2] See 302.—[3] *Se había visto*, "*he had seen himself.*" See 284 and 305.—[4] *Dos veces*, "*two times*," i. e., "*twice.*" *Veces* is the plural of *vez*. See 95, *a*.

IX.—[1] See 575.—[2] *Al concluir*, "*on closing;*" see 298, *b*.—[3] *Le*, "*to-him.*" See 114, *b*.—[4] See 309 *a*.—[5] See 311.—[6] See 160.—[7] *Hacerla*, "*to make it.*" *La* refers to *carta*. See 116.

X.—[1] *Ha muerto*, "*has died*," or in better English, "*died.*"—[2] See 248.—[3] See 264.—[4] *La*, "*her.*" See 114, *a*.—[5] See 305.—[6] See 575.

XI.—[1] *Ha hecho*, "*has made.*"—[2] *Vale*, "*it avails.*"—[3] See 665.—[4] *En vez*, "*instead.*"—[5] See 327.—[6] See 280.—[7] *Levantese un hombre*, "*let a man rise.*" See 665, and 309, *f*.—[8] *Hace*, "*does.*"—[9] *Esto mismo*, "*this same,*" "*the same.*"—[10] See 124, and 117.—[11] See 575.

XII.—A SINGULAR EDICT.

El emperador de todas las Rúsias *ha mandado publicar* recientemente un edicto en el cual[1] se *exige*[2] de todos los funcionários públicos[3] que *posean*[4] una fortuna, *manifiestan*[5] esplicitamente de que manera[6] la[7] *han obtenido.* Si esto[8] se *hiciera*[9] en todas partes—¡ Dios nos *asista* !![10]

XIII.—PERIODICALS IN THE UNITED STATES.

En ningun[1] pais del mundo se *publican*[2] tantos periódicos ni en tantos idiomas distintos[3] como en los Estados Unidos. Esto *es* el efecto de la ilimitada libertad que *goza* la imprenta.[4] En esta República se *han publicado*[2] periódicos nacionales,[3] ingleses,[3] franceses,[3] españoles,[3] italianos,[3] alemanes ;[3] y en la actualidad se *ha establecido*[2] un noruego.[4]

XIV.—SAGACITY OF A DOG.

El perro de un mercader en las inmediaciones de Vera-Cruz, *recibió* dias pasados[1] una herida en una oreja. Su dueño le *llevó* inmediatamente á casa[2] de un químico que le *aplicó* un remédio, *vendándo*la[3] en seguida.[4] Tres dias[5] se *repitió*[6] la misma operacion, pero el cuarto, *viendo* el perro[7] que su amo *tardaba* algo mas de lo regular[8] en *ir*[9] á *llevar*le, se *fué* solo á la botica, *saltó* sobre el mostrador y allí *estuvo* hasta que se le *hizo*[6] la operacion necesária, y sin *aguardar*[9] mas á[10] que su amo le *acompañase*,[11] *continuó*

XII.—[1] See 124.—[2] See 173.—[3] See 264.—[4] See 311, *b.*—[5] See 314, *a.*—[6] *De que manera*, "*in what manner.*"—[7] *La*, "*it*," referring to *fortuna.*—[8] See 128, *a.*—[9] See 173 and 316.—[10] See 309, *f.*

XIII.—[1] See 101.—[2] See 173.—[3] See 264.—[4] See 575.

XIV.—[1] *Dias pasados*, "*in days past*," i. e., "*some days ago.*"—[2] See 240.—[3] *La* refers to *oreja.* See 116.—[4] *En seguida*, "*in the sequel;*" "*afterward.*"—[5] *Tres dias* "*for three days.*" The preposition is not generally used in such cases, in Spanish.—[6] See 173.—[7] In translating, the construction would be *el perro viendo.*—[8] *Algo mas de lo regular*, "*somewhat more (longer) than what is proper.*" See 263, *a*, and 270.—[9] See 327.—[10] See 554.—[11] See 314.

repitiendo sus visitas al boticário hasta que[12] *quedó* completamente *curado.*

XV.—THALES' SAGE ANSWERS.

Tháles Milésio[1] uno de los siete sábios[2] de Grécia, *preguntado*[3] cual *era* la cosa mas antígua,[4] *respondió* que *era*[5] Dios, porque Dios *ha* siempre *sido* ;[6]—cual *era* la mas bella,[7] *respondió* que el mundo,[8] porque *era* la obra de Dios ;—cual la mas grande, *respondió,* que el espácio,[8] que *comprende* todo ;[9]—cual la mejor ;[10] la virtud, *dijo* él, porque sin ella nada se *puede decir*[11] ni *hacer* de bueno ;[12]—cual la mas fácil ; la[13] de *dar*[14] consejos á otro ;—cual la mas difícil, la[13] de *conocer*se[15] á sí mismo,[16] *dijo* él.

XVI.—SIMPLICITY OF A CHILD.

"Mamá, *dáme*[1] un cuarto," *dijo* una niña que *entro* precipidamente en la sala de una casa donde nos *hallábamos*[2] dias pasados.[3]—"¿ Para qué ?" *preguntó* la madre.[4]—"Pára *dár*selo[5] á un niño que *está bailando*[6] allí en la calle miéntras su padre *toca*[7] la música en un cajon."—"¿ Cómo *sabes* que *es* su padre el que *toca*[7] ?"—"Lo *sé,*[8] porque los dos se *parecen*[9] mucho.[10] *Ven* mamá, *ven* al balcon y lo *verás.*"

---

[12] See 553.

XV.—[1] *Milésio, "the Milesian."* See 237.—[2] *Sábios, "wise men." "sages."* See 102.—[3] *Preguntado, "being asked."* See 300, *c.*—[4] See 268.—[5] *Era, "it was."*—[6] *Ha sido, "has been," "has existed."*—[7] *Bella* agrees with *cosa* understood.—[8] *Era* is understood.—[9] *Todo, "every thing."*—[10] See 265, *a.*—[11] *Nada se puede decir ni hacer de bueno, "nothing good can be said nor done."* See 116, *a;* and 173.—[12] See 134, *b.*—[13] *La, "that,"* referring to *cosa.* See 616.—[14] *De dar, "of giving."* See 327.—[15] *De conocerse, "of knowing one's self."* See 327.—[16] See 285, *b,* and 286. Literally, *"of knowing one's self to himself;" á sí mismo* being redundant in English.

XVI.—[1] *Dáme, "give me."* See 116.—[2] See 284, *a.*—[3] See XIV., note 1.—[4] See 575.—[5] *Dárselo, "to give him it."* See 116, and 284, *f. Se* would be considered redundant in English, as the object (*á un niño*) follows the verb. See 285, *c.*—[6] See 335, *c.*—[7] See 512.—[8] *Lo sé, "I know it."* See 192.—[9] See 464, and 284.—[10] See 351.

¡ *Salimos* á *ver* al[11] hombre con su hijo, y *era* nada ménos que un Italiano con su órgano y su mono!

XVII.—THE KINGS OF FORMER TIMES.

Todo[1] *muda* con el tiempo:[2] unas cosas para bien y otras para mal. Los Reyes *eran* en siglos pasados[3] muy distintos de lo que *son* ahora. En Aragon, cuando *regía* el fuero de Sobrarve, al tiempo de *investir*se[4] un monarca con la autoridad real,[3] y jurado la observancia de la constitucion á[5] nombre del pueblo, se le *decía*[6]: "Nos,[7] que *somos* mas y *valemos* mas que vos,[8] os *hacemos* Rey, si *observaredes*[9] nuestras leyes, y si non, non." Ahora *es* muy distinto, y sin *ser*[10] rey, ni[11] principe, un simple gobernador de Colonías, *grita* al pueblo desde su coche: "Canalla vil,[3] *quitá*os[12] el sombrero cuando yo *paso*, que[13] *soy* mejor que todos vosotros y *debeis obedecer*me y *besar* al polvo que *pisan* mis plantas."[14]

XVIII.—AN IRISHMAN'S CONJECTURE.

Dias pasados[1] *examinaba* un comerciante[2] los efectos que *acaba* de[3] *recibir*, y *halló* todo[4] en órden y corriente escepto un martillo que *faltaba* en un casco que *estaba* bien *cerrado*. Un criado irlandes[5] que no *sabía* á que *atribuir* la falta, *dijo rascándo*se la cabeza[6]: "*Vamos*, ya *sé* yo lo que *puede ser*." ¿Que *es*?[7] *replicó* el comerciante—"Que en la aduana

---

[11] See 325.

XVII.—[1] See XV., note 9.—[2] See 628.—[3] See 264. Also, XIV., note 1.—[4] *De investirse un monarca*, "*of a monarch's being invested.*" See 327 and 173.—[5] *A' nombre de*, "*in the name of.*"—[6] *Se le decía*, "*it was said to him.*" See 173, and 284, *d.*—[7] See 110, *a.*—[8] See 110, *b.*—[9] *Observaredes*, an obsolete form, for *observaréis*. See 224.—[10] See 327.—[11] See 401, *d.*—[12] *Quitáos el sombrero*, "*take-off to-you the hat.*" i. e., "*take-off your hats.*" See 116, b, and 122, *a.*—[13] See 552, *b.*—[14] See 575.

XVIII.—[1] See XIV., note 1.—[2] See 575.—[3] *Acaba de recibir*, "*had just received.*" See 337.—[4] *Todo*, "*every thing.*"—[5] See 264.—[6] See 122, *a.*—[7] *Es*, "*is-it.*"

no[8] *tendrían* martillo para[9] *abrir* el casco y *examinar*lo, y *sacaron* uno para *desclavar* la tapa."

XIX.—THE FORCE OF SHAME.

Una jóven irlandesa *escribió* á su amante *pidiéndo*le una cantidad de dinero, y al pié de la carta *añadió* la siguiente posdata: "Me *dá*[1] tanta vergüenza de *pedir*te[2] este favor, que mandé[3] al momento[4] en busca del criado que *llevó* la carta al corréo, pero mi hermanito[5] no *pudo alcanzar*lo[6] para *evitar* que la *echara*[7] en la posta."

XX.—AN ACCOMMODATING WIFE.

Los papeles de Baltimore *han hecho* graciosos comentários sobre una escena que *llamó* la atencion general[1] en aquella ciudad á princípios del presente mes. Un holandes *compró* un barril de harina, y su muger lo[2] *llevó* á cuestas[3] desde el almacen hasta su casa, miéntras que[4] el marido *iba* "muy fresco" detras de ella, *fumando* su pipa.

XXI.—AN INVENTION OF QUESTIONABLE UTILITY.

Un yanki *acaba* de *inventar*[1] un jabon para *afeitar*[2] con el uso del cual *es* innecesária la navaja,[3] pues *asegura* que con *aplicar*lo[4] á las barbas *caen* estas[3] al momento.[5] La única dificultad que *encuentra* un amigo[3] del inventor en *adoptar*[6] para su uso el tal[7] jabon *es*, que juntamente con las barbas *arranca*[8] el pellejo.

---

[8] See 626.—[9] See 326, *c*.

XIX.—[1] *Me dá*, "*it gives me.*"—[2] *De pedirte*, "*to ask thee.*" See 326, *b*.—[3] *Mandé*, "*I gave orders.*"—[4] *Al momento*, "*immediately.*"—[5] See 256.—[6] *Lo;* see 287, *b*, and 116.—[7] See 316.

XX.—[1] See 264.—[2] See 287, *b*, and 113.—[3] *A' cuestas*, "*on her back*" or "*shoulders.*"—[4] See 553.

XXI.—[1] See 337.—[2] *Un jabon para afeitar*, "*a soap for shaving*," i. e., "*shaving-soap.*" See 327.—[3] See 575.—[4] See 327, and 287, *b*.—[5] See XIX., note 4.—[6] See 327.—[7] *El tal jabon*, "*the said soap.*"—[8] *Arranca*, "*it tears off.*"

Remark.—The Reading Lessons in this Section should now be carefully translated into English, as directed at the close of the former Section; and then afterward re-translated into Spanish. By this method, the words and their meaning, as well as the phrases, idioms, and forms of construction used in Spanish, will become impressed on the memory of the learner. He should not attempt to translate any of the succeeding Reading Lessons till he can readily translate the preceding Lessons from Spanish into English, and then from English into Spanish.

THIRD SECTION.

Remark.—If the learner has carefully read and re-read the preceding Lessons, and examined the rules referred to in the notes, he will have already learned so well many of these same rules, that farther reference to them will seldom be necessary in his future reading. Thus, for instance, he must now know that in Spanish an adjective more frequently is placed after, than before, the noun which it qualifies;—that pronouns of the first-objective case are placed after, and joined to, infinitives, imperatives (when not negative) and gerunds; that nouns used in a general or absolute sense take the definite article before them;—that active verbs govern the noun which is the object of the action, with the preposition *á*, if this noun expresses a rational being, or personified object, etc.

As the learner is expected, by the time he shall have proceeded thus far, to be able to conjugate the regular, and many of the irregular verbs without difficulty, only the present infinitive of such verbs as may be used hereafter will be given in the Vocabulary at the end of the work. Reference will be made in the notes to such irregularities of verbs as might occasion any difficulty on the part of the pupil.

All the Lessons of this Section are taken from "DEBERES DE LOS HOMBRES," a work originally written in Italian, by Silvio Péllico, and translated into Spanish by Manuel Galo de Cuéndias.

XXII.—FILIAL AFFECTION.

Nuestros primeros y mas[1] naturales amigos *son* nuestros padres[2]; ellos[3] *son* los seres[4] á quien más[5] *debemos*[6]; para

---

XXII.—[1] *Mas* here means "*most*." The superlative is formed without the definite article, when a possessive pronoun precedes *mas;* thus, *es mi mejor amigo*, "he is my *best* friend;" *es nuestro mas cruel enemigo*," he is our *most cruel* enemy."—[2] *Padres* in the plural means "*parents*."—[3] See 283, *a*, latter clause.—[4] *Seres* is the plural of the noun *ser*.—[5] *Mas*, "*most*."—[6] *Debemos*, "*we owe*."

con[7] ellos *estamos obligados*[8] del[9] modo mas[10] sagrado, á[11] gratitud, respeto, amor, é indulgéncia, y á las mas amorosas demostraciones de estos sentimentos.

Nuestra grande[12] intimidad con las personas que nos *tocan* de mas cerca,[13] *puede acostumbrar*nos fácilmente á *tratar*las con indiferéncia y sin *procurar*[14] *hacer* su existéncia agradable: *guárda*te[15] de[16] *adquirir*[14] tamaño defecto. Si *quieres ennoblecer*te, con precision[17] *has* de[18] *ornar* tus acciones y afectos con aquella elegáncia y exactitud de que *son* susceptibles.

¡Triste de aquel[19] que *censura* la conducta de sus padres[2]! ¿Quién *compadecerá* á[20] un hombre que no es caritativo, y *falta* de indulgéncia para con[7] su padre y madre? *Sea*[21] siempre tu conducta para con[7] ellos un modelo de amenidad, un ejemplo de dulzura; sirva[22] tu vista para *consolar*les y *reanimar* su alegría. No lo *dudes;* cada acto de indulgéncia ó bondad de tu parte,[23] cada palabra de amor salida de[16] tu boca, *es* una flor que *siembras*[24] en su camino hácia la tumba, una bendicion para tí, pues te *bendecirán*, y siempre *sanciona* Dios las bendiciones que un padre ó una madre *derraman* sobre un hijo reconocido.

---

[7] See 402.—[8] See 322, *a.*—[9] *Del modo*, "*in a manner.*"—[10] See 268.—[11] The meaning of this passage is, "*with regard to them we are obligated in a manner most sacred, to gratitude,*" etc., that is, "*under obligations to show gratitude,*" etc.—[12] See 101, *a.*—[13] *Tocar de cerca*, means "*to concern nearly,*" "*to be nearly related,*" and this clause is to be rendered "*with the persons who are most nearly related to-us*" (*nos*).—[14] See 327.—[15] When any person of the imperative mood is spelled in the same manner as some person of a tense in another mood, care must be taken to judge from the context which mood is meant. *Guárda* may be found in the 2d pers. of the imperative, or in the 3d pers. of the present indicative. Here it is in the imperative. *Guárdate*, "*keep thyself.*" See 284, *a.*—[16] *De*, "*from.*"—[17] *Con precision*, "*with necessity,*" "*necessarily.*"—[18] See 339.—[19] See 407.—[20] See 670.—[21] *Sea siempre tu conducta*, "*let thy conduct always be.*" See 309, *f.*—[22] *Sirva tu vista*, "*let thy presence serve.*" See 309, *f.*—[23] *De tu parte*, "*on thy part.*"—[24] *Siembras* irregular from *sembrar*.

XXIII.—RESPECT FOR OLD AGE.—AN ANECDOTE.

Una de las leyes de la antígua Sparta *exigía*, que los jóvenes *cediesen*[1] el paso á los ancianos, se *levantasen*[2] cuando una persona de edad se *acercaba*,[3] y que *callasen*[1] cuando *hablaba* un mayor.[4] Lo que la ley *mandaba* en Sparta, *mándelo*[5] entre nosotros la decéncia.

Tal *es* la bellaza moral[6] de este obséquio, que[7] aun los que no le *practican*, *sienten*[7] dentro de sí gran[8] respeto por los que *acostumbran* á *practicar*le, y se *hallan* como *forzados* á *aplaudir*los.

Un Ateniense, *cubierto* de[9] canas y *cargado* de[9] años, *buscaba* puesto[10] en los juegos olímpicos[6]; pero las gradas del anfiteatro *estaban* llenas y no le[11] *hallaba*. Unos jovenzuelos[12] de Aténas le *hicieron* señas de *acercar*se,[3] y, el anciano *cediendo* á su invitacion, *llegó* con gran[8] dificultad hasta ellos; mas[13] estos, en vez de[14] *acoger*le cual *debieran*,[15] se *burlaron*[16] de[17] él. *Empujado* de una parte á otra, *llegó* casualmente al[18] sítio *ocupado* por los Spártanos; y estos, fieles á las sagradas costumbres de su pátria, se *levantan*[16] respetuosamente y le *colocan* entre sí. Un vivo aplauso se *oyo*[19] en todo el anfiteatro; y los mismos[20] Atenienses que poco ántes[21] *habian escarnecido*[22] la vejez,[23] se *hallaron impelidos* á *estimar* á[24] sus generosos[25] émulos. El anciano *esclamó*: "Los Atenienses *conocen* las[23] buenas acciones; los Spártanos las *practican*."

XXIII.—[1] See 314.—[2] See 284, *e*, and 314.—[3] See 284, *e*.—[4] See 575.—[5] *Mandelo*, etc., "*let propriety demand it among us.*" See 309, *f*. *Lo* (*it*) would be redundant in English.—[6] See 264.—[7] *Sienten*, irregular from *sentir*.—[8] See 101, *a*.—[9] *De*, "*with.*" See 399.—[10] *Puesto*, "*a place*," "*a seat.*"—[11] *Le*, "*it*," referring to *puesto*.—[12] See 256, last clause.—[13] *Mas* here is a conjunction, meaning "*but.*" See 359.—[14] *En vez de*, "*instead of.*"—[15] *Cual debieran*, "*as they ought.*" See 104, *b*, and 316.—[16] See 288, *e*.—[17] See 330.—[18] *Al*, "*at the.*" See 378.—[19] See 173.—[20] See 286, *a*.—[21] *Poco ántes*, "*a little while before.*"—[22] See 305.—[23] See 628.—[24] See 670.—[25] See 264, *a*.

XXIV.—FRIENDSHIP.

¡Bien[1] aventurado el hombre feliz[2] que *halla*[3] un digno amigo! *Abandonado* á sus própias fuerzas, su virtud *flaqueaba*, pero el ejemplo y la aprobacion del amigo le *fortifican;* solo, *desanimado* é[4] *inclinado* á mil[5] defectos, *ignoraba*[6] su fuerza *desconociendo* su mérito; pero el aprécio del amigo le *realza* á sus própios ojos. Mil[5] veces, *avergonzado* secretamente de nó *poseer* el mérito que la indulgéncia del amigo le *supone*, *lucha*, se *vence* y *llega* á[7] *conseguir*le; el amigo *conoce* sus buenas prendas, y su corazon se *halla* satisfecho; y he aquí,[8] que, grácias[9] á la amistad, *avanza* á pasos[10] de gigante hácia la perfeccion[11] un hombre[12] que, sin ella, *estaba* y *hubiera estado*[13] siempre léjos de[14] *ser*[15] virtuoso.

XXV.—READING AND STUDY.

Si *puedes*[1] *cultivar* tu ingénio, y no lo *haces*, *faltas* á[2] un deber sagrado.[3] La instruccion[4] te *hará* mas capaz, mas digno de *honrar*[5] á[6] Dios y de servir[5] á[6] tu pátria, mas apto á *ser* útil á tus amigos y parientes. *Aplíca*te á *aprender* cuanto[7] *estúdies*[8] lo mas[9] profundamente que te[10] *sea* posible y no *pierdas*[11] de vista que los estúdios superficiales no *producen* mas que[12] hombres de poco mérito, que, *con-*

XXIV.—[1] See 351, *b*.—[2] See 264.—[3] See 325, *a*.—[4] See 226, *a*.—[5] See 248.—[6] *Ignoraba*, "*he-was-ignorant of*."—[7] See 341.—[8] *He aquí*, "*behold*." See 406, *a*.—[9] *Grácias á la amistad*, "*thanks to friendship*."—[10] *A pasos*, "*with the steps*," or, "*at the speed*" *of a giant*. See 331.—[11] See 628.—[12] *Hombre* is nominative to *avanza*. See 575.—[13] See 318, and 318, *a*.—[14] *Léjos de*, "*far from*."—[15] See 327.

XXV.—[1] *Puedes*, irregular from *poder*. See 189.—[2] *Faltar á*, means "*to fail in*."—[3] See 264.—[4] See 628.—[5] See 327.—[6] See 325.—[7] *Cuanto*, "*as much as*," "*whatever*."—[8] See 321, *a*.—[9] *Lo mas*, "*the most*." *Lo mas* is generally used as the superlative before adverbs.—[10] *Te*, etc., "*to-thee may-be possible*."—[11] *No pierdas de vista*, "*do not lose sight*." See 309, *a*. *Pierdas* is from the irregular verb *perder*.—[12] *Mas que*, preceded by *no*, means "*no more than*," "*only*."

vencidos[13] interiormente de su nulidad, se *reunen* con otros tan[14] despreciables como ellos, para *aturdir* al[15] mundo *gritando* que *son* grandes y que los verdaderamente sábios *son* pequeños; de aquí[16] *nacen* las perpétuas guerras del pedante contra el hombre instruido, y del charlatan sofista contra el verdadero filósofo.

Si *quieres*[17] que la lectura te *deje*[18] impresíones duraderas, *dice*[19] Séneca, *limítate*[20] á pocos autores que, llenos de sano juício, *nutran* tu inteligéncia: *estar* en todas partes *es* como[21] no *estar* en ninguna,[22] y el hombre que *pasa* su vida *viajando conocerá* muchos posaderos, pero pocos amigos. Tal *es* el caso de[23] los que *leen* precipitadamente: *leen* muchos libros, pero no *comprenden* ninguno.[22]

Cualquiera que[24] *sea* la ciéncia ó arte á que te *aficiones guárdate* de[25] un vício demasiado[26] comun, esto es, de *ser*[5] tan[27] esclusivo que *desprecies* las[28] que no *conoces*. Las preocupaciones de ciertos poetas contra la prosa,[4] las[29] de los prosadores contra la poesía,[4] las[29] del naturalista contra el metafísico, las[29] del matemático contra el filósofo, no *son* mas que[12] puerilidades.

XXVI.—SELECTING A PROFESSION.

Todos los estados, desde el[1] mas sublime hasta el[1] del mas humilde artesano, *tienen* en sí[2] cierta[3] dulzura y dignidad; y *basta querer ejercer*los con integridad y *practicar* las virtudes que cada uno de ellos *exige* para *ser* feliz.

Cuando *hayas escogido*[4] prudamente una carrera, no te

---

[13] See 300, *c.*—[14] See 104.—[15] See 325.—[16] *De aquí*, "*hence.*"—[17] *Quieres*, irregular from *querer.*—[18] *Te deje*, "*may-leave to-thee.*"—[19] *Dice*, irregular from *decir.*—[20] See XXII., note 15.—[21] *Es como no estar*, etc., "*is as* (*the same as*) *not to be in any.*"—[22] See 622.—[23] *De*, "*with.*"—[24] See 131, and 311, *c.*—[25] *De*, "*from.*"—[26] *Demasiado* before an adjective means "*too.*"—[27] See 104, *b.*—[28] *Las*, "*those*," referring to *ciéncias ó artes.*—[29] See 616.

XXVI.—[1] See 616.—[2] *En sí*, "*in themselves.*"—[3] See 264, *c.*—[4] See 317.

dejes[5] *dominar*[6] por un vano arrepentimiento ni *tengas*[7] la debilidad de[8] *cambiar*la. Todos los caminos de la vida *tienen* espinas: cuando *hayas puesto*[9] el[10] pié en uno[11] *prosígue*le[12] con valor; el[13] *mudar es* flaqueza. Siempre *es* bueno *persistir* escepto en el crimen.[14] Solo el que *sigue*[15] su carrera con constáncia *puede esperar*[16] *llegar*[16] algun[17] dia á *señalar*se entre los demas[18] hombres.

XXVII.—OUR AMBITION SHOULD BE RESTRAINED.

La sociedad[1] *sería*[2] ménos viciosa si cada cual *enfrenase*[3] su desarreglada ambicion y sus inquietudes. Empero no por eso[4] *debemos ser* perezosos ni apáticos, no: la ambicion[1] *puede ser*nos[5] útil; pero la única[6] que le[7] *es permitido* al hombre[7] sensato,[8] es la que le *hace aspirar* á cosas nobles, y esta no *es* interesada ni envidiosa, y se *contenta* con lo[9] necesário. *Consuéla*te[10] con pensar,[11] que, si no *llegas* á aquel alto grado que *creías merecer*,[12] aun en el que[13] te *hallas*, *eres* el mismo[14] hombre y *tienes* el mismo[14] mérito. Lo[9] esencial no *es* que nuestro mérito *sea recompensado;* lo mas esencial[15] *es tener* mérito.

XXVIII.—REPENTING OF AND ACKNOWLEDGING OUR FAULTS.

El hombre que dice; "mi educacion moral[1] ya *esta*

---

[5] *No te dejes*, "*do not suffer thyself.*" See 309, *a.*—[6] See 327, *d.* "*Suffer not thyself to be mastered.*"—[7] *Ni tengas*, "*nor do-thou have.*" See 309, *a.* *Tengas*, irregular from *tener.*—[8] *De*, "*to.*"—[9] *Puesto*, irregular participle, from *poner.* See 317.—[10] See 122.—[11] *Uno* refers to *camino.*—[12] *Prosigue*, irregular from *proseguir.* See 116.—[13] See 251, and 298, *b.*—[14] See 628.—[15] *Sigue*, irreg. from *seguir.*—[16] See 326, *f.*—[17] See 101.—[18] *Los demas*, "*the rest of.*"

XXVII.—[1] See 628.—[2] See 315.—[3] See 314.—[4] *No por eso*, "*not on this account.*"—[5] *Sernos*, "*be to-us.*"—[6] *La única;* here *ambicion* is understood.—[7] *Le*, "*to-him.*" *Le* would be here redundant in English. See 285, *b;* 285, *c.*—[8] See 264.—[9] See 263, *a.*—[10] *Consuelate*, "*console thyself.*" See XXII., note 15. *Consuele*, irregular from *consolar.*—[11] See 327.—[12] See 327, *c.*—[13] *Aun en el que*, "*yet in that in which.*"—[14] See 286, *a.*—[15] *Lo mas esencial*, "*that which is most essential.*"

XXVIII.—[1] See 264.

hecha,[2] mis obras la *han corroborado*," se engaña. Siempre *debemos aprender*, siempre *regularizar* nuestras obras; tanto[3] en lo presente como[3] para lo futuro, nuestra virtud *debe ser* activa y *crear* cada dia nuevos actos meritórios.[1] Continuamente *debemos tener* presentes[4] nuestros faltas y *arrepentir*nos[5] de ellas.

Cuando *conozcas*[6] *haber cometido*[7] una falta, *repára*la inmediatemente y sin rubor; solamente así se[8] *tranquilizará* tu conciência.[9] *Sé*[10] pronto en *reparar*[11] tus culpas si no *quieres*[12] *encadenar* tu alma al mal[13] con vínculos mas y mas fuertes cada dia y *acostumbrar*la á *despreciar*se.[14] ¡Desgraciado el hombre que *llega* á[15] *despreciar*se interiormente! ¡Desgraciado de[16] él cuando *finge* que se *estima*, y al[17] mismo tiempo *siente*[18] en el fondo de su conciência el gusano roedor que le *acusa!*

XXIX.—GRATITUDE.

Si nuestro deber *es ser* corteses[1] y benéficos[1] con todo el mundo; si nuestra benevolénciа *debo ser* general; con cuanta mas razon *debemos manifestar* estos sentimientos con los que nos[2] *han dado*[3] pruebas de compasion, amistad ó indulgéncia.

Muchos se *irritan* al *ver*[4] que el que los *favoreció* se[5] *enorgullece*, y *creen* que el envanecimiento del bienhechor *basta* para *dispensar*les de[6] *ser* agradecidos. Si tu bienhechor se[5] *envancce;* si se *alaba* de[7] *haber*te *hecho* favor;

---

[2] See 322, *a*. *Hecha*, irregular participle from *hacer*.—[3] See 368, *b*.—[4] *Tener presentes*, "*to have present*," "*to have before us*."—[5] See 284, *e*.—[6] *Conozcas*, irreg. from *conocer*.—[7] See 327, *c*.—[8] See 173.—[9] See 575.—[10] *Sé*, "*be-thou*." See *Remark* after 117.—[11] See 298, *a*.—[12] *Quieres*, irreg. from *querer*.—[13] See 628.—[14] *Despreciarse*, "*to despise itself*," referring to *alma*.—[15] See 341.—[16] See 407.—[17] *Al mismo tiempo*, "*at the same time*."—[18] *Siente*, irreg. from *sentir*.

XXIX.—[1] *Corteses* is in the plural, because it refers to *nosotros* understood.—[2] *Nos*, "*to us*."—[3] *Han dado*, from *dar*. See 304.—[4] *Al ver*, "*on seeing*," "*at seeing*." See 298, *b*.—[5] See 284, *e*.—[6] *De*, "*from*."—[7] *De haber*e, etc., "*for having done thee a favor*."

si no *tiene* contigo[8] la delicadeza que *debiera*[9]; si solo *fué* generoso por interes, no por eso[9] te[10] *es permitido* á ti[10] el[11] *condenar*le. No, amigo; al contrário,[12] *cubre*[13] sus defectos con el velo de tu agradecimiento. *Acuérdate*[14] del[15] beneficio que de[6] él *recibiste* y *considera* que jamas te[16] *será permitido*[17] *olvidar*le,[18] aun cuando para *pagar*le,[18] le *hayas hecho*[19] mil.[20]

XXX.—PARDON TO ENEMIES.

Si te *sucediere*[1] *tener*[2] enemigos no te[3] *turbes*. Nádie[4] hay,[5] por[6] humilde, sincero, é[7] inofensivo que *sea*,[8] que *esté* libre de envidiosos. Tal *es* la envidiosa naturaleza de algunos desgraciados,[9] que no *pueden vivir* sin *escarnecer*,[10] *degradar* y *acusar*[10] falsamente á[11] cualquiera que[12] *goze*[13] de[14] alguna reputacion.

Perdona[15] franca[16] y sinceramente[16] á[11] los infelices[9] que te *hacen* ó *quieren*[17] *hacer*te mal: "*perdona*les[15] no siete veces," *dice*[18] el Salvador, "sino setenta veces siete," esto *es*, sin fin.

Perdonando una ofensa, se *puede cambiar*[19] en[20] amigo un enemigo, un perverso en[20] hombre de bien.[21] ¡Cuan[22] bello, cuan consolador *es* tamaño triunfo! ¡Cuan[22] superior en grandeza á todas las horribles victórias de la venganza[23]! Y ¿qué *perderás* aun cuando tu enemigo

---

[8] See 115, *c*.—[9] *Debiera*, "*he-ought*." See 316. See XXVII., note 4.—[10] See 285, *b*.—[11] See 298, *b*.—[12] *Al contrário*, "*on the contrary*."—[13] *Cubre*, "*cover-thou*," "*conceal-thou*."—[14] *Acuerdate*, "*remember*." See 284, *e*.—[15] See 330.—[16] *Te*, "*to-thee*."—[17] See 322.—[18] *Le*, "*it*," referring to *beneficio*.—[19] *Hecho*, irreg. participle from *hacer*. See 317.—[20] See 248. This clause means, "*thou mayest have done him a thousand (favors)*."

XXX.—[1] *Si te sucediere*, "*if it should happen to thee*." See 319, and 220.—[2] See 325, *a*.—[3] See 309, *a*, and 284, *a*.—[4] See 622.—[5] See 218, and 218, *a*.—[6] See 478.—[7] See 226, *a*.—[8] See 311, *c*.—[9] See 102.—[10] See 327.—[11] See 325.—[12] See 131.—[13] See 311, *c*.—[14] See 330.—[15] See XXII., note 15.—[16] See 354, *a*.—[17] *Quieren*, irreg. from *querer*.—[18] *Dice*, irreg. from *decir*.—[19] See 116, *a*.—[20] *En*, "*into*." See 387.—[21] *Hombre de bien*, "*a man of worth*," "*an honest man*."—[22] See 478, *a*.—[23] See 628.

fuese[24] irreconciliable? ¿ *Puedes perder* algo *siendo* bueno? ¿ No *gozaste*[25] la mayor alegría? ¿ No te[26] *conservaste*[25] magnánimo, digno de tí y[27] del aprécio de los hombres de bien?[21]

FOURTH SECTION.

Remark.—None of the words contained in the Lessons of this Section will have the marked accent placed over the accented vowel, except such as are usually to be found thus marked in Spanish reading-matter. If the learner should meet with any difficulty about the accentuation, he can turn to the Vocabulary, in which he will find every word with the proper syllable accented.

XXXI.—NO HEREDITARY TITLES IN THE UNITED STATES.

En los Estados Unidos no *hay* distincion de gerarquías ni noblezas que se *hacen* tan[1] chocantes en los paises monárquicos.[2] En los Estados Unidos *es* noble todo[3] hombre[4] honrado, laborioso y recto en sus principios, aunque *sea* el hijo de un zapatero ó de un labrador. Un hombre de honradez, de probidad, y de sentimientos nobles,[2] *puede aspirar* al primer puesto de la nacion lo mismo[5] que á la mano de la primera dama; miéntras que un príncipe ó un rey que *venga*[6] á esta República, aunque *sea* el primero del[7] mundo, con tal que[8] no se *porte* noblemente, *seria despreciado* por todos y no podria[9] *obtener* ni el aprecio de lo que se *llama*[10] una persona de la medianía en un pais monárquico.[2] En fin,[11] en pocas partes del mundo se[12] *aprecian tan*[1] justamente las buenas cualidades de un hom-

---

[24] *Fuese*, irreg. from *ser*. See 314, and 321, *a*.—[25] See 303.—[26] *Te*, "*thyself*." See 284, *a*.—[27] *Digno de tí*, "*worthy of thyself*."

XXXI.—[1] See 104, *b*.—[2] See 264.—[3] See I., note 22.—[4] *Hombre* is nominative to *es*.—[5] See 335, and 335, *d*.—[6] *Venga*, irreg. from *venir*.—[7] *Del mundo*, "*in the world*." See 387, and 387, *c*.—[8] *Con tal que*, "*provided that*." See 321, *c*.—[9] *Podría*, irreg. from *poder*. *Por todos*, "*by every body*."—[10] *De lo que se llama*, "*with which is regarded*." *Persona* is nominative to *llama*. See 575, and 173.—[11] *En fin*, "*in fine*;" "*finally*."—[12] See 173.

bre como en los Estados Unidos; pero tambien en los Estados Unidos *es*[13] donde se *señalan*[14] mas[15] pronto en público las faltas[16] ó las bajezas[16] de una persona, *sea*[17] quien *fuere*[18]; desde el Presidente hasta el último jornalero: todos *son* iguales en ese caso.

XXXII.—INCREASE OF POPULATION IN THE UNITED STATES.

Las diferentes estadísticas de la poblacion de esta República desde 1800 hasta 1848, *presentan* curiosos datos, que *merecen consignar*se[1] á la posteridad. *Parecerá*[2] increíble que en menos de[3] cincuenta años se[1] *haya aumentado*[4] la poblacion[5] casi cinco[6] tantos mas de[3] lo que *era* al *empezar*[7] el presente siglo. En 1800 *contaban* los Estados Unidos[5] con solos 5,305,900. Los que *temen* no *llegar* á *ver* el fin del presente siglo se *han ocupado* en *hacer*[8] cálculos de proporcion para *averiguar* cual *podrá*[9] *ser* el guarismo que *señalará* en 1900 la poblacion de los Estados Unidos, y *juzgando* que *haya*[10] un aumento semejante, en proporcion, al que *ha habido*[11] desde 1790 hasta 1840, se *cree*[12] que dentro de cincuenta y dos años *contará* esta República[5] con 96,000,000 de habitantes. El numero *es* bastante *crecido*, y tal vez[13] no *sería* dificil *llegase*[14] á *completar*se[1] pero nadie *sabe* como[15] *estarán arreglados* las cosas[1] del mundo dentro de cincuenta años, y cuantas revoluciones y guerras *ocurriran* que *trastornen* todos los planes y *dividan* la Union Americana en muchos pedazos. Por nuestra

---

[13] *Es*, "*it is.*" *Es* should here be translated immediately after *pero.*—[14] See 173.—[15] *Mas*, "*most.*"—[16] See 575.—[17] *Sea*, "*let him be.*" See 309, *f.*—[18] *Quien fuere*, "*who he may be.*" *Fuere*, irreg. from *ser.* See 319, and 311, *a.*

XXXII.—[1] See 173.—[2] *Parecerá*, "*it will-appear.*"—[3] See 270.—[4] See 317.—[5] See 575.—[6] *Casi cinco tantos mas*, "*almost five times more.*"—[7] See 298, *b.*—[8] *En hacer*, "*in making.*" See 298, *a.*—[9] *Podrá*, irreg. from *poder.*—[10] *Haya*, "*there-may-be.*" See 218, *a.*—[11] *Ha habido*, "*there has been.*" See 218, and 167.—[12] *Se cree*, "*it is believed.*" See 173.—[13] *Tal vez*, "*perhaps.*"—[14] See 314, *a.*—[15] *Como*, "*how.*" See 478, *a.*

parte solamente *deseamos* que *pueda*[16] *conservar*se[1] largos años en harmonía, para que nuestros nietos *logren ver* tiempos mas venturosos de[3] los que *alcanzaremos* nosotros.[5]

XXXIII.—THE MAGNETIC TELEGRAPH.

Hace[1] mucho tiempo[2] que[3] *habíamos oido*[4] la especie de que la aplicacion de la electricidad á la telegrafia *era* invencion de un Español, pero no *habíamos podido*[5] *obtener* los datos indispensables, y por este motivo *hemos guardado*[6] silencio hasta ahora que se[7] nos[8] *han facilitado* los pormenores[9] de mas[10] importancia. Por ellos *vemos* pues que Don Francisco Sabrá *leyó*[11] á fines[12] del siglo pasado en la Academia de Ciencias de Barcelona una memoria sobre la aplicacion de la electricidad al telégrafo, y *presentó* al mismo tiempo[13] un telégrafo eléctrico de su propia[14] invencion, el cual[15] *fué ensayado*, con gran éxito, por Cárlos IV. y Fernando VII. en presencia del Príncipe de la Paz, quien *trató* de[16] *poner*lo en planta, y se *anunció* en la Gaceta de Madrid[18] el dia 29 de Noviembre de 1796. Poco tiempo despues se *propuso*[19] el Infante Don Antonio *hacer* otro mas[20] completo para *poner*le en operacion, pero las convulsiones políticas[21] le *impidieron atender*[22] debidamente á ello, y así *quedó* el proyecto, hasta que[23] treinta años despues *ha venido*[24] el Señor Morse[9] á *tratar* el asunto, *hacer* algunas mejoras, y *poner* al fin[25] en prática el invento *ensayado* en España *hace*[1] mas de[26] cincuenta años.

---

[16] *Pueda*, "*it-may*;" from *poder*; "*it*," referring to *la Union*.

XXXIII.—[1] See 218, *c.*, and 522.—[2] See 522.—[3] See 304, *b.*—[4] See 305. *Oido*, from *oir*.—[5] See 305.—[6] *Hemos guardado*, "*we have kept*."—[7] See 115, *b*, and 173.—[8] *Nos*, "*to us*." See 114.—[9] See 575.—[10] *Mas*, "*most*."—[11] *Leyó*, from *leer*. See 165.—[12] *A' fines*, "*at the end*."—[13] *Al mismo tiempo*, "*at the same time*."—[14] *Su propia*, "*his own*."—[15] See 124, *c.*—[16] *Tratar de* means "*to aim to*," "*to attempt*."—[17] See 173.—[13] See 391, *f.*—[19] *Propuso*, irreg. from *proponer*. *Se propuso*, "*proposed to-himself*."—[20] *Mas*, "*more*."—[21] See 264.—[22] See 326, *f.*—[23] See 553.—[24] See 304.—[25] *Al fin*, "*at length*."—[26] *Hace mas de cincuenta años*, "*more than fifty years ago*." See 436; also 270.

XXXIV.—THE FIRST STEAMBOAT.

No *sabemos* por qué motivo *debe dar*sele[1] á Fulton toda la gloria y el honor de *haber sido*[2] el primero que *puso*[3] en movimiento un buque *impelido* por el vapor.[4] En los archivos públicos[5] de Barcelona *consta*[6] por documentos fidedignos[5] que "el dia 17 de Junio de 1543, Don Blasco de Garay *ensayó* por[7] primera vez en presencia[7] del Emperador Cárlos V. en Barcelona, y en la corte de Felipe segundo, la aplicacion del vapor[4] á un pequeño barco *construido*[3] al efecto." Por los documentos que *existen* en Barcelona se *vé*[9] pues que *hace* mas de[10] trecientos años que[11] Blasco de Garay *hizo*[12] el ensayo de *mover* un buque por vapor, *logrando* su objeto; y Fulton que mucho tiempo[13] despues *puso*[3] en planta el invento se *lleva*[14] toda la gloria y todo el renombre. Desgraciadamente la España *ha perdido* el honor de *ser* la primera en dos grandes invenciones—la aplicacion de la electricidad[4] al telégrafo, y la[15] del vapor[4] á la navegacion[4]—por la poca proteccion que *daban* los reyes[16] á las ciencias en tiempos que[17] las demas potencias Europeas, envidiosas del brillo y engrandecimiento de España, no *perdonaban* medio alguno[18] para *inquietar*la y *tener*[19] siempre *distraidos*[19] á sus gobernantes.[20]

XXXV.—WASHINGTON. [Written Feb. 22, 1847.]

El dia de hoy[1] *es* uno de los que jamás *deberan borrar*se

---

XXXIV.—[1] *Darsele*, "*to give itself to-him*," that is, "*to be given to him*." See 116, 115, *b*, and 173; also 285, *c*.—[2] *De haber sido*, "*of having been*." See 327.—[3] *Puso*, irreg. from *poner*.—[4] See 628.—[5] See 264.—[6] *Consta*, "*it is evident*."—[7] See 240.—[8] *Construido al efecto*, "*built for the purpose*."—[9] *Se vé*, "*it is seen*." See 173.—[10] *Hace mas de*, "*it-is more than*." See 522, and 270.—[11] *Que*, "*since*." See 394, *c*.—[12] *Hizo*, irreg. from *hacer*.—[13] *Mucho*, "*long*." See 486.—[14] *Se lleva*, "*gains for himself*."—[15] See 616.—[16] See 575.—[17] *Que* is here used in the sense of "*when*."—[18] See 527, and 134, *a*.—[19] See 300, *b*.—[20] See 325.

XXXV.—[1] *El dia de hoy*, "*this very day*;" "*to-day*."

de[2] la memoria de los Norte-Americanos: el 22 de Febrero, dia[3] memorable por los recuerdos que nos *trae;* dia[3] de ventura y de regocijo, porque en él *vió* la primera luz el héroe[4] de la libertad Americana; el padre[5] de su pátria: el inmortal Washington.

*Envanézcan*se[6] en buen hora[7] las antiguas naciones[8] con sus héroes y sus guerreros, *convertidos* en[9] crueles tiranos. *Ensalce*[10] la orgullosa Francia[8] á su ambicioso Napoléon; pero *¿ hay*[11] una sola nacion del[12] mundo que *haya producido*[13] un héroe como[14] Jorge Washington? [15] Dia de bendicion y de ventura *fué*[16] para los Norte-Americanos aquel[16] en que *nació* el gran[17] hombre cuyo aniversario *recordamos* hoy. ¡ Raro portendo de fidelidad patriótica[18] *fué* Washington! A'ngel salvador[18] que *destinó* el cielo[19] á *libertar* del[2] yugo opresor[18] de la esclavitud[20] á[21] unos hombres que *gemian* bajo el rigor de los mismos[22] que *debieran protejer*los. *Nació* Washington, y con su nacimiento *dió*[23] Dios[8] á los oprimidos súbditos de la Gran Bretaña un hermano que les *indicase*[24] el medio de *quebrantar* las fuertes cadenas de bárbara opresion. *Nació* Washington, y *ocultándo*se para siempre el sol sangriento[18] de la esclavitud, *apareció* dulce y apacible la brillante aurora de gloriosa libertad.

Washington, que desde la edad de veinte años *manifestaba* ya su firmeza y lealtad; Washington, que durante su vida no *cesó* de[25] *afanar*se por *lograr* la felicidad eterna de su amada pátria, *murió*[25] *hace* ya medio siglo[27]; pero no

---

[2] *De*, "*from.*"—[3] See 237.—[4] See 575.—[5] See 237, *a.*—[6] See 309, *f.*—[7] *En buen hora*, "*at a proper time.*"—[8] See 575.—[9] *En*, "*into.*" See 387.—[10] See 309, *f.*—[11] *Hay*, "*is-there?*" See 218, and 218, *a.*—[12] *Del mundo*, "*in the world.*"—[13] See 317, and 311, *b.*—[14] *Como*, "*like.*"—[15] *Dia*, "*a day.*"—[16] *Aquel*, which follows, is nominative to *fué.*—[17] See 101, *a.*—[18] See 264.—[19] See 575; also 628.—[20] See 628.—[21] See 670.—[22] *Los mismos que*, "*the very ones who.*"—[23] *Dió*, irreg. from *dar.*—[24] See 314, and 314, *b.*—[25] *De*, "*from.*"—[26] *Murió*, irreg. from *morir.*—[27] *Hace ya medio siglo*, "*a half a century ago.*" See 522; also 218.

ha muerto[26] ni *morirá* jamás[28] en la memoria de sus hijos y de sus hermanos. En cada corazon amante[29] de la verdadera libertad *tiene erijido*[30] un altar donde se[31] *venera* el nombre glorioso de Jorge Washington.—E. J. Gomez.

XXXVI.—PEDRO LOPEZ DE AYALA.

Este escritor *nació* en noble cuna, *fué* señor de Salvatierra en la provincia de Alava, y descendiente de la nobilísima casa de Alaro. Ayala *fué* canciller mayor de Castilla, y *vivió* en los reinados de don Pedro el justiciero, *llamado* el Cruel, de Enrique II., Juan I., y Enrique III. Los cuatro reyes que *acabo* de *nombrar*,[1] *apreciaron* sus talentos como escritor y como político, y su valor como soldado. Sus talentos se *mostraron* en la direccion y arreglo de los muchos y difíciles negocios que sus soberanos le *confiaron*, y en sus crónicas de Pedro el Cruel, y otros escritos cuya pureza y elegancia *prueban*[2] su mucho y sano gusto en la cultura de las letras. Y harto *probó* su valor en las batallas de Najera y Aljubarrota, en donde *fué hecho* prisionero. Ayala *murió*[3] en 1407, de edad de setenta y cinco años, en Calahorra. Los apologistas del rey don Pedro *dicen*[4] falsa la crónica de Ayala, y que este *fué apasionado* de[5] don Enrique II. Zurita y otros *dicen* al contrario, que Ayala *fué* verdadero, desapasionado y sincero historiador.—M. Galo de Cuendas.

XXXVII.—MIGUEL DE CERVÁNTES.

Nada *diré* de los escritos ni del mérito literario[1] de Cervántes. Dos siglos y todas las naciones de Europa le *han*

---

[23] See 352, *a*, and 352, *b*.—[29] See 470.—[30] See 300, *b*.—[31] See 173.

XXXVI.—[1] *Acabo de nombrar*, "*I have just named.*" See 337.—[2] *Prueban*, irreg. from *probar*.—[3] *Murio*, irreg. from *morir*.—[4] *Dicen*, irreg. from *decir*; "*call false the chronicles.*"—[5] See 323, *b*.

XXXVII.—[1] See 264.

juzgado ya. Solo *diré* cuatro palabras[2] de su vida, sus desgracias y su miseria.

Miguel de Cervántes Saavedra *nació* en Alcalá de Henares[3] el 9 de Octubre de 1547, de padres nobles, aunque mal[4] acomodados en bienes. *Fué* discípulo[5] en letras humanas[1] del maestro Juan Lopez de Hoyos. Su primera inclinacion *fué* por la poesía,[6] en que jamas *pudo*[7] *sobresalir*. Casi *muerto* de[8] hambre en 1563 *pasó* á Italia, y se *acomodó* por[9] camarero del cardenal de Aguaviva, y en 1570 se *alistó* en las banderas del duque de Palliamo, que Pio V. *había nombrado* general de sus tropas. Cervántes se halló en la desgraciada espedicion de Chipre, y en la batalla de Lepanto que *tuvo*[10] lugar en 1597; en esta última *perdió* la[11] mano izquierda. Despues de *haber dejado* el ejército papal,[1] se *alistó* en las tropas de Nápoles, y *sirvió*[12] con valor en ellas hasta el año 1575, época[13] en que *pasando* de Nápoles á España, *fué hecho* cautivo por el famoso corsario argelino[1] Arnuante Mami.

Miéntras cautivo en Argel, *dió* Cervántes[14] innumerables y nada equívocas[15] pruebas de su indómito valor, de su heróica paciencia y aun de su inconcevible osadía. *Fué* en fin[16] *rescatado* en 1580 y 1581, *volvió* á España, en donde[17] de nuevo se *obstinó* en *escribir* versos, aunque *vió* el poco ó ningun suceso de sus tentativas. *Casó*se en Esquivia con doña Catalina Palacios de Salazar en 1584, y las dificultades de su posicion se *aumentaron* con este matrimonio. Entónces *fué* cuando *escribió* hasta treinta come-

---

[2] *Cuatro palabras*, literally "*four words*," meaning "*a word or two*;" "*a few words*."—[3] *Alcalá de Henares, the name of a town in Spain.*—[4] *Mal*, adverb, "*badly*;" "*poorly*."—[5] See 243.—[6] See 628.—[7] *Pudo*, irreg. from *poder*.—[8] *Casi muerto de*, "*almost dead with*." See 330, *c*.—[9] *Por*, "*for a*;" "*as a*." See 385, and 385, *f*.—[10] *Tuvo lugar*, "*took place*." *Tuvo*, irreg. from *tener*.—[11] See 122.—[12] *Sirvió*, irreg. from *servir*.—[13] See 244.—[14] See 575.—[15] *Nada equívocas*, "*in no degree equivocal*." *Nada* is here an adverb.—[16] *En fin*, "*at length*.—[17] *En donde*, "*wherein*;" "*where*."

dias que *pudieran llamar*se malísimas, si el respeto que se *debe*[13] al grande ingenio del autor de don Quijote no lo *impidiese*.[19] Pocos años despues, *escribió* sus novelas, Persiles y Sigismunda, y el nunca bastante alabado, leido y admirado don Quijote de la Mancha. El ilustre autor de don Quijote, hoy tan estimado del[20] mundo entero, *arrastró* casi hambrienta vida, hasta el 23 de Abril de 1616 en que *murió*,[21] por Sevilla, Valladolid, y Madrid en donde[17] *falleció*. Acaso *hubiera muerto*[22] de[20] miseria sin los socorros del conde de Lemos y de algunos otros, aunque pocos, protectores. Cervántes *fué* á la vez[23] la gloria de España y el oprobio de su siglo, puesto que[24] este le *desconoció* y aun le *insultó*.—M. Galo de Cuendas.

XXXVIII.—EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF SPAIN.

La peninsula, *llamada* España, sola *esta* contigua al continente de Europa por el lado de Francia, de[1] que la *separan* los montes[2] Pirinéos. *Es* abundante en oro, plata, azogue, hierro, piedras, aguas minerales, ganados de escelentes calidades, y pescas tan abundantes como deliciosas. Esta feliz situacion la *hizo*[3] objeto[4] de la codicia de los Fenicios y otros pueblos. Los Cartagineses, parte[5] por dolo, parte[5] por fuerza, se *establecieron* en ella; y los Romanos *quisieron*[6] *completar* su poder y gloria con la conquista de España; pero *encontraron* una resistencia, que *pareció* tan estraña como terrible á los soberbios dueños de lo restante[7] del mundo. Numancia, una sola ciudad, les *costó* catorce años de sitio, la pérdida de tres ejércitos, y el desdoro de los famosos generales, hasta que *reducidos* los Numanti-

---

[13] *Se debe*, "*owes itself*;" "*is due*."—[19] See 314. *Impidiese*, irregular from *impedir*.—[20] See 323, *b*.—[21] *Murió*, irreg. from *morir*.—[22] See 318, and 318, *a*.—[23] *A la vez*, "*at times*."—[24] *Puesto que*, "*since*."

XXXVIII.—[1] *De*, "*from*."—[2] See 575.—[3] *Hizo*, irreg. from *hacer*.—[4] *Objeto*, "*an object*."—[5] *Parte*, "*partly*."—[6] *Quisieron*, irreg. from *querer*.—[7] See 263, *a*.

nos[8] a la precision de *capitular*[9] ó *morir*,[9] por la total ruina de la patria, corto número de vivos,[10] y abundancia de cadáveres en las calles (sin *contar*[9] los que *habian servido* de pasto[11] á sus conciudadanos despues de[12] *concluidos* todos sus víveres[12]) *incendiaron* sus casas, *arrojaron* sus mujeres, niños, y ancianos en las llamas, y *saliéron* á *morir* en el campo raso con las armas en la[13] mano. El grande Escipion *fué* testigo de la ruína de Numancia; pues no *puede llamar*se propiamente conquistador de la ciudad: *siendo*[14] de *notar*, que Luculo, *encargado* de[15] *levantar*[9] un ejército para aquella espedicion, no *halló* en la juventud romana reclutas que[16] *llevar*, hasta que el mismo[17] Escipion se *alistó* para *animar*la.[13]

Si los Romanos *conocieron* el valor de los Españoles como enemigos, tambien *esperimentaron* su virtud como aliados. Sagunto *sufrió* por ellos un sitio igual al de[19] Numancia contra los Cartagineses, y desde entónces *formaron* los Romanos de los Españoles el alto concepto que se *vé*[20] en sus autores, oradores, historiadores, y poetas. Pero la fortuna de Roma, superior al valor humano, la *hizo*[3] señora de España, como de lo restante[7] del mundo, ménos[21] algunos montes de Cantabria, cuya total conquista no *consta* de la historia.[22] Largas revoluciones, inútiles de *contar*se[23] en este paraje, *trajeron*[24] del[1] norte enjambres de naciones feroces, codiciosas y guerreras, que se *estableciéron* en España: pero, con las delicias de este clima, tan diferente del[25] que *habían dejado*, *cayeron*[26] en tal grado de afemina-

---

[8] *Reducidos los Numantinos*, "*the Numantians being reduced.*" See 300, *c.*—[9] See 327.—[10] *De vivos*, "*of those alive.*"—[11] *De pasto*, "*for food.*"—[12] The meaning is, "*after all their provisions being exhausted.*" —[13] See 122.—[14] *Siendo de notar*, "*it being proper to note.*"—[15] *De*, "*with.*" See 399.—[16] See 326, *e.*—[17] See 286, *a.*—[18] *La*, "*it*," referring to *espedicion.*—[19] *Al de*, "*to that of.*" See 129, *c.*—[20] *Se vé*, "*is seen.*" See 173.—[21] See 360.—[22] See 628.—[23] *De contarse*, "*of being narrated.*" See 327, and 173.—[24] See 194.—[25] *Del*, "*from that.*" See 291, *a.*—[26] See 165.

cion y flojedad, que á su tiempo[27] *fuéron* esclavos de otros conquistadores, *venidos*[23] del[1] mediodia. *Huyeron*[29] los Godos-Españoles[30] hasta los montes de una provincia, hoy *llamada* Asturias; y apénas *tuvieron*[31] tiempo de[32] *desechar*[9] el susto, *llorar* la pérdida de sus casas, y ruina de su reino, cuando *salieron mandados* por Pelayo, uno de los mayores hombres que la naturaleza[22] *ha producido.*

Desde aquí se *abre*[33] un teatro[2] de guerras que *duraron* cerca de ocho siglos. Varios reinos se *levantaron*[33] sobre la ruina de la monarquía Goda-Española, *destruyendo*[34] el que *querian edificar* los Moros[35] en el mismo terreno, *regado* con mas sangre española, romana, cartaginesa, goda y mora de[36] cuanto se *puede ponderar*[37] con horror de la pluma que lo *escriba*, y de los ojos que lo *vean escrito.*[38] Pero la poblacion de esta península *era* tal, que despues de tan largas guerras y tan sangrientas, aun se *contaban*[33] veinte millones[2] de habitantes en ella. *Incorporáron*se tantas provincias,[2] y tan diferentes en dos coronas, la[39] de Castilla y la[39] de Aragon; y ámbas en el matrimonio de Don Fernando y Doña Isabel, príncipes que *serán* inmortales entre cuantos *sepan*[40] lo que *es* gobierno.[41] La reforma de abusos, aumento de ciencias, humillacion de los soberbios, amparo de la agricultura y otras operaciones semejantes, *formaron* esta monarquía. *Ayudóles* la naturaleza[2] con un número increible de vasallos insignes en letras y armas, y se *pudieron*[42] *haber lisonjeado* de *dejar*[9] á sus sucesores un imperio mayor y mas duradero, que el de[43] Roma antigua, (*contando* las Américas nuevamente

---

[27] *A su tiempo*, "*in their turn.*"—[23] *Venidos*, "*arrived.*"—[29] See 165.—[30] See 575.—[31] See 160.—[32] *De desechar*, "*for driving away.*"—[33] See 173.—[34] See 165.—[35] See 575.—[36] The meaning is, "*than what can be dwelt upon.*" See 270.—[37] See 173, 327, *d*, and 116, *a*.—[38] *Que lo vean escrito*, "*which may see it written.*" See 300, *a*.—[39] See 129, *c*.—[40] *Cuantos sepan*, "*as many as may know;*" "*whoever may know.*" See 321, *a*, and 192.—[41] *Lo que es gobierno*, "*what government is.*"—[42] See 189.—[43] See 616.

descubiertas), si *hubieran logrado*[44] *dejar* su corona á un heredero varon. *Nególes*[45] el cielo este gozo á trueque de[46] tantos como les *había concedido*, y su cetro *pasó* á la casa de Austria, la cual *gastó* los tesoros, talentos y sangre de los Españoles en cosas agenas de España, por las continuas guerras, que así[47] en Alemania, como[47] en Italia, *tuvo* que[48] *sostener* Cárlos Primero[2] de España, hasta que cansado de sus mismas[49] prosperidades, ó tal vez[50] *conociendo* con prudéncia las vicisitudes de las cosas humanas, no *quiso*[51] *esponer*se á sus reveses, y *dejó* el trono á su hijo Don Felipe II

Este príncipe, *acusado* por la emulacion, por ambicioso[52] y político como su padre, pero ménos afortunado, *siguiendo* los proyectos de Cárlos, no *pudo*[53] *hallar* los mismos sucesos aun á costa de[54] ejércitos, de armadas, y de caudales. *Murió dejando* á[55] su pueblo *estenuado* con las guerras; *afeminado* con el oro y plata de América; *disminuído* con la poblacion de un mundo nuevo; *disgustado* con tantas desgracias, y deseoso de descanso. *Pasó* el cetro[2] por las manos de tres príncipes ménos activos para *manejar* tan grande monarquía; y en la muerte de Cárlos Segundo no *era* España[2] sino el esqueleto de un gigante.—JOSÉ CADALSO.

XXXIX—CRITICS.

Hay una secta de sabios en la república literaria,[1] que lo[2] *son* á[3] poca costa: estos *son* los críticos. Años enteros, y muchos, *necesita* el hombre[4] para *saber* algo de las ciencias humanas, pero en la crítica[5] (cual[6] se *usa*) desde el pri-

---

[44] See 318, and 318, *a*.—[45] See 113, *a*.—[46] *A trueque de tantos como*, "*in exchange for as many as*."—[47] See 368.—[48] See 340, and 160.—[49] See 286, a.—[50] *Tal vez*, "*perhaps*."—[51] See 191.—[52] The meaning is, "*accused by emulation* (*by the emulous*) *as ambitious*." See 385, *f*.—[53] See 189.—[54] *Acosta de*, "*at the expense of*."—[55] See 325.

XXXIX.—[1] See 264.—[2] *Que lo son*, "*who are it*;" "*who are so*." See 287, *a*.—[3] See 378, *f*.—[4] See 575.—[5] *La crítica*, "*criticism*." See 628.—[6] *Cual se usa*, "*as it is employed*. See 104, *b*, and 173.

mer[7] dia *es* uno[4] consumado. *Sujetarse*[8] á los lentos progresos del entendimiento en las especulaciones matemáticas, en las esperiencias de la física, en las confusiones de la jurisprudencia, *es* no *acordarse* de la cortedad de nuestra vida, que por lo regular[9] no *pasa* de[10] sesenta años, *rebajando* de[11] estos los que *ocupa* la debilidad[4] de la niñez, el desenfreno de la juventud, y las enfermedades de la vejez. Se *humilla* mucho nuestro orgullo[4] con esta reflexion: el tiempo que *he* de[12] *vivir*, *comparado* con el que *necesito* para *saber*, *es* tal que apénas *puede llamarse*[13] tiempo. ¡Cuanto mas nos *lisongea* esta otra determinacion[4]! Si no *puedo* por el motivo dicho,[14] *aprender* facultad alguna, *persuado* al[15] mundo y á[15] sí mismo[16] que las *poseo* todas, y *pronuncio* "ex tripode[17]" sobre cuanto[18] *oigo*,[19] *veo*, y *leo*.

Pero no *creas*[20] que en esta clase se[13] *comprehenden* los verdaderos críticos.[4] Los[21] *hay* dignísimos de todo respeto. ¿Pues en qué se *diferencian*, y en qué se[13] *han* de[12] *distinguir*[22]? La regla fija para no *confundir*los *es* esta: los buenos *hablan* poco sobre asuntos determinados y con moderacion; los otros *son* como toros, que *forman* la intencion, *cierran*[23] los[24] ojos, y *arremeten* á cuanto[25] *encuentran* por delante,[26] hombre, caballo, perro, aunque se *claven* la espada hasta el corazon. Si la comparacion te *pareciere*[27] baja, por *ser*[28] de un ente racional con un bruto, *créeme* que no lo es tanto,[29] pues apénas *pueden llamarse*[13] hombres los que no *cultivan* su razon, y solo se *valen* de una especie de instinto que les *queda* para *hacer* daño á todo cuanto se

---

[7] See 101.—[8] *Sujetarse*, "*to subject one's self.*"—[9] *Por lo regular*, "*commonly;*" "*usually.*"—[10] *Pasar de*, "*to exceed.*"—[11] *De*, "*from.*"—[12] *Haber de.* See 339.—[13] See 173.—[14] *Dicho*, "*said;*" "*aforesaid.*" See 200.—[15] See 670.—[16] See 286.—[17] *Ex tripode*, a Latin phrase, meaning "*authoritatively.*"—[18] *Cuanto*, "*as much as;*" "*whatever.*"—[19] See 206.—[20] See 309, *a.*—[21] *Los*, "*those.*" See 616.—[22] See 116, *a.*—[23] *Cierran*, irreg. from *cerrar.*—[24] See 122.—[25] *Cuanto encuentran*, "*whomsoever they may meet;*" or, "*any body that they may meet.*"—[26] *Por delante*, "*in front;*" "*ahead.*"—[27] See 319.—[28] *Por ser*, "*for being.*"—[29] *No lo es tanto*, "*it is not so.*"

les *presente*[30] amigo ó enemigo, débil ó fuerte, inocente ó culpado.—José Cadalso.

XL.—AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE. [Written July 4th, 1847.]

Han transcurrido ya setenta y un años desde que[1] los Norte-Americanos *lograron sacudir* el yugo de la monarquía inglesa para *hacer*se verdaderamente independientes. Una guerra de siete años, que *costó* millares de vidas, *estableció* al fin[2] la libertad de un pais que *ha tenido* la buena suerte de no *abusar* de[3] la gloriosa condicion á que se *vió* al fin[2] elevado. Los patrióticos y denodados héroes de 1776 *juraron ser* libres ó *morir*, y así lo *cumplieron*. Muchos *murieron*[4] en la lucha desigual, pero al *espirar*[5] *vagaba* por sus labios una consoladora sonrisa que *decia* al opresor tirano: "*muero*[4] por[5] *libertar* á[7] mi patria, y *muero* contento!"

La primera sangre *derramada* en la guerra de la independencia, *enrojeció* las arenas de Lexington el 19 de Abril de 1775, pero no *fué vertida* inútilmente. Los ingleses *quemaron* y *destruyeron* pueblos y ciudades; se *ligaron* con los indios salvages para que[8] les *ayudaran*[9] á *asesinar* á[7] los hijos de las colonias que *resistian* la opresion, y la justicia de Dios *dió* el castigo merecido á la infamia y al despotismo. En medio de[10] los conflictos y reveses, el Congreso americano *publicó* el 4 de Julio de 1776 su Declaracion de Independencia.

En aquella época la Union Americana *era* una pequeña nacion, *compuesta*[11] de solos trece Estados; y *terminada* la guerra,[12] *establecida* su independencia[13] *fué elejido*[14] primer

---

[30] See 321, *a*.

XL.—[1] *Desde que*, "*since*." *Años* is nominative to *han transcurrido*. See 575.—[2] *Al fin*, "*at length*."—[3] See 330.—[4] Irreg. from *morir*.—[5] See 298, *b*.—[6] See 326, *d*.—[7] See 325.—[8] *Para que*, "*in order that*."—[9] See 316.—[10] *En medio de*, "*in the midst of*."—[11] *Compuesta*, irreg. participle from *componer*.—[12] See 300, *c*.—[13] Construct *su independencia establecida*, "*its independence being established*." See 300 *c*.—[14] *El jeneral Jorge Washington* is nominative to *fué elejido*. See 575.

Presidente de los Estados Unidos, en Abril de 1789, el jeneral[15] Jorge Washington. *Espirado* el término[16] de cuatro años, *volvió* á[17] *ser elejido* casi unanimemente por todos los americanos hasta que[18] en 1796 *pidió*[19] permiso para *retirar*se á la vida privada y *fué electo* segundo Presidente John Adams. En *aquella* época *contaba* la Union con una poblacion compuesta[11] de cinco millones de habitantes.

El motivo de esta guerra *fué* indudablemente la mas injusta agresion, y lo que *dió* orígen á ella *es* lo único que *puede justificar* una guerra desastrosa en la presente edad: la independencia nacional. Todo individuo *debe odiar* la matanza[20] y el esterminio,[20] pero al *tratar*se[21] de la independencia de una nacion, de la libertad de sus hijos, de los derechos de la patria; todo el que[22] *tenga*[23] sangre en las venas *debe correr* presuroso á *tomar* las armas para *repeler* y *esterminar* al[7] enemigo que *atenta* á *destruir* la nacionalidad ó á *usurpar* los derechos mas sagrados. Los héroes americanos de 1776 *serán inmortalizados*, y en los siglos venideros el nombre glorioso de Jorge Washington *será acatado* por las nacionas mas poderosas y *bendecido* por todo aquel que[22] *sepa*[24] *apreciar* la verdadera independencia. Washington no *fué* ambicioso como otros héroes de su siglo ó de siglos anteriores: su único deseo *era* el[25] de *libertar* á su patria del yugo opresor que se *iba haciendo*[26] cada dia mas insufrible con su tiranía. *Rompiéron*se las cadenas de hierro con que *pretendia* la Gran Bretaña *sojuzgar* á[7] un pueblo noble y generoso, y *lució* para la América un dia de gloria y de felicidad.

Setenta y un años *hace* hoy que[27] se *firmó* la declaracion

---

[15] See 233.—[16] See 300 *c*.—[17] *Volvio á ser elejido*, "*was again elected*." See 336.—[18] See 553.—[19] *Pidió*, irreg. from *pedir*.—[20] See 628.—[21] *Al tratarse de*, "*on attempting*."—[22] *Todo el que*, or, *todo aquel que*. See 288, *a*.—[23] *Tenga*. See 160, and 310, *b*.—[24] *Sepa*. See 192, and 310, *b*.—[25] See 616.—[26] *Se iba haciendo*, "*went making itself*," "*was becoming*."—[27] See 304, *b*.

de la independencia, y *véase*[28] el efecto que *ha producido* la libertad *conquistada.* En cincuenta años se *ha estendido* el dominio de la nacion independiente á cinco veces mas de[29] lo que *era* á fines[30] del siglo pasado: en cincuenta años se *ha cuadruplicado* su poblacion, y por todas partes se *manifiestan*[31] los beneficios de las instituciones que con su independencia *plantearon* los que *lograran romper* el yugo de la tiranía.—E. J. Gomez.

XLI.—A VISIT TO THE TOMB OF WASHINGTON.

La mañana del 23 de Junio de 1845 *amanecio*[1] clara y serena. Mansas y tranquilas *corrian* las aguas del Potomac y el vapor Jorge Washington se *separaba* lentamente del estremo del ferro-carril de Petersburg. La vista del rio *era* pintoresca y variada: por do quiera[2] *veíanse*[3] *cruzar* las pequeñas embarcaciones de los pescadores, y sobre ambas riberas se *divisaban* los estensos saladeros donde centenares de hombres se *ocupaban* en sus faenas, *preparando* para *embarrilar* la pesca de sus compañeros.

Mas todo esto no *era* suficiente para *distraer*me por un minuto entero de[4] la idea principal que *ocupaba* mi mente. Desde[5] mis primeros años *había leido*[6] la vida de Jorge Washington, y ya que[7] no *podia*[8] *conocer*le, al menos[9] *ansiaba ver* el lugar donde él *habia nacido*, y donde *reposaban* sus restos mortales. Impaciente *dirijía* á cada instante mi anteojo de larga vista[10] hácia la margen izquierda del rio, *buscando* ansiosamente un objeto que *debia distinguir*se á algunas leguas de distancia. Mis ojos *buscaban* á Mount-Vernon, el punto donde *vivió*, y donde *yace sepultado* el

---

[28] *Véase el efecto*, "*the result may be seen.*" See 173.—[29] See 270.—[30] *A fines*, "*at the end.*"—[31] *Manifiestan*, irreg. from *manifestar.*

XLI.—[1] *Amanecio*, "*dawned.*"—[2] *Por do quiera*, "*every where.*"—[3] *Veíanse*, "*were seen.*" See 173.—[4] *De*, "*from.*"—[5] See 386.—[6] *Había leido*, "*I had read.*"—[7] *Ya que*, "*since that;*" "*seeing that.*"—[8] *No podia*, "*I could not.*"—[9] *Al menos*, "*at least.*"—[10] *Anteojo de larga vista*, "*spy-glass,*" "*telescope.*"

hombre mas digno de admiracion que *ha producido* la América.[11]

Tal *era* mi impaciencia que á cada instante *preguntaba* á un anciano residente sobre la margen del rio que *navegabamos*, si *tardaria* mucho[12] en *verse*: con algun[13] desconsuelo *supe*[14] que *debiamos* aun *tardar*[15] algunas horas. De pronto[16] *divisamos* una ciudad *coronada* de[17] torres y elevadés cúpulas; *era* Alexandria. La detencion del vapor en ese punto me *impacientó* de tal manera[18] que ni siquiera[19] *tuve*[20] la curiosidad de *ecsaminar* el frente de la poblacion: al fin *continuamos* nuestro viage.

El sol *iba inclinándose*[21] pausadamente hácia el ocaso, cuando el anciano me *advirtió*[22] que *podria distinguir* los árboles que *cubren* al Mount-Vernon. Desde este momento no *separé* de allí mi vista, y cuando la procsimidad me *permitía distinguir* aquel lugar sin necesidad del anteojo, lo *contemplé estasiado, sumido* en un estraño estupor. De pronto[16] se *fijaron* mis ojos sobre las elevadas copas de los verdes árboles, y me *parecía distinguir* entre sus ramas *delineada* la figura de Washington con los brazos *cruzados* y la cabeza *descubierta*. La semejanza de esta idea con una representacion de Napoleon en Santa Elena, me *causó* algun disgusto, y *bajé* la vista hácia la habitacion que se *distinguia* al traves de[23] los árboles. Allí! *esclamé*, allí *vivió* ese hombre que *dió ser*[24] á esta nacion: allí *yacen*[25] *sepultados* tambien sus restos mortales! . . . . .

Al dia siguiente me *hallaba* al lado de un sepulcro hu-

---

[11] See 575, and 231.—[12] *Si tardaria mucho en verse*, "*if it would delay long in seeing itself*," that is, "*if it would be long before it could be seen.*" See 525, 327, and 173.—[13] See 101.—[14] See 192.—[15] *Debiamos aun tardar algunas horas*, "*we must wait yet some hours.*" *Deber*, before an infinitive, often is used in the sense of "*to have to.*"—[16] *De pronto*, "*suddenly.*"—[17] See 272.—[18] *De tal manera*, "*to such a degree.*"—[19] *Ni siquiera*, "*not even.*"—[20] See 160.—[21] *El sol iba inclinándose*, "*the sun was-going declining itself*," that is, "*the sun was declining.*"—[22] *Advirtió*, irreg. from *advertir*.—[23] *Al traves de*, "*amidst;*" "*through.*"—[24] *Ser* is here a noun.—[25] See 214.

milde, de ladrillos. Una verja de madera, medio derribada, *circundaba* aquella tumba sencilla. Todo en derredor[26] *respiraba* tristeza y desconsuelo, pero el aire me *parecia animado* por un eco débil que *murmuraba* en tonos apagados. "¡Este *es* el último recinto del inmortal Washington!" Y en efecto: allí, junto á mis plantas, bajo aquel monton de ladrillos *colocados* sin artificio; destituidos de lujosos mármoles y doradas inscripciones, ... allí *yacia* lo que *quedaba* en la tierra del héroe ilustre.

Pero su memoria *vive*, y *vivirá* por largos siglos. Allí, al lado de su sepulcro, *hay* mil nombres de distinguidos viajeros que *han ido* á *pagar* el último tributo—á *consagrar* al pie de su propia tumba, un pensamiento, y á *dedicar*le un recuerdo de admiracion.

Por un instante me *habia olvidado*[27] que *ecsistía*, y al *volver* en mí[28] *sentí* que la fresca brisa *bañaba* suavemente mi encendida frente, y una lágrima de pesar y de veneracion se *habia desprendido* de mis ojos *cayendo* sobre la humilde tumba de Jorge Washington.—E. J. Gomez.

FIFTH SECTION.

Remark.—In this Section the verbs will not be distinguished from the other parts of speech by being printed in italics, as the learner is supposed to be able to conjugate the regular and irregular verbs readily. With many rules heretofore referred to in the notes, the learner must now be somewhat familiar, and there will be less need of referring to them hereafter.

XLII.—THE MAIDEN OF NARNI.

Viajando de Locasto á Spoleto, en el año de 1826, nos detuvimos[1] en la ciudad de Narni para mandar caballos y

---

[26] *En derredor*, "*around;*" "*round about.*"—[27] *Me habia olvidado*, "*I had forgotten.*" See 284, *e.*—[28] *Al volver en mí*, "*on returning to myself;*" "*on coming to my senses.*" See 298, *b.*

XLII.—[1] *Detuvimos*, irreg. from *detener*.

tomar algun alimento. Confiados en el gran influjo que tenian los estranjeros en aquella época en Italia, creimos que no se presentaria dificultad alguna[2]; pero esta vez tuvimos que[3] esperar algunas horas ántes de que fuesen satisfechos nuestros deseos. Miéntras que comíamos, llamó mi atencion un sacerdote que entró silenciosamente en la salle y reconocia cuidadosamente la reunion. Diferente á la generalidad de aquella tribu de viajeros, sus modales eran altivos y su aspecto desagradable. Habiéndonos[4] observado por algunos minutos, habló con el posadero en voz baja, y en seguida[5] salió prontamente de la habitacion. Sentía un temor secreto por los muchos robos y asesinatos que últimamente habian cometido los bandidos,[6] particularmente en aquellos alrededores, y me parecia por los modales del sacerdote que nos amenazaba algun peligro.[6] Comuniqué[7] estas sospechas á mis compañeros que estaban de acuerdo[8] conmigo, y empezamos á mirar á nuestro posadero con temor y desconfianza. Al fin, despues de muchas opiniones sobre el partido que debiamos adoptar, se resolvió que le interrogásemos, y si encontrábamos algun doblez en sus respuestas, no saldríamos[9] hasta la mañana siguiente, en que podíamos contar con[10] la proteccion de una escolta respetable que habíamos dejado en el camino, y que debia[11] detenerse en el mismo punto que nosotros. Segun los deseos de la reunion me eligieron para tal[12] comision, ofreciendo referirles lo que indagara, tan exactamente[13] como me lo[14] permitiera mi memoria.[6]

—¿ Puedo[15] preguntaros, señor, quién es ese sacerdote con quien os vi[16] conversar durante la comida? le dije.

—¡ Un sacerdote, señor! me contestó con un tono que

---

[2] See 134, *a.*—[3] See 160, and 340.—[4] See 116.—[5] *En seguida*, "*afterward.*"—[6] See 575.—[7] See 166, *a.*—[8] *De acuerdo*, "*of one mind.*"—[9] See 208.—[10] See 391, *e*, latter clause.—[11] *Debia*, "*was to.*"—[12] *Para tal comision*," *for the said commission.*".—[13] See 32, *a.*—[14] *Lo* would be redundant here in English.—[15] *¿ Puedo?* "*may I?*" See 189.—[16] See 196.

apesar de[17] demostrar sorpresa, manifestaba sin embargo[18] haberle[19] confundido mi pregunta.

—Si, señor le añadí fuertemente y con una mirada que le dio á entender sospechaba de[20] él; un sacerdote, ¿se acuerda[21] V. de[20] él?

—Oh! si, ciertamente, me acuerdo, él—es un buen hombre—y amigo mio antiguo y de gran valor, que vá[22] á Spoleto para hallarse en la fiesta de San Jerónimo, y que se creeria feliz[23] en viajar en vuestra compañía.

—¿Es natural de esta ciudad? le pregunté.

—No; es de las montañas, señor; fué su respuesta acompañada de una guiñada sardónica.

—¿Y su nombre?

—Borasco.

—No me agrada ese hombre,[6] le dije.

—¿Y porqué no? preguntó prontamente, mirándome como si sus ojos hubieran penetrado mi alma.

—Porque los hombres honrados jamás hablan así al oido cuando están en presencia de otras personas.

—¿Y con quién hablaba de esa manera? dijo él con fiereza.

—Con vos, señor! le contesté tomándole fuertemente el brazo[24]: he oido[25] hablar de vos ántes; ¡cuidado[26] como os burlais[27] de nosotros! Sabed que no saldremos[9] esta noche de Narni.

Quedó como muerto al sentir mi apreton, y salió de la habitacion sin responderme. A poco[28] apareció por una galería una jóven,[29] y por una señal que me hizo me dió á

---

[17] *A pesar de*, "*in spite of*."—[18] *Sin embargo*, "*nevertheless*;" "*notwithstanding*."—[19] This means, "*to have confounded him my question*," that is, "*that my question had confounded him*."—[20] See 330.—[21] ¿*Se acuerda V. de el?* "*do you remember him?*" *Acuerda*, from *acordar*.—[22] *Va*, from *ir*. See 204.—[23] *Se creeria feliz*, "*would deem himself happy*."—[24] See 122, *a*.—[25] This means, "*I have heard you spoken of before*."—[26] The meaning is, "*be careful how you make sport of us*."—[27] See 655.—[28] *A poco*, "*in a short time*."—[29] *Una jóven*, "*a young woman*." See 102.

entender que deseaba hablar conmigo. Salí del cuarto con precipitacion, y entrando en una larga viña, la ví allí muy ocupada arrancando racimos de uvas.

—¿ Qué quereis? iba yo á preguntarle; pero me interrumpió diciéndome en voz baja y continuando su ocupacion:

—Silencio, señor, no me hableis; correis peligro—seguid, y á la vuelta[30] pasad cerca de[31] mí.

Lo hice segun ella deseaba, y me dijo entonces en voz muy baja:

Armate; Borasco no es sacerdote,[32] es el afamado Gasparde. En aquel momento oí[33] cerca de mí[31] el disparo de una carabina seguido de un grito agudo: la pobre jóven cayó muerta y ensangrentada á mis pies. Dirijí mi vista en direccion de donde vino[34] el ruido, y entre los matorrales ví la figura de un hombre que se deslizaba rápidamente por el campo como una serpiente. El ruido alarmó á los huéspedes, quienes arrojándose al jardin, quedaron sorprendidos de aquella escena. Entre ellos estaba el perverso posadero que en lugar de correr hácia el cuerpo de su hija, me señalaba y exclamaba: ¡Prendedle; él es el asesino!

Por un momento permanecí inmóvil pero recobrándome prontamente, me arrojé sobre él con la ferocidad de un tigre.

—¡Embustero! exclamé. Tu eres cómplice del asesino de tu misma hija. ¡Mirad! no tengo cerca de mí armas de fuego. ¡Fué Gaspardo el bandido! ¡Este villano es su camarada! ¡Prondedle! y echándolo á tierra, en un momento todos cayeron sobre él.

—¿Donde esta? exclamaron todos, ¿donde está Gaspardo?

—En esa espesura, esclamé; todos se horrorizaron con

---

[30] *A la vuelta*, "*on your return.*"—[31] *Cerca de*, "*near to.*"—[32] See 243.—[33] *Oí*, "*I heard.*" See 206.—[34] See 211.

solo el pensamiento de[35] que ese sanguinaria bandido estuviera tan cerca; al momento resonó un grito agudo, y ¡Allí! ¡allí! exclamaron todos.

Miré al lugar donde señalaban y sobre la cima de un collado vecino, estaba Gaspardo, agitando su sombrero, regocijandose en su triunfo y sin manifestar desconfianza. Estaba fuera del alcance de[36] las armas de fuego[37] y toda persecucion hubiera sido inútil y peligrosa. Guilletto (que era el nombre del posadero) no demostraba sentimiento por la pérdida de su hija, al contrario parecia recocijarse de[35] que por su buena intencion hubiera perdido la vida y alegrándose de[35] que el bandido se hubiera escapado. Sin embargo,[13] Guilletto fué conducido ante el tribunal y hallándole criminal sufrió la pena de muerte. En la causa se probó que habia existido por muchos años una comunicacion secreta entre él y Gaspardo, dándole aquel noticias cuando por casualidad se detenia en su posada algun viajero rico. De aquí provenian tantos asesinatos que se cometian en aquellos alrededores y que por la trágica ocurrencia que acabamos de referir[38] se consiguió felizmente la estirpacion de Gaspardo y de su bando.

XLIII.—EXTRACTS FROM A "MANIFESTO" OF GENERAL SANTA ANNA.

¡Conciudadanos! Con el pesar mas amargo y prufundo os anuncio, que despues de[1] continuos y estraordinarios esfuerzos y al cabo de quince horas de continuo combate, me ví obligado á abandonar la Capital cuando nuestras filas se habian disminuido tan notablemente, para salvar á ese digno pueblo de los estragos que los proyectiles del enemigo que habia penetrado á nuestros líneas mas cercanas, regando el paso con sus cadáveres y con los[2] de los

---

[35] See 554.—[36] *Fuera del alcance de, "out of the reach of."*—[37] See 97, *a.*—[38] See 337.

XLIII.—[1] See 375.—[2] See 616.

dignos mejicanos que defendian heróicamente palmo á palmo, el honor y derechos de su patria.

Testigos habeis sido, de[3] que creando recursos donde no los habia, trabajando dia y noche, preparé las defensas á la ciudad de Méjico, de que formé y reuní un poderoso ejército, á fin de arrancar algun favor á[4] la fortuna, tan esquiva para nosotros. La insubordinacion de un general trastornó todo mi plan de operaciones como ya lo[5] sabeis. En el convento y puente de Churubusco, recibió entónces el enemigo duras lecciones, reproducidas dos veces en el fuerte de Chapultepec, tambien en las garitas de Belen y de San Cosme, y últimamente, en la Ciudadela. Mas el valor de muchos de nuestros soldados de la Guardia y del ejército no siempre fué secundado ; y si bien[6] á fuego y sangre, el enemigo en dia funestísimo para la nacion, se hizo dueño de su capital.

Yo he buscado ansioso la muerte[7] por todas partes, porque pérdida tan grande escitaba mi mas justo despecho. En Chapultepec recibí una contusion, en Belen, traspasaron mi vestido las balas enemigas, y á mi derredor desaparecieron los mejores soldados de la república. ¿ Qué me puede restar en medio de este duelo y angustia universal ? La estéril satisfaccion de la conciencia, la[2] de haber sostenido personalmente el combate hasta el último estremo, la[2] de haber vendido cara al enemigo su sorprendente victoria. El me vió de frente[8] en la Angostura, en Cerro Gordo, en Churubusco, en Chapultepec, en Belen, en San Cosme y en la Ciudadela : y me encontraré, yo os lo juro,[9] do quiera[10] fuese[11] útil y glorioso combatir. . . . .

Dije ántes solemnemente, y repito ahora, que no descon-

---

[3] See 554.—[4] See 329, *a.*—[5] *Lo* is here redundant in English.—[6] *Si bien*, "*although*."—[7] See 628.—[8] *De frente*, "*in front*." *La Angostura* is the name of the same battle-ground that is usually in the United States known as *Buena-Vista*.—[9] See 115, *a.*—[10] *Do quiera*, "*wherever*."—[11] *Fuese*, from *ser*.

fio jamas de la suerte de mi patria. Si callan las facciones alguna vez para escuchar su voz soberana, si reunimos nuestros votos y nuestros afanes, aun es tiempo de arrojar al enemigo del suelo que mancha con su presencia. Os consta que yo resistí una paz deshonrosa que reducia á la república á la nulidad mas absurda y mas completa. La nacion ha apetecido y aun apetece la guerra; continuémosla pues, con gran denuedo, y mi ejemplo será el mas fervoroso. Las facciones no me disputarán ya el poder que gustoso abandono; si me disputaren el campo de batalla, allí me encontrarán sereno y firme consagrado como siempre á la mas generosa y santa de las causas. ¿Qué importan las desgracias?[7] El infortunio es el crisol de las naciones; y nunca es mas grande la mejicana[12] que cuando lucha con el destino para arrancarle la victoria que Dios y la justicia le prometen. ¡Mejicanos! treinta y siete años ha que[13] proclamasteis vuestra independencia entre escarmientos y peligros: sostenedla para siempre.

Ciudad de Guadalupe Hidalgo, Set. 16 de 1847.

ANTONIO LOPEZ DE SANTA-ANNA.

XLIV.—EXTRACTS FROM ANOTHER "MANIFESTO" OF SANTA-ANNA.

¡Mejicanos! Desde mi regreso á la pátria, y en ocasiones diversas, os he dirigido la palabra para daros cuenta de mis operaciones como gefe del ejército, y como primer magistrado ejerciendo el poder; mas separado de aquellos destinos, ahora lo hago con el mas profundo pesar para quejarme[1] ante vosotros de la ingratitud cruel de algunos, y de la perfidia de otros, que no contentos con la conducta indiferente y criminal que han observado en los dias del

---

[12] *Mejicana* refers to *nacion.*—[13] *Treinta y siete años ha que, "it is thirty-seven years since."* See 304, *b*, and 304, *c*.

XLIV.—[1] See 655.

gran conflicto, intentan hacer recaer sobre mí solo, la causa de los males públicos á que tanto han contribuido.

Proceder semejante[2] no me sorprende, porque un año hace[3] comencé á observar en la prensa de la capital, que yo era otra vez[4] el blanco[5] de las facciones que desgraciadamente han desgarrado las entrañas de la patria; llegando su audacia hasta presentarme con el carácter de traidor contra una sociedad, testigo[6] de mis repetidos servicios por su independencia y libertad, y de los sacrificios que he impendido para librarla del yugo que la amenaza. . . . .

Como la injuria, que con fin perverso se me infiere,[7] es tan atroz, yo la rechazo con toda la energía de mi caráctar, y con el valor de la inocencia indignamente ultrajada: reto y convoco á todos mis acusadores á[8] que se presenten con sus pruebas, ahora que me hallo sin poder y sin influencia: y si así no lo hicieren[9] los denuncio como viles calumniadores y enemigos de la nacion.

A los generales Taylor y Scott y á todos los individuos de sus ejércitos, yo los[10] conjuro á[8] que por su honor manifiesten: si el general mejicano, que los ha combatido en el Norte y en el Oriente, y en el centro mismo de la república hasta el dia 10 del mes de la fecha,[11] ha llenado todos sus deberes para con su patria.

¡Conciudadanos! La desgracia me ha privado de la incomparable satisfaccion de presentaros una espléndida victoria; pero nunca la desdicha ha sido traicion: os insultan los que tratan de[12] persuadiros, que puede caber tal infamia en un antiguo veterano de la independencia, con honrosas cicatrices adquiridas en defensa de vuestros

---

[2] *Proceder semejante* "*such a proceeding.*"—[3] *Un año hace,* "*a year ago.*" See 436.—[4] *Otra vez,* "*again.*"—[5] *El blanco,* "*the target;*" "*the mark.*"—[6] See 244.—[7] *Se me infiere,* "*infers itself to-me,*" that is, "*must by inference be charged upon me.*" See 173. *Infiere* is from *inferir.*—[8] See 554.—[9] See 185.—[10] *Los* is here redundant in English.—[11] *Fecha,* "*date;*" "*the present date.*"—[12] *Tratar de,* "*to aim to,*" "*to attempt.*"

derechos, y que ha encanecido sirviendo con amor y lealtad á su patria. . . . . .

Si mi conducta merece reproche en los meses citados: si ella debe sujetarse á un exámen porque los resultados no han sido felices, yo estoy muy dispuesto á responder á cualesquiera cargos que por los medios legales é imparcialmente intenten hacérseme[13]; pero entre tanto[14] creo[15] merecer las consideraciones que el pacto fundamental me otorga, mis servicios demandan y la justicia exige. . .

Bien[16] sabeis, que no soy yo el único caudillo á quien se ha presentado esquiva la victoria.[17] Respondan por mí Palo Alto, la Resaca, Matamoros, Monterey, Nuevo Méjico, Chihuahua, Californias, Veracruz, Tabasco y Padierna. Los soldados mejicanos habremos sido desgraciados, mas ninguno traidor. Habrá[18] tambien algunos cobardes: pero esto jamas podrá decirse[19] del que ha buscado al enemigo en todas partes, del primero en el peligro, y del único que ha presentado á la nacion en esta guerra, trofeos arrancados á[20] los batallones enemigos. . . . .

¡Mejicanos! Soy hombre, y tendré defectos; pero nunca he pecado contra la patria, porque en mi pecho jamas se han podido abrigar sentimientos anti-nacionales. Un buen nombre para despues de[21] mis dias, es cuanto he ambicionado: he anhelado, pues, todo lo que es grande y glorioso para Méjico, y no he escusado para su logro ni mi propia sangre: vosotros lo sabeis, y me hareis justicia.

Tehuacán, Octubre 22 de 1847.

ANTONIO LOPEZ DE SANTA-ANNA.

---

[13] *Hacérseme*, "*to make themselves to-me;*" "*to be made against me.*" See 173, and 116.—[14] *Entre tanto*, "*in the mean time.*"—[15] See 327, *c.*—[16] *Bien*, "*very well.*"—[17] See 575.—[18] *Habrá*, "*there will be.*" See 218, and 218, *a.*—[19] *Podrá decirse*, "*will be able to say itself;*" "*can be said.*" See 173, and 116.—[20] See 329, *a.*—[21] *Para despues de mis dias*, "*after my days,*" that is, "*after I am dead and gone.*"

XLV.—INGRATITUDE.

Los mismos que declaman con mayor horror contra este monstruoso vicio, lo adoptan muchas veces como á[1] su hijo querido, por cuanto[2] es[3] solo feo por el aspecto que mira al[1] bienhechor; así como[4] es agradable por él que mira á[1] los ingratos, y la razon es, porque dispensa á[1] los favorecidos de[5] la obligacion del reconocimiento que les oprime; pues, cuanto[6] mayor as el beneficio que se recibe, tanto[6] mayor es la esclavitud en que el beneficiado queda constituido; y como muy pocos gustan arrastrar estas cadenas, se libran de su pesadez con solo un simple olvido. Quien no quisiere vivir con ingratos, ha de[7] tener mucho trabajo, si ha de[7] vivir en el mundo. Infeliz será el hombre que no esperimente ingratitudes, porque habrá hecho muy poco bien á los demas. Por el contrario,[8] cuantos[6] mas ingratos hicieremos,[9] tanto[6] mas noble es el fin que nos mueve[10] á obrar bien. Esta es la condicion del corazon humano. El que hace bien solamente á los agradecidos, comercia; mas el que lo hace á los ingratos, obra por pura liberalidad. El uno siembra[11] los beneficios, el otro los derrama; uno procede como hombre, el otro como Dios; y este siempre tiene el delicado y agradable consuelo de haber obrado bien, que es el gusto mas deleitable que puede lisongear el paladar de una alma bien formada.

TEODORO DE ALMEYDA.

XLV.—[1] See 670.—[2] *Por cuanto*, "*inasmuch as.*"—[3] *Es*, "*it is.*"—[4] *Así como*, "*just as.*"—[5] *De*, "*from.*"—[6] *Cuanto* thus before the first comparative and *tanto* before the second, may be rendered in English by the definite article with the comparative; thus, *cuanto mas* estudia, *tanto mas* aprende, "*the more* he-studies, *the more* he-learns; *cuanto mayor* es el beneficio, *tanto mayor* es la obligacion del reconocimiento, "*the greater* the benefit is, *the greater* is the obligation of acknowledgment."—[7] See 339. —[8] *Por el contrario*, "*on the contrary.*"—[9] See 185.—[10] See 186.—[11] *Siembra* from *sembrar*. See 181.

XLVI.—THE BEAR, THE MONKEY, AND THE HOG.—A FABLE.

I.

Un oso con que la vida
Ganaba[1] un Piamontes,[2]
La[3] no muy bien aprendida
Danza[3] ensayaba en dos piés.

II.

Queriendo hacer de[4] persona,
Dijo á una mona: ¿ Qué tal?[5]
Era perita la mona,
Y respondióle: Muy mal.

III.

Yo creo, replicó el oso,
Que me haces poco favor.
¿ Pues qué ?[6] ¿ mi aire no es garboso ?
No hayo[7] el paso con primor ?

IV.

Estaba el cerdo presente,
Y dijo; ¡ Bravo, bien va ![8]
Bailarin mas escelente
No se ha visto,[9] ni verá.

V.

Echó el oso, al oir esto,
Sus cuentas allá entre sí,
Y con ademan modesto
Hubo de[10] esclamar así:

XLVI.—[1] *Ganaba la vida,* "*was-gaining a livelihood.*"—[2] See 575.—[3] *The not very well learnt dance.*"—[4] See 434.—[5] *¿ Qué tal ?* "*what sort ?*" "*how is it ?*" or, "*how do you like it ?*"—[6] *¿ Pues que ?* "*and why ?*"—[7] See 185.—[8] *Bien va,* "*it goes well;* "*it is well.*" *Va* from *ir.*—[9] *No se ha visto,* "*has not been seen.*" See 173. *Visto* from *ver.*—[10] See 339.

VI.

Cuando me desaprobaba
La mona, llegué á[11] dudar:
Mas ya que[12] el cerdo me alaba,
Muy mal debo de[13] bailar.

VII.

Guarde para su regalo
Esta sentencia un autor:[2]
Si el sabio no aprueba,[14] ¡ malo !
Si el necio aplaude, ¡ peor !

T. DE IRIARTE.

---

[11] See 341.—[12] *Ya que*, "*seeing that;*" "*since.*"—[13] *Debo de bailar*, "*I must dance.*" *Deber* before an infinitive is often used in the sense of "*to have to,*" "*to be to.*"—[14] *Aprueba*, from *aprobar*.

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS

USED IN THE VOCABULARY.

---

def. art. definite article.
indef. art. indefinite article.
nm. noun masculine.
nf. noun feminine.
sing. singular.
pl. plural.
m. masculine.
f. feminine.
prop. proper noun or name.
aug. augmentative.
dim. diminutive.
adj. adjective.
part. participle.
pron. pronoun.
pers. pron. personal pronoun.
poss. possessive.
rel. relative.
indef. indefinite.
dem. demonstrative.
v. verb.
va. verb active.
vn. verb neuter.
vr. verb reflective.

irr. v. irregular verb.
impers. v. impersonal verb.
aux. v. auxiliary verb.
inf. infinitive mood.
ind. indicative "
imp. imperative "
subj. subjunctive "
ger. gerund.
pres. present tense.
impf. imperfect "
perf. def. perfect-definite "
1 *fut.* first-future "
defec. v. defective verb.
1 *s.* or 1 *p.* first person sing., or pl.
2 *s.* or 2 *p.* second " " "
3 *s.* or 3 *p.* third " " "
adv. adverb.
prep. preposition.
conj. conjunction.
interj. interjection.
interrog. interrogative.
num. numeral.
F. from.

☞ Adjectives have their feminine termination separated from the masculine by a hyphen; thus, *bueno-a; Español-a.*

PART VI.

VOCABULARY OF WORDS IN THE READING LESSONS.

A.

ACA

A′, *prep.*, to, at, on, for, in.
Abandonádo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, abandoned, left.
Abandonár, *inf. va.*, to abandon, to leave.
Aborrecér, *inf. va* , to hate, to despise, to abhor.
Aborrézcas, F. *Aborrecer, sub. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou mayest hate.
Abrigár, *inf. va.*, to shelter, to harbor.
Abríl, *nm.*, April.
Abrír, *inf. va.*, to open.
Absúrdo-a, *adj.*, absurd, contrary to reason.
Abúnda, F. *abundar, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, abounds.
Abundáncia, *nf.*, abundance, plenty.
Abundánte, *adj.*, abundant.
Abundár, *inf. vn.*, to abound, to have plenty.
Abusár, *inf. va.*, to abuse, to turn to a bad purpose.
Abúso, *nm.*, abuse, ill-use.
Acába, F. *acabar, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, finishes, terminates.
Acabár, *inf. va.* and *vn.*, to end, to finish, to die.
Académia, *nf.*, academy, literary society.
Acáso, *adv.*, perhaps, perchance.
Acatádo-a, *part.*, respected, revered.
Acatár, *inf. va.*, to respect, to revere.

ACT

Acción, *nf.*, action, act.
Acérca, F. *acercar, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, draws near, approaches.
Acercába, F. *acercar, ind. impf.* 3 *s.*, was drawing near, approached.
Acercár, *inf. vn.* and *vr.*, to approach, to draw near.
Acogér, *inf. va.*, to admit into the house, to receive, to protect.
Acomodádo-a, *adj.*, accommodated, fit, convenient.
Acomodár, *inf. va.*, to accommodate; *vr.*, to condescend.
Acompañádo-a, *part.*, accompanied.
Acompañár, *inf. va.*, to accompany, to attend.
Acompañáse, F. *acompañar, sub. impf.* 3 *s.*, might accompany.
Acordár, *inf. vn.* and *vr.*, to remember, to consider maturely.
Acortádo, *part.*, shortened.
Acortár, *inf. va.*, to shorten.
Acostúmbran, F. *acostumbrar, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, are accustomed.
Acostumbráos, F. *acostumbrar, imp.* 2 *p.*, accustom-yourselves.
Acostumbrár, *inf. va.* and *vn.*, to accustom; to be accustomed.
Actívo-a, *adj.*, active, diligent.
A′cto, *nm.*, act, action.
Actuál, *adj.*, actual, present.
Actualidád, *nf.*, actualness; present time, present state of things.

Acuérdate, F. *accordar*, *imp.* 2 *s.*, remember thou.
Acuérdo, F. *accordar*, *ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I remember.
Acuérdo, *nm.*, consent. *De acuerdo*, of one mind.
Acúsa, F. *acusar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, accuses, charges.
Acusádo-a, *part.*, accused, charged.
Acusadór, *nm.*, accuser, impeacher.
Acusár, *inf. va.*, to accuse, to impeach, to charge with crime.
Adelantádo-a, *adj.*, advanced, forward, early.
Ademán, *nm.*, gesture, look, attitude.
Admiración, *nf.*, admiration.
Admirádo-a, *part.*, admired.
Admirár, *inf. va.*, to admire; to wonder at.
Adoptár, *inf. va.*, to adopt.
Adquirído, *part.*, acquired, gained.
Adquirír, *inf. va.*, to acquire, to gain.
Aduána, *nf.*, custom-house.
Advertír, *inf. va.*, to advise, to inform.
Afamádo-a, *adj.*, famed, notorious.
Afán, *nm.*, solicitude, labor.
Afanár, *inf. va.* and *vr.*, to toil, to labor, to be very solicitous.
Afécto, *nm.*, affection.
Afeitár, *inf. va.*, to shave.
Afeminación, *nf.*, effemination, effeminateness.
Afeminádo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, effeminated, effeminate.
Afeminár, *inf. va.*, to effeminate, to enervate.
Aficiónes, F. *aficionar*, *sub. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou mayest affect, thou mayest fancy.
Afortunádo-a, *adj.*, fortunate, lucky.
Agéno-a, *adj.* or *indef. pron.*, foreign, another's, of another, of others.
Agitándo, *ger.*, agitating, waving, shaking.
Agradáble, *adj.*, agreeable, pleasant.
Agradár, *inf. va.*, to please, to gratify, to render acceptable.
Agradecído-a, *adj.*, thankful, grateful.
Agradecimiénto, *nm.*, gratitude, gratefulness.
Agresión, *nf.*, aggression, attack, assault.
Agricultúra, *nf.*, agriculture, husbandry.
A'gua, *nf.*, water.
Aguardár, *inf. va.*, to wait for, to expect, to grant time.
Aguavíva, *n. prop.*, Aguaviva.
Agúdo-a, *adj.*, acute, sharp.
Ahóra, *adv.*, now, the present.
Aíre, *nm.*, air; grace, manner.
Al, contraction of *á el* or *á él*, to the, at the, in the, for the; or, to him, at him.
Alába, F. *alabar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, praises, commends.
Alabádo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, praised, applauded.
Alarmár, *inf. va.*, to alarm.
Aláro, *n. prop.*, Alaro.
Aláva, *n. prop.*, Alava.
Alcalá, *n. prop.*, Alcalá.
Alcánce, *nm.*, arm's length, reach.
Alcanzár, *inf. va.*, to overtake, to reach, to gain, to obtain.
Alegrár, *inf. va.* and *vr.*, to rejoice, to be merry, to gladden, to be glad.
Alegría, *nf.*, mirth, joy, hilarity, gladness.
Alemán, *n. prop.*, a German.
Alemán-a, *adj.*, German.
Alemánia, *n. prop.*, Germany.

AMB

Algo, *indef. pron.*, something, a little, anything, aught.
A'lgo, *adv.*, somewhat, a little.
A'lgun, *indef. pron.*, some, some one.
Algúno-a, *indef. pron.*, some, somebody, any, anybody.
Aliádo, *nm.*, ally.
Aliménto, *nm.*, nourishment, food, aliment.
Alistár, *inf. va.*, to enlist, to enrol.
Aliviár, *inf. va.*, to succor, to alleviate, to solace.
Aljubarróta, *n. prop.*, Aljubarrota.
Allá, *adv.*, there.
Allí, *adv.*, there, at that place.
A'lma, *nf.*, soul, courage, spirit.
Almacén, *nm.*, storehouse, magazine.
Alrededór, *nm.*, environ, neighborhood.
Altár, *nm.*, altar.
Altívo-a, *adj.*, haughty, proud, lofty.
A'lto-a, *adj.*, high, tall, lofty.
A'ma, F. *amar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, loves.
A'ma, F. *amar*, *imp.* 2 *s.*, love thou.
Amádo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, loved; beloved.
Amanecér, *inf. impers. v.*, to dawn, to grow light.
Amánte, *nm.*, lover, sweetheart.
Amánte, *adj.*, loving, fond.
Amár, *inf. va.*, to love, to regard with affection, to like.
Amárgo-a, *adj.*, bitter, acrid; painful.
Amarrilléan, F. *amarrillear*, *ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, to grow yellow.
Ambición, *nf.*, ambition.
Ambicionár, *inf. va.*, to crave, to pursue with anxious desire, to covet.

ANT

Ambicioso-a, *adj.*, ambitious, aspiring.
A'mbos-as, *indef. pron. pl.*, both.
Amenáza, F. *amenazar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, threatens.
Amenazár, *inf. va.*, to threaten, to menace.
Amenidád, *nf.*, amenity, pleasantness, agreeableness.
América, *n. prop.*, America.
Americáno-a, *adj.*, American.
Amígo, *nm.*, friend.
Amistád, *nf.*, friendship, amity.
A'mo, *nm.*, master, owner.
Amór, *nm.*, love, affection, esteem.
Amoróso-a, *adj.*, affectionate, loving.
Ampáro, *nm.*, protection, favor.
Análisis, *nf.*, analysis.
A'ncho-a, *adj.*, broad, wide.
Anciáno-a, *adj.* and *n.*, old; old man; old woman.
Anfiteátro, *nm.*, amphitheatre.
A'ngel, *nm.*, angel.
Angósto-a, *adj.*, narrow, close.
Angostúra, *nf.*, narrowness; a narrow pass.
Angústia, *nf.*, anguish, affliction.
Anhelár, *inf. va.*, to desire anxiously, to covet, to wish eagerly.
Aníma, F. *animar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, animates, revives, revivifies.
Animádo, *part.*, animated.
Animar, *inf. va.*, to animate, to revivify, to revive.
Aniversário, *nm.*, anniversary.
Ansiár, *inf. va.*, to be anxious for, to desire anxiously, to long for.
Ansiosaménte, *adv.*, anxiously, earnestly.
Ansióso-a, *adj.*, anxious, eager, uneasy.
A'nte, *prep.*, before, in the presence of.

Anteójo, *nm.*, spy-glass; eye-glass.
Anteriór, *adj.*, anterior, former.
A'ntes, *prep.* and *adv.*, before.
A'ntes de, and A'ntes que, same as *ántes.*
Antíguo-a, *adj.*, ancient, old, antiquated.
Anti-nacionál, *adj.*, antinational.
António, *n. prop.*, Anthony.
Anunciár, *inf. va.*, to announce.
Añadió, F. *añadír*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, added.
Añadír, *inf. va.*, to add.
Año, *nm.*, year.
Apagádo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, extinguished, quenched, softened.
Aparecér, *inf. va.*, to appear, to come forth.
Apasionádo-a, *adj.*, very fond.
Apático-a, *adj.*, apathetic, indifferent.
Apénas, *adv.*, scarcely, as soon as, no sooner than.
Apetecér, *inf. va.*, to long for, to desire earnestly.
Aplaudír, *inf. va.*, to applaud.
Apláuso, *nm.*, applause, praise, clapping.
Aplicación, application, direction.
Aplicár, *inf. va.*, to apply, to attribute.
Aplícate, F. *aplicar*, *imp.* 2 *s.*, apply thyself.
Aplicó, F. *aplicar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, applied.
Apologísta, *nm.*, apologist, excuser
Apreciáble, *adj.*, appreciable, valuable.
Apreciár, *inf. va.*, to appreciate, to value.
Aprécio, *nm.*, value, esteem, estimation.
Aprendér, *inf. va.*, to learn, to acquire knowledge.
Aprendído-a, *part.*, learnt, understood.
Apretón, *nm.*, pressure; earnestness, energetic action.
Aprobación, *nf.*, approbation.
Aprobár, *inf. va.*, to approve.
Apruéba, F. *aprobar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, approves.
A'pto-a, *adj.*, apt, fit.
Aquél, aquélla, *dem. pron.*, that, that one, the former; he, she; him, her.
Aquéllo, *pron. dem.*, that, that thing.
Aquí, *adv.*, here, in this place.
Aragón, *n. prop.*, Arragon.
A'rbol, *nm.*, tree.
Archívos, *nm. pl.*, archives, the place where records are preserved; records.
Aréna, *nf.*, sand.
Argél, *n. prop.*, Algiers.
Argelíno-a, *adj.*, Algerine.
A'rma, *nf.*, arm, weapon.
Armáda, *nf.*, fleet, squadron.
A'rmate, F. *armar*, *imp.* 2 *s.*, arm thyself.
Arránca, F. *arrancar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, plucks out, extirpates, snatches.
Arrancándo, *ger.*, plucking.
Arrancár, *inf. va.*, to pluck, to extirpate, to snatch, to draw out.
Arregládo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, regulated; well organized.
Arreglár, *inf. va.*, to regulate, to reduce to order, to organize.
Arréglo, *nm.*, regulation, order.
Arremetér, *inf. va.*, to attack, to assail with fury.
Arrepentimiénto, *nm.*, repentance, penitence.
Arrepentírse, *inf. vr.*, to repent, to feel sorrow for something said or done.

Arrojándo, *ger.*, rushing, darting, throwing.
Arrojár, *inf. va.*, to throw, to dart, to hurl.
Arruinádo-a, *part.*, ruined.
A'rte, *nm.* and *nf.*, art. (It may be either masculine or feminine in the singular; but feminine only in the plural.)
Artesáno, *nm.*, artisan, mechanic.
Artifício, *nm.*, art or skill with which a thing is made, workmanship, craft.
Asegúra, F. *asegurar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, assures.
Asesinár, *inf. va.*, to assassinate, to murder.
Asesináto, *nm.*, assassination, murder.
Asesíno, *nm.*, assassin, murderer.
Así, *adv.*, thus, so, in this manner.
Asiénto, *nm.*, seat, chair.
Asísta, F. *asistar*, *imp.* 3 *s.*, let (him) assist, may (he) assist.
Asisténcia, *nf.*, assistance, help, aid.
Aspécto, *nm.*, aspect, look, countenance, appearance.
Aspirár, *inf. vn.*, to aspire, to aim at, to desire.
Astúrias, *n. prop.*, Asturia, a province in the north of Spain.
Asúnto, *nm.*, affair, business, subject.
Aténas, *n. prop.*, Athens.
Atención, *nf.*, attention, civility.
Atendér, *inf. vn.*, to attend, to await.
Ateniénse, *n. prop.*, Athenian.

Atentár, *inf. va.*, to attempt, to try with circumspection.
Atractívo, *nm.*, charm, attraction.
Atribuír, *inf. va.*, to attribute, to ascribe, to impute.
Atroz, *adj.*, atrocious, heinous.
Aturdír, *inf. va.*, to perturb, to disturb, to confuse.
Audácia, *nf.*, audacity, boldness, courage.
Auménta, F. *aumentar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, increases, augments, enlarges.
Aumentádo-a, *part.*, increased.
Aumentár, *inf. vn.*, to augment, to increase, to grow larger.
Auménto, *nm.*, increase, enlargement, augmentation.
Aun, *adv.*, yet, still; *conj.*, notwithstanding.
Aúnque, *conj.*, though, although, even if.
Auróra, *nf.*, the dawn.
Aústria, *n. prop.*, Austria.
Autór, *nm.*, author, inventor.
Autoridád, *nf.*, authority.
Avánza, F. *avanzar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, advances, goes forward.
A've, *nf.*, bird, fowl.
Aventurádo-a, *adj.*, fortunate.
Avergonzádo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, shamed, ashamed.
Averiguár, *inf. va.*, to investigate, to ascertain, to inquire, to find out.
Ayála, *n. prop.*, Ayala.
Ayudár, *inf. va.*, to aid, to help, to favor.
Azógue, *nm.*, quicksilver.

B.

Bailándo, *ger.*, dancing.
Bailár, *inf. vn.*, to dance.
Bailarín, *nm.*, dancer.
Bajár, *inf. va.*, to lower, to let down, to bend downwards.
Bajéza, *nf.*, low or mean act, unworthy action.
Bájo-a, *adj.*, low, mean.
Bájo, *adv.* and *prep.*, under, below, beneath, underneath.

Bála, *nf.*, ball, bullet, shot.
Balcón, *nm.*, balcony.
Bandéra, *nf.*, banner, standard; infantry.
Bandído, *nm.*, bandit, highwayman, robber.
Bándo, *nm.*, party, band of men.
Bañár, *inf. va.*, to bathe, to bedew.
Bárba, *nf.*, beard, chin.
Bárbaro-a, *adj.*, barbarous.
Bárco, *nm.*, boat. *Barco de vapor*, steamboat.
Barríl, *nm.*, barrel.
Básta, F. *bastar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, suffices, is enough; it is sufficient.
Bastánte, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently.
Batálla, *nf.*, battle, fight, contest.
Batallón, *nm.*, battalion.
Belén, *n. prop.*, Belen.
Béllo-a, *adj.*, beautiful, fine, handsome.
Belláza, *nf.*, beauty.
Bendecído-a, *part.*, blessed.
Bendecirán, F. *bendecir*, *ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *p.*, they will bless.
Bendición, *nf.*, benediction, blessing.
Beneficiádo-a, *part.*, benefitted.
Beneficiár, *inf. va.*, to benefit, to do good to.
Benefício, *nm.*, benefit, favor, benefaction.
Benéfico-a, *adj.*, beneficent, kind.
Benevoléncia, *nf.*, benevolence, good-will, kindness.
Besár, *inf. va.*, to kiss.
Bién, *nm.*, good, blessing; property. *Bienes*, goods, property, wealth.

Bién, *adv.* and *adj.*, well, good; very.
Bienhechór, *nm.*, benefactor.
Blánco, *nm.*, end, aim, object.
Bóca, *nf.*, mouth.
Bondád, *nf.* goodness, kindness.
Borásco, *n. prop.*, Borasco.
Borrar, *inf. va.*, to efface, to blot out, to expunge.
Bósque, *nm.*, wood, forest, grove.
Botíca, *nf.*, apothecary's shop.
Boticário, *nm.*, apothecary.
Brávo! *inter.*, bravo! bravely done! good!
Brázo, *nm.*, arm.
Bretáña, *n. prop.*, Britain.
Brillánte, *adj.*, brilliant, splendid.
Bríllo, *nm.*, splendor, brilliancy.
Brísa, *nf.*, breeze.
Brúto, *nm.*, brute.
Buén, *adj.*, good, fine.
Buéno-a, *adj.*, good; well.
Búque, *nm.*, vessel, ship.
Búrla, F. *burlar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, jests, jokes, laughs at, ridicules.
Burláron, F. *burlar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *p.*, they ridiculed, they made sport of.
Burlárse, *inf. vr.*, to jest, to make sport of, to ridicule.
Búsca, *nf.*, search, the act of searching.
Buscába, F. *buscar*, *ind. impf.* 3 *s.*, was seeking.
Buscádo, *part.*, sought.
Buscándo, *ger.*, seeking.
Buscár, *inf. va.*, to seek, to search for.

C.

Caballéro, *nm.*, cavalier, gentleman, knight, sir.
Cabállo, *nm.*, horse.
Cabér, *inf. vn.*, to contain, to have room, to be contained, to find place.

Cabéza, *nf.*, head.
Cábo, *nm.*, end, termination, close.
Cáda, *indef. pron.*, each, every.
Cáda cuál, *indef. pron.*, each one.
Cáda úno, *indef. pron.*, every one, every body.
Cadáver, *nm.*, corpse, dead body.
Cadéna, *nf.*, chain; series.
Cáen, F. *caer, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they fall.
Caér, *inf. vn.*, to fall, to befall, to decrease.
Caído, *part.*, fallen; decreased.
Cajón, *nm.*, box, chest.
Cálculo, *nm.*, calculation, computation.
Calculísta, *nm.*, calculist; calculator.
Calahórra, *n. prop.*, Calahorra.
Callár, *inf. vn.*, to keep silence, to conceal, to be silent.
Callásen, F. *callar, sub. impf.* 3 *p.*, they should be silent, should keep silence.
Cálle, *nf.*, street; road, way.
Calumniadór, *nm.*, calumniator, slanderer.
Caluróso-a, *adj.*, warm, hot.
Camaráda, *nf.*, comrade, companion, partner.
Camaréro, *nm.*, steward; head manservant in great houses.
Cambiádo, *part.*, changed, shifted.
Cambiár, *inf. va.*, to change, to alter, to shift; to barter.
Camíno, *nm.*, road, way. *Camino de hierro*, rail-road.
Caminíto, *nm. dem.*, little road, path.
Cámpo, *nm.*, country; field.
Cána, *nf.*, grey hair.
Canálla, *nf.*, rabble, mob; populace.
Cancillér, *nm.*, chancellor.
Cansádo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, fatigued, wearied, tired.
Cantábria, *n. prop.*, Cantabria.
Cantidád, *nf.*, quantity, sum.
Capáz, *adj.*, able, capable, skilful.
Capitál, *nf.*, metropolis, chief city of a country, capital
Capitulár, *inf. va.*, to capitulate.
Cára, see *caro.*
Carabína, *nf.*, carbine, a small rifle.
Carácter, *nm.*, character, disposition.
Cardenál, *nm.*, cardinal, one holding the ecclesiastical office of Cardinal.
Cargádo-a, *part.*, loaded, burdened, oppressed.
Cárgo, *nm.*, load; charge; accusation.
Caritatívo-a, *adj.*, charitable, kind, friendly, benevolent.
Cárlos, *n. prop.*, Charles.
Cáro-a, *adj.*, dear, beloved, high-priced; costly.
Carréra, *nf.*, career, course of life, profession; race.
Carruáge, *nm.*, carriage, vehicle.
Cárta, *nf.*, letter, epistle.
Cartaginés, *nm. prop.*, Carthaginian.
Cartaginés-a, *adj.*, Carthaginian.
Cása, *nf.*, house; home.
Casár, *inf. va.*, to marry.
Cascáda, *nf.*, cascade, water-fall.
Cásco, *nm.*, cask.
Cási, *adv.*, almost, very nearly, just.
Cáso, *nm.*, case, event; chance.
Castigár, *inf. va.*, to punish, to chastise.
Castigará, F. *castigar, ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *s.*, will punish.
Castígo, *nm.*, punishment, chastisement.
Castílla, *n. prop.*, Castile.

CIE

Casualidád, *nf.*, casualty, chance, unforeseen event.
Casualménte, *adv.*, casually, accidentally.
Catórce, *num. adj.*, fourteen.
Caudál, *nm.*, treasure, property.
Caudíllo, *nm.*, commander, chief, leader.
Causár, *inf. va.*, to cause, to occasion, to produce.
Cautívo, *nm.*, captive, slave.
Cayéndo, *ger.*, falling, tumbling.
Cayó, F. *caer*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, fell.
Cedér, *inf. va.*, to grant, to yield, to cede.
Cediéndo, *ger.*, yielding.
Cediésen, F. *ceder*, *sub. impf.* 3. *p.*, they should yield.
Censúra, *nf.*, censure, blame, criticism, reproach.
Centenár, *nm.*, hundred.
Céntro, *nm.*, centre.
Cérca, *adv.*, near, at hand; concerning.
Cérca de, *prep.*, near, close to.
Cercáno-a, *adj.*, near, adjoining.
Cérdo, *nm.*, hog, pig.
Cerrádo-a, *part.*, shut, closed.
Cerrár, *inf. va.*, to close, to shut, to lock.
Cérro Górdo, *n. prop.*, Cerro Gordo.
Cesár, *inf. va.*, to cease, to terminate, to close.
Cétro, *nm.*, sceptre.
Charlatán, *nm.*, charlatan, quack.
Chípre, *n. prop.*, Cyprus (an island in the Mediterranean sea).
Chocánte, *adj.*, glaring, provoking, disgusting.
Cicatríz, *nf.*, the mark remaining after a wound, scar.
Ciélo, *nm.*, heaven; sky, air.
Ciéncia, *nf.*, science, learning, knowledge.

COM

Ciértamente, *adv.*, certainly, surely.
Ciérto-a, *adj.*, certain, sure, true.
Címa, *nf.*, summit, top.
Cínco, *num. adj.*, five.
Cincuénta, *num. adj.*, fifty.
Circundár, *inf. va.*, to surround, to encircle.
Citádo-a, *part.*, cited, mentioned.
Citár, *inf. va.*, to cite, to mention, to appoint.
Ciudád, *nf.*, city.
Ciudadéla, *nf.*, citadel, a small fortress situated so as to defend a city.
Claraménte, *adv.*, clearly, plainly.
Cláro-a, *adj.*, clear, bright; obvious, manifest.
Cláse, *nf.*, class; rank, order.
Clavár, *inf. va.*, to nail, to stick, to prick, to pierce.
Clíma, *nm.*, climate, clime.
Cobárde, *nm.* and *adj.*, coward, cowardly.
Cóche, *nm.*, coach, barouche.
Codícia, *nf.*, cupidity, desire, covetousness.
Codiciióso-a, *adj.*, greedy, covetous.
Cogér, *inf. va.*, to catch, to collect, to gather.
Cogerá, F. *coger*, *ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *s.*, will gather.
Colládo, *nm.*, hill, small eminence.
Colócan, F. *colocar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they place.
Colocádo-a, *part.*, placed, arranged.
Colocár, *inf. va.*, to place, to arrange.
Colónia, *nf.*, colony.
Combáte, *nm.*, fight, combat.
Combatír, *inf. va.*, to fight, to attack, to combat.
Comédia, *nf.*, comedy, play.
Comencé, F. *comenzar*, *ind. perf. def.* 1 *s.*, I began, I commenced.

Comentário, *nm.*, comment; commentary.
Comenzár, *inf. va.* and *vn.*, to commence, to begin.
Comér, *inf. va.*, to eat, to dine.
Comerciánte, *nm.*, trader, merchant.
Comerciár, *inf. vn.*, to trade, to traffic, to exercise commerce.
Cometér, *inf. va.*, to commit; to entrust, to charge; to attempt.
Cometído, *part.*, committed.
Comída, *nf.*, meal, dinner.
Comisión, *nf.*, commission; trust.
Cómo, *adv.*, as, like, in what manner. *¿Cómo?* how? why?
Compadecérse, *inf. vr.*, to pity, to commiserate, to feel for.
Compadecerá, F. *compadecerse*, *ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *s.*, will pity, will feel compassion for.
Compañéro, *nm.*, companion, associate.
Compañía, *sf.*, company.
Comparación, *nf.*, comparison.
Comparádo, *part.*, compared.
Compasión, *nf.*, compassion, pity.
Completaménte, *adv.*, completely, entirely.
Completár, *inf. va.*, to complete, to finish, to consummate.
Compléto-a, *adj.*, complete, entire, finished.
Cómplice, *nm.*, accomplice, associate.
Componér, *inf. va.*, to compose; to frame.
Comprehendér, see *comprender*.
Compréndo, or comprehénde, F. *comprender*, or *comprehender*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, comprehends, understands.
Comprendér, *inf. va.*, to comprehend, to understand, to comprise.
Compró, F. *comprar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, bought, purchased.
Compuésto-a, *part.*, F. *componer*, composed, made up.
Común, *adj.*, common; vulgar.
Comunicación, *nf.*, communication, intercourse.
Comunicár, *inf. va.*, to communicate, to inform.
Con, *prep.*, with, by, for. *Con todo*, yet, nevertheless.
Concedér, *inf. va.*, to concede, to grant, to allow, to give.
Concedído-a, *part.*, conceded, granted, bestowed.
Concépto, *nm.*, conception, thought, idea.
Conciéncia, *nf.*, knowledge, conscience.
Conciudadáno, *nm.*, fellow-citizen, fellow-countrymen.
Concluír, *nf. va.*, to conclude, to close.
Cónde, *nm.*, Count (a title of rank).
Condenár, *inf. va.*, to condemn, to sentence.
Condición, *nf.*, condition, situation; disposition.
Conducír, *inf. va.*, to conduct, to convey.
Condúcta, *nf.*, conduct, behavior, deportment.
Confiár, *inf. va.*, to confide, to trust in.
Conflícto, *nm.*, conflict, struggle, contest.
Confundído-a, *part.*, confounded; confused.
Confundír, *inf. va.*, to confound, to perplex, to throw into confusion.
Confusión, *nf.*, confusion, disorder.
Congréso, *nm.*, congress.
Conjurár, *inf. va.*, to conjure, to implore.

Conmígo, *prep.* and *pron.*, with me.
Conócen, F. *conocer, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they know.
Conocér, *inf. va.*, to know, to understand.
Conociéndo, *ger.*, knowing, being acquainted with.
Conocimiénto, *nm.*, knowledge, learning, acquaintance.
Conquísta, *nf.*, conquest; subjugation.
Conquistadór, *nm.*, conqueror, victor.
Conquistár, *inf. va.*, to conquer, to subdue.
Consagrádo-a, *part.*, and *adj.*, consecrated; sacred, devoted.
Consagrár, *inf. va.*, to consecrate, to devote.
Conseguír, *inf. va.*, to succeed, to obtain, to attain.
Conséjo, *nm.*, advice, counsel, judgment.
Conservár, *inf. va.*, to preserve, to guard.
Considéra, F. *considerar, ind. pres.* 3 *s.* and *imp.* 2 *s.*, considers; consider thou.
Considerár, *inf. va.*, to consider, to reflect, to think.
Consignár, *inf. va.*, to consign.
Consiguió, F. *conseguir, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, succeeded, gained.
Consígo, *prep.* and *pron.*, with him, with you, with themselves.
Consoladór-a, *adj.*, consolatory, tending to give comfort.
Consolár, *inf. va.*, to console, to comfort, to assuage.
Cónsta, F. *constar, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, it is evident, it appears.
Constáncia, *nf.*, constancy, steadiness.
Constár, *inf. v. impers.*, to be evident, to appear from.

Constituído-a, *part.*, constituted; bound.
Construír, *inf. va.*, to construct, to form, to build.
Consuélo, *nm.*, consolation, relief, comfort.
Consumádo-a, *adj.* and *part.*, consummate, complete, accomplished.
Contándo, *ger.*, counting, reckoning; relying, relating.
Contár, *inf. va.*, to count, to number; to relate; to rely.
Contémpla, F. *contemplar, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, contemplates; and *imp.* 2 *s.*, contemplate thou.
Contemplár, *inf. va.*, to contemplate.
Contentár, *inf. va.*, to satisfy, to please, to gratify.
Conténto-a, *adj.*, contented, satisfied.
Contestár, *inf. va.*, to reply, to answer, to prove.
Contígo, *prep.* and *pron.*, with thee, with thyself.
Contíguo-a, *adj.*, contiguous, adjoining.
Continénte, *nm.*, continent, mainland.
Continuaménte, *adv.*, continually, always.
Continuándo, *ger.*, continuing, lasting.
Continuár, *inf. vn.*, to continue, to last.
Continuó, F. *continuar, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, he continued.
Contínuo-a, *adj.*, continual; incessant.
Cóntra, *prep.*, against, contrary to.
Contrário-a, *adj.*, contrary. *Al contrario* or *por el contrario*, on the contrary.

COS

Contribuído-a, *part.*, contributed.
Contribuír, *inf. va.*, to contribute, to bear a part.
Contusión, *nf.*, contusion
Convencído, *part.*, convinced.
Convénto, *nm.*, convent.
Conversár, *inf. vn.*, to talk, to converse.
Convertír, *inf. va.*, to convert, to change.
Conviérte, F. *convertir*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, converts.
Convocár, *inf. va.*, to convoke, to assemble, to call together.
Convulsión, *nf.*, convulsion.
Cópa, *nf.*, cup; meeting of the branches of trees, bower.
Corazón, *nm.*, heart; spirit, courage.
Coróna, *nf.*, crown.
Coronár, *inf. va.*, to crown, to ornament or decorate the top of any thing.
Corréo, *nm.*, mail, post.
Corrér, *inf. va.*, to run. *Correr peligro*, to be in peril or danger.
Corriénte, *adj.*, current, marketable, merchantable.
Corroborádo-a, *part.*, confirmed, corroborated.
Corroborár, *inf. va.*, to confirm, to corroborate.
Corsário, *nm.*, corsair, the commander of a privateer.
Córte, *nf.*, court, capital city, royal residence.
Cortedád, *nf.*, shortness, brevity.
Cortés, *adj.*, courteous, polite, civil, genteel.
Córto-a, *adj.*, short; small, concise.
Cósa, *nf.*, thing. *Cósa de*, *prep.*, about, concerning.
Cosécha, *nf.*, harvest, crops.
Cósta, *nf.*, cost, expense, charge; coast.

CUA

Costár, *inf. vn.*, to cost, to be bought for; to suffer loss.
Costúmbre, *nf.*, custom, habit, manners.
Creándo, *ger.*, creating, making.
Creár, *inf. va.*, to create, to make, to establish.
Crecér, *inf. vn.*, to grow, to increase, to augment.
Crecído-a, *part.*, grown, increased.
Creér, *inf. va.*, to believe, to think, to credit.
Creías, F. *creer*, *ind. impf.* 2 *s.*, thou wast believing, thou thoughtest.
Criádo, *nm.*, male-servant.
Crímen, *nm.*, crime, offence.
Criminál, *adj.*, criminal.
Crisól, *nm.*, crucible.
Crítica, *nf.*, criticism.
Crítico, *nm.*, critic, criticiser.
Crónica, *nf.*, chronicle, register of events.
Cruzádo-a, *part.*, crossed.
Cruzár, *inf. va.*, to cross; to lay one thing across another.
Cuadruplicár, *inf. va.*, to quadruplicate, to increase four times.
Cuál (*el* or *la*), *pron. rel.*, which, who, that.
Cuál? *pron. interrog.*, which? (of the two.) *Cada cual*, each one.
Cuál, *adv.*, as, like.
Cualesquiéra, *indef. pron. pl.*, whoever, any body who, whatever.
Cualidád, *nf.*, quality, qualification.
Cualquiér, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever, any.
Cualquiéra, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, he who, any one.
Cuán, *adv.*, how, how much.
Cuándo, *adv.*, when; in case that, if.

Cuánto-a, *adj.*, as much as, as many as, whatever, whoever, all that which, all those who.
Cuánto, *adv.*, the more, how much.
Cuaréntа, *adj. num.*, forty.
Cuárto, *nm.*, cuarto (a copper coin of which 170 make a dollar); a room, apartment.
Cuárto-a, *adj. num.*, fourth.
Cuátro, *adj. num.*, four.
Cubiérto-a, *part.*, covered, overspread.
Cubrír, *inf. va.*, to cover; to cloak, to mask.
Cuénta, *nf.*, account, narration; reckoning.
Cuérpo, *nm.*, body.
Cuidádo, *nm.*, care, anxiety, attention.
Cuidado! *interj.*, have a care! be careful!
Cuidadosaménte, *adv.*, carefully, cautiously.
Cúlpa, *nf.*, blame, fault.
Culpádo-a, *adj.*, blameable, guilty.
Cultivár, *inf. va.*, to cultivate.
Cultúra, *nf.*, culture, improvement.
Cumplír, *inf. va.*, to fill, to fulfil, to accomplish, to execute.
Cúna., *nf.*, cradle, birth-place; lineage.
Cúpula, *nf.*, cupola, dome.
Curádo-a, *part.*, cured, healed.
Curiosidád, *nf.*, curiosity, curiousness.
Curióso-a, *adj.*, curious, strange.
Cúyo-a, *pron. rel.*, whose, of whom, of which.

D.

Dá, F. *dar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, gives.
Dá, F. *dar*, *imp.* 2 *s.*, give thou.
Dában, F. *dar*, *ind. impf.* 3 *p.*, they gave, they were-giving.
Dádo, *part.*, given, granted. *Dado que*, (*conj.*,) provided that.
Dándo, *ger.*, giving.
Dánza, *nf.*, dance.
Dáño, *nm.*, damage, mischief, injury.
Dar, *inf. va.*, to give, to grant, to bestow.
Dáto, *nm.*, a fact or truth granted and admitted, datum. *Dátos* (pl.), data.
De, *prep.*, of, from, with, off, at.
Dé, F. *dar*, *sub. pres.* 1 or 3 *s.*, may give.
Debájo, *prep.*, under, below.
Débe, F. *deber*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, ought, must, is to, owes.
Debéis, F. *deber*, *ind. pres.* 2 *p.*, ye ought, you must; you owe.
Debémos, F. *deber*, *ind. pres.* 1 *p.*, we ought; we owe.
Dében, F. *deber*, *ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they ought, must; owe.
Debér, *nm.*, duty, obligation.
Debér, *inf. aux. v.*, ought, should, must; *va.*, to owe, to be indebted to.
Débes, F. *deber*, *ind. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou oughtest; thou owest.
Debidaménte, *adv.*, duly, justly, exactly.
Debiéra, F. *deber*, *sub. impf.* 3 *s.*, should, ought; he should owe.
Debiéran, F. *deber*, *sub. impf.* 3 *p.*, should, ought; they should owe.
Débil, *adj.*, weak, feeble.
Débo, F. *deber*, *ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I must, I ought, I owe.
Decéncia, *nf.*, decency, honesty, modesty.
Decía, F. *decir*, *ind. impf.* 1 or 3 *s.*, said, was saying.

Decír, *inf. va.*, to say, to tell, to speak, to declare.
Decláman, F. *declamar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, declaim.
Declaracíon, *nf.*, declaration.
Dedicár, *inf. va.*, to dedicate, to consecrate.
Defécto, *nm.*, defect, error, fault, mistake.
Defendér, *inf. va.*, to defend, to protect, to resist, to maintain.
Defénsa, *nf.*, defence, guard, shelter.
Degradár, *inf. va.*, to degrade.
Dejádo, *part.*, left, relinquished; permitted.
Dejár, *inf. va.*, to leave, to relinquish; to permit, to let. *Dejar de*, to fail to.
Déjes, F. *dejar*, *sub. pres.* 2 *s.*, thoumayest permit.
Del, *prep.* and *art.*, of the, from the, by the, in the.
Del, *prep.* and *pron.*, of him, from him, by him, of that, from that, by it.
Delánte, *adv.* and *prep.*, before, in the presence of. *Delante de*, before.
Deleitáble, *adj.*, delectable, pleasing, delightful.
Delicadéza, *nf.*, delicacy, tenderness, refinement.
Delicádo-a, *adj.*, delicate, pleasing, nice.
Delícia, *nf.*, delight, comfort, satisfaction.
Delicióso-a, *adj.*, delicious, delightful.
Delineado, *part.*, delineated, described, sketched.
Demandár, *inf. va.*, to demand, to ask, to petition.
Demás, *adv.* and *adj.* (It is nearly always used with an article before it,) over and above. *Los demás*, *las demás*, the rest, the others.
Demasiádo-a, *adj.*, overmuch, excessive, too much.
Demasiádo, *adv.*, too, enough, excessively.
Demostrár, *inf. va.*, to prove, to show, to demonstrate.
Denodádo-a, *adj.*, bold, intrepid, daring.
Déntro, or, déntro de, *prep.*, in, within.
Denuédo, *nm.*, boldness, intrepidity, courage.
Denunciár, *inf. va.*, to denounce.
Derécho, *nm.*, law, equity, right.
Derécho-a, *adj.*, rightful, straight, just, lawful.
Derramádo-a, *part.*, shed, diffused.
Derráman, F. *derramar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, shed, diffuse; bestow.
Derramár, *inf. va.*, to shed, to diffuse, to spread, to pour forth, to bestow bountifully.
Derredór, *nm.*, circumference, vicinity. *Al derredor.* or *en derredor*, around.
Derribádo-a, *part.*, demolished, ruined, overthrown.
Derríte, F. *derretir*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, melts, thaws.
Desagradáble, *adj.*, disagreeable, unpleasant.
Desanimádo-a, *part.*, disheartened, discouraged, dispirited.
Desaparecér, *inf. vn.*, to disappear.
Desapasionádo-a, *adj.*, dispassionate, impartial.
Desaprobár, *inf. va.*, to disapprove, to censure, to condemn.
Desarregládo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, disordered, discomposed: immoderate, unrestrained.
Desastróso-a, *adj.*, disastrous.

DES

Descánso, *nm.*, rest, repose, tranquillity, relaxation.

Descendiénte, *nm.*, descendant.

Desclavár, *inf. va.*, to unnail, to draw out nails.

Desconocér, *inf. va.*, to disown, to be ignorant of, to be unacquainted.

Desconociéndo, *ger.*, not knowing, being ignorant of.

Desconfiánza, *nf.*, distrust, mistrust, want of confidence, jealousy.

Desconfiár, *inf. va.*, to distrust, to suspect, to have no confidence in.

Desconsuélo, *nm.*, affliction, want of consolation, trouble.

Descubiérto-a, *part.* and *adj.*, uncovered, discovered, unclosed, open.

Désde, *prep.*, from, since, after.

Desdícha, *nf.*, misfortune, unhappiness.

Desdóro, *nm.*, dishonor, blemish, stain.

Deseár, *inf. va.*, to desire, to wish, to demand.

Desechár, *inf. va.*, to expel, to drive away.

Desenfréno, *nm.*, unruliness, rashness, licentiousness.

Deséo, *nm.*, desire, wish.

Deseóso-a, *adj.*, desirous, anxious.

Desfachatéz, *nf.*, impudence, effrontery.

Desgarrádo, *part.*, torn, rent.

Desgrácia, *nf.*, misfortune, adversity.

Desgraciademénte, *adv.*, unfortunately, unhappily.

Desgraciádo-a, *adj.*, unfortunate, unhappy, unlucky.

Deshonróso-a, *adj.*, dishonorable, disgraceful, indecent.

DET

Desiguál, *adj.*, unequal; unjust.

Deslizár, *inf. va.*, to slip, to slide.

Despécho, *nm.*, displeasure, dismay, despair, indignation.

Despéja, F. *despejar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, to clear away, to clear up.

Despotísmo, *nm.*, despotism, absolute power.

Despreciáble, *adj.*, despicable, contemptible.

Despreciádo-a, *part.*, despised, scorned.

Despreciár, *inf. va.*, to despise, to disdain, to depreciate, to contemn.

Desprécies, F. *despreciar*, *sub. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou mayest despise.

Desprendído, *part.*, loosened, separated.

Después, or, después de, *prep.*, after, next to.

Después que, *adv.*, afterward, after.

Destíno, *nm.*, destiny, fate, doom, lot.

Destituído-a, *part.*, deprived, stripped, being destitute.

Destruír, *inf. va.*, to destroy, to ruin, to lay waste.

Destruyéndo, *ger.*, destroying, laying waste.

Desvélo, *nm.*, wakefulness, inability to sleep.

Detención, *nf.*, detention, delay, stopping.

Detenér, *inf. va.*, to detain, to hinder, to stop, to keep, to arrest.

Determinación, *nf.*, determination, decision, resolution.

Determinádo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, determined, resolute, bold.

Detrás, *prep.* and *adv.*, behind. *Detras de*, behind.

Detuvímos, F. *detener*, *ind. perf. def.* 1 *p.*, we stopped.

Dí, F. *dar*, *ind. perf. def.* 1 *s.*, I gave.
Dí, F. *decir*, *imp.* 2 *s.*, say thou, tell thou.
Día, *nm.*, day.
Díce, F. *decir*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, says, he says.
Dícha, *nf.*, happiness, fortune, felicity.
Dícho-a, *part.*, said, mentioned.
Diciéndo, *ger.*, saying, telling.
Diéz, *num. adj.*, ten.
Diferenciár, *inf. va.* and *vr.*, to differ, to be unlike.
Diferénte, *adj.*, different, dissimilar, unlike.
Difícil, *adj.*, difficult, arduous.
Dificultád, *nf.*, difficulty, embarrassment, obstacle.
Dificultóso-a, *adj.*, difficult, troublesome.
Dignidád, *nm.*, dignity, excellence, rank, advancement, preferment.
Dígno-a, *adj.*, worthy, deserving.
Díjo, F. *decir*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, said, he or she said.
Diligéncia, *nf.*, diligence; stage-coach or diligence.
Dinéro, *nm.*, money, wealth.
Dió, F. *dar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, gave; he or she gave.
Diós, *n. prop.*, God.
Diré, F. *decir*, *ind.* 1 *fut.* 1 *s.*, I shall say.
Dirigír, or dirijír, *inf. va.*, to rule, to direct, to guide, to govern.
Discernimiénto, *nm.*, discernment, judgment, clearsightedness.
Discórdia, *nf.*, discord, disagreement.
Discípulo, *nm.*, disciple, pupil, student.
Disgustádo-a, *part.*, disgusted, displeased.
Disgústo, *nm.*, disgust, loathing, offence.
Disminúye, F. *disminuir*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, diminishes, lessens, impairs.
Disminuído-a, *part.*, diminished, lessened.
Dispáro, *nm.*, discharge, explosion.
Dispensár, *inf. va.*, to dispense, to excuse, to diffuse.
Dispuésto-a, *part.* and *adj.*, disposed; ready.
Disputár, *inf. va.*, to dispute, to contend.
Distinguír, *inf. va.*, to distinguish, to perceive, to discern.
Distinguído-a, *part.*, distinguished, noted.
Distinción, *nf.*, distinction
Distintaménte, *adv.*, distinctly.
Distínto-a, *adj.*, distinct, different.
Distraér, *inf. va.*, to distract, draw off the attention, to perplex.
Distraído-a, *part.* and *adj.*, distracted; inattentive.
Divérso-a, *adj.*, diverse, different, various.
Dividír, *inf. va.*, to divide, disjoin, separate.
Divisár, *inf. va.*, to descry, to perceive.
Do, *adv.*, where. See *Donde.*
Dobléz, *nm.*, duplicity, double-dealing.
Documénto, *sm.*, document, writing.
Dólo, *nm.*, fraud, wile, deceit, trick.
Dominár, *inf. va.*, to rule, to master.
Don, *nm.*, Don (a title of respect).
Don *nm.*, gift, a present.
Dónde, *adv.*, where, in what place.
Doña, *nf.*, Lady, Mistress (Mrs.), Madame, (a title of respect appled to ladies.)
Dorádo-a, *adj.*, gilt, golden.
Dormír, *inf. vn.*, to sleep.

Dos, *num. adj.*, two.
Dudár, *inf. va.*, to doubt, to be uncertain.
Dúdas, F. *dudar*, *sub. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou mayest doubt.
Duélo, *nm.*, affliction, grief; duel.
Duéño, *nm.*, owner, proprietor, master.
Dúlce, *adj.*, soft, gentle, sweet.
Dulzúra, *sf.*, sweetness, softness, gentleness, tenderness.
Dúque, *nm.*, Duke.
Duradéro-a, *adj.*, lasting, durable.
Duránte, *prep.*, during.
Durár, *inf. vn.*, to last, to endure, to continue.

E.

E′, *conj.*, and (used instead of *y*, before a word beginning with *i* or *hi*).
Echándo, *ger.*, throwing, casting.
Echár, *inf. va.*, to throw, to cast; to apply, to compute.
Echára, F. *echar*, *sub. impf.* 3 *s.*, he should throw.
E′co, *nm.*, echo.
Ecsaminár, see *examinar*.
Ecsistír, see *existir*.
Edád, *nf.*, age.
Edícto, *nm.*, edict, order.
Edificár, *inf. va.*, to build, to construct, to edify, to instruct.
Educación, *nf.*, education, instruction.
Efécto, *nm.*, effect, purpose. *En efecto*, in fact, indeed.
Ejémplo, *nm.*, example, precedent.
Ejercér, *inf. va.*, to exercise, to practice.
Ejerciéndo, *ger.*, exercising.
Ejército, *nm.*, army, host.
El, *def. art.*, the: *él*, *pers. pron.*, he, it; *dem. pron.*, that.
Elécto-a, *part.*, elected, chosen.
Electricidád, *nf.*, electricity.
Eléctrico-a, *adj.*, electrical.
Elegáncia, *nf.*, elegance, gracefulness.
Elegír, *inf. va.*, to elect, to select, to choose.
Elejír, or, elijir, see *elegir*.
Eléna, *n. prop.*, Ellen, Helen. *Santa Elena*, St. Helena (an island of that name).
Elijído-a, or elegído-a, *part.*, elected, selected.
Eligiéron, F. *eligir*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *p.*, they selected.
E′lla, *pers. pron. f.*, she, it; her.
E′llo, *pers. pron. neuter*, it.
Embarcación, *nf.*, vessel, boat.
Embárgo, *nm.*, embargo, sequestration. *Sin embargo*, notwithstanding.
Embarrilár, *inf. va.*, to barrel, to put into a barrel.
Embustéro, *nm.*, liar; hypocrite, impostor.
Emperadór, *nm.*, emperor, monarch.
Empéro, *conj.*, but, however, yet.
Empezár, *inf. va.*, to begin, to commence.
Empiéza, F. *empezar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, begins, it begins.
Empiézan, F. *empezar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they begin.
Empleár, *inf. va.*, to occupy, to employ.
Empujádo-a, *part.*, pushed, pushed away.
E′mulo, *nm.*, rival, competitor.
En, *prep.*, in, into, at, on, upon.
Encadenár, *inf. va.*, to chain, to enthral, to fetter.
Encanecído-a, *part.*, grown grey.

Encargádo-a, *part.*, charged with, entrusted.

Encontrár, *inf. va.*, to meet, to encounter, to find, to light upon.

Encuéntra, F. *encontrar, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, meets, meets with.

Encuéntran, F. *encontrar, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, meet, find, they find.

Enemígo, *nm.*, enemy, opponent.

Enemígo-a, *adj.*, inimical, of the enemy.

Energía, *nf.*, energy, power, force.

Enfermedád, *nf.*, infirmity, sickness.

Enférmo-a, *adj.*, sick, infirm.

Enfrenáse, F. *enfrenar, sub. impf.* 3 *s.*, would restrain, would curb.

Engañár, *inf. va.*, to deceive, to cheat, to mislead, to hoax.

Engrandecimiénto, *nm.*, aggrandizement.

Enjámbre, *nf.*, swarm, crowd.

Ennoblecér, *inf. va.*, to ennoble.

Enorgullecér, *inf. vr.*, to pride one's self, to be haughty.

Enríque, *n. prop.*, Henry.

Enrojecér, *inf. va.*, to tinge, to redden.

Ensálce, F. *ensalzar, sub. pres.* 3 *s.*, may boast, may extol.

Ensalzár, *inf. va.*, to extol, to boast.

Ensangrentádo-a, *part.*, stained with blood, covered with blood.

Ensayádo-a, *part.*, tried, essayed, proved.

Ensayár, *inf. va.*, to try, to make trial of, to essay, to examine, to prove.

Ensáyo, *nm.*, trial, essay; proof, experiment.

E'nte, *nm.*, being, entity.

Entendér, *inf. va.*, to understand, to comprehend.

Entendimiénto, *nm.*, understanding, judgment, mind, knowledge.

Entéro-a, *adj.*, entire, complete, whole.

Entiénde, F. *entender, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, understands, he understands.

Entiéndo, F. *entender, ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I understand.

Entónces, *adv.*, then, at that time.

Entrándo, *ger.*, entering.

Entráñas, *nf. pl.*, entrails, internal parts of any thing.

Entrár, *inf. va.*, to enter, to go in.

E'ntre, *prep.*, among, between.

Entrémos, F. *entrar, imp.* 1 *p.*, let us enter.

Entró, F. *entrar, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, entered, he entered.

Envanecér, *inf. vn.*, to make vain, to become proud or haughty.

Envanecimiénto, *nm.*, haughtiness, vanity.

Envanézcan, F. *envanecer, imp.* 3 *p.*, let (them) pride themselves.

Envidieis, F. *envidiar, sub. pres.* 2 *p.*, ye may envy; *imp.*, envy ye, do ye envy.

Envidióso-a, *adj.*, envious, invidious.

E'poca, *nf.*, epoch, period of time.

Equivalénte, *adj.*, equivalent, equal.

Equívoco-a, *adj.*, equivocal, ambiguous.

E'ra, F. *ser, ind. impf.* 3 *s.*, was, he or it was.

E'ran, F. *ser, ind. impf.* 3 *p.*, were, they were.

Erigído-a, *part.*, erected, raised.

Erijído-a, *part.* See *erigido.*

Es, F. *ser, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, is, he is, it is, she is.

E'sa, see *ese.*

Escapádo, *part.*, escaped.

Escarmiénto, *nm.*, fine, punishment, penalty.

Escarnecér, *inf. va.*, to mock, to ridicule, to make sport of.

Escarnecido, *part.*, mocked, scoffed at.
Escelénte, *adj.*, excellent.
Escéna, *nf.*, scene, vicissitude; stage of a theatre.
Escepto, *adv.*, except, excepting.
Escipión, *n. prop.*, Scipio.
Escitár, *inf. va.*, to excite, to move, to stimulate, to instigate.
Esclamár, *inf. vn.*, to exclaim, to cry out.
Esclavitúd, *nf.*, slavery, servitude, bondage.
Esclávo, *nm.*, slave, captive.
Esclusívo-a, *adj.*, exclusive.
Escogér, *inf. va.*, to select, to choose.
Escogído-a, *part.*, selected, chosen.
Escólta, *nf.*, escort, convoy.
Escondér, *inf. va.*, to hide, to conceal; to disguise, to include.
Escríba, F. *escribir*, *subj. pres.* 1 or 3 *s.*, may write.
Escribió, F. *escribir*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, wrote.
Escribír, *inf. va.*, to write, to compose.
Escríto, *nm.*, writing, composition.
Escríto-a, *part.*, written, composed.
Escritór, *nm.*, writer, author.
Escuchár, *inf. va.*, to listen to, to heed, to hearken.
Escusár, *inf. va.*, to excuse, to liberate, to exempt.
E'se-a, *dem. pron.*, that, that one.
Esenciál, *adj.*, essential, important.
Esfuérzo, *nm.*, effort, courage, exertion.
E'so, *dem. pron.*, that thing.
E'sos-as, *dem. pron. pl.*, those, those persons or things.
Espácio, *nm.*, space, period, interval.
Espáda, *nf.*, sword.
Espáña, *n. prop. f.*, Spain.
Español, *nm.*, a Spaniard; the Spanish language (*idioma* understood).
Español-a, *adj.*, Spanish.
Espécie, *nf.*, species, sort, kind, specimen, subject.
Especulación, *nf.*, speculation, examination.
Espedición, *nf.*, expedition; activity.
Esperár, *inf. va.*, to expect, to hope, to await.
Esperiéncia, *nf.*, experience; knowledge.
Esperimentár, *inf. va.*, to experience, to learn or know by practice; to experiment.
Espesúra, *nf.*, thicket; thickness.
Espína, *nf.*, thorn, brier.
Espirádo-a, *part.*, expired, being finished.
Espirár, *inf. va.*, to expire; to come to an end.
Espléndido-a, *adj.*, splendid, magnificent, brilliant.
Esplícitamente, *adv.*, explicitly, plainly.
Esponér, *inf. va.*, to expose, to explain.
Esqueléto, *nm.*, skeleton; carcass.
Esquívo-a, *adj.*, fastidious, shy, reserved, stubborn.
E'sta, *dem. pron. f.*, this, this one, she.
Está, F. *estar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, is, exists, it is.
Estába, F. *estar*, *ind. impf.* 3 *s.*, was.
Establecér, *inf. va.*, to settle, to establish.
Establecído, *part.*, established.
Estación, *nf.*, season of the year; state.
Estadística, *nf.*, statistics.
Estádo, *nm.*, state, rank, condition. *Estados Unidos*, United States.

Estádo, *part.*, been, existed.
Estámos, F. *estar*, *ind. pres.* 1 *p.*, we are.
Estár, *inf. vn.*, to be, to exist.
Estasiádo-a, *adj.* or *part.*, full of enthusiasm or rapture, carried away with overpowering emotion.
E'ste-a, *dem. pron.*, this, this one; the latter.
Esté, F. *estar*, *subj. pres.* 3 *s.*, may be, he may be.
Estendído. *part.*, extended, enlarged.
Esténso-a, *adj.*, extensive, ample, large.
Estenuádo-a, *part.*, diminished, extenuated. weakened.
Estéril, *adj.*, barren, sterile, unfruitful.
Esterlín, *adj.*, sterling, lawful English money.
Esterminár, *inf. va.*, to exterminate, to banish, to root out.
Estermínio, *nm.*, expulsion, extermination, banishment.
Estimádo-a, *part.*, esteemed, respected.
Estimár, *inf. va.*, to estimate, to value, to esteem.
Estirpación, *nf.*, extirpation, eradication, rooting out.
E'sto, *dem. pron. neuter*, this, this thing.
Estóy, F. *estar*, *ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I am.
Estrágo, *nm.*, ruin, havoc, ravage.
Estrangéro, or, estranjéro, *nm.*, stranger, foreigner.
Estrañes, F. *estrañar*, *subj. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou mayest be astonished, thou mayest wonder.
Estraño-a, *adj.*, strange, foreign.
Estraordinário-a, *adj.*, extraordinary.
Estrémo, *nm.*, extremity, end, extreme
Estudiár, *inf. va.*, to study.
Estúdio, *nm.*, study; attention.
Estupór, *nm.*, stupor, astonishment.
Estuviéra, F. *estar*, *subj. impf.* 3 *s.*, should be.
Estúvo, F. *estar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, was, he, she or it was.
Etérno-a, *adj.*, eternal, endless.
Európa, *n. prop. f.*, Europe.
Européo-a, *adj.*, European.
Evitár, *inf. va.*, to shun, to avoid, to prevent.
Exactaménte, *adv.*, exactly, precisely.
Exactitúd, *nf.*, exactness, justness; assiduity.
Exâmen, *nm.*, examination, investigation, trial.
Examinába, F. *examinar*, *ind. impf.* 3 *s.*, was examining, examined.
Examinár, *inf. va.*, to examine; to investigate.
Exclamár, see *esclamar*
Exíge, F. *exigir*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, demands, exacts, requires.
Exigír, *inf. va.*, to exact, to require, to demand.
Existéncia, *nf.*, existence.
Existído, *part.*, existed.
Existír, *inf. vn.*, to exist, to be.
E'xito, *nm.*, result, success, end.

F.

Facción, *nf.*, faction, turbulent party.
Fácil, *adj.*, easy, facile.
Facilitár, *inf. va.*, to render easy, to facilitate.
Fácilmente, *adv.*, easily, without difficulty.
Facultád, *nf.*, faculty, power, facility.

Faéna, *nf.*, work, labor.
Fallecér, *inf. vn.*, to die.
Falsaménte, *adv.*, falsely.
Fálso-a, *adj.*, false, deceitful, counterfeited.
Fálta, *nf.*, fault, mistake, defect; need.
Fálta, F. *faltar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, wants, needs, fails.
Faltába, F. *faltar*, *ind. impf.* 3 *s.*, was wanting.
Faltár, *inf. vn.*, to be wanting, to need, to fail.
Fáltas, F. *faltar*, *ind. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou art wanting, thou failest.
Fáma, *nf.*, fame, renown, report.
Famóso-a, *adj.*, famous, distinguished, renowned.
Favór, *nm.*, favor, protection, compliment.
Favorecér, *inf. va.*, to favor, to abet, to grant favors.
Favorecído-a, *part.*, favored, protected.
Febréro, *nm.*, February.
Fécha, *nf.*, date of a letter or other writing.
Felicidád, *nf.*, happiness, felicity, prosperity.
Felípe, *n. prop.*, Philip.
Felíz, *adj.*, happy, fortunate, prosperous.
Felizménte, *adv.*, happily, luckily.
Fenício, *n. prop.*, Phœnician.
Féo-a, *adj.*, ugly; deformed, homely.
Fernándo, *n. prop.*, Ferdinand.
Ferocidád, *nf.*, ferocity, cruelty.
Feróz, ferocious, fierce, cruel.
Férro-carríl, *nm.*, rail-road.
Fervóso-a, *adj.*, fervent, ardent.
Fidedígno-a, *adj.*, trustworthy, worthy of credit.
Fidelidád, *nf.*, fidelity, constancy, loyalty.
Fiél, *adj.*, faithful, true, constant.
Fiéra, *nf.*, wild beast.
Fieréza, *nf.*, fierceness, ferocity, cruelty.
Fiésta, *nf.*, feast, festival, entertainment.
Fijár, *inf. va.*, to fix, to fasten, to settle.
Fíjo-a, *adj.*, fixed, settled, firm, secure.
Fíla, *nf.*, file or row of soldiers.
Filósofo, *nm.*, philosopher.
Fin, *nm.*, end. *En fin*, or *por fin*, at last, in fine; *al fin*, at length, after all.
Fingír, *inf. va.*, to feign, to fancy, to imagine.
Firmár, *inf. va.*, to sign, to subscribe.
Firméza, *nf.*, firmness, steadiness.
Física, *nf.*, physics, the science of natural objects.
Flaqueár, *inf. vn.*, to flag, to grow feeble, to become disheartened.
Flaquéza, *nf.*, weakness, frailty.
Flojedád, *nf.*, weakness, feebleness, laxity.
Flor, *nf.*, flower, blossom, bloom.
Fóndo, *nm.*, bottom; depth.
Formádo-a, *part.*, formed; completed.
Formár, *inf. va.*, to form, to shape, to make.
Fortificár, *inf. va.*, to fortify.
Fortúna, *nf.*, fortune, luck, success.
Forzádo-a, *part.*, forced, obliged.
Francaménte, *adv.*, frankly, openly.
Francés-a, *adj.* and *n.*, French; Frenchman, Frenchwoman.
Fráncia, *n. prop. f.*, France.
Fránco-a, *adj.*, frank, free, open.
Frecuentádo-a, *part.*, frequented, visited often.

Frĕno, *nm.*, rein, curb, bridle.
Frénte, *nf.*, front, forehead.
Frésco-a, *adj.*, fresh, cool.
Frío, *nm.*, cold, coldness.
Frío-a, *adj.*, cold.
Frúto, *nm.*, fruit; advantage.
Fué, F. *ser, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, was, he, she or it was.
Fué, F. *ir, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, went, he or she went.
Fuégo, *nm.*, fire.
Fuéra de, *prep.*, out, out of, except.
Fuére, F. *ser, subj. fut.* 1 or 3 *s.*, should be, would be.
Fuéro, *nm.*, statute-law; charter.
Fuéron, F. *ser, ind. perf. def.* 3 *p.*, were, they were.
Fuérte, *nm.*, fortification, fort.
Fuérte, *adj.*, strong, firm, vigorous.
Fuerteménte, *adv.*, strongly, forcibly.
Fuérza, *nf.*, force, strength. *A' fuerza de*, by force of, by dint of.
Fuëse, F. *ser, subj. impf.* 1 or 3 *s.*, should be.
Fuésen, F. *ser, subj. impf.* 3 *p.*, they should be.
Fúlton, *n. prop.*, Fulton.
Fumándo, *ger.*, smoking.
Functionário, *nm.*, functionary, officer of trust.
Fundamentál, *adj.*, fundamental.
Funésto-a, *adj.*, mournful, lamentable, sad, dismal.
Futúro, *nm.*, future.

G.

Gacéta, *nf.*, gazette, newspaper.
Galería, *nf.*, gallery, lobby.
Ganádo, *nm.*, herd, flock; sheep, cattle.
Ganár, *inf. va.*, to gain, to win, to obtain.
Ganará, F. *ganar, ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *s.*, he will gain.
Ganú, F. *ganar, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, he gained.
Garbóso-a, *adj.*, genteel, graceful, comely.
Gaspárdo, *n. prop.*, Gaspardo.
Gastár, *inf. va.*, to spend, to waste.
Gásto, *nm.*, expense.
Géfe, or, jéfe, *nm.*, chief; leader.
Gemér, *inf. vn.*, to groan.
Generál, or, jenerál, *nm.*, general, chief, commander.
Generál, *adj.*, general, universal.
Generalidád, *nf.*, generality.
Generóso-a, *adj.*, generous, liberal, kind.
Género, *nm.*, kind, sort, genus, race.
Gerarquía, *nf.*, hierarchy, established ecclesiastical government.
Gigánte, *nm.*, giant.
Glória, *nf.*, glory, praise, fame, renown.
Gloriósc ɔ, *adj.*, glorious, worthy of praise.
Gobernadór, *nm.*, governor, ruler.
Gobernánte, *nm.*, ruler, one who assumes the management of any affair.
Gobiérno, *nm.*, government.
Gódo, *n. prop.*, Goth. *Gódo-Espanól*, Spanish-Goth.
Gódo-a, *adj.*, Gothic.
Góza, F. *gozar, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, enjoys, he or she enjoys.
Gozár, *inf. va.*, to enjoy, to be rejoiced at.
Gózo, *nm.*, enjoyment, delight, pleasure.
Grácia, *nf.*, thanks, grace, elegance.
Gracióso-a, *adj.*, graceful, facetious, witty, merry.

Gráda, *nf.*, step; *gradas*, seats which rise one above another.
Grádo, *nm.*, degree, grade, step.
Gran, *adj.*, great, large (contracted from *grande*). *Gran Bretaña*, Great Britain.
Gránde, *adj.*, great, large, eminent.
Grandéza, *nf.*, greatness, grandeur.
Granizándo, *ger.*, hailing, raining hail-stones.
Gratitúd, *nf.*, gratitude, thankfulness.
Grécia, *n. prop. f.*, Greece.
Gríta, F. *gritár*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, shouts, he cries out.
Gritándo, *ger.*, shouting, crying out.
Gritár, *inf. vn.*, to cry out, to shout, to make a noise.
Gríto, *nm.*, shout, loud cry.
Guardádo, *part.*, kept, guarded, preserved.
Guardár, *inf. va.*, to keep, to guard, to preserve.
Guárdia, *nf.*, guard, watch, a body of armed soldiers to watch by way of defence.
Guarísmo, *nm.*, figure, arithmetical number.
Guérra, *nf.*, war.
Guerréro, *nm.*, warrior.
Guerréro-a, *adj.*, warlike; martial.
Guillétto, *n. prop.*, Guilletto.
Guiñáda, *nf.*, wink of the eye.
Gusáno, *nm.*, worm. *Gusano roedor*, gnawing worm, remorse.
Gústa, F. *gustar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, pleases; tastes.
Gustár, *inf. vn.*, to please, to taste, to enjoy, to like.
Gústo, *nm.*, taste; pleasure, enjoyment.
Gustóso-a, *adj.*, pleasant, cheerful, contented.

H.

Ha, F. *haber*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, has, is, there is.
Ha, F. *haber*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, has; it is.
Habér, *inf. v. aux.*, to have.
Había, F. *haber*, *ind. impf.* 1 or 3 *s.*, had; there was, there were.
Habían, F. *haber*, *ind. impf.* 3 *p.*, they had.
Habído, *part.*, had.
Habiéndo, *ger.*, having.
Habitación, *nf.*, habitation, dwelling, abode, mansion.
Habitánte, *nm.*, inhabitant, resident.
Habitár, *inf. va.*, to inhabit.
Hábla, F. *hablar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, speaks.
Hablár, *inf. va.*, to speak; to say.
Háble, F. *hablar*, *imp.* 3 *s.*, let him speak.
Háblo, F. *hablar*, *ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I speak.
Háce, F. *hacer*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, does, makes; it is, it makes.
Hacémos, F. *hacer*, *ind. pres.* 1 *p.*, we make, we do.
Hacér, *inf. va.*, to make, to do; to cause, to order.
Háces, F. *hacer*, *ind. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou doest, thou makest.
Hacía, F. *hacer*, *ind. impf.* 1 or 3 *s.*, made, did.
Hácia, *prep.*, towards, to.
Haciéndo, *ger.*, making, doing, rendering.
Hágo, F. *hacer*, *ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I make, I do.

HER

Hallábamos, F. *hallar, ind. impf.* 1 *p.*, we found.
Hállan, F. *hallar, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they find.
Hallándo, *ger.*, finding.
Hallár, *inf. va.*, to find, to meet, to discover.
Halló, F. *hallar, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, found, he found.
Hámbre, *nf.*, hunger; famine.
Hambriénto-a, *adj.*, hungry, starved.
Han, F. *haber, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they have.
Hará, F. *hacer, ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *s.*, shall or will make, will do; there will be.
Haréis, F. *hacer, ind.* 1 *fut.* 1 *p.*, ye will make, ye will do.
Harína, *nf.*, flour.
Harmonía, *nf.*, harmony, concord.
Hárto-a, full, satiated, enough.
Has, F. *haber, ind. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou hast.
Hásta, *prep.*, to, till, as far as. *Hasta que*, until, as far as.
Háy, F. *haber, ind. pres.* 3 *s.* or *p.*, there is, or, there are.
Háya, F. *haber, subj. pres.* 1 or 3 *s.*, may have.
Háyas, F. *haber, subj. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou mayest have.
He, F. *haber, ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I have.
Hécho-a, *part.*, made, done.
Hémos, F. *haber, ind. pres.* 1 *p.*, we have.
Henríque, same as *Enríque.*
Heredarán, F. *heredar, ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *p.*, shall inherit.
Heredéro, *nm.*, heir, inheritor.
Herída, *nf.*, wound, sore.
Hermána, *nf.*, sister.
Hermaníto, *nm. dim.*, little brother.
Hermáno, *nm.*, brother.
Hermóso-a, *adj.*, beautiful, handsome, fine.

HUM

Héroe, *nm.*, hero.
Heróicamente, *adv.*, heroically, bravely.
Heróico-a, *adj.*, heroical.
Hiciéra, F. *hacer, subj. impf.* 3 *s.*, should do, should make.
Hiciéron, F. *hacer, ind. perf. def.* 3 *p.*, they made, they did.
Hiérro, *nm.*, iron.
Híja, *nf.*, daughter, child.
Híjo, *nm.*, son, child.
História, *nf.*, history, narration.
Historiadór, *nm.*, historian.
Hízo, F. *hacer, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, made, did.
Hója, *nf.*, leaf.
Holandés, *nm.*, Dutchman.
Hómbre, *nm.*, man.
Honór, *nm.*, honor, reputation.
Honradéz, *nf.*, honesty, honor.
Honrádo-a, *adj.*, honorable, honest.
Honrár, *inf. va.*, to honor, to praise, to revere.
Honróso-a, *adj.*, honorable, creditable.
Hóra, *nf.*, hour; time.
Horríble, *adj.*, horrible, dreadful.
Horrór, *nm.*, horror, abhorrence, dread.
Horrorizár, *inf. va.*, to cause horror, to terrify.
Hóy, *adv.*, to-day, this day.
Hubiéra, F. *haber, subj. impf.* 1 or 3 *s.*, would or should have.
Hubiéran, F. *haber, subj. impf.* 3 *p.*, they would have.
Húbo, F. *haber, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, had; there was, there were.
Huésped, *nm.*, guest, lodger; host.
Huír, *inf. vn.*, to fly, to run away, to escape, to shun.
Humáno-a, *adj.*, human, rational, humane; pertaining to philology

Humildád, *nf.*, humility, meekness.
Humílde, *adj.*, humble, submissive, meek.
Humillación, *nf.*, humiliation.
Humillár, *inf. va.*, to humble, to lower, to subdue.

Huyéron, F. *huir*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *p.*, they flew, fled, escaped.
Huyó, F. *huir*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, fled, flew.

I.

I'ba, F. *ir*, *ind. impf.* 1 or 3 *s.*, went, was going, was.
Idéa, *nf.*, idea, notion, intention.
Idióma, *nm.*, language, idiom.
I'do, F. *ir*, *part.*, gone.
Ignorár, *inf. va.*, to be ignorant of, not to know.
Iguál, *adj.*, equal, similar.
Ilimitádo-a, *adj.*, unlimited, unrestrained.
Ilústre, *adj.*, illustrious, celebrated, noble.
Imitár, *inf. va.*, to imitate.
Impaciéncia, *nf.*, impatience.
Impacientár, *inf. va.*, to vex, to lose patience, to become impatient.
Impaciénte, *adj.*, impatient.
Imparcialménte, *adv.*, impartially.
Impedír, *inf. va.*, to hinder, to impede, to prevent.
Impelér, *inf. va.*, to impel, to excite.
Impelído-a, *part.*, impelled, urged, propelled.
Impendído-a, *part.*, undergone.
Imperfécto-a, *adj.*, imperfect.
Império, *nm.*, empire, command.
Importáncia, *nf.*, importance, import.
Importánte, *adj.*, important; useful.
Importár, *inf. va.*, to import, to be important, to concern, to matter.
Impracticáble, *adj.*, impracticable, impassable.
Imprénta, *nf.*, printing, printing-press.
Impresión, *nf.*, impression; image.
Impropio-a, *adj.*, improper, unbecoming.
Incendiár, *inf. va.*, to inflame, to enkindle.
Inclinación, *nf.*, inclination, tendency.
Inclinádo-a, *part.*, inclined, disposed.
Inclinándo, *ger.*, inclining.
Incomodidád, *nf.*, inconvenience, trouble, pains.
Incomparáble, *adj.*, incomparable, matchless.
Inconcevíble, *adj.*, inconceivable, incomprehensible.
Incorporár, *inf. va.*, to incorporate, to unite.
Increíble, *adj.*, incredible.
Indagár, *inf. va.*, to investigate, to search into.
Independéncia, *nf.*, independence.
Independiénte, *adj.*, independent, free.
Indicár, *inf. va.*, to point out, to indicate.
Indiferéncia, *nf.*, indifference, unconcern.
Indiferénte, *adj.*, indifferent, unconcerned.
Indignaménte, *adv.*, unworthily, unjustly.
I'ndio, *nm.*, Indian.
Indispensáble, *adj.*, indispensable.
Indivíduo, *nm.*, individual.
Indómito-a, *adj.*, unconquerable, indomitable.

Indudableméntе, *adv.*, undoubtedly, without doubt.
Indulgéncia, *nf.*, indulgence, tenderness.
Infámia, *nf.*, infamy, dishonor, meanness.
Infelíz, *adj.*, unhappy, unfortunate.
Inferír, *inf. va.*, to infer, to deduce.
Influéncia, *nf.*, influence.
Influjo, *nm.*, influx, a flowing in.
Infortunádo-a, *adj.*, unfortunate, unhappy.
Infortúnio, *nm.*, misfortune, ill luck.
Ingénio, *nm.*, genius, mental power, mind.
Inglés, *n. prop.*, Englishman, the English language.
Inglés-a, *adj.*, English.
Ingratitúd, *nf.*, ingratitude.
Ingráto-a, *adj.*, ungrateful, unkind.
Injúria, *nf.*, injury, affront, wrong.
Injústo-a, *adj.*, unjust, wrong, harmful.
Inmediación, *nf.*, neighborhood, confine.
Inmediaméntе, *adv.*, immediately, directly.
Inmortál, *adj.*, immortal.
Inmortalizár, *inf. va.*, to immortalize.
Inmóvil, *adj.*, immovable, motionless.
Innecesário-a, *adj.*, unnecessary.
Innumeráble, *adj.*, innumerable.
Inocéncia, *nf.*, innocence, purity.
Inocénte, *adj.*, innocent, pure, modest.
Inofensívo-a, *adj.*, inoffensive, harmless.
Inquietár, *inf. va.*, to disquiet, to harass, to molest, to vex.
Inquietúd, *nf.*, inquietude, anxiety.
Inscripción, *nf.*, inscription.
Insígne, *adj.*, renowned, illustrious, remarkable.
Instánte, *nm.*, instant, moment.
Instínto, *nm.*, instinct, instigation.
Institución, *nf.*, institution.
Instrucción, *nf.*, instruction, information.
Instruído-a, *part.*, instructed, educated.
Insubordinación, *nf.*, insubordination, disobedience of orders.
Insufríble, *adj.*, insufferable, intolerable.
Insultár, *inf. va.*, to insult.
Integridád, *nf.*, integrity, purity, honesty.
Inteligéncia, *nf.*, intelligence, understanding, knowledge.
Intención, *nf.*, intention, purpose, design.
Intentár, *inf. va.*, to intend, to attempt, to endeavor.
Interés, *nm.*, interest.
Interesádo-a, *adj.*, interested, selfish, mercenary.
Interiorméntе, *adv.*, internally, inwardly.
Interrogár, *inf. va.*, to interrogate, to question.
Interumpír, *inf. va.*, to interrupt, to hinder.
Intimidád, *nf.*, intimacy, familiarity.
Inútil, *adj.*, useless, unprofitable.
Inútilmente, *adv.*, uselessly, in vain.
Invención, *nf.*, invention, discovery.
Invénto, *nm.*, same as *invencion*,
Inventór, *nm.*, inventor; contriver.
Inviérno, *nm.*, winter.
Invitación, *nf.*, invitation.
Ir, *inf. vn.*, to go; to be.
I'ra, *nf.*, anger, ire.
Irlandés, *nm.*, Irishman.
Irlandésa, *nf.*, Irishwoman.

Irreconciliáble, *adj.*, irreconcilable
Irritár, *inf. va.*, to irritate, to exasperate.
Isabél, *n. prop. f.*, Isabella, or Elizabeth.
Itália, *n. prop. f.*, Italy.
Italiáno-a, *adj.*, Italian.
Izquiérdo-a, *adj.*, left; left-handed.

J.

Jabón, *nm.*, soap.
Jamás, *adv.*, never; ever.
Jardín, *nm.*, garden.
Jenerál, *nm.*, same as *general.*
Jerónimo, *n. prop. m.*, Jerome.
Jórge, *n. prop. m.*, George.
Jornaléro, *nm.*, day-laborer, journeyman.
Jóven, *nm.* or *f.*, youth, young man or young woman.
Jóven, *adj.*, young.
Jovenzuélo, *nm. dim.*, youngster.
Júan, *n. prop. m.*, John.
Juégo, *nm.*, play, game.
Juício, *nm.*, judgment, opinion.
Júlio, *nm.*, July.
Júnio, *nm.*, June
Juntaménte, *adv.*, together, jointly.
Júnto-a, *adj.*, joined, near, united, together with.
Jurádo-a, *part.*, sworn to.
Jurár, *inf. vn.*, to swear, to make oath.
Jurisprudéncia, *nf.*, jurisprudence, the science of law.
Justaménte, *adv.*, justly, just, fairly.
Justícia, *nf.*, justice.
Justiciéro, *nm.*, one who rigorously observes justice, one who punishes crimes with severe justice.
Justificár, *inf. va.*, to justify.
Jústo-a, *adj.*, just, upright, faithful.
Juventúd, *nf.*, youth, youthfulness.
Juzgádo-a, *part.*, judged, passed sentence.
Juzgándo, *ger.*, judging.
Juzgár, *inf. va.*, to judge, to pass sentence.

L.

La, *def. art. f.*, the.
La, *pron. per.* and *dem.*, her, it, she, that.
Lábio, *nm.*, lip.
Laborióso-a, *adj.*, laborious, industrious.
Labradór, *nm.*, farmer, laborer.
Lúdo, *nm.*, side.
Ladrillo, *nm.*, brick, tile.
Lágo, *nm.*, lake.
Lágrima, *nf.*, tear, tear-drop.
Lárgo-a, *adj.*, long, large.
Las, *def. art. f. pl.*, the.
Las, *pron. pres.* and *dem.*, those, them, they.
Lázo, *nm.*, snare.
Le, *pron. per.*, him, it, you; to him, to her, to you.
Lealtád, *nf.*, loyalty, fidelity.
Lección, *nf.*, lesson.
Lectúra, *nf.*, reading, the act of reading.
Leér, *inf. va.*, to read, to peruse.
Legál, *adj.*, legal, according to law.
Legó, F. *legar, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, bequeathed.
Légua, *nf.*, league.
Leído-a, *part.*, read.
Léjos, *adv.*, far, far off.
Léngua, *nf.*, language; tongue.

LLE

Lentaménte, *adv.*, slowly, tardily.
Lénto-a, *adj.*, slow, lingering, tardy.
Lepánto, *n. prop.*, Lepanto.
Les, *pron. pers. pl.*, them, those, to them, to you.
Létra, *nf.*, letter.
Levantár, *inf. va.*, to raise, to rise, to elevate, to bear.
Levantarás, F. *levantar*, *ind.* 1 *fut.* 2 *s.*, thou shalt bear.
Levánte, F. *levantar*, *subj. pres.* 3 *s.*, may rise.
Ley, *nf.*, law.
Leyó, F. *leer*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, he read, perused.
Liberál, *adj.*, liberal, generous.
Liberalidád, *nf.*, liberality, generosity.
Libertád, *nf.*, liberty, freedom.
Libertár, *va.*, to free, to set at liberty.
Líbra, *nf.*, found.
Librár, *inf. va.*, to free, to deliver.
Líbre, *adj.*, free; exempt.
Líbro, *nm.*, book.
Ligár, *inf. va.*, to league, to ally, to bind.
Limitár, *inf. va.*, to limit, to bound, to confine.
Línea, *nf.*, line; rank or file of soldiers.
Lisongeár, *inf. va.*, to flatter, to praise.

LLE

Lisongeádo-a, *part.*, flattered, friend.
Literário-a, *adj.*, literary, pertaining to letters or literature.
Lo, *def. art. neuter*, the, that which is, what is.
Lo, *pron. pers. neuter*, it, so; *lo que*, that which, what.
Locásto, *n. prop.*, Locasto.
Locúra, *nf.*, folly, absurdity, rashness.
Lográdo-a, *part.*, obtained, enjoyed, acquired.
Lográndo, *ger.*, obtaining, enjoying.
Lográr, *inf. va.*, to obtain, to enjoy, to acquire, to succeed in.
Lógro, *nm.*, accomplishment, attainment.
Lóndres, *n. prop.*, London.
Los, *art. def. m.*, the
Los, *pron. pers.* and *dem.*, them, those, they.
Lucúlo, *n. prop. m.*, Lucullus.
Lúcha, *nf.*, struggle, strife, contest.
Luchár, *inf. va.*, to struggle, to strive.
Lugár, *nm.*, spot, place, village. *En lugar de*, in place of, instead of.
Lujóso-a, *adj.*, fond of show, profuse, showy, luxurious.
Luz, *nf.*, light.

LL.

Lláma, *nf.*, flame.
Llamádo-a, *part.*, called, named.
Llamár, *inf. va.*, to call, to name.
Llamó, F. *llamar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, he or she called.
Llegándo, *ger.*, arriving, reaching.
Llegár, *inf. vn.*, to arrive, to approach, to attain.
Llegó, F. *llegar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, he or she arrived.
Llenár, *inf. va.*, to fill, to occupy, to fulfil, to perform.
Lléno-a, *adj.*, full, filled, complete.
Lléva, F. *llevar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, bears, brings, produces, carries.
Llevár, *inf. va.*, to carry, to bear, to produce, to bring, to wear.
Llevaré, F. *llevar*, *ind.* 1 *fut.* 1 *s.*, I shall bring, I shall carry.

Llevó, F. *llevar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, carried, brought, took.
Llorár, *inf. vn.*, to weep, to mourn, to deplore.
Lloverá, F. *llover*, *ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *s.*, it will rain.
Llúvia, *nf.*, rain, shower.

M.

Madéra, *nf.*, wood, timber.
Mádre, *nf.*, mother.
Madríd, *n. prop. f.*, Madrid.
Maéstro, *nm.*, master, teacher, instructor.
Magistrádo, *nm.*, magistrate, magistracy.
Magnánimo-a, *adj.*, magnanimous, generous.
Mal, *nm.*, evil, harm, disease.
Mal, *adj.*, see *Malo.*
Maléta, *nf.*, portmanteau, valise.
Malévolo-a, *adj.*, malevolent, malignant.
Málo-a, *adj.*, wicked, evil, bad; sick, sore, diseased.
Mamá, *nf.*, mamma, mother.
Manchár, *inf. va.*, to spot, to stain, to pollute, to corrupt.
Mandádo-a, *part.*, commanded, ordered.
Mandár, *inf. va.*, to command, to order, to send.
Mandé, F. *mandar*, *ind. perf. def.* 1 *s.*, I gave orders.
Manejár, *inf. va.*, to manage, to carry on, to transact.
Manéra, *nf.*, manner, custom. *De manera*, in such a manner.
Manifestár, *inf. va.*, to manifest, to show, to discover.
Manifiéstan, F. *manifestar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they manifest, they evince.
Máno, *nf.*, hand.
Mánso-a, *adj.*, meek, gentle, tame.
Mañána, *nf.*, morning, morrow.
Mañána, *adv.*, to-morrow.
Márgen, *nm.*, margin, border, edge.
Mármol, *nm.*, marble.
Martíllo, *nm.*, hammer.
Mas, *adv.*, more; *el mas*, *la mas*, *lo mas*, the most; *mas que*, or *mas de*, more than.
Mas, *conj.*, but, except.
Matánza, *nf.*, slaughter, butchery.
Matemático, *nm.*, mathematician.
Matemático-a, *adj.*, mathematical.
Matorrál, *nm.*, a place full of bushes, brambles or briers.
Matrimónio, *nm.*, matrimony, marriage.
Mayór, *adj.*, greater, larger. *El mayor*, *la mayor*, the greatest.
Me, *pron. pers.*, me, to me, for me.
Medianía, *nf.*, mediocrity, middle state.
Médio, *nm.*, means, way, midst.
Médio-a, *adj.*, half.
Mediodía, *nm.*, noon, south.
Mejicáno-a, *n.* and *adj.*, Mexican.
Méjico, *n. prop.*, Mexico.
Mejór, *adj.*, better. *El mejor*, the best.
Mejóra, *nf.*, improvement, melioration.
Melodía, *nf.*, melody, sweet music.
Memoráble, *adj.*, memorable.
Memória, *nf.*, memory, remembrance; memorial, memoir.
Ménos, *adv.*, less; except. *El ménos*, the least.
Ménte, *nf.*, mind.
Mercadér, *nm.*, trader, shop-keeper.
Meréce, F. *merecer*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, merits, deserves.

Merecér, *inf. va.*, to deserve, to merit.
Merecído-a, *adj.*, meritorious, merited, deserving.
Mérito, *nm.*, merit, desert.
Meritório-a, *adj.*, meritorious.
Mes, *nm.*, mouth.
Metafísico, *nm.*, metaphysician.
Mí, *pron. pers.*, me.
Mi, *pron. poss.*, my.
Miéntras, *adv.*, whilst, in the mean time.
Miguél, *n. prop.*, Michael.
Mil, *adj. num.*, a thousand.
Millár, *nm.*, thousand.
Millón, *nm.*, million.
Minerál, *n.* and *adj.*, mineral.
Minúto, *nm.*, minute.
Mío-a, *pron. poss.*, my, mine.
Mirída, *nf.*, glance, look.
Mirándo, *ger.*, seeing, looking at, beholding.
Mirár, *inf. va.*, to look, to behold, to observe, to admire, to esteem.
Mis, *pron. poss. pl.*, my.
Miséria, *nf.*, misery, calamity, misfortune, distress.
Mísmo-a, *adj.*, the same, self, selfsame.
Modáles, *nm. pl.*, manners.
Modélo, *nm.*, model, copy, example, pattern.
Moderación, *nf.*, moderation, temperance.
Modéstia, *nf.*, modesty, decency, decorum.
Modésto-a, *adj.*, modest, unassuming.
Módo, *nm.*, manner, mode.
Momentáneo-a, *adj.*, momentary.
Moménto, *nm.*, moment; importance.
Móna, *nf.*, female monkey or ape.
Monárca, *nm.*, monarch.

Monarquía, *nf.*, monarchy, kingdom.
Monárquico-a, *adj.*, monarchical.
Móno, *nm.*, monkey, ape.
Monstruóso-a, *adj.*, monstrous, enormous, shocking.
Montáña, *nf.*, mountain.
Mónte, *nm.*, mount, hill.
Montón, *nm.*, pile, heap.
Morál, *nm.*, morality, ethics.
Morál, *adj.*, moral.
Morír, *inf. vn.*, to die, to perish.
Móro-a, *n.* and *adj.*, Moor, Moorish.
Mortál, *adj.*, mortal, subject to death.
Mostradór, *nm.*, counter of a shop or store.
Mostrár, *inf. va.*, to show, to explain, to exhibit.
Motívo, *nm.*, motive, cause, moving power.
Movér, *inf. va.*, to move, to put in motion, to excite.
Movimiénto, *nm.*, movement, motion; revolt.
Múcho-a, *adj.*, much; *múchos-as*, many, several.
Múcho, *adv.*, much, very much.
Múda, F. *mudar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, changes.
Mudár, *inf. va.*, to change, to alter.
Muérte, *nf.*, death.
Muérto-a, *adj.* and *part.*, dead, died.
Mugér, *nf.*, woman, wife.
Mujér, same as *muger*.
Múndo, *nm.*, world.
Murió, F. *morir*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, died, he died.
Murmurár, *inf. va*, to murmur; to complain of, to censure.
Múro, *nm.*, wall.
Música, *nf.*, music.
Múy, *adv.*, very, very much.

N.

Nacér, *inf. vn.*, to be born, to rise, to bud, to spring.
Nacído-a, *part.*, born, been born, risen.
Nacimiénto, *nm.*, birth, nativity, origin.
Nación, *nf.*, nation.
Nacionál, *adj.*, national.
Nacionalidád, *nf.*, nationality, national manners and customs.
Náda, *nf.*, nothing, nonentity, naught.
Náda, *adv.*, in no degree, by no means.
Nádie, *pron. indef.*, nobody, no one.
Nápoles, *n. prop.*, Naples.
Naturál, *n.* and *adj.*, native; natural.
Naturaléza, *nf.*, nature, disposition.
Naturalísta, *nm.*, naturalist.
Navája, *nf.*, razor.
Navegación, *nf.*, navigation, voyage.
Necesário-a, *adj.*, necessary, requisite.
Necesidád, *nf.*, necessity, need.
Necesítan, F. *necesitar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *pl.*, need, require.
Necesitár, *inf. va.*, to want, to need, to require.
Nécio-a, *adj.*, foolish, ignorant, stupid.
Negár, *inf. va.*, to deny, to refuse.
Negócio, *nm.*, affair, business, matter.
Neutralizár, *inf. va.*, to neutralize, to render null.
Nevár, *inf. v. impers.*, to snow.
Ni, *conj.*, neither, nor.
Niéto, *nm.*, grandson.
Niéve, *nf.*, snow.
Ningún, *pron. indef.*, no, nobody, no one.
Ningúno-a, *pron. indef.*, no, nobody, not any.
Níña, *nf.*, female child.
Niñéz, *nf.*, childhood.
Niño, *nm.*, child.
No, *adv.*, not, no; *no mas*, nothing else.
Nóble, *adj.*, noble, illustrious, honorable.
Nobleménte, *adv.*, nobly, generously.
Nobléza, *nf.*, nobility.
Nóche, *nf.*, night; darkness.
Nombrádo-a, *part.*, called, appointed, nominated.
Nombrár, *inf. va.*, to name, to appoint, to nominate.
Nómbre, *nm.*, name; noun.
Non, *adv.*, not (antiquated).
Nórte, *nm.*, north.
Nórte-Americáno, *nm.*, North American.
Noruégo-a, *adj.*, Norwegian.
Nos, *pron. pers. pl.*, us, to us, for us; we.
Nosótros-as, *pron. pers. pl.*, we; us.
Notáble, *adj.*, notable, remarkable.
Notableménte, *adv.*, notably, in a manner worthy of note.
Notár, *inf. va.*, to note, to remark, to observe.
Notícia, *nf.*, news, intelligence, information.
Novéla, *nf.*, novel, fiction.
Noviémbre, *nm.*, November.
Nubládo-a, *adj.*, cloudy.
Nuéstro-a, *pron. poss.*, our, ours.
Nuevaménte, *adv.*, newly, recently.
Nuéva-Yórk, *n. prop.*, New Yórk.
Nuévo-a, *adj.*, new; *de nuevo*, anew, again.
Nuévo-Méjico, *n. prop.*, New Mexico.

Nulidád, *nf.*, nullity, nothingness.
Numáncia, *n. prop.*, Numantia.
Numantíno-a, *adj.*, Numantine.

Número, *nm.*, number.
Núnca, *adv.*, never.
Nutrír, *inf. va.*, to nourish, to cultivate.

O.

O′, *conj.*, or, either.
Obedecér, *inf. va.*, to obey, to yield to.
Objéto, *nm.*, object, end, design.
Obligación, *nf.*, obligation, duty, contract.
Obligádo-a, *part.*, bound, indebted.
Obligár, *inf. va.*, to oblige, to bind, to compel.
O′bra, *nf.*, work, deed, labor.
Obrár, *inf. va.*, to work, to act, to do.
Obséquio, *nm.*, complaisance, civility.
Observádo-a, *part.*, observed, looked at.
Observáncia, *nf.*, observance.
Observár, *inf. va.*, to observe, to attend to, to look at, to maintain.
Observáredes, F. *observar*, *subj.* 1 *fut.* 2 *p.*, ye shall observe. (It is an obsolete form for *observaries.*)
Obstinárse, *inf. vr.*, to be obstinate, to persist.
Obtenér, *inf. va.*, to obtain, to gain, to preserve, to maintain.
Obtenído, *part.*, obtained.
Ocasión, *nf.*, occasion, opportunity, motive.
Ocáso, *nm.*, the west.
O′cho, *adj. num.*, eight.
Ocultándo, *ger.*, hiding, concealing.
Octúbre, *nm.*, October.
Ocupación, *nf.*, occupation, profession, employment.
Ocupádo-a, *part.* and *adj.*, occupied, employed, busy.
Ocupár, *inf. va.*, to occupy, to employ, to engage.
Ocurréncia, *nf.*, occurrence, incident, event.
Ocurrír, *inf. va.*, to occur, to happen.
Odiár, *inf. va.*, to hate, to abhor, to detest.
Ofreciéndo, *ger.*, offering, presenting.
Oí, F. *oir*, *ind. perf. def.* 1 *s.*, I heard.
Oído, *nm.*, ear, the sense of hearing.
Oído, *part.*, heard.
Oír, *inf. va.*, to hear; to listen to, to heed.
O′jo, *nm.*, eye; sight.
Olímpico-a, *adj.*, Olympic.
Olvidár, *inf. va.*, to forget, to neglect.
Olvído, *nm.*, oblivion, forgetfulness.
Operación, *nf.*, operation, process, agency.
Opinión, *nf.*, opinion, judgment, mental view.
Opresión, *nf.*, oppression, coercion, tyranny.
Opresór, *nm.*, oppressor.
Opresór-a, *adj.*, oppressive, onerous.
Oprimído-a, *part.*, oppressed.
Oprimír, *inf. va.*, to oppress, to crush, to bear down upon, to afflict.
Oprôbio, *nm.*, opprobrium, infamy, ignominy.
Oradór, *nm.*, orator; panegyrist.
O′rden, *nf.*, order, command, precept.

Oréja, *nf.*, ear.
O'rgano, *nm.*, organ, a musical instrument.
Orgúllo, *nm.*, pride, haughtiness, arrogance.
Orgullóso-a, *adj.*, proud, haughty, arrogant.
Oriénte, *nm.*, east.
Orígen, *nm.*, origin, source, motive.
Ornár, *inf. va.*, to adorn, to ornament.
O'ro, *nm.*, gold; riches.
Os, *pron. pers.*, you, yourselves, to you.
Osadía, *nf.*, courage, boldness, intrepidity.
O'so, *nm.*, bear.
Otóño, *nm.*, Autumn.
Otorgár, *inf. va.*, to consent, to agree to.
O'tro-a, *indef. pron.*, other, another.
O'ye, F. *oir*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, hears, he or she hears.
Oyó, F. *oir*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, heard, he, she, or it heard.

P.

Paciéncia, *nf.*, patience.
Pácto, *nm.*, compact, covenant.
Padecér, *inf. va.*, to suffer, to be liable to.
Pádre, *nm.*, father: *pádres*, parents.
Pága, F. *pagar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, pays, he pays.
Pagár, *inf. va.*, to pay, to reward, to atone.
País, *nm.*, country, nation.
Palábra, *nf.*, word, promise.
Paladár, *nm.*, palate, taste.
Pálmo, *nm.*, palm, inch; *pálmo á palmo*, inch by inch.
Pálo A'lto, *n. prop.*, Palo Alto (high timber)
Papál, *adj.*, Papal, belonging to the Pope.
Papél, *nm.*, paper; newspaper.
Púra, *prep.*, for, to, towards. *Para con*, in regard to, as to, concerning.
Paráje, *nm.*, place; disposition.
Parécen, F. *parecer*, *ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they appear, they resemble, look alike.
Parecér, *inf. vn.* and *vr.*, to appear, to resemble.
Pariénte, *nm.*, relation, kindred.
Párte, *nf.*, part, share. *Parte*, *adv.*, partly.
Particularménte, *adv.*, particularly, especially.
Partído, *nm.*, party, part, means, measure.
Pasádo-a, *part.*, past, passed.
Pasándo, *ger.*, passing.
Pasár, *inf. va.*, to pass, to walk along, to cross, to exceed, to go, to spend.
Paséo, *nm.*, walk, walking-place.
Páso, *nm.*, step, pass, passage.
Páso, F. *pasár*, *ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I pass.
Pásto, *nm.*, food, nourishment, pasture.
Pátria, *nf.*, native country, country.
Patriótico-a, *adj.*, patriotic.
Pausadaménte, *adv.*, slowly, by degrees.
Paz, *nf.*, peace.
Pecádo, *nm.*, sin, transgression.
Pecádo, *part.*, sinned, done injustice.
Pecár, to sin, to offend against right.
Pécho, *nm.*, breast, bosom, heart.

PER

Pedánte, *nm.*, pedant, a man vain of little knowledge.
Pedázo, *nm.*, piece, bit, fragment.
Pedír, *inf. va.*, to ask, to petition, to beg, to demand.
Pédro, *n. prop.*, Peter.
Peláyo, *n. prop.*, Pelayo.
Peligro, *nm.*, danger, risk, hazard.
Peligróso-a, *adj.*, dangerous, hazardous.
Pelléjo, *nm.*, skin, hide.
Péna, *nf.*, punishment, penalty, pain.
Penetración, *nf.*, penetration, discernment.
Penetrár, *inf. va.*, to penetrate, to pierce, to force through.
Península, *nf.*, peninsula.
Pensamiénto, *nm.*, thought, idea, design.
Pensár, *inf. va.*, to think, to believe, to imagine, to intend.
Pequéño-a, *adj.*, small, little, unimportant.
Peór, *adj.* and *adv.*, worse.
Perdér, *inf. va.*, to lose, to miss, to misspend.
Pérdida, *nf.*, loss, damage, detriment.
Perdído-a, *part.*, lost, been deprived of.
Perdió, F. *perder, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, lost, he lost.
Perdonándo, *ger.*, pardoning, excusing.
Perdonár, *inf. va.*, to pardon, to forgive, to excuse.
Perezóso-a, *adj.*, lazy, indolent, slothful.
Perfección, *nf.*, perfection, excellence.
Perfídia, *nf.*, perfidy, treachery.
Periódico, *nm.*, periodical, newspaper.

PIR

Períto-a, *adj.*, skilful, experienced.
Permanecér, *inf. vn.*, to persist, to remain, to endure.
Permíso, *nm.*, permission, leave.
Permitído-a, *part.*, permitted, allowed.
Permitír, *inf. va.*, to permit, to grant.
Péro, *conj.*, but, except, yet.
Perpétuo-a, *adj.*, perpetual, continual.
Pérro, *nm.*, dog.
Persecución, *nf.*, pursuit, persecution.
Persistír, *inf. vn.*, to persist, to persevere, to insist.
Persóna, *nf.*, person, individual.
Personalménte, *adv.*, personally, in person.
Persuadír, *inf. va.*, to persuade, to induce.
Pertenéce, F. *pertenecer, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, belongs.
Pervérso-a, *adj.*, perverse, wicked, stubborn.
Pesadéz, *nf.*, weight, heaviness; burden.
Pesár, *nm.*, sorrow, grief. *A' pesar de*, in defiance of, in spite of.
Pésca, *nm.*, fish, fishery.
Pescadór, *nm.*, fisherman, fishmonger.
Piamontés, *n. prop.*, Piedmontese.
Picánte, *adj.*, stinging, cutting, sarcastic.
Pidiéndo, *ger.*, asking, begging.
Pié, *nm.*, foot; bottom.
Piédra, *nf.*, stone.
Piérdas, F. *perder, subj. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou mayest lose.
Pintorésco-a, *adj.*, picturesque.
Pío, *n. prop.*, Pius.
Pirinéos, *n. prop. pl.*, Pyrenees.

POR

Písan, F. *pisar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *pl.*, tread, trample, step upon.
Pisár, *inf. va.*, to tread, to step upon.
Placér, *nm.*, pleasure, gratification, enjoyment.
Plan, *nm.*, plan, design.
Plánta, *nf.*, sole of the foot.
Planteár, *inf. va.*, to plan, to scheme.
Pláta, *nf.*, silver; wealth, money.
Pléito, *nm.*, law-suit; contest.
Plúma, *nf.*, pen, feather, quill.
Población, *nf.*, population; town.
Póbre, *adj.*, poor, indigent; unfortunate.
Póco, *nm.*, little.
Póco-a, *adj.* and *adv.*, little. *Pocos*, few.
Podér, *nm.*, power, might, authority.
Podér, *inf. vn.*, to be able, to have power.
Poderóso-a, *adj.*, powerful, mighty.
Podído, *part.*, being able, been able.
Podrá, F. *poder*, *ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *s.*, will be able.
Podría, F. *poder*, *subj. impf.* 1 or 3 *s.*, he might be able, he might.
Poesía, *nf.*, poetry.
Poéta, *nm.*, poet.
Político-a, *adj.*, politic, political.
Pólvo, *nm.*, dust.
Ponderár, *inf. va.*, to ponder, to weigh, to examine.
Ponér, *inf. va.*, to place, to put, to impose.
Ponzóña, *nf.*, poison.
Por, *prep.*, by, for, through, on account of, in behalf of, as.
Pormenór, *nm.*, detail, particular account.
Pórque, *conj.*, because, for the reason that.
Porqué, *adj.*, why, for what reason.

PRE

Portárse, *inf. vr.*, to conduct, to comport, to behave.
Porténdo, see *portento*.
Porténto, *nm.*, prodigy, wonder.
Posáda, *nf.*, inn, tavern, hotel.
Posadéro, *nm.*, inn-keeper.
Posdáta, *nf.*, postscript.
Poséan, F. *poseer*, *subj. pres.* 3 *p.*, may possess.
Poseér, *inf. va.*, to possess, to have.
Posíble, *adj.*, possible.
Posición, *nf.*, position, situation.
Pósta, *nf.*, mail, post-office.
Posteridád, *nf.*, posterity.
Poténcia, *nf.*, power; kingdom, state.
Práctica, *nf.*, practice.
Practicár, *inf. va.*, to practice, to perform.
Precipidaménte, precipitately, hastily.
Precisión, *nf.*, precision, necessity, obligation.
Preferíble, *adj.*, preferable.
Prefiéro, F. *preferír*, *ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I prefer.
Pregúnta, *nf.*, question, inquiry.
Preguntádo-a, *part.*, being asked, questioned.
Preguntár, *inf. va.*, to ask, to question.
Preguntó, F. *preguntar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, asked, he inquired.
Prénda, *nf.*, accomplishment, talent, quality.
Prendér, *inf. va.*, to take, to seize, to catch.
Prénsa, *nf.*, printing-press, press.
Preocupación, *nf.*, prejudice.
Preparándo, *ger.*, preparing.
Preparár, *inf. va.*, to prepare, to make ready.
Preséncia, *nf.*, presence.

PRO

Presentár, *inf. va.*, to present, to offer, to make a donation to.
Presénte, *adj.*, present.
Presidénte, *nm.*, president.
Presurúso-a, *adj.*, hasty, quick.
Pretendér, *inf. va.*, to pretend, to claim, to attempt.
Primavéra, *nf.*, spring.
Primér, *adj.*, first.
Priméro-a, *adj.*, first; chief.
Primór, *nm.*, dexterity, nicety.
Principál, *adj.*, principal, noble.
Príncipe, *nm.*, prince; king.
Princípio, *nm.*, principle, beginning, motive.
Prisionéro, *nm.*, prisoner, captive.
Privádo-a, *part.*, deprived.
Privár, *inf. va.*, to deprive, to despoil.
Probár, *inf. va.*, to try, to prove, to examine.
Probidád, *nf.*, probity, integrity.
Procedér, *nm.*, proceeding, manner of proceeding, conduct.
Procedér, *inf. va.*, to proceed, to act.
Proclamár, *inf. va.*, to proclaim, to give notice publicly.
Procsimidád, *nf.*, proximity, contiguity.
Procúra, F. *procurar*, *imp.* 2 *s.*, endeavor thou.
Procurár, *inf. va.*, to endeavor, to manage, to solicit.
Prodúcen, F. *producir*, *ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they produce.
Producído-a, *part.*, produced.
Producír, *inf. va.*, to produce, to bring forth.
Profundaménte, *adv.*, profoundly.
Profúndo-a, *adj.*, profound, deep.
Progréso, *nm.*, progress, advancement.
Prójimo, *nm.*, neighbor.

PUB

Prometér, *inf. va.*, to promise.
Prontaménte, *adv.*, quickly, promptly.
Prónto, *adv.*, soon, immediately.
Pronunciár, *inf. va.*, to pronounce, to deliver (a speech).
Pronunciación, *nf.*, pronunciation.
Propiaménte, *adv.*, properly, appropriately, regularly.
Própio-a, *adj.*, proper, own, peculiar.
Proporción, *nf.*, proportion; similarity.
Proporcionádo, *part.*, proportioned, adapted, procured.
Propúso, F. *proponer*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, he or she proposed.
Prósa, *nf.*, prose, prose-writings.
Prosadór, *nm.*, a prose writer, a prosy writer or speaker.
Proseguír, *inf. va.*, to continue, to pursue, to follow.
Prosperidád, *nf.*, prosperity, success.
Protección, *nf.*, protection, favor, shelter.
Protectór, *nm.*, protector, patron, supporter.
Protejér, *inf. va.*, to protect, to favor, to patronize.
Provenír, *inf. va.*, to arise, to originate.
Província, *nf.*, province, territory.
Proyéctil, *nm.*, projectile.
Proyécto, *nm.*, project, plan, scheme.
Prudaménte, *adv.*, prudently.
Prudéncia, *nf.*, prudence, wisdom.
Pruéba, *nf.*, proof, evidence.
Publicádo-a, *part.*, published.
Publícan, F. *publicar*, *ind. pres.* 3 *pl.*, they publish.
Publicándo, *ger.*, publishing, proclaiming.

REA REC

Publicár, *inf. va.*, to publish, to proclaim, to manifest.
Público-a, *adj.*, public; common.
Pudiéran, F. *poder, subj. impf.* 3 *p.*, they might be able, could.
Púdo, F. *poder, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, was able, could.
Pueblo, *nm.*, town, people.
Puéde, F. *poder, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, is able, can, may, he or she can.
Puéden, F. *poder, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, they are able, they can, may.
Puédes, F. *poder, ind. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou art able, thou canst or mayest.
Puédo, F. *poder, ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I am able, I can or may.
Puénte, *nm.* and *nf.*, bridge.
Puerilidád, *nf.*, puerility, childishness, trifle.
Pués, or, pués que, *conj.*, then, since, because.
Puésto, *nm.*, place, post.
Pucsto-a, *part.*, placed, put.
Púnto, *nm.*, point, spot.
Puréza, *nf.*, purity.
Púro-a, *adj.*, pure, unmixed, clear, genuine.

Q.

Que, *pron. rel.*, that, which, who, whom, what.
Que, *conj.*, than; as, since, because, that.
Quebrantár, *inf. va.*, to break, to violate.
Quedár, *inf. vn.*, to stay, to remain, to exist.
Quedó, F. *quedar, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, he remained.
Quehacér, *nm.*, business, occupation.
Quejárse, *inf. vr.*, to complain, to lament.
Quemár, *inf. va.*, to burn.
Querér, *inf. va.*, to wish, to be willing, to be fond of, to will.
Querído-a, *adj.*, dear, beloved.
Queriéndo, *ger.*, wishing, desiring, loving.
Quién, *pron. rel.*, who, that, whom, he who.
Quiéres, F. *querer, ind. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou art willing, thou wishest.
Quijóte, *n. prop.*, Quixote.
Químico, *nm.*, chemist.
Quince, *adj. num.*, fifteen.
Quisiére, F. *querer, subj.* 1 *fut.* 3 *s.*, shall be willing.
Quíta, F. *quitarse, imp.* 2 *s.*, take them off.

R.

Racímo, *nm.*, cluster, bunch.
Racionál, *adj.*, rational.
Rámo, *nm.*, branch, shoot.
Rápidamente, *adv.*, rapidly.
Ráro-a, *adj.*, rare, uncommon.
Rascándo, *ger.*, scratching.
Ráso-a, *adj.*, plain, bare, open.
Razón, *nf.*, reason, right.
Reál, *adj.*, royal; real.
Realzár, *inf. va.*, to heighten, to elevate.
Reanimár, *inf. va.*, to reanimate, to cheer.
Rebajándo, *ger.*, lessening, diminishing.
Recaér, *inf. va.*, to fall back.
Rechazár, *inf. va.*, to repel, to contradict.

Recibió, F. *recibir, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, received, he received.
Recibír, *inf. va.*, to receive, to accept.
Recienteménte, *adv.*, recently, lately.
Recínto, *nm.*, precinct.
Reclúta, *nm.*, recruit.
Recobrándo, *ger.*, recovering.
Recompensádo-a, *part.*, recompensed, rewarded.
Recompensár, *inf. va.*, to reward, to recompense.
Recompensará, F. *recompensar, ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *s.*, will reward.
Reconocído-a, *part.* and *adj.*, acknowledged; grateful.
Reconocimiénto, *nm.*, recognition, acknowledgment, gratitude.
Recordár, *inf. va.*, to remind, to recall.
Récto-a, *adj.*, right, just, straight.
Recuérdo, *nm.*, remembrance, memento, recollection.
Recúrso, *nm.*, resource, means, recourse.
Reducído-a, *part.*, reduced.
Reducír, *inf. va.*, to reduce, to lessen.
Referír, *inf. va.*, to relate, to report.
Reflexión, *nf.*, reflection, considertion.
Refórma, *nf.*, reformation, amendment.
Regádo, *part.*, watered.
Regálo, *nm.*, convenience, benefit, regalement, pleasure.
Regándo, *ger.*, moistening, flooding, wetting.
Regía, F. *regir, ind. impf.* 3 *s.*, ruled, governed.
Régla, *nf.*, rule, regulation.
Regocijándo, *ger.*, rejoicing.
Regocijár, *inf. va.*, to rejoice, to gladden.
Regocíjo, *nm.*, joy, rejoicing, delight.
Regréso, *nm.*, return.
Regulár, *adj.*, regular, common, proper.
Regularizár, *inf. va.*, to methodize, to regulate, to have or keep regular.
Reinádo, *nm.*, reign.
Réino, *nm.*, kingdom.
Relampaguéa, F. *relampagueár, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, it lightens, it flashes.
Relúce, F. *relucir, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, shines, glitters.
Remédio, *nm.*, remedy, resource, reparation.
Remuéven, F. *remover, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, remove.
Reparár, *inf. va.*, to repair, to make amends for; to notice.
Repelér, *inf. va.*, to repel, to reject.
Repíto, F. *repetir, ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I repeat.
Repitiéndo, *ger.*, repeating.
Repitió, F. *repetir, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, repeated.
Replicár, *inf. va.*, to reply, to answer.
Replicó, F. *replicar, ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, replied.
Reposár, *inf. vn.*, to repose, to rest.
Representación, *nf.*, representation, figure, image.
Repróche, *nm.*, reproach, reproof.
Reproducído-a, *part.*, reproduced
República, *nf.*, republic.
Reputación, *nf.*, reputation, fame, credit.
Resáca, *n. prop.*, Resaca (surge, rolling land).
Rescatádo-a, *part.*, ransomed.

SAC

Rescatár, *inf. va.*, to ransom.
Residénte, *nm.*, resident.
Resisténcia, *nf.*, resistance, opposition.
Resistér, *inf. va.*, to resist, to oppose.
Resolvér, *inf. va.*, to resolve, to determine.
Resonár, *inf. vn.*, to resound, to reecho.
Respetáble, *adj.*, respectable.
Respéto, *nm.*, respect, regard, veneration.
Respetuosaménte, *adv.*, respectfully.
Respirár, *inf. vn.*, to respire, to breathe.
Respondér, *inf. va.*, to respond, to answer.
Respondió, F. *responder*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, he responded, replied.
Respuésta, *nf.*, reply, answer.
Restánte, *adj.*, remaining, rest.
Restár, *inf. va.*, to remain, to be left.
Résto, *nm.*, rest, remaining part. *Restos*, remains.
Resultádo, *nm.*, result, issue.

SAL

Retár, *inf. va.*, to impeach, to challenge.
Retirár, *inf. va.*, to retire, to withdraw.
Reunión, *nf.*, meeting, congregation, party.
Reunír, *inf. va.*, to join, to unite, to assemble.
Reunirán, F. *reunir*, *ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *p.*, will join, will unite.
Revés, *nm.*, back part, reverse, ill success.
Revolución, *nf.*, revolution, change, sedition.
Rey, *nm.*, king.
Ribéra, *nf.*, bank, shore.
Ríco-a, *adj.*, rich, wealthy.
Rigór, *nm.*, severity, rigor.
Río, *nm.*, river.
Róbo, *nm.*, robbery, theft.
Roedór, *nm.*, gnawer; *gusano roedor*, gnawing worm, remorse.
Románo-a, *n.* and *adj.*, Roman.
Rompér, *inf. va.*, to break, to break through, to transgress.
Rubór, *nm.*, blush, shame.
Ruído, *nm.*, noise.
Ruína, *nf.*, ruin, downfall.
Rúsia, *n. prop.*, Russia.

S.

Sabér, *inf. va.*, to know, to understand.
Sábes, F. *saber*, *ind. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou knowest.
Sabía, F. *saber*, *ind. impf.* 3 *s.*, he knew, was knowing.
Sabiduría, *nf.*, wisdom, knowledge.
Sábio-a, *adj.*, wise, learned.
Sacáron, F. *sacar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *p.*, they drew out, took out.
Sacerdóte, *nm.*, clergyman, priest.
Sacrifício, *nm.*, sacrifice, compliance.
Sacudír, *inf. va.*, to shake, to shake off.
Sagrádo-a, *adj.*, sacred, consecrated, holy.
Sagúnto, *n. prop.*, Saguntum (now Murviedro).
Sála, *nf.*, hall.
Saladéro, *nm.*, salting-place.
Sálgo, F. *salir*, *ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I set out, I start.
Salído-a, *part.*, gone out, issued.
Salímos, F. *salir*, *ind. perf. def.* 1 *p.*, we went out.

Salír, *inf. vn.*, to set out, to go out, to start, to depart.
Sálle, *nf.*, hall.
Saltó, F. *saltar*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, leaped, he jumped.
Saludáble, *adj.*, healthful, salubrious.
Salvadór, *nm.*, Saviour, redeemer.
Salvúge, *nm.*, savage.
Salvár, *inf. va.*, to save, to spare.
San, *adj.*, an abbreviation for *santo.*
Sancionár, *inf. va.*, to sanction.
Sángre, *nf.*, blood.
Sangriénto-a, *adj.*, bloody, sanguinary.
Sanguinário-a, *adj.*, sanguinary, bloody.
Sáno-a, *adj.*, sound, wholesome, healthy.
Sánto-a, *adj.*, sacred, holy.
Sardónico-a, *adj.*, sardonic.
Satisfacción, *nf.*, satisfaction, recompense, gratification.
Satisfécho-a, *part.*, satisfied, contented.
Se, *pron. reflec.*, one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; each other; to him, to her, to you, to it, to them.
Sé, F. *saber*, *ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I know.
Sé, F. *ser*, *imp.* 2 *s.*, be thou.
Séa, F. *ser*, *subj. pres.* 3 *s.*, may be, it may be.
Secretaménte, *adv.*, secretly, privately.
Secréto-a, *adj.*, secret, hidden, concealed.
Secundádo-a, *part.*, seconded, supported.
Sed, *nf.*, thirst.
Seguída, *nf.*, following, succession. *De seguida*, successively, afterward.
Seguído-a, *part.*, followed, continued.
Seguír, *inf. va.*, to follow, to pursue, to prosecute.
Según, *prep.*, according to, according as.
Segúndo-a, *adj.*, second.
Seguro-a, *adj.*, secure, sure, constant.
Séis, *adj. num.*, six.
Sembrár, *inf. va.*, to sow, to plant.
Semejánte, *adj.*, such, similar, like; equal.
Semejánza, *nf.*, similitude, resemblance.
Senécillo-a, *adj.*, simple, neat, plain.
Sendéro, *nm.*, path.
Séneca, *n. prop.*, Seneca.
Sensáto-a, *adj.*, sensible, judicious, prudent.
Sentémos, F. *sentar*, *imp.* 1 *p.*, let us seat, let us sit.
Senténcia, *nf.*, sentence, opinion, judgment.
Sentimiénto, *nm.*, sentiment, feeling.
Sentír, *inf. va.*, to feel, to be sorry for, to perceive, to be moved.
Séña, *nf.*, sign, mark.
Señál, *nm.*, sign, signal, symptom.
Señalár, *inf. va.*, to mark, to indicate, to point out, to stamp.
Señór, *nm.*, Lord, gentleman, master, sir, Mr.
Señóra, *nf.*, lady, madam, mistress, Mrs.
Separádo-a, *part.*, separated.
Separár, *inf. va.*, to separate, to divide, to part, to withdraw.
Sepúlcro, *nm.*, sepulchre, tomb, grave.
Sepultádo-a, *part.*, buried, interred.
Ser, *nm.*, being, existence.
Ser, *inf. vn.*, to be, to exist.

Será, F. *ser, ind.* 1 *fut.* 3 *s.*, shall or will be.
Seréno-a, *adj.*, serene, quiet, calm, peaceful.
Sería, F. *ser, subj. impf.* 3 *s.*, would or should be.
Serpiénte, *nf.*, serpent.
Servício, *nm.*, service, use, favor, benefit.
Servído-a, *part.*, served; pleased.
Servír, *inf. va.* and *vr.*, to serve, to suit, to do a favor, to be pleased, to vouchsafe.
Sesénta, *adj. num.*, sixty.
Seténta, *adj. num.*, seventy.
Set., *nm.*, abbreviation for *Setiémbre*, September.
Sí, *pron. pers.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves, each other.
Si, *conj.*, if, though, whether.
Si, *adv.*, yes, yea, truly.
Sído, *part.*, been.
Siémbre, F. *sembrar, subj. pres.* 3 *s.*, may sow, may plant.
Siémpre, *adv.*, always, ever. *Para siempre*, for ever.
Siéndo, *ger.*, being.
Siéte, *adj. num.*, seven.
Síglo, *nm.*, age, century.
Siguiéndo, *ger.*, following, prosecuting.
Siguiénte, *adj.*, following, succeeding.
Siléncio, *nm.*, silence.
Silenciosaménte, *adv.*, silently.
Símple, *adj.*, simple, plain, pure.
Sin, *prep.*, without.
Sinceraménte, *adv.*, sincerely.
Sincéro, *adj.*, sincere, real, honest.
Singulár, *adj.*, singular, extraordinary.
Síno, *conj.* and *prep.*, but, only, except, unless.
Síntesis, *nf.*, synthesis.
Sírva, F. *servir, subj. pres.* 3 *s.*, may serve.
Sirviéndo, *ger.*, serving.
Sítio, *nm.*, site, spot, siege, situation.
Situación, *nf.*, situation, state.
Soberáno, *nm.*, sovereign.
Sobérbia, *nf.*, pride, haughtiness, vanity.
Sobérbio-a, *adj.*, proud, haughty, vain.
Sóbre, *prep.*, on, upon, over; besides.
Sobresalír, *inf. va.*, to surpass, to excel.
Sociedád, *nf.*, society; friendship.
Socórro, *nm.*, succor, aid.
Sofísta, *nm.*, sophist.
Sojuzgár, *inf. va.*, to subjugate, to subdue, to conquer.
Sol, *nm.*, sun.
Solaménte, *adv.*, only, solely.
Soldádo, *nm.*, soldier.
Solemneménte, *adv.*, solemnly.
Sólo-a, *adj.*, only, alone.
Sómbra, *nf.*, shade, shelter.
Sombréro, *nm.*, hat.
Sómos, F. *ser, ind. pres.* 1 *p.*, we are.
Son, F. *ser, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, are, they are.
Sonríe, F. *sonreir, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, smiles.
Sonrísa, *nf.*, smile.
Sorprendénte, *adj.*, surprising, wonderful.
Sorprendér, *inf. va.*, to surprise, to astonish.
Sorprendído-a, *part.*, surprised.
Sorprésa, *nf.*, surprise, astonishment.
Sospécha, *nf.*, suspicion, mistrust.
Sospechár, *inf. va.*, to suspect, to mistrust.

Sostenér, *inf. va.*, to sustain, to support, to maintain.
Sostenído-a, *part.*, sustained, maintained.
Sóy, F. *ser, ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I am.
Spártano, *n. prop.*, Spartan.
Su, *pron. poss.*, its, his, her, their, your.
Suaveménte, *adv.*, gently, sweetly, softly, mildly.
Súbdito, *nm.*, subject.
Sublíme, *adj.*, sublime, grand.
Sucedér, *inf. vn.*, to succeed, to happen.
Sucéso, *nm.*, success, event.
Sucesór, *nm.*, successor.
Suélo, *nm.*, soil, ground, floor.
Suéño, *nm.*, sleep, dream.
Suérte, *nf.*, lot, fate.

Suficiénte, *adj.*, sufficient, enough, able.
Sufrír, *inf. va.*, to suffer, to bear.
Sujetár, *inf. va.*, to subject, to reduce.
Sumído-a, *part.*, plunged, swallowed up, absorbed.
Sumír, *inf. va.*, to be swallowed up.
Superficíal, *adj.*, superficial, shallow.
Superiór, *adj.*, superior, higher.
Suponér, *inf. va.*, to suppose, to imagine.
Sus, *pron. poss.*, his, her, its, their, your.
Susceptíble, *adj.*, susceptible.
Sústo, *nm.*, fright, terror.
Súyo-a, *pron. poss.*, his, hers, theirs, yours.

T.

Tal, *adj.*, such, similar, equal. *Tal vez*, perhaps. *¿Qué tal?* how do you like it? what sort?
Taénto, *nm.*, talents, genius, ability.
Tamáño-a, *adj.*, sizable, so great, such a kind of.
También, *adv.*, also, likewise.
Tan, *adv.*, as, so, as much.
Tánto-a, *adj.*, so much, as much, so; *tantos-as*, so many, as many.
Tápa, *nf.*, lid, cover.
Tardába, F. *tardar, ind. impf.* 3 *s.*, delayed, was tardy.
Tardár, *inf. vn.*, to delay, to put off, to tarry, to be long (in time).
Tárde, *nf.*, afternoon, evening; late.
Te, *pron. poss.*, thee, to thee.
Teátro, *nm.*, theatre.
Telegráfia, *nf.*, art of telegraphing.
Telégrafo, *nm.*, telegraph.
Temér, *inf. va.*, to fear, to dread, to reverence.
Témo, F. *temer, ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I fear.
Temór, *nm.*, fear, terror, reverence.
Tempráno, *adj.*, early.
Tendré, F. *tener, ind.* 1 *fut.* 1 *s.*, I shall have.
Tendrían, F. *tener, subj. impf.* 3 *p.*, they might have, they would have.
Tenémos, F. *tener, ind. pres.* 1 *p.*, we have.
Tenér, *inf. va.*, to have, to possess, to keep, to hold.
Tengámos, F. *tener, subj. pres.* 1 *p.*, we may have.
Tenído, *part.*, had, held.
Tentatíva, *nf.*, attempt, trial, essay.
Terminádo-a, *part.*, terminated, closed.
Término, *nm.*, termination, limit, term.
Terréno, *nm.*, ground, land.
Tesóro, *nm.*, treasure.

Testaménto, *nm.*, will, testament.
Testígo, *nm.*, witness, evidence, proof.
Testimónio, *nm.*, testimony, witness.
Tí, *pron. pers.*, thee.
Tiémpo, *nm.*, time, weather.
Tiéne, F. *tener, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, has.
Tiénen, F. *tener, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, have, they have.
Tiénes, F. *tener, ind. pres.* 2 *s.*, thou hast.
Tiérra, *nf.*, the earth, land, soil, country.
Tiranía, *nf.*, tyranny, despotism.
Tiráno, *nm.*, tyrant.
Tiráno-a, *adj.*, tyrannical.
Túca, F. *tocar, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, touches, plays, he plays.
Tocár, *inf. va.*, to touch, to feel, to belong to, to play (on a musical instrument).
Tódo-a, *pron. indef.*, all, every; every thing.
Tomándo, *ger.*, taking, assuming.
Tomár, *inf. va.*, to take, to assume, to occupy.
Tóno, *nm.*, tone, voice; tune.
Tóro, *nm.*, bull.
Tórre, *nf.*, tower, steeple, spire.
Totál, *adj.*, total, universal.
Trabajándo, *ger.*, laboring, toiling.
Trabájo, *nm.*, work, trouble, toil.
Traér, *inf. va.*, to bring, to carry, to bear; to wear.
Trágico-a, *adj.*, tragical.
Traición, *nf.*, treason, treachery.
Traidór, *nm.* and *adj.*, traitor; traitorous.
Tranquilizár, *inf. va.*, to calm, to tranquilize.
Tranquílo-a, *adj.*, tranquil, calm, quiet.
Transcurrído, *part.*, passed over.
Traspasár, *inf. va.*, to pierce.
Trastormár, *inf. va.*, to overthrow, to derange.
Tráta, F. *tratar, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, treats; aims at.
Tratár, *inf. va.*, to treat, to intend, to have intercourse.
Través, *nm.*, bias, traverse. *Al través de*, across, through.
Treciéntos, *adj. num.*, three hundred.
Tréinta, *adj. num.*, thirty.
Tres, *adj. num.*, three.
Tríbu, *nm.* or *f.*, tribe, class.
Tribunál, *nm.*, tribunal, court.
Tríste, *adj.*, sad, melancholy.
Tristéza, *nf.*, sadness, grief, sorrow.
Triúnfo, *nm.*, triumph.
Troféo, *nm.*, trophy.
Tróno, *nm.*, throne.
Trópa, *nf.*, troop, band.
Truéna, F. *tronár, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, it thunders.
Truéque, *nm.*, exchange.
Tú, *pron. pers.*, thou (used by parents in addressing children; masters, their servants; and intimate friends, each other).
Tu, *pron. poss.*, thy.
Túmba, *nf.*, tomb, sepulchre.
Túmulo, *nm.*, tomb.
Turbár, *inf. va.*, to disturb, to trouble.
Tus, *pron. poss.*, thy, your.
Túyo-a, *pron. poss.*, thy, thine.

U.

U', *conj.*, or, either (used before words beginning with *o* or *ho*).
U'ltimamente, *adj.*, lastly, lately.
U'ltimo-a, *adj.*, last, final.
Ultrajádo-a, *part.*, outraged, abused, offended.

VEN

Un, *art.* or *adj.*, a, an, one.
U'na, see *uno.*
Unánimemente, *adv.*, unanimously.
U'nen, F. *unir, ind. pres.* 3 *p.*, unite, they join,
U'nico-a, *adj.*, only, alone, sole, singular.
Unído-a, *part.*, united, joined together.
Unión, *nf.*, union.

VES

Unír, *inf. va.*, to unite, to join.
Universál, *adj.*, universal, general.
U'no-a, *art., adj.* and *pron. indef.*, a, an, one, any one. *Unos-as*, some.
Usár, *inf. va.*, to use, to employ.
U'so, *nm.*, employment, usage.
Usurpár, *inf. va.*, to usurp.
U'til, *adj.*, useful.
U'va, *nf.*, grape.

V.

V. (contracted for *usted*), your worship, you. *VV.* (*ustédes*) your worships, you.
Va, F. *ir, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, goes.
Vagár, *inf. va.*, to rove, to loiter, to play, to linger.
Vále, F. *valer, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, is worth, avails.
Valémos, F. *valer, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, we have power.
Valér, *inf. vn.*, to be worth, to avail, to have power.
Valór, *nm.*, valor, courage, value.
Vámos, F. *ir, imp.* 1 *p.*, let us go, come, come on.
Váno-a, *adj.*, vain, arrogant, empty.
Vapór, *nm.*, steam, steamer.
Variádo-a, *adj.*, variegated.
Vário-a, *adj.*, various, several, changeable.
Varón, *nm.*, man, male.
Vasállo, *nm.*, vassal, subject.
Váyamos, see *vamos.*
Véces, see *vez.*
Vecíno-a, *adj.*, neighboring, near.
Vejez, *nf.*, old age.
Véinte, *adj. num.*, twenty.
Vélo, *nf.*, veil, pretence, curtain.
Vémos, F. *ver, ind. pres.* 1 *p.*, we see.
Ven, F. *venir, ind. pres.* 2 *s.*, come thou, come.
Véna, *nf.*, vein, artery.
Vénce, F. *vencer, ind. pres.* 3 *s.*, conquers.
Vendándo, *ger.*, bandaging, tying a bandage around.
Vendído, *part.*, sold.
Veneración, *nf.*, veneration, respect.
Venerár, *inf. va.*, to venerate, to respect.
Vengánza, *nf.*, revenge, vengeance.
Venidéro-a, *adj.*, coming, future.
Venído, *part.*, come, arrived.
Venír, *inf. vn.*, to come, to arrive; to happen.
Ventúra, *nf.*, fortune, success, good luck.
Venturóso-a, *adj.*, fortunate, happy, successful.
Véo, F. *ver, ind. pres.* 1 *s.*, I see.
Veráno, *nm.*, summer.
Verás, F. *ver, ind.* 1 *fut.* 2 *s.*, thou wilt see.
Verdaderaménte, *adv.*, truly, really.
Verdadéro-a, *adj.*, true, real, sincere.
Vérde, *adj.*, green.
Verémos, F. *ver, ind.* 1 *fut.* 1 *p.*, we shall see.
Vergüénza, *nf.*, shame; bashfulness.
Vérja, *nf.*, a grate, a grated window.
Vérso, *nm.*, verse.
Vertído-a, *part.*, spilled, shed.
Vestído, *nm.*, dress, coat, suit.

ZAP

Veteráno, *nm.*, veteran.
Vez, *nf.*, time. *Tal vez*, perhaps. *En vez de*, instead of.
Viáge, *nm.*, journey, voyage.
Viajándo, *ger.*, travelling.
Viajár, *inf. va.*, to travel, to journey.
Viáje, see *viage*.
Viajéro, *nm.*, traveller; passenger.
Vício, *nm.*, vice, wickedness.
Vicióso-a, *adj.*, vicious.
Vicisitúd, *nf.*, vicissitude, change.
Victória, *nf.*, victory, triumph.
Vída, *nf.*, life, livelihood.
Viéndo, *ger.*, seeing.
Viénto, *nm.*, wind.
Vil, *adj.*, vile, mean, base.
Villáno, *nm.*, a rustic, villain.
Vínculo, *nm.*, chain, link.
Víña, *nf.*, vineyard; vine.

ZUR

Vió, F. *ver*, *ind. perf. def.* 3 *s.*, saw, he or she saw.
Virtúd, *nf.*, virtue; rectitude.
Virtuóso-a, *adj.*, virtuous.
Visíta, *nf.*, visit.
Vísta, *nf.*, sight, appearance, presence.
Vísto-a, *part.*, seen.
Víveres, *nm. pl.*, provisions, supplies.
Vivír, *inf. vn.*, to live.
Vívo-a, *adj.*, alive, lively, living.
Volvér, *inf. va.*, to return, to turn.
Vos, *pron. pers.*, ye, you.
Vosótros, *pron. pers.*, ye, you.
Vóto, *nm.*, vote, vow.
Voz, *nf.*, voice, word.
Vuélta, *nf.*, turn, return.
Vuéstro-a, *pron. poss.*, your, yours.

Y.

Y, *conj.*, and.
Ya, *adv.*, already, now.
Yacér, *inf. vn.*, to lie, to repose.
Yánki, *nm.*, Yankee.
Yérba, *nf.*, grass, herb.
Yo, *pron. pers.*, I.
Yúgo, *nm.*, yoke.

Z.

Zapatéro, *nm.*, shoemaker.
Zapáto, *nm.*, shoe.
Zuríta, *n. prop.*, Zurita.

A FEW MODELS OF ORDINARY CORRESPONDENCE.

Esquelas de convite.

El señor y la señora Rayner presentan sus respetos al señor y á la señora Quesada, y los suplican que les hagan el honor de ir á comer con ellos el juéves á las seis.

Mártes, Mayo 10 de 1848.

Respuesta.

El señor y la señora Quesada se apresurarán á acudir al amable convite del señor y la señora Rayner y les presantan sus respetuosos complidos.

El señor Gomez ruega al señor Barte que le haga el honor de favorecerle con su presencia, el lúnes por la noche, 25 de enero.

Rehusar un convite.

El señor Blanco está comprometido hace muchos dias para el miércoles, y suplica al señor Panza que le dispense, y no dude de que lo siente mucho.

Propuesta para una correspondencia.

NUEVA-YORK, 31 de Mayo de 1848.

SEÑOR DON JOSÉ CAMPO,
VERA-CRUZ.

Muy señor mio; deseando establecer en esa ciudad una correspondencia segura con un sujeto de probidad para las varias comisiones y encargos, que puedan ocurrirme en los asuntos de mi comercio, é informado de las circumstancias y calidades que concurren en V., me tomo la libertad de suplicarle se sirva aceptar el encargo de correspon-

Cards of invitation.

Mr. and Mrs. Rayner present their compliments to Mr. and Mrs. Quesada, and request the honor of their company to dinner on Thursday, at six o'clock.

Tuesday, May 10th, 1848.

Reply.

Mr. and Mrs. Quesada present their respects to Mr. and Mrs. Rayner, and will not fail to accept their kind invitation.

Mr. Gomez requests the favor of Mr. Barte's company on Monday evening, the 25th of January.

Declining an invitation.

Mr. Blanco's compliments to Mr. Panza, and is very sorry that a previous engagement for Wednesday will prevent his having the honor of waiting upon him that day.

—

Proposal for a correspondence.

NEW YORK, May 31st, 1848.

SIR:

Being desirous of establishing in your city a regular correspondence with a person of probity, for the various commissions which may occur in the transaction of my business, and having heard of your respectable standing and qualifications, I take the liberty of requesting you to please accept the offer of being my correspondent, and advise me of your determination, that I may proceed accordingly.

sal mio, y de avisarme de su resolucion para mi gobierno.

El buen nombre que la persona y casa de V. tienen en esta, me induce igualamente á ofrecerle mis servicios para cuanto fuere de su agrado, y ora sea que acepte V. ó no, mi proposicion, apreciaré mucho se digne honrarme con sus preceptos.

Dios guarde la vida de V. muchos años, le desea su muy atento y seguro servidor,

Q. S. M. B.

CA'RLOS BORDA.

—

Letra de Cambio.

Valga por 300 libras.

LÓNDRES, 1º de enero de 1848.

Muy señor mio: á la vista, mandará V. pagar, por esta primera de cambio, al señor R., la suma de trescientas libras esterlinas, valor recibido al contado (*ó* en géneros), que anotará V. en nuestra cuenta corriente, segun aviso de su, &c.

Al señor P., del comercio de Paris.

—

Pagaré.

Valga por 350 libras esterl.

A cuatro meses de la fecha prometo pagar, al señor S., ó á su órden, la suma de trescientas cincuenta libras esterlinas, valor recibido en mercancias.

Lóndres, 1º de junio de 1848.

—

Recibo.

Yo, el infrascrito, reconozco haber recibido del señor Hill la suma de dos mil francos que le habia prestado, segun su promesa del 6 de junio último, que por lo tanto he entregado al presente en manos del señor Hill, como desempeñado.

Ruan, 15 de setiembre de 1847.

Your personal and mercantile reputation in this city, induces me also to offer you my services for attending to any trust with which you may encharge me; and whether you are pleased to accept my proposal or not, I shall consider myself happy to be honored with your commands.

Your obedient servant,

CHARLES BORDA.

—

Bill of exchange.

For £300.

LONDON, January 1st, 1848.

Sir, At sight, please to pay by this first bill of exchange to Mr. R., the sum of three hundred pounds for value received of him in cash (*or* in goods), and place it to account as per advice.

From your, etc.

To Mr. P., merchant, Paris.

—

Promissory Note.

For £350.

Four months after date, I promise to pay Mr. S., or order, the sum of three hundred and fifty pounds for value received in goods of the said gentleman.

London, June 1st, 1848.

—

Receipt.

I, the underwritten, declare to have received of Mr. Hill the sum of two thousand francs which I had lent him according to his promissory note of the sixth of last June; which on this account I now return into the hands of the said Mr. Hill as discharged.

Rouen, September 15th, 1847.

Valuable New Publications,

ADAPTED FOR USE IN

COLLEGES AND DISTRICT SCHOOLS,

RECENTLY PUBLISHED BY

HARPER & BROTHERS, NEW YORK.

Liddell and Scott's New Greek and English Lexicon.

Based on the German Work of Francis Passow; with Corrections and Additions, and the insertion in Alphabetical Order of the Proper Names occurring in the principal Greek Authors. By HENRY DRISLER, M.A., under the Supervision of Prof. ANTHON. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra. $5 00.

An Abridgment of the above, by the Authors, for the Use of Schools, revised and enlarged by the Addition of a Second Part, viz., English and Greek. (In press.)

This is, indeed, a great book. It is vastly superior to any Greek-English Lexicon hitherto published, either in this country or in England. No high school or college can maintain its *caste* that does not introduce the book.—*N. Y. Courier and Enquirer*

A work of authority, which, for real utility and general accuracy, now stands, and will be likely long to be, without a rival in the English language. It has been honored with the most unqualified commendation of the London Quarterly, and many other high critical authorities of Great Britain.—*N. Y. Commercial Advertiser.*

This Greek Dictionary must inevitably take the place of all others in the classical schools of the country.—*Knickerbocker.*

Anthon's Classical Dictionary,

Containing an Account of the principal Proper Names mentioned in Ancient Authors, and intended to elucidate all the important Points connected with the Geography, History, Biography, Mythology, and Fine Arts of the Greeks and Romans, together with an Account of the Coins, Weights, and Measures of the Ancients, with Tabular Values of the same. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra. $4 75.

The scope of this great work is very extensive, and comprises information respecting some of the most important branches of classical knowledge. Here may be found a complete encyclopedia of Ancient Geography, History, Biography, and Mythology The department of the Fine Arts forms an entirely new feature; embracing biographies of ancient artists, and criticisms upon their productions. In fine, this noble work is not only indispensable to the classical teacher and student, but eminently useful to the professional gentleman, and forms a necessary part of every library that aims to be complete. It has been pronounced by Professor Boeckh of Berlin, one of the leading scholars in Germany, "a most excellent work."

Anthon's Latin Lessons.

Latin Grammar, Part I. Containing the most important Parts of the Grammar of the Latin Language, together with appropriate Exercises in the translating and writing of Latin. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents.

The object of this work is to make the young student practically acquainted, at each step of his progress, with those portions of the grammar which he may from time to time commit to memory, and which relate principally to the declension of nouns and conjugation of verbs. As soon as the beginner has mastered some principle relative to the inflections of the language, his attention is directed to exercises in translating and writing Latin, which call for a practical application of the knowledge he may have thus far acquired; and in this way he is led on by easy stages, until he is made thoroughly acquainted with all the important rules that regulate the inflections of the Latin tongue.

Anthon's Latin Prose Composition.

Latin Grammar, Part II. An Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, with a complete Course of Exercises, illustrative of all the important Principles of Latin Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents.

The present work forms the second part of the Latin Lessons, and is intended to elucidate practically all the important principles and rules of the Latin Syntax. The plan pursued is the same with that which was followed in preparing the first part, and the utility of which has been so fully proved by the favorable reception extended to that volume. A rule is laid down and principles are stated, and then exercises are given illustrative of the same. These two parts, therefore, will form a *Grammar of the Latin Language*, possessing this decided advantage over other grammars, in its containing a *Complete Course of Exercises*, which have a direct bearing on each step of the student's progress.

Anthon's Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities,

From the best Authorities, and embodying all the recent Discoveries of the most eminent German Philologists and Jurists. Edited by William Smith, Ph.D. Illustrated by a large number of Engravings. Corrected and enlarged, and containing, also, numerous Articles relative to the Botany, Mineralogy, and Zoology of the Ancients, by Charles Anthon, LL.D. 8vo, Sheep extra. $4 75.

An Abridgment of the above, by the Authors, for the Use of Schools. 12mo, half Sheep. $1 25.

As a Dictionary, it is the best aid to the study of Classical Antiquity which we possess in our language. Valuable as this Dictionary must be to the students of ancient literature, it will be of scarcely less service to the students of ancient art; for the illustrations have been selected with care and judgment.—*Athenæum.*

The articles which we have consulted appear to us admirably done: they are terse in style, and pregnant, yet not cumbrously so, with accurate knowledge—the best and *latest* authorities are constantly cited. A work much wanted, invaluable to the young student, and, as a book of reference, will be most acceptable on the library table of every scholar.—*Quarterly Review.*

Anthon's Zumpt's Latin Grammar.

From the Ninth Edition of the Original, adapted to the Use of English Students, by Leonhard Schmitz, Ph.D. Corrected and enlarged, by Charles Anthon, LL.D. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents. (Third Edition, revised.)

An Abridgment of the above, by the Authors, for the Use of Schools. 12mo (Just ready.)

The student who uses Zumpt's Latin Grammar will obtain from it such a complete *thesaurus* of golden rules and principles that he will never be willing to spare it a moment from his table.—*Professor Frost.*

Anthon's Latin Versification,

In a Series of Progressive Exercises, including Specimens of Translation from English and German Poetry into Latin Verse. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents.

A Key is published, which may be obtained by Teachers. 12mo, half Sheep. 50 cents.

This work contains a full series of rules for the structure of Latin Verse, accompanied by a complete course of exercises for their practical application, and renders this hitherto difficult branch of study comparatively easy and pleasant of attainment. It forms the fourth and concluding part of the Latin Lessons

Anthon's Latin Prosody and Metre.

From the best Authorities, Ancient and Modern. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents.

In this volume, which may not unaptly be regarded as the *third part* of the Latin Lessons, the young scholar will find every thing that may be needed by him, not only at the commencement, but also throughout the several stages of his academic career

Anthon's Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War;

And the First Book of the Greek Paraphrase; with English Notes, critical and explanatory, Plans of Battles, Sieges, &c., and Historical, Geographical, and Archæological Indexes, by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. Map, Portrait, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra. $1 40.

The present edition of Cæsar is on the same plan with the Sallust and Cicero of the editor. The explanatory notes have been specially prepared for the use of beginners, and nothing has been omitted that may tend to facilitate the perusal of the work. The Greek paraphrase is given partly as a literary novelty, and partly as an easy introduction to Greek studies; and the plans of battles, sieges, &c., must prove eminently useful to the learner.

Anthon's Aeneid of Virgil,

With English Notes, critical and Explanatory, a Metrical Clavis, and an Historical, Geographical, and Mythological Index, by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. Portrait and many Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra. $2 00.

The notes accompanying the text have been made purposely copious, since Virgil is an author in the perusal of whom the young scholar stands in need of very frequent assistance. The illustrations that accompany the notes form a very attractive feature in the volume, and are extremely useful in exemplifying the allusions of the author

Anthon's Select Orations of Cicero,

With English Notes, critical and explanatory, and Historical, Geographical, and Legal Indexes, by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. An improved Edition. Portrait. 12mo, Sheep extra. $1 20.

The text of this edition is based upon that of Ernesti, and the notes are comprehensive and copious, laying open to the young scholar the train of thought contained in the Orations, so as to enable him to appreciate, in their full force and beauty, these brilliant memorials of other days, and carefully and fully explaining the allusions in which the orator is fond of indulging.

Anthon's Eclogues and Georgics of Virgil.

With English Notes, critical and explanatory, by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. 12mo, Sheep extra. $1 50.

Dr. Anthon's classical works are well known, not only throughout the Union, but in Great Britain. In this edition of Virgil's pastoral poems, that elegant ancient author is more fully and clearly annotated and explained, than he has ever yet been in any language. To masters of seminaries and school-teachers in general, the work will prove invaluable, from the mass of information which the learned compiler has thrown together in his remarks.—*New Orleans Advertiser.*

In this volume Dr. Anthon has done for Virgil's Pastorals what he had previously done for the Æneid—put it in such a form before the classical student that he can not fail to read it, not only with ease, but with a thorough appreciation and admiration of its beauties. The critical and explanatory notes are very copious and very satisfactory, and make perfectly clear the sense of every passage.—*N. Y. Courier*

Anthon's Sallust's Jugurthine War and Conspiracy of Catiline,

With an English Commentary, and Geographical and Historical Indexes, by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition, corrected and enlarged. Portrait. 12mo, Sheep extra. 87½ cents.

The commentary includes every thing requisite for accurate preparation on the part of the student and a correct understanding of the author. The plan adopted by Professor Anthon has received the unqualified approbation of the great majority of teachers in the United States, and has been commended in the highest terms by some of the finest scholars in the country.

Anthon's Works of Horace,

With English Notes, critical and explanatory, by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition, with Corrections and Improvements. 12mo, Sheep extra. $1 75.

This work has enjoyed a widely favorable reception both in Europe and our own country, and has tended, more than any other edition, to render the young students of the time familiar with the beauties of the poet. The classical student, in his earlier progress, requires a great deal of assistance; and the plan pursued by Professor Anthon in his Horace and other works affords just the aid required to make his studies easy and agreeable, and to attract him still further on in the path of scholarship

Anthon's First Greek Lessons,

Containing the most important Parts of the Grammar of the Greek Language, together with appropriate Exercises in the translating and writing of Greek, for the Use of Beginners. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents.

The plan of this work is very simple. It is intended to render the study of the Greek inflections more inviting to beginners, and better calculated, at the same time, to produce an abiding impression. With this view, there is appended to the several divisions of the Grammar a collection of exercises, consisting of short sentences, in which the rules of inflection just laid down are fully exemplified, and which the student is required to translate and parse, or else to convert from ungrammatical to grammatical Greek.

Anthon's Greek Prose Composition.

Greek Lessons, Part II. An Introduction to Greek Prose Composition, with a complete Course of Exercises illustrative of all the important Principles of Greek Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents.

The present work forms the second part of the Greek Lessons. The object of the editor has been to make the student more fully acquainted than could be done in an ordinary grammar with all the important principles of the Greek Syntax. And in order to impress these principles more fully upon the mind of the pupil, they are accompanied by exercises explanatory of the same; in other words, the theory is first given, and its practical application follows immediately after. This is the only mode of familiarizing the student with the niceties of Greek construction, and has never been carried out to so full an extent in any similar work.

Anthon's Grammar of the Greek Language,

For the Use of Schools and Colleges. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents.

The author's object in preparing the present work was to furnish the student with such a view of the leading features in the Grammar of the Greek language as might prove useful to him, not only at the commencement of his career, but also during its whole continuance. Nothing has, therefore, been omitted the want of which might in any degree retard his progress; and yet, at the same time, the work has been brought within such limits as will render it easy of reference and not deter from perusal Every effort has been made to exhibit a concise outline of all the leading principles of Greek philology.

Anthon's New Greek Grammar

From the German of Kühner, Matthiæ, Buttmann, Rost, and Thiersh; to which are appended, Remarks on the Pronunciation of the Greek Language, and Chronological Tables explanatory of the same. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents.

In order to render this grammar more useful to the student, recourse has been had to the writings of the latest and best of the German grammarians, and especially to those of Kühner, which are now justly regarded as the ablest of their kind; and the present work will be found to contain all the information on the subject necessary to be known by the student of Greek. It contains more numerous and complete exemplification of declension and conjugation than any that has preceded it.

Anthon's Greek Prosody and Metre,

For the Use of Schools and Colleges; together with the Choral Scanning of the Prometheus Vinctus of Æschylus, and Œdipus Tyrannus of Sophocles; to which are appended, Remarks on the Indo-Germanic Analogies. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents.

An accurate acquaintance with the Prosody and Metres of the Greek language is a necessary accompaniment of true scholarship; but one great want is felt in its successful cultivation. The present work supplies this want. It omits the intricate questions on which the learned delight to exercise themselves, and aims only to give what is immediately and permanently useful, in a simple and inviting style. The Appendix, containing Remarks on the Analogies of Language, will be found interesting to every scholar. This work, like the others of the series, has been republished in England, and forms the text-book at *King's College School, London*, as well as in other quarters.

Anthon's Homer's Iliad.

The first Six Books of Homer's Iliad, to which are appended English Notes, critical and explanatory, a Metrical Index, and Homeric Glossary, by Charles Anthon, LL.D. 12mo, Sheep extra. $1 50.

The commentary contained in this volume is a full one, on the principle that, if a good foundation be laid in the beginning, the perusal of the Homeric poems becomes a matter of positive enjoyment; whereas, if the pupil be hurried over book after book of these noble productions, with a kind of rail-road celerity, he remains a total stranger to all the beauties of the scenery through which he has sped his way, and at the end of his journey is as wise as when he commenced it. The present work contains what is useful to the young student in furthering his acquaintance with the classic language and noble poetry of Homer. The Glossary renders any other Homeric dictionary useless.

Anthon's Greek Reader,

Principally from the German of Jacobs. With English Notes, critical and explanatory, a Metrical Index to Homer and Anacreon, and a copious Lexicon. 12mo, Sheep extra. $1 75.

This Reader is edited on the same plan as the author's other editions of the classics, and has given universal satisfaction to all teachers who have adopted it into use. That plan supposes an ignorance in the pupil of all but the very first principles of the language, and a need on his part of guidance through its intricacies. It aims to enlighten that ignorance and supply that guidance in such a way as to render his progress sure and agreeable, and to invite him to cultivate the fair fields of classic literature more thoroughly.

Anthon's Anabasis of Xenophon,

With English Notes, critical and explanatory, by Charles Anthon, LL.D 12mo, Sheep extra.

Zumpt's Latin Exercises.

(In press.)

Anthon's Germania and Agricola of Tacitus.

With English Notes, critical and explanatory, from the best and latest Authorities; the Remarks of Bötticher on the Style of Tacitus; and a copious Geographical Index. 12mo, Sheep extra. 90 cents.

Anthon's Cicero's De Senectute, etc.

The De Senectute, De Amicitia, Paradoxa, and Somnium Scipionis of Cicero, and the Life of Atticus, by Cornelius Nepos, with English Notes, critical and explanatory. 12mo, Sheep extra.

Anthon's Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates.

From the Text of Kühner. With explanatory Notes, &c., by D. B. Hickie, LL.D. First American Edition, corrected and enlarged by Charles Anthon, LL.D. 12mo, Sheep extra.

M'Clintock and Crooks's First Book in Latin,

Containing Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabularies, on the Method of constant Imitation and Repetition. 12mo, Sheep extra. 75 cents. (Second Edition, revised.)

I am satisfied that it is the best book for beginners in Latin that is published in this country.—Prof. J. P. Durbin, *Philadelphia.*

I am confident that no teacher who studies the success of his pupils will adopt any other text-book than this in the beginning of a course in Latin.—Prof. W. H. Gilder, *Belleville, New Jersey.*

I cheerfully bear testimony to the excellence of the "*First Book in Latin;*" it is a work of prodigious labor and wonderful skill.—Rev. J. H. Dashiell, *Baltimore Institute.*

M'CLINTOCK AND CROOKS'S SECOND BOOK IN LATIN, containing a complete Latin Syntax, with copious Exercises for Imitation and Repetition, and *Loci Memoriales* selected from Cicero. (In press.)

M'CLINTOCK AND CROOKS'S PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN STYLE, principally translated from the German of Grysar, with Exercises in writing Latin, on Ciceronian Models. (In press.)

M'CLINTOCK AND CROOKS'S ELEMENTARY GREEK GRAMMAR, containing full Vocabularies, Lessons on the Forms of Words, and Exercises for Imitation and Repetition, with a Summary of Etymology and Syntax. (In press.)

M'CLINTOCK AND CROOKS'S SECOND BOOK IN GREEK, containing a complete Greek Syntax, on the Basis of Kühner, with Exercises for Imitation on Models drawn from Xenophon's Anabasis. (In press.)

Upham's Outlines of Imperfect and Disordered Mental Action.

18mo, Muslin. 45 cents.

As a text-book in Mental Philosophy, I am assured it has no equal; and any thing which may be made to contribute to the wider circulation of such a work, and which may thus either extend a taste for such studies, or tend to satisfy the taste already widely diffused, can not but be hailed with pleasure by all who feel an interest in the progress of general science, and especially by those who, with me, recognize the pre-eminently practical character of that knowledge which pertains to the human mind.—Prof. Caldwell, *Dickinson College.*

Upham's Elements of Mental Philosophy;

Embracing the two Departments of the Intellect and the Sensibilities. 2 vols. 12mo, Sheep extra. $2 50.

An Abridgment of the above, by the Author, designed as a Text-book in Academies. 12mo. Sheep extra. $1 25.

Professor Upham has brought together the leading views of the best writers on the most important topics of mental science, and exhibited them with great good judgment, candor, clearness, and method. Out of all the systematic treatises in use, we consider the volumes of Mr. Upham by far the best that we have.—*New York Review*

Upham's Treatise on the Will.

A Philosophical and Practical Treatise on the Will. 12mo, Sheep extra. $1 25.

This work is one of great value to the literary and religious community. It indicates throughout not only deep and varied research, but profound and laborious thought, and is a full, lucid, and able discussion of an involved and embarrassing subject. The style, though generally diffuse, is always perspicuous, and often elegant; and the work, as a whole, will add much to the reputation of its author, and entitle him to rank among the ablest metaphysicians of our country.—*Christian Advocate.*

Gardner's Farmer's Dictionary;

A Vocabulary of the Technical Terms recently introduced into Agriculture and Horticulture from various Sciences, and also a Compendium of Practical Farming: the latter chiefly from the Works of the Rev. W. L. Rham, Loudon, Low, and Youatt, and the most eminent American Authors. With numerous Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 75; Muslin gilt, $1 50.

An invaluable treatise for the agriculturist, whose suggestions and information would probably save him ten times its cost every year of his labor.—*Evangelist.*

In the *Farmer's Dictionary* we find what has never before been drawn up for the farmer: no where else is so much important information on subjects of interest to the practical agriculturist to be found.—*Cultivator.*

Buel's Farmer's Companion;

Or, Essays on the Principles and Practice of American Husbandry. With the Address prepared to be delivered before the Agricultural and Horticultural Societies of New Haven County, Connecticut. And an Appendix, containing Tables, and other Matter useful to the Farmer. To which is prefixed a Eulogy on the Life and Character of Judge Buel, by Amos Dean, Esq. 12mo, Muslin. 75 cents.

"This is decidedly one of the best elementary treatises on agriculture that has ever been written. It contains a lucid description of every branch of the subject, and is in itself a complete manual of Husbandry, which no farmer, who would understand his own interest, should be without. It is sufficient to say that this is the last production of the late Judge Buel, and contains his matured experience and opinions on a subject which he did more, perhaps, to elevate and promote than any other man of his time. Judge Buel was a strong advocate for what is termed the New Husbandry, the many advantages of which over the old system he illustrated by his own practice, and the claims of which to the consideration of the farmer are ably set forth in this volume. The work is written with great perspicuity, and the manner in which the subject is treated shows the hand of a master. The clearness and simplicity of the style adapt it to all classes of readers; and containing as it does a copious Index, Glossary, &c., it is eminently suited as a text-book for country schools, into which we hope it will be speedily introduced, and its principles thoroughly studied and practically carried out. It is also a very suitable book to be given as a premium, and we therefore recommend it to the notice of our Agricultural Societies."

Draper's Text-book of Chemistry,

For the Use of Schools and Colleges. With nearly 300 Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep. 75 cents. (Fourth Edition, revised.)

Terse, lucid, and philosophical, and well adapted to the object for which it is published. It is a vast improvement upon all the chemical text-books with which we are acquainted. It can not fail of superseding the many compends now used in our colleges.—*St. Louis Gazette.*

Draper's Text-book of Natural Philosophy,

For the Use of Schools and Colleges. Containing the most recent Discoveries and Facts, compiled from the best Authorities. With nearly 400 Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep. 75 cents.

An admirable manual for students of almost any age, containing nearly *four hundred* illustrations. A clear and general view of the great features of the science is here given in the smallest possible compass; and by way of making the study more attractive to the beginner, the physical properties of air and water are treated of before the laws and phenomena of motion, a novelty of arrangement which appears to us highly judicious.—*Christian Inquirer.*

Draper's Chemical Organization of Plants.

A Treatise on the Forces which produce the Organization of Plants. With an Appendix, containing several Memoirs on Capillary Attraction, Electricity, and the Chemical Action of Light. Engravings. 4to. $2 50.

Dr. Draper's researches in the Chemistry of Plants and on the Chemical Action of Light here given, render this work exceedingly valuable to all lovers of science. The author is well known as a most able and indefatigable experimenter and theorist in philosophy.—*Commercial Advertiser.*

Morse's New System of Geography,

For the Use of Schools. Illustrated by more than 50 Cerographic Maps, and numerous Engravings on Wood. 4to. 50 cents. (A thoroughly revised Edition, corrected to the present time.)

The Public School Society of the City of New York have *unanimously* adopted Morse's School Geography into their extensive schools, and it has been generally introduced into those of Philadelphia.

A valuable acquisition to all engaged either in imparting or receiving instruction. Its conciseness and simplicity of arrangement, and its numerous and beautiful embellishments, can not fail to render it deservedly popular.—W. H. Pile, *Principal of the N. E. Grammar School, Philadelphia.*

Morse's North American Atlas;

Comprising a complete Series of accurate and legibly-engraved Maps of North America, printed by the cerographic process, and colored. Folio, half Roan. $2 75.

This much-needed atlas will be welcomed by all engaged in teaching in colleges, schools, &c.; it is an admirable help in geographical studies; and thousands who are constantly requiring the help of a competent and reliable atlas will find this just to their purpose, and excessively cheap in the bargain.

Renwick's First Principles of Chemistry;

Being a familiar Introduction to the Study of that Science. With Questions. Engravings. 18mo, half Sheep. 75 cents.

The principle by which the author has been governed was to admit few, if any, hard terms in the text, supplying their place with as plain language and intelligible explanations as possible. In a word, more information or instruction will be found in this little work than can be collected from many publications of greater pretensions and of four times its bulk.

Renwick's Practical Mechanics.

Applications of the Science of Mechanics to Practical Purposes. Engravings. 18mo, half Roan. 90 cents.

This volume is alike creditable to the writer, and to the state of science in this country.—*American Quarterly Review.*

Renwick's First Principles of Natural Philosophy;

Being a familiar Introduction to the Study of that Science. With Questions. Engravings. 18mo, half Roan. 75 cents.

This work contains treatises on the sciences of statics and hydrostatics, comprising the whole theory of equilibrium. It is intended for the use of those who have no knowledge of mathematics, or who have made but little progress in their mathematical reading. Throughout the whole, an attempt has been made to bring the principles of exact science to bear upon questions of practical application in the arts, and to place the discussion of them within the reach of those connected with manufactures.

Potter's Political Economy:

Its Objects, Uses, and Principles; considered with reference to the Condition of the American People. With a Summary for the Use of Students. 18mo, half Roan, 50 cents; Muslin, 45 cents.

Two objects have been kept in view in preparing this work; first, to provide a treatise for general readers adapted to the times, and especially to the wants of our country, which should not be encumbered unnecessarily with controversial matters, or with abstract discussions; secondly, to furnish a cheap and convenient *manual* for seminaries, in which larger and more expensive text-books could not well be used.

Parker's Aids to English Composition,

Prepared for the Student of all Grades, embracing Specimens and Examples of School and College Exercises, and most of the higher Departments of English Composition, both in Prose and Verse. 12mo, Sheep, 90 cents; Muslin, 80 cents. (A new Edition, with Additions and Improvements.)

We have been long familiar with this excellent volume, and do not conceive it possible for any improvement to be made on it. To those who have never had an opportunity of judging of its merits, we would say, by all means procure a copy, for there is nothing like it in the whole range of elementary school-books.—*Commercial Adv.*

Parker's Geographical Questions,

Adapted for the Use of Morse's, Woodbridge's, Worcester's, Mitchell's, Field's, Malte Brun's, Smith's, Olney's, Goodrich's, and other Collections of Maps. To which is added, a concise Description of the Terrestrial Globe. 12mo, Muslin. 25 cents.

These Questions are designed to simplify the study of this important science, by means of the useful and important process of classification. They may be used without subjecting a class of pupils to the expense frequently attendant on a required uniformity of maps. These Questions are already used in some of the leading schools in New England.

Parker's Outlines of General History.

12mo, Sheep. $1 00.

The object of this work is to present the rudiments of history, ancient and modern, together with aids for the study of the philosophy of history. It is novel in plan, and well deserves the attention of students and teachers generally. As a common-place book of history, or book of reference, it can not fail of being well received. The author has earned already considerable literary fame by his very useful volume, "Aids to English Composition."—*Commercial Advertiser.*

Schmucker's Psychology;

Or, Elements of a new System of Mental Philosophy, on the Basis of Consciousness and Common Sense. Designed for Colleges and Academies. 12mo, Muslin. $1 00.

This production, the fruit of some 20 years' scholastic experience, avowedly owes its existence to the desire of the author to promote the cause of truth and science It exhibits in a lucid manner the analysis of mental philosophy as the basis of metaphysical science and religious belief.

Salkeld's Compendium of Roman and Grecian Antiquities,

Including a Sketch of Ancient Mythology. With Maps, &c. 12mo, Muslin. 37½ cents.

Most of the works in use which treat of the antiquities of Greece and Rome are so copious and so intermingled with Greek or Latin quotations, that, though they may be highly valuable to the classical *scholar* as works of reference, they are rendered less useful to the classical *pupil* as common text-books. On this account, the study of classical antiquities has been mostly confined to the higher classes. The present volume is designed for general use in our common schools, but it is believed to be so comprehensive and elevated in its character, as to be acceptable in academies and high schools as well as private use.

Salkeld's First Book in Spanish;

Or, a Practical Introduction to the Study of the Spanish Language. Adapted to every Class of Learners, containing full Instructions in Pronunciation; a Grammar; Reading Lessons and a Vocabulary.

I have never met witn a work professing to teach any foreign language which combines so many excellent qualities, and is so well adapted for all classes of learners. It is the precise manner in which I have been giving instruction to classes of pupils in English, French, and Spanish for many years in the cities of Paris, London, and Madrid, teaching what is most important to know.—Don Julio Cirilo de Molina, *Professor of Languages in the Cities of Madrid, Paris, and London.*

Boyd's Elements of Rhetoric and Literary Criticism,

With copious Practical Exercises and Examples. Including, also, a Succinct History of the English Language, and of British and American Literature, from the earliest to the present Times. On the Basis of the recent Works of Alexander Reid and Robert Connell; with large Additions from other Sources. Compiled and arranged by J. R. Boyd, A.M. 12mo, half Bound. 50 cents.

It is very happily adapted to aid teachers in training the minds of the young to act with clearness, and to give a perspicuous and elegant expression to their thoughts in written language.—*Philadelphia Christian Observer.*

My decided conviction of its merits prompts me to recommend it to the examination of teachers, parents, and all who feel an interest in promoting the noble and blessed career of popular education.—S. N. Sweet, *Author of "Elocution."*

Boyd's Eclectic Moral Philosophy.

Prepared for Literary Institutions and General Use. 12mo, Muslin gilt. 75 cents.

The book before us is exceedingly valuable, both for private use and academies and high schools generally. Though not so able a work as Wayland's "Moral Science," "it exhibits *in detail* the greater and the lesser moralities of life," and is therefore better adapted for union district schools. It can not be studied too much, by youth especially.—*Western Literary Messenger*

Proudfit's Plautus's "The Captives."

A Comedy. With English Notes, for the Use of Students. By JOHN PROUDFIT, D.D. 18mo, Muslin. 37½ cents.

Plautus possessed very happy talents for a comic writer, a rich flow of excellent wit, happy invention, and all the force of comic expression.—*Eschb.*

Noel and Chapsal's New French Grammar,

With Questions, and a Key in English. To which are added, Lessons in Reading, &c. 12mo, Muslin. 75 cents.

The Grammar of Noël and Chapsal is universally considered to be the best, and is the one most generally used in our academies. The form of question and answer adopted by Mrs. Seaman, with the translated key at the end, are evident improvements. I do not hesitate to recommend the work.—C. LE FEBVRE.

I have so high an opinion of the judgment of M. Le Febvre, that any work which meets with his approbation will command mine.—CHARLES ANTHON.

Mill's Logic, Ratiocinative and Inductive;

Being a connected View of the Principles of Evidence and Methods of Scientific Investigation. 8vo, Sheep, $2 25; Muslin, $2 00.

A production, we predict, which will distinguish the age; which no scholar should be without; but which, above all, should be the manual of every lawyer. The style is, in our judgment, a model; in thought as in method, clear as crystal; in expression, precise as the symbolical language of algebra.—*Democratic Review.*

Maury's Principles of Eloquence.

With an Introduction, by the Rev. Dr. POTTER. 18mo, half Roan, 50 cents; Muslin, 45 cents.

This manual is decidedly the best which has yet appeared upon the subject, and is, as it were, an excellent emblem of the oratory on which it chiefly dwells: admirable in its arrangement, full of good sense in much of its detail, with a felicitous and judicious application of the principles of Cicero and Quintilian to his subject.—*Quarterly Review.*

Hackley's Treatise on Algebra,

Containing the latest Improvements. 8vo, Sheep. $1 50.

I regard it as a very valuable accession to mathematical science. It is remarkably full and complete.—E. S. SNELL, *Professor of Mathematics, Amherst College, Mas*

I deem it a work of great value to the mathematical student, and better suited to the wants of private learners, and all others who wish to obtain a thorough knowledge of the science, than any other work with which I am acquainted.—ELIJAH A. SMITH, *Corresponding Secretary of Queen's County Common School Association.*

Hackley's School Algebra,

Containing the latest Improvements. 8vo, Muslin. 75 cents.

Hackley's Elementary Course of Geometry.

For the Use of Schools and Colleges. 12mo, Sheep. 75 cents.

Like the previous works by the same author, the materials are the best, the instruction intelligible, and the work as a whole such as will prove well adapted to the use of students. His treatises on Algebra have received high commendation by distinguished teachers.—*Observer.*

Loomis's Geometry and Conic Sections.

8vo, Sheep. $1 00.

Prof. Loomis has endeavored to combine the excellences of Euclid and Legendre, following the arrangement of the latter and the more logical method of demonstration of the former. The enunciations are concise and clear, and the processes neither too brief nor too diffuse. The part treating of solid geometry is undoubtedly superior, in clearness and arrangement, to any other elementary treatise among us. The whole work is neatly printed, brief, compact, and, we should suppose, well adapted to the purposes of elementary study.—*Evangelist.*

Loomis's Treatise on Algebra.

8vo, Sheep. $1 25.

Prof. Loomis's Treatise on Algebra is an excellent elementary work. It is sufficiently extensive for ordinary purposes, and is characterized throughout by a happy combination of brevity and clearness.—ALEXIS CASWELL, D.D., *Professor of Mathematics and Natural Philosophy in Brown University.*

I have carefully examined Prof. Loomis's Algebra, and think it better adapted for a text-book for college students than any other I have seen.—C. GILL, *Professor of Mathematics in St. Paul's College.*

Clark's Elements of Algebra:

Embracing also the Theory and Application of Logarithms; together with an Appendix, containing Infinite Series, the General Theory of Equations, and the most approved Methods of resolving the higher Equations. 8vo, Sheep extra. $1 00.

The object of this treatise is to present to the student a full and systematic text book of practical and theoretical *elementary* algebra. Within a brief compass the author has embraced a more comprehensive view of the science than is to be found in any similar work. These features can not fail to commend the book to the notice of teachers; the work, indeed, has already been extensively adopted in numerous academies and schools in different sections of the country.

Lewis's Platonic Theology.

Plato contra Atheos. Plato against the Atheists; or, the Tenth Book of the Dialogue on Laws, accompanied with Critical Notes, and followed by extended Dissertations on some of the main Points of the Platonic Philosophy and Theology, especially as compared with the Holy Scriptures. 12mo, Muslin gilt. $1 50.

No more acceptable or timely contribution to the cause of sound classical education could possibly have been made than this. The leading object of the work, even paramount to its relation to education, seems to have been to furnish an antidote to the progressive *atheism* of the present age.—*Courier and Enquirer.*

Professor Lewis has, in this work, provided a rich feast both for the student and the Christian.—*New York Evangelist.*

Lee's Elements of Geology for Popular Use;

Containing a Description of the Geological Formations and Mineral Resources of the United States. Engravings. 18mo, half Sheep. 50 cents.

This work has received the approbation of the ablest geologists in the country, and is now the standard text-book on this subject in many of the first academies and high schools in the United States. It was prepared expressly for the use of schools, but is no less adapted to the wants of the general reader. Beginning with the simplest elements of the science, it proceeds to give a clear and systematic account of the changes which have taken place upon the earth's surface, and the causes by which they have been brought about. It is, moreover, the only work which gives within a reasonable compass a full account of the geological structure and mineral resources of the United States. It is no less comprehensive in its scope than accurate in detail; the scientific reputation of the author is sufficient guarantee for the general excellence and superiority of the work.

Burke's Essay on the Sublime and Beautiful.

A Philosophical Inquiry into the Origin of our Ideas of the Sublime and Beautiful. With an Introductory Discourse concerning Taste. Edited by ABRAHAM MILLS. 12mo, Muslin. 75 cents.

As a writer, whether we consider the splendor of his diction, the richness and variety of his imagery, or the boundless store of knowledge which he displays, it must be acknowledged that there are few who equal, and none who transcend him.

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: Sept. 2006

Preservation Technologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION
111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 213 073 2